PEOPLE OF THE VEIL

Being an Account of the Habits, Organisation and History of the Wandering Tuareg Tribes which inhabit the Mountains of Air or Asben in the Central Sahara

"NAUGHT BUT GOOD"

BY

FRANCIS RENNELL RODD

The Project Gutenberg eBook of People of the veil

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: People of the veil
being an account of the habits, organisation and history of the wandering Tuareg tribes which inhabit the mountains of Air or Asben in the central Sahara

Author: Baron Francis James Rennell Rodd Rennell of Rodd

Release date: November 21, 2024 [eBook #74774]

Language: English

Original publication: London: Macmillan and co., 1926

Other information and formats:

www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/74774

Credits: Galo Flordelis (This file was produced from images generously made available by the HathiTrust Digital Library/ University of California)

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK PEOPLE OF THE VEIL ***

PEOPLE OF THE VEIL

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
LONDON . BOMBAY . CALCUTTA . MADRAS
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK . BOSTON . CHICAGO
DALLAS . SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

PLATE 1

[*Frontispiece.*

PEOPLE OF THE VEIL

Being an Account of the Habits, Organisation and History of the Wandering Tuareg Tribes which inhabit the Mountains of Air or Asben in the Central Sahara

BY

FRANCIS RENNELL RODD

"NAUGHT BUT GOOD"

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON
1926

COPYRIGHT

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

PREFACE

THIS book was originally intended to be an account of the people and mountains of Air in the Central Sahara, where I made a journey during most of 1922 with Angus Buchanan and T. A. Glover. The former had visited the area on a previous occasion and had described the people and places he had seen in his book, *Out of the World—North of Nigeria*. It therefore seemed more profitable to inquire into some of the problems surrounding the inhabitants of the Sahara whom we encountered, and thus deal with Air and its Tuareg population rather less objectively than had my fellow-traveller. In the course of the succeeding years, as I became more and more immersed in considering various scientific aspects of the Sahara, I came to the conclusion that neither had the Tuareg people nor had this vast area of the earth’s surface been at all adequately examined. Most studies had been objective and, as is unhappily the case with this book, confined to one area. A comprehensive account of the history and ethnology of the Sahara still requires to be written.

As a consequence of these investigations, the present work assumed a form for which one journey of nine months in the countries concerned scarcely seems enough justification. That the book was not completed sooner has been due to the impossibility of spending any time continuously either in research or on writing during the three years which have elapsed since I returned. The fact that this book has been the occupation only of such spare time as I have had available accounts for its many conscious deficiencies, which are unfortunately not the more excusable in a volume of the type which it purports to be. If I can feel that it will have served to stimulate the curiosity of students or have assisted them to find their way about the literature on the subject, I shall consider that as a reward calculated to enhance the pleasure which I have derived from writing and reading about this—to me—fascinating topic.

It will be one of my lasting regrets that I was unable to complete with Angus Buchanan his journey across the Sahara from Nigeria to Algiers. The delays which we encountered in Air obliged me to return to resume my duties in that branch of H.M.'s Service in which I was then serving. This is not the place to mention the many things which I owe to Angus Buchanan; perhaps the greatest advantage I derived was the promise we gave one another to travel again together if an occasion should come to him and leisure from another profession to me, whereby we might be enabled to renew our companionship of the road. I am grateful to him for permission to use several of his photographs in the present volume as well as certain information which he collected when we were separately engaged on our different work.

To T. A. Glover, the Cinematographer, whose services Angus Buchanan secured to accompany him, I owe many pleasant memories of days spent together and his excellent advice in taking most of the photographs which are included in this book.

The French officers whom I encountered in the course of my wanderings were as charming and as friendly as perhaps, of all foreign nations, only Frenchmen know how to be. Were the relations between our respective countries always even remotely similar to those which subsisted between us, there would be no room for the suspicion and pettiness which so often mar diplomatic and political intercourse. The mutual confidence in which we lived is illustrated by two events.

On a certain occasion in Air when news was received of a raid being about to fall on the country, I was honoured by receiving a communication from the French officer commanding the Fort at Agades, indicating the locality in his general scheme of defence whither I might lead on a reconnaissance an armed band of local Tuareg from the village in which I was then living by myself. On another occasion, after travelling for some hundreds of miles with a French Camel Corps patrol, the men were paraded and in their presence I was nominated an honorary serjeant of the "Peloton Méhariste de Guré," a type of compliment which those associated with the French Army will best realise. It is to the officer commanding this unit, Henri Gramain of the French Colonial Army, that I owe the most perfect companionship I have ever had the fortune to experience. I know that when we meet again we shall resume conversation where we left off at Teshkar in the bushland of Elakkos, one evening in the summer of 1922. He and my other friends, Tuareg, British, French, Arab and Fulani contributed to make that year the happiest I have ever spent.

No reader of the works of that great traveller, Dr. Heinrich Barth, will need to be told how much of the data collected in the succeeding pages has been culled from the monumental account of his *Travels in Central Africa*. This German, who most loyally served the British Crown in those far countries, is perhaps the greatest traveller there has ever been in Africa. His exploits were never advertised, so his fame has not been suffered to compete with the more sensational and journalistic enterprises accomplished since his day down to modern times. But no student will require to have his praises sung by any disciple.

I have to thank the Royal Geographical Society for permission to use the map which was prepared for a paper I had the honour to read in 1923 before a meeting of the Fellows. More especially do I wish to thank E. A. Reeves, their Keeper of Maps, both for the instruction in surveying which he gave me before my journey and for the assistance afforded after my return in checking and working up my results. My cartographic material in the form of road traverses, sketch maps based on astronomical positions, and theodolite computations are all in the Society’s library and available to students. A small collection of ethnographic material which I brought back is at Oxford in the Pitt Rivers Museum, to whose Curator, Henry Balfour, I am indebted both for advice and for plates Nos. 24-26, 37 and 42.

H. R. Palmer, now H.M. Lieutenant-Governor of Northern Nigeria, and Messrs. Macmillan & Co. have given me permission to use a table of the Kings of Agades incorporated as Appendix VI. The list originally appeared *in extenso*, with the names somewhat differently spelled, in an article which he published in the *Journal of the African Society* in July 1910. The great learning and sympathetic help which he was good enough to put at my disposal have made me, in common with many others in Nigeria, in whose friendship my journey so richly rewarded me, hope that he may be induced to render more accessible to the public the immense fund of historical and other material which he has accumulated during his long career as a distinguished Colonial servant.

The then Governor of Nigeria, Sir H. Clifford, and the French Ministry of Colonies earned the gratitude of Angus Buchanan and myself by their assistance on the road and in facilitating our journey.

My brother-in-law, T. A. Emmet, was good enough to execute several drawings from rough sketches I had made on the spot. Two of these drawings are reproduced as plates Nos. 38 and 39.

To three persons it is difficult for me to express my gratitude at all suitably. D. G. Hogarth read my manuscript and offered his invaluable advice regarding the final form of the book as it now appears. Many years’ association with him has led others beside myself to regard him in his wisdom as our spiritual godfather in things appertaining to the world of Islam. My father devoted many days and nights to correcting the final draft and proofs of this book. My brother Peter, when his versatile mind perceived certain improvements, rewrote Chapter XII after I had become so tired of the sight of my manuscript that I was on the verge of destroying the offensive object. I owe more to both these two than I can explain.

F. R. R.

New York,
31st December, 1925.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER PAGE
I. INTRODUCTORY 1
II. THE SOUTHLANDS 36
III. THE CITY OF AGADES 80
IV. THE ORGANISATION OF THE AIR TUAREG 119

V. SOCIAL CONDITIONS 154

VI. THE MODE OF LIFE OF THE NOMADS 183

VII. TRADE AND OCCUPATIONS 213

VIII. ARCHITECTURE AND ART 238

IX. RELIGION AND BELIEFS 273

X. NORTHERN AIR AND THE KEL OWI 298

XI. THE ANCESTRY OF THE TUAREG OF AIR 330

XII. The History of Air. Part I. The Migrations of the Tuareg to Air 360
XIII. The History of Air. Part II. The Vicissitudes of the Tuareg in Air 401
XIV. Valedictory 417

APPENDIX PAGE
I. A List of the Astronomically Determined Points in Air 422

II. The Tribal Organisation of the Tuareg of Air 426

III. Elakkos and Termit 442

IV. Ibn Batutah's Journey 452

V. On the Root "MZGh" in Various Libyan Names 457

VI. The Kings of the Tuareg of Air 463

VII. Some Bibliographical Material used in this Book 466

Index 469

PLATES

PLATE		*Facing page*
1.	AGELLAL VILLAGE AND MOUNTAINS	*Frontispiece*
2.	ELATTU	14
3.	DESERT AND HILLS FROM TERMIT PEAK	32
4.	DIOM IN ELAKKOS	42
	PUNCH AND JUDY SHOW	42
5.	GAMRAM	49
6.	RIVER OF AGADES: CLIFFS AT AKARAQ	76
	SHRINE AT AKARAQ	76
7.	RIVER OF AGADES LOOKING SOUTH FROM TEBEHIC IN THE EGHALGAWEN MASSIF	79
	EGHALGAWEN MASSIF FROM AZAWAGH	79
8.	TIN WANA POOL	83
	ROCK OF THE TWO SLAVES, AT THE JUNCTION OF THE TIN WANA AND EGHALGAWEN VALLEYS	83
9.	AGADES	86
10.	GATHERING AT SIDI HAMADA	95
	PRAYERS AT SIDI HAMADA	95

11. PRAYERS AT SIDI HAMADA 97

12. OMAR: AMENOKAL OF AIR 108

13. AUDERAS VALLEY LOOKING WEST 120

AUDERAS VALLEY: AERWAN TIDRAK 120

14. MT. TODRA FROM AUDERAS 126

15. GRAIN POTS, IFERUAN 133

GARDEN WELLS 133

16. AUDERAS: HUTS 154

AUDERAS: TENT-HUT AND SHELTER 154

17. THE AUTHOR DRESSING A WOUND AT AUDERAS 163

18. TEKHMEDIN AND THE AUTHOR 178

19. BAGEZAN MOUNTAINS AND TOWAR VILLAGE 182

20. HUTS AT TOWAR SHOWING METHOD OF CONSTRUCTION 184

TIMIA HUTS 184

21. CAMEL BRANDS 195

22. SHIELD ORNAMENTATION AND UTENSILS 209

23. TIMIA GORGE 216

TIMIA GORGE: BASALT AND GRANITE FORMATIONS 216

24. TUAREG PERSONAL EQUIPMENT 227

25. TUAREG CAMEL EQUIPMENT 230

26. TUAREG WEAPONS 236

27. HOUSE TYPES 240

28. HOUSE TYPES 241

29. TIMIA: “A” AND “B” TYPE HOUSES AND HUT CIRCLES 244

TABELLO: INTERIOR OF “A” TYPE HOUSE 244

30. HOUSE INTERIORS 248

31. MOSQUES 256

32. MOSQUES 257

33. TIFINAGH ALPHABET 267

34. ROCK INSCRIPTIONS IN TIFINAGH 269

35. MT. ABATTUL AND VILLAGE 275

36. THE CROSS IN ORNAMENT 277

37. TUAREG PERSONAL ORNAMENTS 285

38. MT. ARWA 295

39. MT. AGGATA 300

40. ROCK DRAWINGS 305

41. ROCK DRAWINGS 306

42. ORNAMENTED BAGGAGE RESTS 310

43. T’INTELLUST 312

44. BARTH'S CAMP AT T'INTELLUST 313

BARTH'S CAMP AT T'INTELLUST (ANOTHER VIEW) 313

45. ASSARARA 326

46. FUGDA, CHIEF OF TIMIA, AND HIS WAKIL 352

ATAGOOM 352

47. SIDI 366

48. EGHALGAWEN POOL 400

TIZRAET POOL 400

49. EGHALGAWEN VALLEY AND THE LAST HILLS OF AIR 414

50. MT. BILA AT SUNSET 419

Additional Plate { TYPICAL TEBU 442

TERMIT PEAK AND WELL 442

MAPS AND DIAGRAMS

PAGE

MAP SHOWING THE TRADE ROADS OF NORTH AFRICA 5

DIAGRAMMATIC MAP SHOWING THE DRAINAGE OF THE CENTRAL SAHARA 29

MAP OF DAMERGU AND NEIGHBOURING PARTS: 1/2,000,000 *facing p.* 36

SKETCH MAP OF AIR AND THE DIVISIONS OF THE SOUTHLAND 40

DIAGRAM SHOWING TRIBAL DESCENT AMONG THE TUAREG 130

DIAGRAM SHOWING THE GOVERNMENT OF THE AIR TUAREG 144

MAP SHOWING LEO'S SAHARAN AREAS 331

DIAGRAM SHOWING IBN KHALDUN'S BERBER TRIBES 341

DIAGRAM SHOWING THE MIGRATIONS OF THE AIR TUAREG 388

GENEALOGY OF CERTAIN KINGS OF AIR 465

MAP OF AIR AND ADJACENT PARTS: 1/2,000,000 *At end*

NOTE

THE general map at the end of the volume was prepared by the Royal Geographical Society from data collected by the author supplementing existing maps published in France and described in the text of the book. The two drawings (Plates 38 and 39) were executed in England by T. A. Emmet from sketches made in Air. Plates Nos. 2, 15 (lower), 34 are from photographs taken by Angus Buchanan. All the other maps, diagrams, pictures, and photographs were prepared by the author from material collected in 1922.

NOTE

THE name “Air” is a dissyllable word: the vowels are pronounced as in Italian according to the general system of transliteration, which follows, wherever possible, the rules laid down by the Committee of the

Royal Geographical Society on the Spelling of Proper Names. In the Tuareg form of Berber, *t* before *i* or similar vowel, especially in the feminine possessive particle “tin,” very often assumes a sound varying between a hard explosive *tch* and a soft liquid dental, such as is found in the English word “tune.” This modification of the sound *t* is written *t’*, wherever it is by usage sufficiently pronounced to be noticeable. The pronunciation of Tuareg words follows the Air dialect, which often differs from the northern speech. Letters are only accented where it is important to avoid mispronunciation, as in Fadé and Emilía: a final *e*, as in Assode, which is a trisyllable, should always be pronounced even if not accented.

The nasal *n* occurring in such words as Añastafidet is written *ñ*.

The *gh* (or Arabic غ, *ghen*) sound is, as in other Berber languages, very common in the speech of the Tuareg. The letter is so strongly *grasseyé* as to be indistinguishable, in many cases, from *r*. The French with greater logic write this sound *r* or *r’*. Doubtless many names which have been spelled with *r* in the succeeding pages should more correctly have been spelled with *gh*: such mistakes are due to the difficulties both of distinguishing the sound in speech, and of transcribing French transliterations.

No attempt has been made to indicate the occurrence of the third *g* which exists in the Tuareg alphabet, in addition to the hard *g* and the soft *g* (written *j*).

The Arabic letter ع (*’ain*) does not exist in the speech of the Tuareg; where they use an Arabic word containing this letter, they substitute for it the sound *gh*.

No signs have been used to distinguish between the hard and soft varieties of the letters *d, t* and *z*. The “kef” (Iek) and “qaf” (Iaq) sounds are written *k* and *q*.

PEOPLE OF THE VEIL

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

SAHARA is the name given in modern geography to the whole of the interior of North Africa between the Nile Valley and the Atlantic littoral, south of the Mediterranean coastlands and north of the Equatorial belt. The word “Sahara” is derived from the Arabic, and its meaning refers to a certain type of stony desert in one particular area. There is no native name for the whole of this vast land surface: it is far too large to fall wholly within the cognisance of any one group of its diverse inhabitants. The fact that it is a Moslem area and sharply distinguished from the rest of Africa has made it desirable to find a better name than “Sahara” to include both the interior and the littoral, for even “Sahara,” unsatisfactory as it is, can only be used of the former. “Africa Minor” has been proposed, but the reception accorded to this name has not been so cordial as to warrant its use. The clumsy term “North Africa” must therefore serve in the following pages to describe all the northern part of the continent; specifically it refers to the parts west of the Nile Valley and north of the Sudan.[1] It is an area which is now no longer permanently inhabited by negro races, and which is not covered by the dense vegetation of Equatoria.

To the general public the name Sahara denotes “Desert,” and the latter connotes sand and thirst and camels and picturesque men and veiled women. The Sahara in reality is very different. Its surface and races are varied. Almost every type of physical feature, except permanent glaciation, can be found. The greater part is capable of supporting animal and vegetable life in some degree. Absolute desert where no living thing can exist does not on the whole form a very large proportion of the surface. It has become usual nowadays to differentiate between the cultivated or cultivable areas, the steppe desert and the true desert. The latter alone is devoid of organic life, and is the exception rather than the rule. The mountain groups of the Sahara fall, as an intermediate category, between the cultivated and the desert lands. Generally speaking, animal and vegetable life exist in the valleys, where some tillage is often possible. The density of population, however, is never comparable with that of the cultivated districts, which, except where they fringe the coast, are usually included in the term “oases.”

The mountain groups of the Sahara are numerous and comparatively high. There are summits in the more important massifs exceeding 10,000 feet above the sea. The three most important groups in the Central Sahara are the Tibesti, Air and Ahaggar mountains. In such a generalisation, reference to the Atlas and other mountain masses in Algeria and Morocco may be omitted, since they do not properly speaking belong to the Sahara. The three Saharan massifs are probably of volcanic origin. They have only become known in recent years, and even now have not been fully explored. This is especially the case in regard to Tibesti, an area believed to be orographically connected with

Air by the almost unknown plateau of the Southern Fezzan.

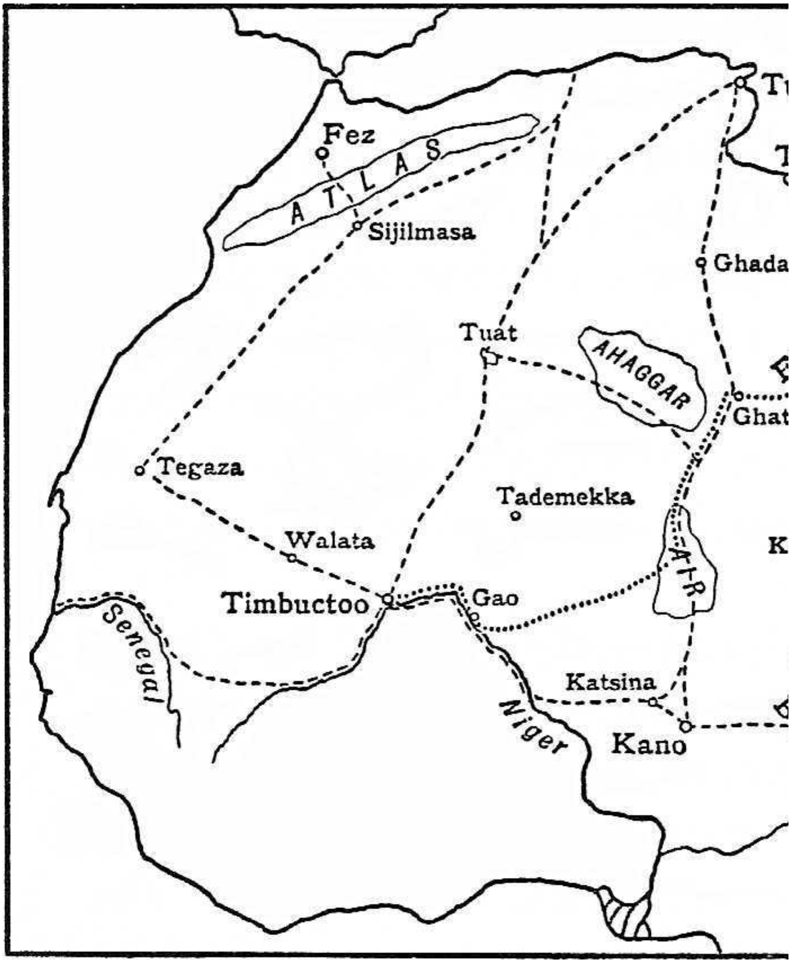
The Central Sahara with these three groups of mountains differs materially from the Eastern Sahara. Although our data for the latter are more limited by lack of knowledge, the structure of the surface immediately west of the Nile Valley appears characteristically to be a series of closed basins. The area is covered with depressions into which insignificant channels flow, and from which there appear to be no outlets. Compared with the river systems of the west, the stream beds are small and ill-defined. One valley of some magnitude, the Bahr Bela Ma which Rohlfs tried to find on his famous journeys in the Libyan desert, has been identified either as a dry channel of the Nile running roughly parallel to it, or alternatively as a valley which starts from N.E. Tibesti and terminates near or in the Wadi Natrun depression just west of the Nile and level with the apex of the Delta. The upper part which drains Tibesti has been called the W. Fardi; elsewhere it is the W. Fareg; the shallow depression crossed by Hassanein Bey on his journey from Jalo to Kufra seems to be part of this system. Examples of closed basins separated from one another by steppe or desert are the oases of Kufra, the Jaghbub-Siwa, Jalo and Lake Chad depressions. In these areas cultivation is frequently intense; salt and fresh water are abundant; and the vegetation sometimes develops luxuriantly into veritable forests of date palms such as exist at Kufra. Between these hollows the intervening Libyan desert is probably the largest and most sterile area of its sort in the world.

The Western Sahara, on the other hand, is essentially an area of well-defined river systems with watersheds and dry beds fashioned on a vast scale. The valleys which extend from the mountains of Ahaggar and the Fezzan to the present River Niger have corresponding channels on the other side of the water-parting running through Southern Algeria or Tunisia towards the Mediterranean. There are good reasons for believing that the original course of the Niger terminated in a swamp or marsh north of Timbuctoo, probably the same collecting basin as that west of Ahaggar into which certain rivers from the Atlas also used to flow. The lower Niger from the eastern side of the great bend where the river now turns south-east and south drained the Central Sahara by a great channel which had its head-waters in Ahaggar and the Fezzan, and ran west of Air.

These Saharan rivers have not contained perennial surface water for long ages. In places they have been covered by more recent sand-dune formations of great extension, but they date from the present geological period. Associated with the desiccation of these valleys is the characteristic of extreme dryness which is one of the few features more or less in accord with popular conceptions of the Sahara. The barrenness of the Sahara is less due to the inherent sterility of the ground than to climatic conditions; desiccation has been intensified in the course of centuries by the purely mechanical processes attendant upon an extremely continental climate and excessively high day temperatures. The latter combined with the extraordinary dryness of the air have contributed to the decay of vegetable, and consequently of animal, life wherever man has not been sufficiently powerful, in numbers or energy, to stay the process. Sterility and desiccation are interacting causes and effects. There is no reason to believe that any sudden change of climate has taken place in the Sahara since the neolithic period, or that it is very much drier now than two thousand years ago. Maximum and minimum temperatures, both average and absolute, have a very wide range seasonally and within the period of twenty-four hours. Temperatures of over 100° F. in the shade are common at all seasons of the year during the day: the thermometer frequently falls to freezing point at night during the winter. Ice is not unknown in the mountains of Tibesti, Air and Ahaggar. The rainfall is irregular except within the belt of summer rains which are so characteristic of Equatorial Africa. In Tibesti the cycle of good rains seems to recur once in thirteen years: in many years both here and elsewhere in the Sahara no rain falls at all. But with these adverse climatic conditions the surprising fact remains, not that the Sahara is so barren, but that it is so relatively well-favoured and capable of supporting different races of people in such comparatively large numbers.[2]

The Air mountains, like the Desert steppes, are only sparsely inhabited. The hill-sides are too wind-swept and rocky to support forests or pastures of any value. Many of the valleys are capable of being cultivated, but in practice are only gardened here and there. In certain districts there are groves of date palms which have been imported from the north. Air is in reality a great Saharan oasis divided from the Equatorial belt by a zone of desert and steppe. It differs from the south in its flora and general conditions, though by its position within the belt of tropical summer rains it belongs climatically to the Sudan.

TRADI


Fez
ATLAS
Sijilmasa
Ghada
Tuat
AHAGGAR
Ghat
Tegaza
Tademekka
Walata
Timbuctoo
Gao
AIR
K
Senegal
Katsina
Kano
Niger

F. R. del.

The oases of the desert, like the Sahara generally, have been the subject of much popular misconception. The origin of the word “oasis,” which has reached us in its present form through the classics, may perhaps be found in ancient Egyptian. It seems to be connected with the name of the Wawat People of the West referred to in the Harris Papyrus,[3] and occurs in the names of Wau el Kebir and Wau el Seghir or el Namus, which are oases in the Eastern Fezzan.[4] The term El Wahat,[5] given to one or several of the oases west of the Nile Valley, contains the same root. An oasis is not necessarily a patch of ground with two or three palm trees and a well in the desert. It is simply an indefinite area of fertility in a barren land; it may or may not happen to have a well. There are oases in Southern Algeria and the Fezzan with hundreds of thousands of palm trees, containing many villages and a permanent population. There are others where the pasture is good but where there is neither population nor water. “Oasis” is a term with no strict denotation, it connotes attributes which render animal life possible.

In this sense Air, as a whole, is an oasis situated on a great caravan road from the Mediterranean to Central Africa. The mountains so lie in respect of the desert to the north and to the south that caravan journeys may be broken in their valleys, and camels can stay to recuperate. The mountains mark a stage on the road, the importance of which it is difficult to over-estimate. In the history of North Africa, the principal routes across the Sahara from the Mediterranean to the Sudan have seemingly not changed at all. Since the earliest times they have followed the shortest tracks from north to south whenever there was sufficient water. If the Nile Valley and the routes in the desert adjacent thereto are left out of account as being *suorum generum*, there are four main caravan roads across North Africa from north to south. The easternmost runs from Cyrenaica by Kufra to Wadai and Tibesti; only within the last century has it been rendered practicable for caravans by the provision of wells along the southern part, which was opened to heavy traffic by the Senussiya sect. The two central routes run respectively from

Tripolitania by the Fezzan, Murzuk and Kawar to Lake Chad, and by Ghadames, Ghat and Air to the Central Sudan. The western route runs from Algeria and Morocco across the desert to Timbuctoo. In addition there is the Moroccan road, which roughly follows the curve of the coast to the Western Sudan and Senegal. Of all these the best known in modern times,[6] and culturally perhaps the most important, has been the Air road. It is noteworthy that all three central routes have been or are within the control of the Tuareg race. As the Tuareg were the caravan drivers of the Central Sahara, so were they also responsible for bringing a certain degree of civilisation from the Mediterranean to Equatorial Africa. That has been their greatest rôle in history.

The object of this book is to describe a part of the Tuareg race, namely, those tribes which live in Air and in the country immediately to the south. It will not be possible to examine in any detail the theories surrounding the origin of the race, but certain definitions are necessary if the succeeding chapters are to be understood. The Berbers of North Africa, among whom are usually included the Tuareg, have very disputed origins; for many reasons it is perhaps best to follow the example of Herodotus and use the geographical term Libyans for them. Less controversy surrounds this name than “Berber,” which implies a number of wholly imaginary anthropological connections. Moreover, it is even open to doubt whether the Tuareg are Berbers at all, like the other people so called in Algeria and Morocco. In all this confusion it will be enough to grasp that the Tuareg are a Libyan people with marked individual peculiarities and that they were in North Africa long before the Arabs came. They have been there ever since the earliest times of which we have any historical record, though in more northern areas than those which they now occupy. The population of the Sahara is very diverse and the affinities of the various elements afford many interesting problems for study; but in the present work we shall be concerned with the one race alone.

The Tuareg country may roughly be described as extending from the eastern edge of the Central Sahara, which is bounded by the Fezzan-Murzuk-Kawar-Lake Chad caravan road, to the far edge of the western deserts of North Africa before the Atlantic zone begins, and from Southern Algeria in the north to the Niger and the Equatorial belt between the river and Lake Chad in the south. The Tuareg are so little known even to-day that their very existence is almost legendary. It is with something of a thrill that the tourist in Tunis or Algiers learns from a mendacious guide that a poor Arab half-caste sitting muffled in a cloak is one of the fabled People of the Veil. It is long, in fact, since any of them have visited the Mediterranean coast, for they do not care for Europeans very much. Before the Italo-Turkish War, occasional Tuareg used to reach the coast at Tripoli at the end of the long caravan road from Central Africa; even then they more usually stopped at Ghadames or Murzuk. With the Italian occupation of Tripolitania in 1913 they became apprehensive of intrusion on their last unconquered area; but despite the Italian failure to occupy and administer the interior they have only lately ventured a certain way north once more on raids or for commerce.

Though the Hornemann, Lyons and the Denham, Oudney and Clapperton expeditions in the first half of the last century touched the fringe of the Tuareg country, the first Europeans in modern times to come into contact with the Azger group in the Fezzan were Richardson in 1847 and Barth with Richardson in 1849 and subsequent years. Barth, more particularly mentioned in the story of the penetration of Air, is in some respects even now the most valuable authority for all the Tuareg except the Ahaggaren. The first detailed work of value dedicated to the latter was that of Duveyrier, *Les Touareg du Nord*, published in 1864 after a journey through the Ahaggar and Azger country and the Fezzan. His systematic study of the ethnology of the Tuareg, his geographical work and his researches into the fauna, flora and ancient history of the lands he visited, were presented to the world in a form which has since been taken in France as the model of what a scientific book should be. Ill health was the tragedy of his life, for it prevented his return, and rendered him, as he remarked in later years, “an arm-chair explorer of the Sahara.” After visiting the Wad Righ and Shott countries in Southern Tunisia, he went to El Golea on the road to Tuat and thence turned towards Ghadames and Tripolitania. He eventually reached Ghat, and returned to the Mediterranean coast by Murzuk and Sokna, taking a more easterly road than Barth’s in 1850. Beurmann in 1862, and Dickson ten years previously, had reached the edge of the same Tuareg country, but what Barth had done for the Tuareg of Air and the south, Duveyrier did for the Ahaggaren and Azger.

In 1881, twenty years after the expedition of Burin to Tuat, the French determined to penetrate the countries of this fabled race. A column under Colonel Flatters, who had already gained a certain reputation in France as a Saharan explorer, marched almost due south from Wargla and Tuggurt in the eastern part of Southern Algeria up the Ighaghar basin and so reached the north-eastern corner of the Ahaggar country. This valley is the drainage system of the north central Sahara towards the Mediterranean; it virtually divides the old Azger country from that of the Ahaggaren. Near the Aghelashem Wells at the intersection of the valley with the Ghat-Insalah road, Flatters turned S.E., intending apparently to follow the Ghat-Air caravan road to the Sudan. This track he proposed joining at or near the wells of Issala, and then to proceed by much the same route as that which Barth and his companions had selected in 1850. But at Bir Gharama in the Tin Tarabin valley, a few days before it was due to reach Issala, disaster overtook the column. The European officers, who assumed that their penetration of the Tuareg country was welcome to the inhabitants, had taken none of the military precautions necessary in hostile country. The vital part of the expedition, the officer commanding and his staff, left camp to reconnoitre a well and became separated from their troops, consisting of about eighty Algerian tirailleurs. The officers were attacked by the Tuareg and killed. After the death of Colonel Flatters and Captain Masson, the remainder of the column under Captain Dianous made an attempt to escape north. After an unsuccessful effort by the Tuareg to destroy the party by selling the men dates poisoned with the Alfalehle plant (*Hyoscyamus Falezlez*),[7] the column reached the Ighaghar once more at the wells of Amjid. But they found the wells occupied by the enemy, and in the ensuing fight Captain Dianous and nearly all his men were killed.

The circumstances of the disaster, so vividly recounted by Duveyrier to the Paris Geographical Society on 22nd April, 1881, had followed the publication of his account of a people whom he had described picturesquely, but with some exaggeration, as the “Knights of the Desert.” The massacre created a profound impression in France. The Tuareg came to be regarded as an insurmountable obstacle to the French penetration of North Africa, and expeditions into their country were discontinued. The disaster of Bir Gharama remained unavenged until 1902, when a detachment of Camel Corps under Lieut. Cottonest met the pick of the Ahaggar Tuareg in battle at Tit within their own mountains and killed 93 men out of 299 present, the French patrol losing only 4 killed and 2 wounded out of 120 native soldiers and Arab scouts. Despite the small numbers involved, the fight at Tit broke the resistance of Ahaggar, for it proved the vanity of matching a few old flintlocks and spears and swords against magazine rifles.[8] But if it demonstrated the futility of overt resistance, it also established for all time the courage of the camel riders of the desert, who hurled themselves against a barrier of rifle fire, unprotected by primeval forest or sheltering jungle, in order to maintain their age-long defiance of the mastery of foreign people.

Considering the magnitude of the results they achieve, Saharan, like Arabian, battles involve surprisingly small numbers. The size of armed bodies moving over the desert is limited by the capacity of the wells; the output of water not only regulates the mass of raiding bands, but also determines their strategy, as well as the routes of trading caravans, which are compelled to move in large bodies in order to ensure even a small measure of protection. Only the realisation of this rather self-evident fact enabled the French in the course of years to deal with raiders in Southern Algeria by organising Camel Corps patrols of relatively small size and great mobility. The privations which these raiders are willing to endure made it impossible to fight them with a European establishment.

The necessity of imitating the nomad in his mode of life and warfare became obvious to Laperrine from his first sojourn in Southern Algeria, where he made his career as the greatest European desert leader in history with one solitary exception. The encounter of Tit was followed by a number of “Tournées d’Apprivoisement,” patrols to “tame” the desert folk, initiated by Laperrine, and culminating in 1904 in a protracted reconnaissance through Ahaggar, which brought about a final pacification. Charles de Foucauld, soldier, traveller and monk, had accompanied the patrol. He remained on after it was over as a hermit and student among the Ahaggaren until his death in 1916. He had been Laperrine’s brother officer at St. Cyr. Extravagant, reckless and endowed with all the good things of the world, a member of the old French aristocracy in a smart cavalry regiment, the Marquis de Foucauld is one of the most picturesque figures of modern times. After a memorable reconnaissance of Morocco in 1883-4, disguised as a Jew, he became a Trappist monk, and eventually entered a retreat at Beni Abbes, in the desert that he loved too well to leave in all his life. During his years in Ahaggar as a teacher of the Word of God he made no converts to Christianity, but sought by his example alone to lead the people along the way of Truth. It is to be hoped that, in spite of a modesty which precluded it during his lifetime, the knowledge and lore of the Tuareg which he collected in the form of notes will eventually be given to the world in order to supplement his dictionary of the Ahaggar dialect, to-day the standard work on their language, which is called Temajegh.[9]

To implement the Laperrine policy of long reconnaissances, a post was built near Tamanghasset in Ahaggar called Fort Motylinski, after an officer interpreter who was one of the first practical students of Temajegh. Lately the post has been moved to Tamanghasset itself, where Father de Foucauld had built his hermitage, and it is now called Fort Laperrine, in memory of the great soldier who was killed flying across the desert to Timbuctoo in 1919.

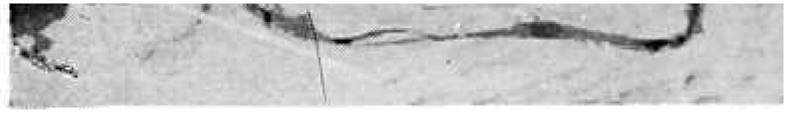
Another post was built at Janet not far from Ghat, to watch the Azger Tuareg. Its capture during the late war by the Arabs and Tuareg of Ghat, and the killing of Father de Foucauld by a raiding party from the Fezzan, are incidents in that same series of intrigues which were instigated in North Africa by the Central Empires and carried on with such success in the Western Desert of Egypt, Cyrenaica, Tripolitania, Southern Algeria and as far afield as Air. If the Senussi leaders have not been responsible for as many intrigues as it has been the fashion to ascribe to this puritanical and perhaps fanatical sect, the Germans at least discovered what others are still learning, that the latent force of nationalism in North Africa among the ancient Libyan and Arab-Libyan peoples is powerful still to-day. The spirit of the Circumcelliones and of the opponents of Islam in the eighth century was exploited by the Turks and Germans through the Senussiya, which provided the only organisation available during the Great War, though in fact only few Tuareg and Arabs at Ghat or in the Fezzan were members of, or even friendly to, the sect. These people used the opportunity afforded by the war to procure arms and material through the Senussiya for the consummation of their own ambitions. The new spirit which is abroad in Islam, in Africa as well as in Asia, is an interesting subject of study for the practical politician. There is no occasion to enlarge upon it here.

In consequence of these agitations, a raid came out of the east and fell upon Father de Foucauld’s hermitage on the 1st December, 1916. The hermit was killed, but the raiders were not of the Ahaggaren among whom he had lived, and to whom he had devoted his life; they came from Ghat and the Fezzan. They probably started without intent to murder, but because Charles de Foucauld was the greatest European influence in the desert at that time, they desired to remove him and perhaps to hold him as a hostage. In justice it must be admitted that no one had any illusions regarding the political views of the people of the Fezzan; they were in a state of open warfare with the French posts in Southern Algeria. De Foucauld had played a very great part against them in preventing the Ahaggaren rising *en masse* against the French; he was an important intelligence centre for the neighbouring Fort Motilynski; he was apparently, well provided with rifles in his hermitage. When surprised by the raid, he disdained to fight, preferring to fall a martyr to his religion and his country. My excuse, if any is needed, for touching on a subject tending to be controversial is the appearance of a number of misstatements concerning the barbarity of his murder and the treachery of the people to whom Father de Foucauld had devoted the latter part of his life. It is well to remember, in the first place, that the circumstances of his life and his prestige made the attack a justifiable act of war, for he played a definitely political rôle; secondly, that there was no treachery or betrayal; and lastly, that his aggressors were a mixed band of Arabs and of Tuareg from another part of the Sahara which had, for generations past, been on terms of raid and counter-raid with the people of Ahaggar.

When all has been said of the European penetration of the Tuareg country, it is not very much. The world outside the society of those white men who, during the last fifty years, have spent their lives in the Sahara, can know but little of this race or of their country. The modern literature on the subject is small, even in French; in English it is almost non-existent. On the Tuareg of Air there are only two works of any value: the one by a French officer is recent in date and sadly superficial;[10] the other is incorporated in H. Barth's account of the British expedition of 1849 and subsequent years to Central Africa.[11] There are a few other works in French about the Tuareg of the north and south-west, but I am not aware that anyone has attempted a general study of the whole people, who have been rather neglected by science. The principal object of this volume will have been achieved if it in any measure fills a want in English records or if it arouses sufficient controversy to induce others to undertake a thorough investigation of the race.

The Tuareg are not a tribe but a people. The name "Tuareg" is not their own: it is a term of opprobrium applied to them by their enemies, and connotes certain peculiarities possessed by a number of tribal confederations which have no common name for themselves as a race. The men of this people, after reaching a certain age, wear a strip of thin cloth wound around their heads in such a manner as to form a hood over the eyes and a covering over the mouth and nostrils. Only a narrow slit is left open for the eyes, and no other part of the face is visible. From this practice they became known to the Arabs as the “Muleththemin” or “Veiled People,”[12] while they themselves, in default of a national name, are in the habit of using the same locution in their own tongue to describe the whole society of different castes which compose their community. Whatever the social position of the men, the Veil is invariably worn by day and by night,[13] while the women go unveiled. Few races are more rigidly observant of social distinction between noble and servile tribes; none holds to a tradition of dress with more ritual conservatism.

PLATE 2



The larger divisions of Tuareg have names by which they are known to themselves and to their neighbours: these names designate the historical or geographical groupings of tribes. In each group of tribes the existence of nobles and serfs is recognised; there are appropriate terms to describe these social distinctions. The nobles are called Imajeghan;[14] the servile people, Imghad. But no name other than Kel Tagilmus,[15] the “People of the Veil,” exists to describe the society of nobles and serfs alike, irrespective of group or caste. These details will require fuller examination in due course, but it is important to realise immediately that the name Tuareg[16] is unknown in their own language and is only used of them by Arabs and other foreigners. It has, however, been so universally adopted by everyone who has had to do with them or who has written of them that, although not strictly accurate, it would be pedantic not to continue using it. The Tuareg all speak the same language, called Temajegh, which varies only dialectically from group to group. They have a peculiar form of script, known as T’ifinagh, which also is practically identical in all the divisions of the Tuareg, but is apparently not used by other peoples. Lastly, the Tuareg are nomads by instinct and, save where much intermarriage has taken place, of the same racial type. The conquest of foreign elements in war and their assimilation into servile tribes have, in the course of time, led to some modification of physique and a growth of sedentarism in certain areas. As a whole, however, the nation has survived in a fairly pure state which is readily distinguishable. There is, I think, no justification for considering the People of the Veil a large tribal group of Berbers in North Africa; they are a separate race with marked peculiarities, distinct from other sections of the latter, and, as I believe, of a different origin.

They formerly extended further west almost to the sea-board of the Atlantic; their northern and eastern extension can also be deduced from what is known of their migrations. Their neighbours to the south are the negroid Kanuri, Hausa-speaking peoples,[17] and the Fulani; to the east are the Tebu, and in the west the Arab and Moorish tribes; finally, in the north the nomadic and sedentary Arabs and sedentary Libyans of Algeria, Tunisia and Tripolitania. The N.E. corner of Tuareg territory, the Fezzan, is ethnically of such mixed population as to admit of no summary classification; Arab, Libyan, Tebu and negroid peoples are all inextricably mingled together. The Tuareg wander as nomads over the country generally, the negroes and sedentary Libyans till the ground, and, in addition to a proportion of all those already enumerated, the towns are inhabited by yet another people of noble origin, whose connection with the ancient Garamantes of classical authors may be assumed if it cannot be proved. With the exception of the Fezzan the Tuareg are now predominant within their own country. It includes two great groups of mountains, Air and Ahaggar, together with certain smaller adjacent massifs.

It is unfortunately not possible to deal with Air in history nor with the Tuareg of Air, by considering the mountains and their inhabitants alone. The migrations of the Tuareg of Air have been so intimately connected with that part of the Sudan which we now call Nigeria that the northern fringe of the area and the country intervening between it and Air must receive attention. This intervening steppe and desert, largely overrun by Tuareg, lie on the way which I followed to reach the mountains. The neglect to which these areas have been subjected justifies me in devoting a chapter to them before coming to Air itself. Again, the concluding chapters of this volume will deal as much with the Southland as they do with Air, for the history of the latter cannot be divorced from that of the former.

Since mention will be continually made of the various Tuareg groups as they exist to-day, and of the tribes which they contain, it will be as well to explain that there are to-day four principal divisions of the people, all of whom possess characteristics common and peculiar to the whole race.

The main groups are:—

1. The People of Ahaggar, called Ahaggaren, or Kel Ahaggar.
2. The Azjer, or Azger Tuareg; this name is also spelt Askar, Adjeur, etc.
3. The People of Air called the Kel Air, or, in the Hausa language which is current in that country, Asbenawa or Absenawa, from Asben, Azbin or Absen, the Sudanese name for Air.
4. The Tuareg of the south-west.

The first group is held for convenience to include the Tuareg in the Ahnet mountains, the Taitoq, and those north-west of the Ahaggar mountains. The second group is comparatively compact. The third group is the one with which this volume deals in detail, and includes the Kel Geres and other Tuareg generally of the Southland, in and on the fringes of Nigeria. The fourth group should more properly be divided, as it comprises the distinct aggregations of the Aulimmiden, the Ifoghas of the Mountain (Ifoghas n'Adghar),[18] and the Tuareg of Timbuctoo and the Niger.

The country of the Ahaggaren proper is confined to the Ahaggar massif, but there are certain outlying districts to the north and north-west. The confused mass of hills east of Ahaggar towards the Fezzan was, at the beginning of the century, essentially the country of the Azger. In recent years they have tended to move eastwards towards their original homes and away from the influence of the French military posts. The majority of this group now ranges over the country between Ghat and Murzuk. They are the Tuareg who have come least into contact with Europeans. Although there is considerable affinity between them and the Ahaggaren, the Tuareg generally recognise that the Azger do not belong to, or are under the rule of, the Ahaggar chieftains despite the fact that they are all collectively known in Air as Ahaggaren. Those travellers who have known them are at one in considering them to-day an independent division. From the historical point of view the Azger are the most important of all the Tuareg, since from this group, reduced in numbers as it now is, most of the migrations of the race to the Southlands seem to have taken place. They are also probably to-day the purest of the Tuareg stock in existence.

The first description of Air and its people in any detail was brought back to Europe by Barth after his memorable journey from the Mediterranean to the Sudan, on which he set out in 1849 with Richardson and Overweg, but from which he alone returned alive more than five years later. Prior to this journey there are certain references in Ibn Batutah and Leo Africanus, but they do not give us much information either of the country or of the people. From Ibn Batutah's description, the country he traversed is recognisable, but the information is meagre. The account of Leo Africanus written in the sixteenth century is little better. His principal contribution, in the English and original Italian versions, is a bad pun: "Likewise Hair (Air), albeit a desert, yet so called for the goodness and temperature of the aire. . . ."[19] It is an observation, in fact, of great truth, but hardly more useful than his other statement, which records that the "soyle aboundeth with all kinds of herbes," in apparent contradiction with the previous remark. He adds that "a great store of manna" is found not far from Agades which the people "gather in certaine little vessels, carrying it, when it is new, into the market of the town to be mingled with water as a refreshing drink"—an allusion probably to the "pura" or "ghussub" water made of millet meal, water and milk or cheese. He states that the country is inhabited by the "Targa" people, and as he mentions Agades, it had evidently by then been founded, but beyond these facts his description is wholly inadequate. He unfortunately even forgets to mention that Air is mountainous.

Although the European penetration of the Western Sahara may date from the Middle Ages, the same cannot be said of Air. Caillé in 1828 was, in fact, not the first European to visit and describe Timbuctoo, nor was Rohlfs in 1864 the first European in Tuat. There are some very interesting earlier accounts which are gradually being unearthed[20] dealing with these countries. It is regrettable that there are apparently no similar accounts of Air.[21] The first information of any value is found only in comparatively recent times. Hornemann[22] in 1798 travelled from Egypt along the Haj Road which runs from Timbuctoo to Cairo. He turned back at Murzuk, but had he continued he would have come to Ghat and eventually to Air. He nevertheless brought back the first modern account of the Tuareg of this country, or rather of a section of them, the Kel Owi, whom he calls the Kolouvey. His information about the Ahaggaren and about the divisions of the Tebu, who lived east and north-east beyond the limits of the country which they now occupy, is worth examining in connection with their ethnological history. After Hornemann's journey Denham, Oudney and Clapperton[23] collected some further details about Air and its people in the course of an expedition to Chad and Nigeria at the beginning of the last century, and in 1845 Richardson began a systematic study of the Azger and Air Tuareg during a preliminary journey to the Fezzan. But none of these travellers had the first-hand personal experience which, five years afterwards, Barth, Richardson and Overweg obtained on their expedition.

The part played by Great Britain in the exploration of the Central Sahara, testified to by the graves of many Englishmen or foreigners in the service of the British Crown, is little known in this country. Our efforts to abolish the slave trade in Africa and our paramount position in Tripolitania early in the last century led to that initiative being taken, to which the world even to-day owes most of its knowledge of the Fezzan, and which opened the Sudan to commerce and colonisation. While Richardson was apparently the first and only Englishman to visit Air until my travelling companion, Angus Buchanan, went there from Nigeria in 1919, the graves of explorers in neighbouring lands show that we stand second to none in geographical work in the Central Sahara. It was only when, in the partition of North Africa, this vast area fell to the French, that there was any falling off in the numbers of Englishmen who in each successive decade travelled and died there. Their work deserves to be better known: Henry Warrington died of dysentery at the desert well of Dibbela, south of Bilma in Kawar, on his way to Lake Chad with a German, Dr. Vogel. Dr. Oudney died on 5th January, 1824, at Murmur near Hadeija (Northern Nigeria), after accompanying Clapperton and Denham from Tripoli by way of Bilma and Chad to explore Bornu. Tyrwhit, who went out to join them, died at Kuka on Lake Chad, on 22nd October, 1824. Barth's companion Richardson died in the early part of 1851 at N'Gurutawa in Manga, S. of Zinder, and their companion Overweg succumbed near Lake Chad. Both Barth and Overweg were Germans who had volunteered and were appointed to serve on an expedition sent by Her Majesty's Government to explore Central Africa and to report on the abolition of the slave trade. Dr. Vogel, another German, who had been sent by Her Majesty's Government to join Barth and complete his work, died near Lake Chad after his return, while an assistant, Corporal MacGuire, was killed on his way home at Beduaram, N. of Bilma, in the same year. Of those who had opened the way for the Clapperton expeditions, Ritchie had died of disease in 1819 at Murzuk and Lyon had been obliged to turn back before reaching Bornu. Clapperton himself on a second journey lost his life at Sokoto on 13th April, 1827. North Africa has claimed her British victims no less than the swamps and jungles of Equatoria, only they are not so well known, for they never sought to advertise their achievements.

Few people in this country or abroad realise how great was the influence of Great Britain in the Sahara during the lifetime and after the death of that remarkable man, Colonel Hamer Warrington, H.M. Consul at Tripoli from 1814 to 1846. Apart from the fact that he virtually governed Tripoli, our influence and interests may be gauged by the existence of Vice-Consulates and Consulates, not only along the coast at Khoms and Misurata, but far in the interior at Ghadames and Murzuk. The peregrinations of numerous travellers and efforts to suppress the African slave trade had obliged Her Majesty's Government to play a part in local tribal politics, for it had early become clear that if this abominable traffic was to be abolished the sources of supply would have to be controlled, since it proved useless only to make representations on the coast where caravans discharged their human cargo. At one moment it even seemed as if Tripolitania would be added to the British Empire, and as lately as 1870 travellers were still talking of the French and British factions among the Fezzanian tribes. But Free Trade and other political controversies in England half-way through the century brought about a pause, and the arrest was enough to withdraw public interest from North Africa and to give France her chance. The controversies were the object of much bitter criticism by the idealist Richardson, who saw political dialectics obscuring a crusade on behalf of humanity for which he was destined to give his life. He seems to have been profoundly affected and to have suffered himself to become warped, as Barth on more than one occasion discovered.[24] The inevitable consequence of a British occupation of Tripolitania would have been the active penetration of the Air and Chad roads and a junction with the explorers and merchants who were working north from the Bight of Benin. But French interest in North Africa as a consequence of their occupation of Algeria grew progressively stronger as it declined in this country, while to the same waning appetite must be ascribed the fact that for seventy years no Englishman visited Air. Regrettable as this may appear to geographers, it is even more tragic to realise how few have heard of the German, Dr. Heinrich Barth, than whom it may be said there never has been a more courageous or meticulously accurate explorer. After several notable journeys further north he accompanied Richardson as a volunteer, and on the latter's death continued the exploration of Africa for another four years on behalf of Her Majesty's Government, which he most loyally served. If in this volume he is repeatedly mentioned, it is without misgiving or apology; it may help in some little measure to rescue his name from unmerited oblivion in these days of sensational and superficial books of travel. The account of his journey and of the lore and history of the countries of Central Africa which he visited from Timbuctoo to Lake Chad is still a standard work.

Barth and his companions entered Air in August 1850, and left the country for the south in the closing days of the same year. Reaching Asiu from Ghat, they traversed the northern mountains of Air, which are known to the Tuareg as Fadé.[25] After passing by the wells in the T'iyut valley and the "agilman" (pool) of Taghazit, they camped eight days later on the northern outskirts of Air proper. During this period their caravan was subjected to constant threats of brigandage from parties of northern Tuareg, and on the day before reaching the first permanent habitations of Air in the Ighazar near Seliufet village, they again narrowly escaped aggression from the local inhabitants. An attack was eventually made on them at T'intaghoda, a little further on, and they only just escaped with their lives after losing a good deal of property. The same experience was repeated near T'intellust, where the expedition had established its head-quarters in the great valley which drains the N.E. side of the Air mountains. When, however, they had once made friends with that remarkable personality, Annur, chief of the Kel Owi tribal confederation, and paramount chief of Air, they were free from further molestation, and thanks to him eventually they reached the Sudan in safety. From T'intellust Barth made a journey alone to Agades by a road running west of the central Bagezan mountains. After his return the whole party moved to the Southland along the great Tripoli-Sudan trade route which passes east of the Central massifs. Crossing the southern part of Air known as Tegama they entered Damergu, which geographically belongs to the Sudan, about New Year's Day, 1851. In the course of his stay in Air Barth made the first sketch map of the country, catalogued the principal tribes and compiled a summary of their history which is still the most valuable contribution which we possess on the subject.

Some twenty-seven years later, another German, Erwin von Bary, reached Air from the north by much the same road as that which Barth and his companions had followed. He left Ghat in January 1897 and reached the villages of Northern Air a month later. Thence he journeyed to the village of Ajiru, a village on the eastern slopes of the central mountains, and awaited the return from a raid of Belkho, the chieftain who had succeeded Barth's friend Annur as paramount lord of the country. The unfortunate von Bary was subjected to every form of extortion, and though Belkho, when he returned, compelled his people to restore what they had stolen, the chief himself made life unpleasant for the traveller by taking all his presents and doing nothing for him in return so long as he showed any desire to proceed on his journey southwards. Belkho pleaded such poverty that the explorer nearly died of starvation, but von Bary admittedly had laid himself open to every form of abuse. He had arrived almost penniless, did not understand the courtesies of desert travelling, and seems to have placed undue reliance on his skill as a doctor to achieve his objects. But when he eventually gave up the idea of going on to the Sudan, Belkho treated him well. Although von Bary's opinion of the Tuareg of Air is not favourable, in reality he owed them a great debt of gratitude. No other people who dislike foreigners so much as they do would have protected him and helped him as they finally did. His quarrels with Belkho seem to have been in part due to his own tactlessness and discourtesy, and in part to his inability to realise that the chief, for political reasons, did not desire him to go to the Sudan. Von Bary returned to Ghat, meaning to try once more to reach Nigeria as soon as he had picked up his stores and some more money, but his diary ends abruptly with the remark that he would be ready to start south again from there in fifteen to twenty days. He died within twenty-four hours of reaching Ghat, on 3rd October, 1877. He had spent a cheerful evening with Kaimakam,[26] and had gone to bed; at 6 a.m. he was breathing peacefully asleep; by ten o'clock he was dead. His death does not seem to have been quite natural. It remains one of the mysteries of the Sahara. Von Bary’s account of Air[27] is very incomplete and his observations are coloured by the hardships which he suffered. With the exception of certain botanical information and notes on one or two ethnological points, his descriptions contain little that had not already been made known by Barth.

Then began that competition among European Powers for African colonies which was soon to reach a critical stage. The Anglo-German Convention of 1890 had proposed to divide Africa finally, but before that date the French had seen one desirable part after the other fall to our lot. They determined before it was too late to take as much as possible of what still remained unallocated. Central Africa, east of Lake Chad, certain tracts of indifferent country on the western coast and the greater part of the Sahara were still unclaimed by any European Power. And so it was that in France the magnificent scheme was conceived of sending three columns from north, west and south to converge on Lake Chad, and formally to take possession of the lands through which they passed in accordance with the stipulations of the Congress of Berlin, where it had been laid down that territorial claims were only valid if substantiated by effective occupation. It was not till 1899, however, that the French plans reached maturity. Three expeditions duly set out from the Congo, the Western Sudan and Algeria to cross Africa and meet on Lake Chad. Their adventures constitute one of the most romantic chapters in Colonial history. The western column, at first under Captain Voulet, who was accompanied by Lieut. Chanoine and others, marched from the Niger along the northern edge of the Nigerian Emirates. Mutiny and murder among the European personnel were experienced. French politics at home, where the Jewish question had become acute, were responsible for all manner of delays; the command changed hands repeatedly. But the northern column and the Congo party were equally delayed; not until a year after the date fixed for the rendezvous on the lake did the three expeditions meet. The military escorts were united under Commandant Lamy, and gave battle to the forces of Rabah, one of the Khalif’s generals, who had crossed half Africa to carve out for himself a kingdom in Bornu and Bagirmi after the *débâcle* of the Mahdia on the Upper Nile. Lamy defeated him and annexed French Equatorial Africa.

Of these three expeditions, the northern column, known as the Foureau-Lamy Mission, had passed through Air on its way south. The Europeans who accompanied it were in 1899 the first Frenchmen to enter the country and to carry out the plan originally contemplated by Flatters in 1881. The annexation of Air by France may be counted from this date.

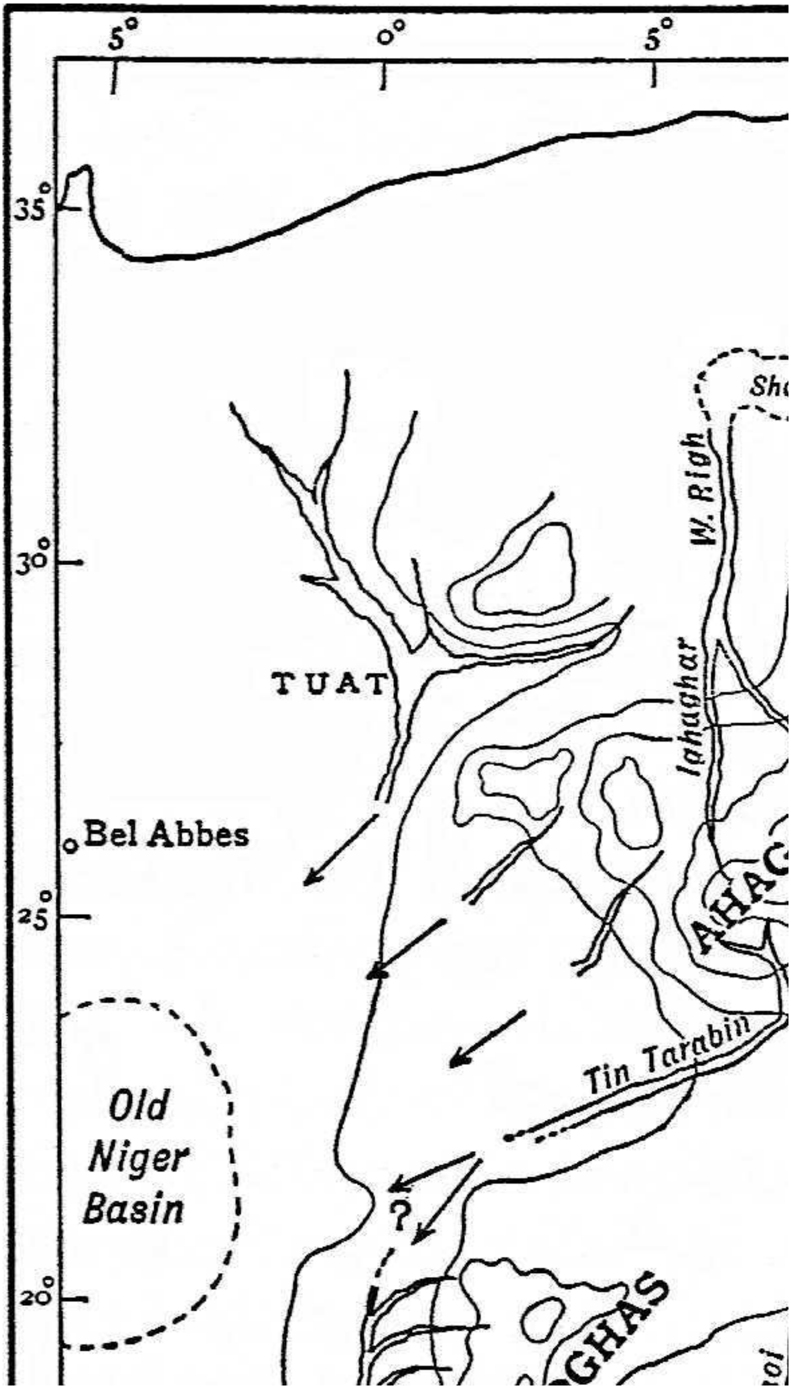
The Foureau-Lamy Mission[28] entered the borders of Air from Algeria at the wells of In Azawa; their heavy losses in camels obliged them to abandon large quantities of material, but they eventually reached Iferuan in the Ighazar, not far from T’intaghoda. Here the camp of the expedition was attacked in force by the Tuareg, who were only driven off with great difficulty. The situation was critical. The whole country was hostile to the French; they were so short of camels that on the stage south of Iferuan to Agellal they had to move their baggage in small lots, marching their transport forwards and backwards. Their destiny hung in the balance when friendly overtures were made to them near Auderas by a Tuareg of considerable note, Ahodu of the Kel Tadek tribe, whose fathers and forefathers for five generations had been keepers of the mosque of Tefgun near Iferuan. Ahodu’s political sense has rarely been at fault, either then or since; he saw that the only end possible for his people from protracted hostilities with the Europeans was disaster. He promised the French peace while the column remained in Air. It reached Agades in safety, and the Sultan was obliged to hoist the French flag and provide transport animals and guides. No attack was made near the town, thanks to the efficacy of Ahodu’s presence, but his powers of persuasion were insufficient when the column marched out into the barren area further south. The guide purposely misled the expedition and it nearly perished of thirst, succeeding only with great difficulty in returning to Agades. It eventually started once more and reached the south, where its story ceases to concern the exploration of Air.

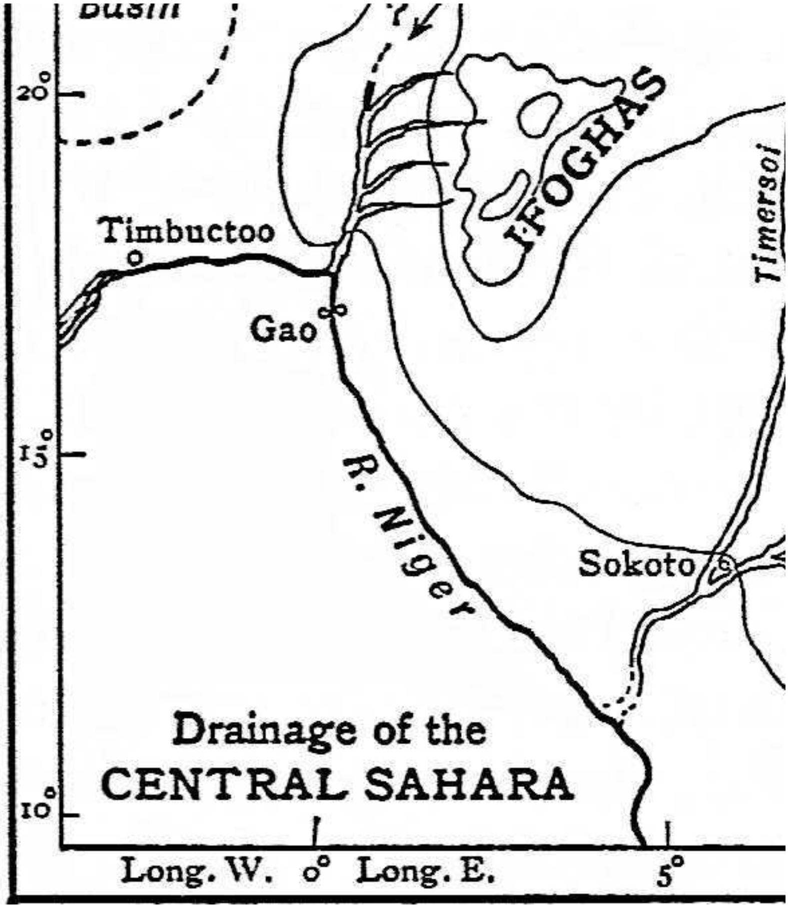
Since 1899, then, the fate of Air has been settled in so far as Europe was concerned, for it was recognised as lying within the French sphere; but the country was not effectually occupied until 1904, when a camel patrol under Lieut. C. Jean established a post at Agades. The post was evacuated for a short time and then reoccupied. The exploration of the mountains has proceeded slowly since that date. Sketch maps were gradually compiled in the course of camel corps patrols, and in 1910 the Cortier geographical mission published a very creditable map of the mountains,[29] other than the northern Fadé group, based on thirty-three astronomically determined co-ordinates supplementing the five secured by the Foureau-Lamy Mission. Chudeau in 1905 made a brief geological survey and published some notes on the flora, which remain uncatalogued to this day;[30] very complete collections of the fauna have been made by Buchanan[31] and examined in England by the British Museum (South Kensington) and by Lord Rothschild's museum at Tring. The ethnology of the country is very superficially discussed in a book published by Jean; Barth's account remains the one of value. The complete exploration of the mountains and detailed mapping still remain to be done as well as other scientific work of every description.

"Air" as a geographical term for the mountainous plateau does not signify exactly the same thing to the inhabitants of the country themselves as it does to us; properly speaking, it is applied by them only to one part of the plateau, for the whole of which the more usual name of Asben or Absen is used. The latter is probably the original name given to the area by the people of the Sudan before the advent of the Tuareg. It is now very generally used even by them: it is universal further south. Barth has speculated at some length upon the origin of the name Air or Ahir, to take its Arabic form, and concluded that the letter "h" had been deliberately added out of modesty to guard against the word acquiring a copronymous signification. But early Arabic geographers give the form as Akir and not as Ahir, so the laborious explanation of the learned traveller is probably unnecessary.

The boundaries of Air may be defined either as running along the line where the rocks of the area dip below the sands of the desert, or as following certain well-marked basins and watercourses of material size, where disintegrated rock or alluvium has covered the lower slopes of the hills. The mountainous area is some 300 miles long by 200 miles broad. It lies wholly within the tropics and is surrounded by desert or by arid steppe. Owing to the general elevation of the country the climate is quite pleasant.

Drainage of the
CENTRAL SAHARA


5°
0°
5°
35°
30°
25°
20°
Sh
W. Righ
Ighaghar
TUAT
Bel Abbes
AHAG
Tin Tarabin
Old
Niger
Basin
?
GHAS


Basin
20°
Timbuctoo
Gao
IFOGHAS
Timersoi
15°
R. Niger
Sokoto
Drainage of the
CENTRAL SAHARA
10°
Long. W. 0° Long. E.
5°

F. R. del.

In remote ages the rainfall of the Central Sahara was sufficient to create the deep and important river beds which compose the hydrographic system of this part of North Africa. Among these watercourses is one of great size, flowing from the Ahaggar massif towards Algeria, called the Ighaghar. Duveyrier has tried to prove that it was the Niger of Pliny, largely on the grounds that the root “Ig” or “Igh” occurs in both words and in Temajegh means “to run.” The effect of this identification, which is hard to accept, would be to make the classical ethnology of the Sahara less easy to follow, but it has little significance in considering Air, except in so far as it would tend to show that the geographical knowledge of the Romans did not extend as far south as the plateau. Complementary to the Ighaghar but flowing south from the Ahaggar massif is another equally great river,[32] which early in its course is joined by a large tributary from the Western Fezzan. At a certain point this valley is crossed by the roads from Air to Ahaggar and Ghat, branching respectively at the wells of In Azawa or Asiu. The eastern branch is the caravan road to Ghat from the Sudan, the western one finds its way to In Salah in Tuat and to Algeria. This bed runs south and south-west towards the Niger, which it must have reached at some point between Gao and Timbuctoo in the neighbourhood of the N.E. corner of the Great Bend which the French call “La Boucle du Niger.” This river of remote times must have been one of the great watercourses of Africa, extending from the head-waters in 26° N. Lat. to its mouth in the Bight of Benin on the Equator. It is not possible to say whether the interesting terrestrial changes which diverted the Upper Niger at the lagoons above Timbuctoo into the present Lower Niger, and which brought about the desiccation of the upper reaches, took place suddenly or gradually, but the latter is more probable, for a similar diversion seems to be going on in the Chad area. The lake, in reality an immense marsh and lagoon, is much smaller than when it perhaps included the depression noted by Tilho as extending most of the way to Tibesti; some of the waters of the Chad feeders are already believed to be finding their way in flood-time into the Benue, and it is possible that in the course of time a similar process to that manifested in the Niger area will take place; then Lake Chad will dry up into salt-pans like those at Taodenit. The Saharan river, which flows southward to the west of Air, bears various names. Its course has never been accurately determined, but its general direction is known. From Ahaggar to a point level with the northernmost parts of Air it is called Tafassasset. The T’in Tarabin channel from Ahaggar more probably drained into the Belly of the Desert than into this system, but the Alfalehle (Wadi Falezlez) from the Western Fezzan most certainly seems to be a tributary; there are various reasons why it ought not to flow towards Kawar, as used at one time to be thought. West of Air the main bed spreads out into a vast plain-like basin under the name of T’immersoi; further south it is called Azawak. In general I prefer to use the name T’immersoi for the whole until a better one is suggested.[33]

The T’immersoi forms a collector in the west of Air for nearly all the water from this group of mountains. Nowadays only a comparatively small amount ever reaches the basin, as much is absorbed by the intervening plain land of Talak[34] and the Assawas swamp west of Agades. The latter are local basins or sumps covered with dense vegetation where some of the most nomadic tribes in Air pasture their herds. Talak is visited by Tuareg from Ahaggar and from the west for the same purpose. It plays an important part in the economy of the country, for water is always to be found in the alluvial soil however dry the season in the mountains has been. Many of the wells have now fallen into disuse, but the output of those which remain is still plentiful. The last rocks of Air on the west disappear below the alluvium of T’immersoi and in the subsidiary basins of Talak and Assawas. The T’immersoi system therefore forms the western boundary of Air.

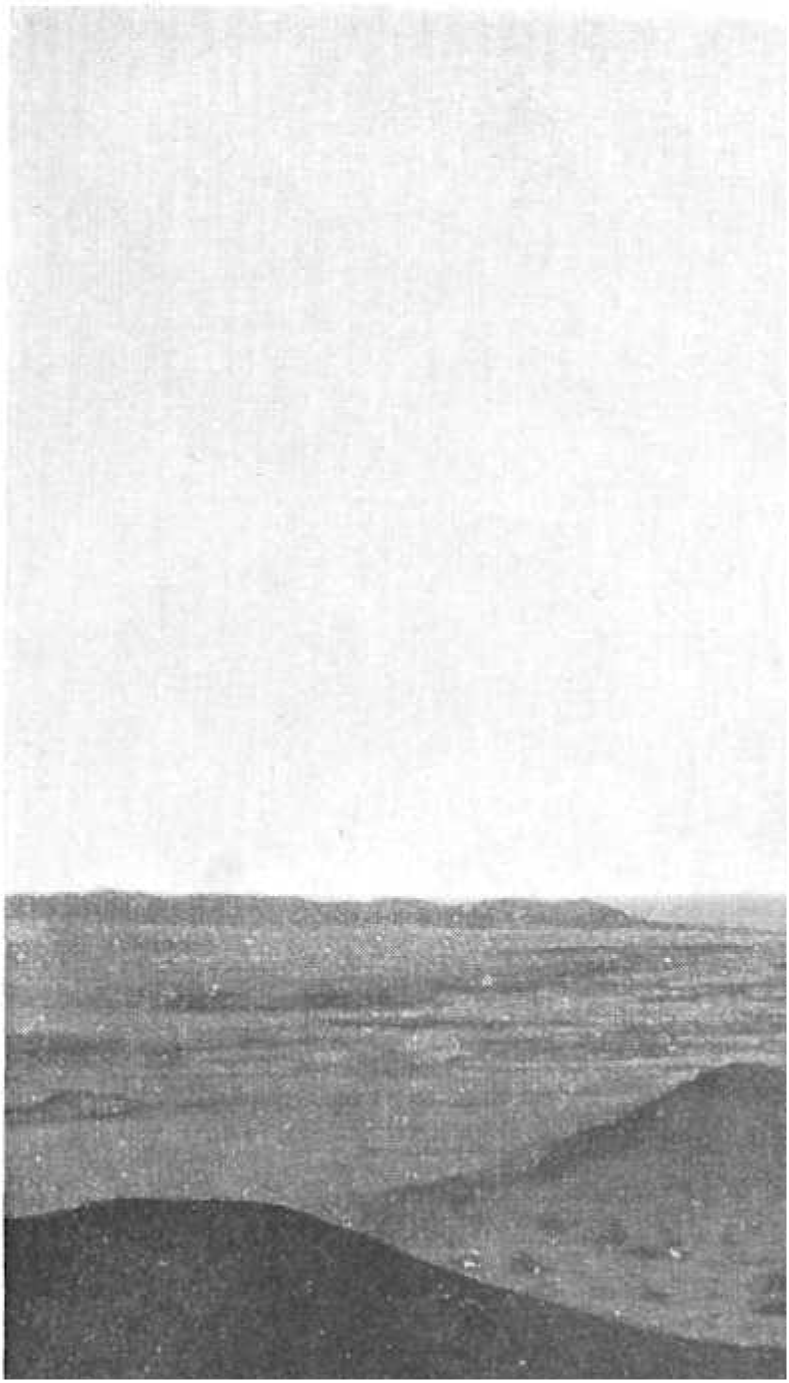
The upper part of the T'immersoi, where it is called the Tafassasset, is also the northern boundary of Air. The wells of In Azawa[35] and Asiu in this valley may be regarded as the point where the main roads from the north enter the extreme limits of the country. Further east on another road between Air and Ghat, von Bary fixed the boundary at the Wadi Immidir, which is in the same latitude as In Azawa.[36]

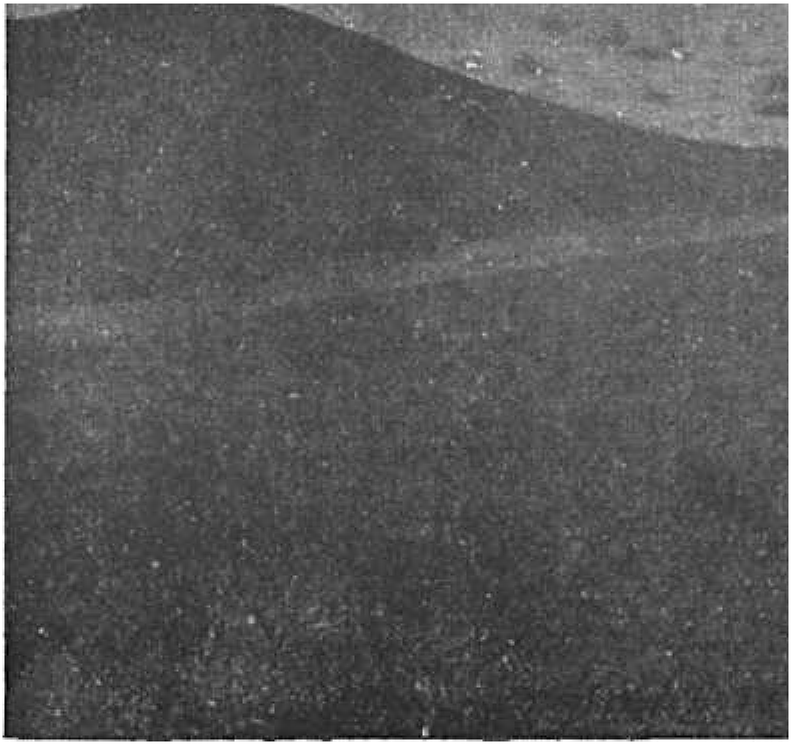
The eastern boundary of Air runs along the line where the last rocks of the group disappear below the sand of the steppe and desert, which extends from north to south between the mountains of the Fezzan and the fringe of Equatorial Africa, and from west to east between the mountains of Air and those of Tibesti with its adjacent massifs. This vast area is crossed by a few roads only, the most important ones being (*a*) the road from Murzuk along the Kawar depression to Agadem and Lake Chad, (*b*) and (*c*), the two principal tracks from Air eastwards to Bilma by Ashegur and Fashi respectively, and (*d*) the road from Zinder by Termit to Fashi and Kawar. Watering-points are very few, and the habitable oases can be numbered on the fingers of two hands; pasturage is everywhere scarce. This great waste is one of the most unknown parts of North Africa; its eastern portion along the Tibesti mountains as far north as the Fezzan may be said to be absolutely unknown except for two tracks to the mountains whither occasional camel patrols have passed.

Kawar and the other oases along the Chad road appear to be closed basins of the Eastern Saharan type. They seem to have no outlet towards the south either into the Chad or into the Niger systems. The desert east of Air, therefore, contains the eastern watershed of the T'immersoi basin, for the valleys of Eastern Air do not run into the desert as Chudeau has suggested,[37] but turn southwards on leaving the hills, in ill-defined depressions or folds which join the Tagedufat valley or one of the other channels flowing westwards in Tegama or Damergu. One valley to the south of Air, probably the Tagedufat itself, is stated to run all the way from Fashi across the desert.

The southern limits of Air may be placed along the Tagedufat basin, where the rocks of Air disappear below the sand dunes and downs of Tegama and Azawagh steppe desert. The valley is of some size and flows roughly N.E. and S.W. towards T'immersoi, but whether it actually joins this system or the Gulbi n'Kaba, which finds its way into Sokoto Emirate under the name of the Gulbi n'Maradi and thence into the Niger, is not certain. The former hypothesis seems more probable, but I was unable to follow the Tagedufat sufficiently far west to verify it, nor could I discover any data on the French maps;[38] local reports substantiate my supposition. Both systems in any case are in the Niger basin. Air is not on the watershed between Niger and Chad. The choice of the Tagedufat valley as the southern boundary of Air is made on geographical grounds. What may be termed the political boundary is rather further north along the line of the River of Agades.

PLATE 3





Commencing within 50 km. of the In Azawa wells, Air is a low plateau of Silurian formation with islands of Archean rock. Through the plateau-plain a number of separate formations have been extruded by, in many cases, apparently quite recent volcanic action. The northernmost massifs of Taghazit and Zelim lie in about latitude 20°. The volcanic period was of considerable duration, but all the recognisable volcanoes and derived phenomena are post-Eocene. [39] Some of the basalt flows, more especially those from Mount Dogam near Auderas in Central Air, are not old, while the Teginjir lava flow appeared to me so fresh as probably to have come into existence during the historical period. The volcanic phenomena take the form of cinder cones with steep sides as at Teginjir (Mount Gheshwa), cumulo-volcanoes, as in the T'imia and probably Bagezan massifs, domes as in the case of Mount Dogam, and basalt flows in various parts, notably in the T'imia valleys.[40] Aggata[40] appears to be another volcanic peak, but the serrated crest of Ighzan is a phenomenon of the rapid cooling of an igneous extrusion rather than an example of erosion. There are numerous volcanic massifs distinct from each other all over Air, more especially in the centre and north; they are nearly all granitic and very rugged. The Auderas basin is of basalt and cinerite.[41] The plateau, which is in the main horizontal, rises in the centre to a step some few hundred feet higher than the north and south and forms a pedestal for the Bagezan and other massifs some 1500 to 3000 feet higher again. The peaks are as much as 4500 feet[42] above the plateau, which varies from 1500 feet above sea level in the south along the River of Agades, to 2000 feet in the Ighazar in North Air. Round Auderas the plateau may be taken as about 2500 feet above the sea, while to the east of the Bagezan massif the plateau is about 3000 feet, sloping gradually away to the south and east. Between Agades and Auderas there is an abrupt ascent on to the central step of the plateau of some 2000 feet; a corresponding descent of about 150 feet takes place near Assada.

The effect of these massifs rising sharply out of the plateau is curious. The Archean or Silurian plain and the volcanic mountain groups are phenomena which have not yet had time to become correlated. The result is that the broad and very gentle valleys of the plateau-plain wander in and out among the disconnected massifs and are fed by deep torrents draining the slopes of impermeable rock. Water erosion has not yet had time to widen or deepen the ravines, while the broad valleys have wide sandy bottoms, where pebbles only rarely occur; their sides are well wooded with pasture on the plains between the beds, except where masses of round basalt boulders, the product of the volcanic disturbances, cover the surface. The massifs have hardly been affected by erosion. The broad valleys between them are the corridors of communication in the country. "Cette superimposition à une vieille pénéplaine usée," says Chudeau,[43] "de massifs éruptifs jeunes, donne a l'Air un aspect surprenant, presque paradoxal." And this is the charm of the country that has been called by travellers the Saharan Alps. There is contrast everywhere, but nothing is perhaps more striking than the black patina which the red rocks have assumed. The wind-borne sand has polished them till they shine with a dark metallic gleam, while the sheltered rifts and ravines retain their pink and red surfaces. It is a land of lurid colour, except at midday, when the African sun dominates everything in one blinding glare.

---

[1] The name "Sudan" is used throughout to indicate the country referred to by the Arab and early European geographers under this name, that is to say, the country inhabited by negroid people north of the purely negro zone and south of the Saharan deserts. The "Anglo-Egyptian Sudan" is more correctly described as the "Nilotic Sudan."

[2] The geography of the Sahara as a whole is briefly treated in *Le Sahara*, by E. F. Gautier, Collection Payot, Paris, 1923, and with greater detail in *Le Sahara*, by H. Schirmer, Paris, 1893, but much recent work is not included in the latter.

[3] O. Bates: *The Eastern Libyans* (Macmillan),

pp. 48-9.

[4] Cf. Rohlfs, *Kufra*, Chap. VIII.

[5] “Alguechet” in Leo Africanus, Vol. III. pp. 802, 818, etc. (For particulars see beginning of Chap. IX.)

[6] Until motor-cars began to cross the Sahara further west.

[7] Bissuel, *Les Touareg de l’Ouest*, p. 63, says: “A plant called locally ‘Bettina’ and not the Alfalehle (Arabic: Falezlez) was used.”

[8] Gautier: *La conquête du Sahara*, Paris, 1922.

[9] See *Life of Charles de Foucauld*, by R. Bazin, translated by P. Keelan, and De Foucauld, *Dictionnaire abrégé Touareg Français* (Dialecte Ahaggar), publié par R. Basset, Alger, 1918-20.

[10] Jean: *Les Touareg du Sud-Est*, Paris, Larose, 1909.

[11] Barth: *Travels and Discoveries in Central Africa*, London, Longmans, 1857-8, 5 vols.

[12] From “Litham,” لثام (root لثم), a veil.

[13] The slaves which they possess do not wear the veil. The slave is not a man but a chattel. As soon as a slave is freed and becomes a serf he wears the veil like the noble Tuareg.

[14] In the Air dialect this word is so pronounced. Variations in other dialects are referred to elsewhere. Imajeghan is the plural form of Imajegh. Temajegh is a feminine form of Imajegh.

[15] “Kel” means “People of,” “Tagilmus” is the name of the Veil in Temajegh, the language of the Tuareg.

[16] For an explanation of this term see Chap. IX.

[17]The term “Hausa” throughout this volume is not used in an ethnological sense. It is primarily a linguistic division which may or may not also have an ethnic significance.

[18]“Adghar” or “adrar” = mountain in Temajegh. This mountain group between Air and the Niger and south of Ahaggar has no name. It is called the “Mountain of the Ifoghas” (Adghar n’Ifoghas), while the people who live in it are known as the “Ifoghas of the Mountain,” to distinguish them from the Ifoghas tribe in Damergu and the Ifoghas tribe of the Azger.

[19]Leo Africanus: Hakluyt Society edition, Vol. I. p. 127, and Vol. III. pp. 798-9.

[20]Notably by M. Ch. de la Roncière: *Revue des Deux Mondes*, 1st February, 1923: “Tombuctou au temps de Louis XI.”

[21]M. de la Roncière in a private letter of July 1923 to the author.

[22]The edition I have used is a French one: Hornemann, *Voyage dans l’Afrique Septentrionale*, edited by my ancestor Rennell. Paris: Dentu, 1803.

[23]Denham and Clapperton: “Discoveries in North and Central Africa, 1822-4,” Murray, 1826.

[24]See Introduction to Richardson’s *Travels in the Great Desert of the Sahara*, London, 1847, and Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. II. pp. 219-20.

[25]Barth calls this area Fadeangh, a name not known to-day.

[26]The Governor appointed by the Turks.

[27]Von Bary’s Diary, “La dernier rapport . . . sur . . . les Touaregs de l’Air.” Edited by Schirmer; Paris, Fischbacher, 1898.

[28]*Documents Scientifiques de la Mission Foureau-Lamy*. Various fascicules.

[29] Carte de l'Air: Mission Cortier (2 feuilles), 1/500,000. Service Géogr. du Min. des Colonies.

[30] Chudeau and Gautier: *Missions au Sahara*, Paris, Armand Colin, 1909 (Vol. II., *Le Sahara Soudanais*, by Chudeau).

[31] Buchanan: *Out of the World North of Nigeria*, Murray.

[32] Where the words "rivers" or "watercourse" are used they must be understood to mean drainage channels which are dry most of the year.

[33] Gautier on his sketch map in *Le Sahara* uses the name Tafassasset, which, however, is even more of a local name in the north than T'immersoi is in the south.

[34] In Temajegh "Talak" means "clay." Cf. Chudeau: *Le Sahara Soudanais*, p. 63, etc.

[35] Meaning in Temajegh "of the Tamarisk."

[36] Von Bary's Diary, pp. 108-9. He joined the main road followed by Barth in the T'iyut valley.

[37] In the case of the Tafidet and other eastern valleys of Air, Chudeau, *op. cit.*, p. 62. He supposed, as I think erroneously, that the Air group itself and not the desert was the eastern watershed of the T'immersoi basin.

[38] The country south of Air and north of the limit included in the maps published by the Mission Tilho of the area each side of the Franco-British boundary between Nigeria and the Territoires Militaires du Niger is hardly mapped at all.

[39] Chudeau, *op. cit.*, pp. 263-4.

[40] *Vide* Plates 23 and 39.

[41] *Vide* Plates 13 and 14.

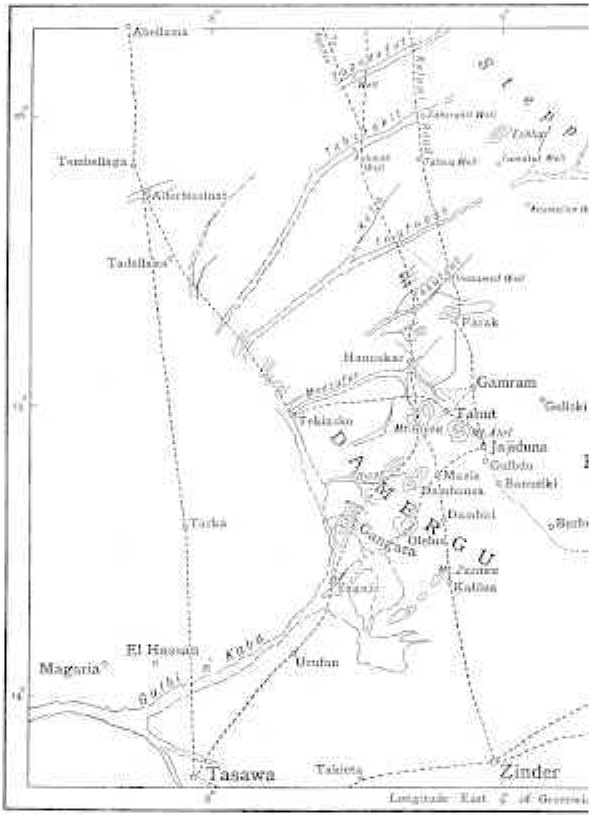
[42] In the case of Tamgak.

[43] Chudeau, *op. cit.*, p. 57.

CHAPTER II

THE SOUTHLANDS

UNTIL about twenty years ago it was easier to reach the Western Sudan and Central Africa around Lake Chad from the north than from the Gulf of Guinea, notwithstanding a journey of many months across the Sahara, involving all the considerable hardships and dangers of desert travelling. The objectives which Barth, Foureau, Lamy and their predecessors all had in view were not the exploration of the Sahara, but the penetration of the Sudan. By following the trade routes along which slave caravans used to reach the Mediterranean coast, the explorers of the nineteenth century reached the wealthy Niger lands more easily than they would have done had they attempted to pass through the tropical forests of the West Coast. On the sea-board European penetration at that time was confined to the neighbourhood of a few factories on the shore or the estuaries of certain rivers. Only at the end of the nineteenth century did this country, first among the nations of Europe, realise that the potential markets and supplies of raw material which the Sudan afforded were on a scale far surpassing those which had been dreamt of by the early pioneers on the coast. It was about thirty years ago that communication was eventually opened up between the coast and the Moslem interior, but there is no doubt that the accounts of the Sudan in 1850 brought back by Barth after his memorable journey were directly responsible for the British penetration from the coast of those countries which are now called Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast and Nigeria. The movement reached its culmination in the opening years of the twentieth century, when the northern provinces of Nigeria were occupied under the guidance of Sir F. Lugard, while at about the same time the three French columns had met near Lake Chad. With these years the expansionist period closed and a phase of development, which still continues, commenced. British expansion into Northern Nigeria, coming as it did during the South African war, passed comparatively unnoticed in this country except in official circles, where the campaigns of Sir F. Lugard's small columns aroused considerable anxiety. But because the policy was successful the public heard little of the operations which formally annexed the outlying Emirates of Kano, Katsina and Sokoto. The new countries which we then acquired were of colossal wealth, and contained a population of many millions of people living as thickly in certain parts as the Egyptians in the Nile Delta. The closing years of last and the first few years of this century involved the addition to the British Empire of some of the greatest of the Sudanese cities, which are the terminal points and therefore the *raisons d'être* of the two central Saharan trade roads which come from the Mediterranean by way of Kawar and Air.


Abellama
Tambillaga
Aderbissinat
Tadeliza
Tarka
El Hassan
Magaria
Gulbi n Kaba
Urufan
Tasawa
Takieta
Zinder
Hamskar
Gamram
Farak
Tekinoko
Tahut
Janduna
Gulbdu
Borzeiki
Dambei
Olelua
Gangara
Kallan
Galiski
D A M E R G U
Longitude East of Greenwic

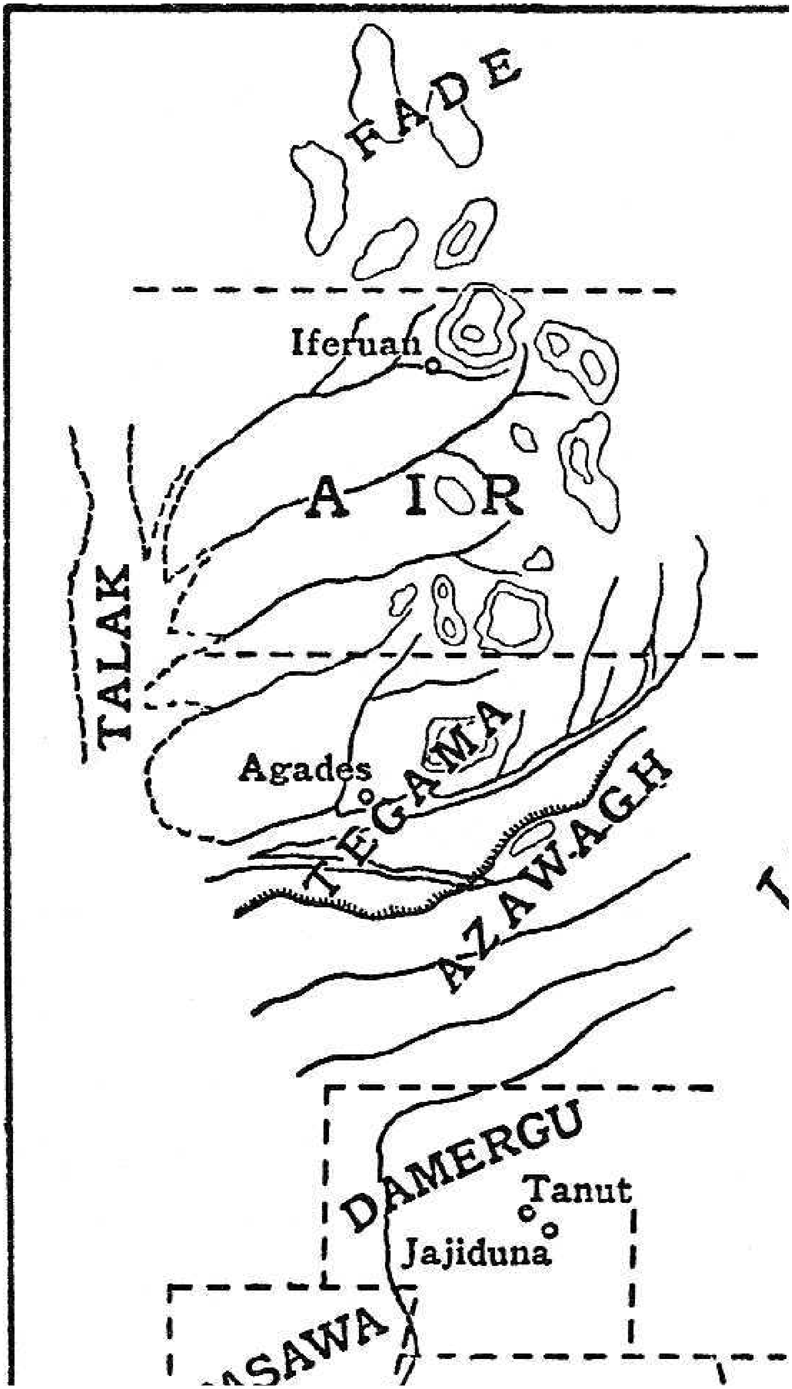
F. R. del.

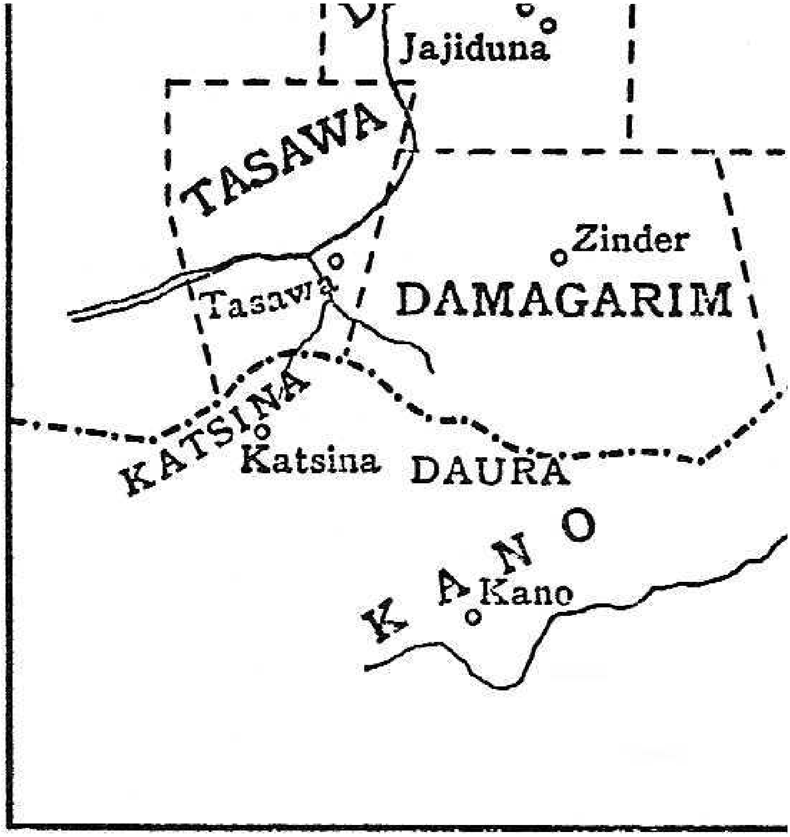
The Sudan, though geographically in Central Africa, belongs to the Mediterranean civilisation. The great empires of the Niger, Melle and Songhai, the Fulani Empire of Sokoto, the Emirates of Kano and Katsina, and the Empire of Bornu, were all products of contact with the north. Commercially and culturally, the Sudan faced north with its back against an impenetrable belt of tropical forest inhabited by savage negro tribes, through whose dripping and steaming jungles there was little or no access to the sea. This orientation explains the high degree of civilisation which Barth found already past its “floruit” in 1850. It is obviously also the reason why the early explorers came from the north rather than from the nearer coast of the Atlantic between Sierra Leone and the mouths of the Niger.

With the arrival of the Europeans, ways down to the coast were gradually opened up, until finally in Nigeria seven hundred miles of railway were built from Lagos to Kano. As a consequence trade has left the trans-Saharan roads where the Tuareg were masters. It is now carried to Europe and even to the Mediterranean by steamers sailing from Lagos and Liverpool. In more ways than one the advent of the white man in Central Africa has been disastrous for the Tuareg. Camel-borne trade on a large scale is doomed; caravan broking and long-distance desert transport are gone, never to return; even a trans-Saharan railway, whose commercial value must be as unreal as the dream of its advocates among French Colonial authorities, can never hope to compete with sea-borne traffic. Aircraft alone may one day revive the old camel roads, for they provide lines of watering-points along the shortest north and south routes.

If one may judge by the numbers and size of the market cities, which are the termini of the trans-Saharan routes in the Sudan, the Air road was by far the most important of the two in the centre. In Kano and in Katsina and in Sokoto the commercial genius of the Hausa people developed centres for the exchange of the European goods with the products, and more especially the raw materials, of Central Africa. To these cities also came the negro people of the south, to buy and sell or be sold as slaves. In a thickly populated and extremely fertile country the cities grew to immense size. Though in no sense properly a Tuareg country, Northern Nigeria and the neighbouring lands are visited and lived in by the People of the Veil. Every year it is the habit of many of this people to come from Air to Nigeria during the dry season. They earn a prosperous livelihood on transport work between the cities of Hausaland. They feed their camels on the richer pastures of the south when those in the north grow dry. But before the rains begin they move north again to the steppe and desert, for flooded rivers and excessive damp are conditions which the camels of the Veiled People do not relish. Quite large colonies of Tuareg have settled in some of these cities and have adopted a semi-sedentary life, maintaining their characteristics in inverse measure as intermarriage with the negroid peoples has become more frequent. The influx of Tuareg into Nigeria after the 1917 revolution in Air added considerably to the numbers living permanently under British rule. This migration was not as strange a phenomenon or so entirely the product of the Great War as at first sight it appears to be. The various waves of Tuareg which in succession entered Air have each in turn had the effect of driving the earlier populations further south. The trend of migration in North Africa from the earliest days, when the zone of permanent habitation of the negroid races extended as far as the Mediterranean, has always been southward. It has continued in modern times. The temptation of richer lands in Central Africa has always proved irresistible when local political or economic conditions altered in consequence of growing ethnic pressure to the extent of providing just that impetus necessary to overcome the human disinclination to leave homes which have been occupied for generations. The Kel Geres Tuareg left Air to settle in the country north of Sokoto when the mountains became over-populated; masses of Air Tuareg generally took up their habitation in Katsina and Kano after the unsuccessful revolution against the French during the late war. The motives were not strictly similar, but the effects were identical, and have been observable throughout the ages.

AIR
and the
SOUTHLAND


FADE
Iferuan
A I R
TALAK
Agades
TEGAMA
AZAWAGH
DAMERGU
Tanut
Jajiduna
SAWA



F. R. del.

To-day at Kano, a village of some size named Faji, almost entirely Tuareg in population, has sprung up a few hundred yards from the walls of the city. Here the People of the Veil live like the Hausa in mud houses. They are engaged in retail trade or act as agents and brokers for their relations in Air when the latter come down in the dry season. In Katsina a quarter of the town and the country immediately north are thickly populated with Tuareg, for whom the Emir has a marked partiality, largely on account of his commercial propensities, which are powerfully stimulated by the ownership of several fine herds of camels. The Tuareg of Katsina, drawn from almost every tribe in Air, have formed a new tribal unit known as the Kel Katchena,[44] and are rapidly forgetting their older tribal allegiances. The results of these movements have always been much the same. Progressive mixing with the negroid people of the Sudan, the gradual acquisition of sedentary habits, and the cultivation of fat lands where life is easy, are combining to make these People of the Veil lose their characteristics as a northern race; their language cannot compete with Hausa, which is the *lingua franca* of the Sudan, as Arabic is that of North Africa. The retention of the Veil is the only exception: in fact many southerners associated with them have adopted it, although the rigorous proscription against revealing the mouth and face is being less strictly observed.

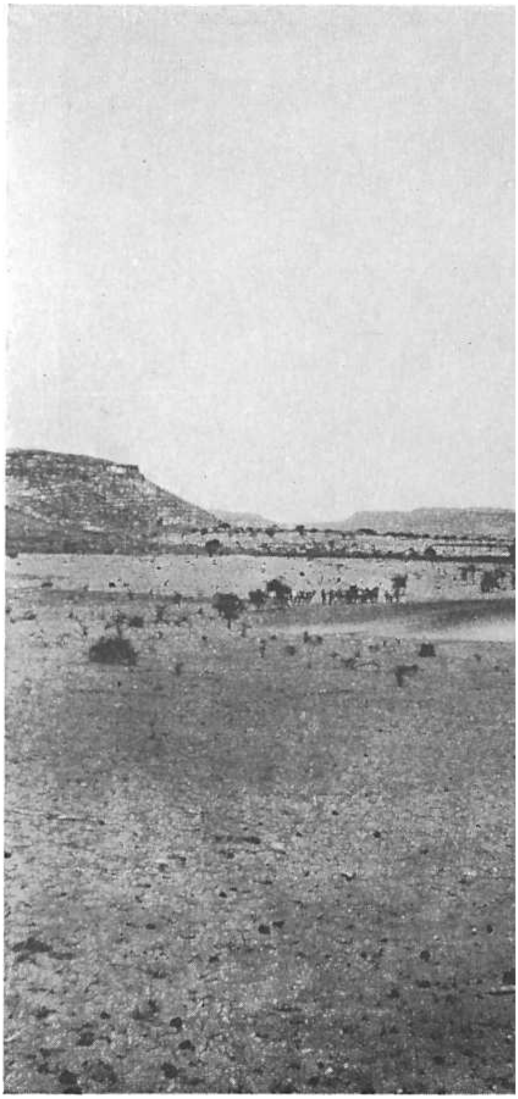
North of the country surrounding the great walled cities of red earth, and more or less coterminous with the northern frontiers of the Emirates of Katsina, Daura, Kano and Hadeija, there is a deep belt of country which marks the beginning of the transition between the Saharan and the Equatorial zones.[45] North of the open country around Kano, with its large trees that for a height of some feet from the ground, like those in English parks, have been stripped of leaves by the grazing flocks and herds, the rock outcrops become less frequent and eventually disappear entirely. They give place to scrub, bush and clearings through which the Anglo-French boundary runs. The frontier from Lake Chad to the Niger was delimited in 1907 and 1908 by an international expedition whose work has been described by Colonel Tilho with a wealth of detail which makes one regret that his labours did not extend a little further north, as far as the edge of the desert where the Saharan zone proper commences. The area mapped by Colonel Tilho hardly extends beyond the northern limit of the Hausa-speaking people. Along the roads leading to Air, or in other words along the great trade route, no work was done beyond the southern fringe of the area called Damergu, and there is consequently to the south of Air a considerable depth of unsurveyed country for which no maps are available.

The area between the international boundary and the somewhat arbitrary limits of Algeria and Tripolitania constitutes the French colony known as the "Territoires du Niger,"[46] the southern part of which is divided into provinces or "cercles," roughly corresponding to the old native Emirates. French colonial policy in this part of Africa, in contrast with the system so successfully instituted by Sir F. Lugard in Nigeria, has been directed towards the removal of the more important native rulers. They have been replaced by a form of direct administration which is only now in process of being organised under French civilian officials. North of Katsina the Emirates of Maradi and Tessawa[47] have been combined into one province, and here almost the last Sultan of the "Territoires" survives, exercising authority only in the immediate vicinity of Tessawa itself. West of this is the province of Tahua; to the east is the old Emirate of Damagarim with its capital at Zinder, and east again is Gure, the northern part of which is known as Elakkos and Kuttus.

Once the belt of thick bush near the frontier is crossed the country resembles Northern Nigeria again, with park bush and broad open spaces, both cultivated and grass-grown. The villages are of the usual Central African type; the groups of conical huts are surrounded by millet stores, raised on legs like gigantic bee-hives, to contain the grain cultivated in the clearings around the settlements. The inhabitants are Hausa and Kanuri, though of late years a number of lower-caste Tuareg from Air have settled there as well. There is a considerable amount of rock outcrop in the form, round Zinder, of low peaks with great boulders, or, near Gure, of hills which terminate abruptly in a cliff of red rock, north of which is the district called Elakkos.

Through this belt of park bush runs east and west the road recently levelled and rendered passable for light cars in the dry season between Lake Chad and the Niger. The nomadic cattle-breeding Fulani come into this zone from the bush to the north and south; Maradi is a Fulani centre of some importance. A certain number of this people also come to Tessawa, but the Hausa population here have been at feud with them for many generations, and only the advent of European control has put an end to continual wars between the two Emirates.

PLATE 4



DIOM IN ELAKKO

PUNCH AND JUDY S

Tessawa lies in a shallow depression which, like others further north on the way to Damergu, drain into the Gulbi n'Kaba, an affluent of the Niger containing running water only in its lower reaches in the neighbourhood of Sokoto. North of Tessawa and Damagarim the land becomes more sparsely populated and the bush thickens, except in the immediate vicinity of the villages, which now begin to be tenanted in increasing numbers by Kanuri. The bush contains herds of Fulani cattle and a certain amount of game; there are two or three varieties of gazelle, some bustard, guinea-fowl, ostriches and occasionally giraffes. The vegetation becomes more stunted as progress is made northward and large trees are rarer; the soil is sandy; rock outcrop is almost completely absent. The configuration of the ground is difficult to follow in the thick bush; the gentle slopes and valleys appear generally to drain westwards, but shallow closed basins are numerous. Plenty of water is obtainable in any of these depressions a few feet below the ground; the larger groups of wells, usually near the two or three hamlets of straw huts which form a village, are the resort of the Fulani with their cattle during the dry season. The vegetation and the general aspect of the country, however, are still those of the Sudan.

Damagarim differs but little from the Tessawa landscape except that the bush is thicker and there are fewer open spaces. East of the boulder-strewn hills of Zinder the more ambitious elevations of Gure are visible. Zinder itself consists of two contiguous towns; like Tessawa and the Hausa cities further south, they are built of red mud. Zinder is smaller than the analogous Nigerian cities. Since 1921 it has had no Sultan. The French headquarters of the Niger Territories till recently were situated here. In the past Zinder was of some importance; although the main caravan track from the north appears in the early days to have run direct to Katsina, a branch from Damergu went by way of Zinder as soon as Kano grew in importance. But in spite of the number and influence of the Tuareg who used to make Zinder their headquarters, neither Damagarim nor Gure has changed its essentially Sudanese character.

Within a few days' march of Tessawa on the road north to Gangara in Damergu, several interesting features were observable. At Urufan village the Magazawa Hausa and Kanuri women were wearing the ornament known as the "Agades Cross," peculiar to the Air Tuareg, in a simple as well as in a conventionalised form. Many of the women exhibited almost Mongolian traits in their eyes and cheek-bones. Their hair was done in what I believe to be a Kanuri fashion, that is to say, in a low crest along the top of the head, tightly matted and well greased, with a parting, or very often a shaved strip on each side, running the length of the skull; over the ears the hair was again tightly plaited and greased. Their dancing was different from the practice in Nigeria: the women dance with bent knees and a crouching body, so that the back is nearly horizontal. They shuffle up to the drum band one behind the other, the woman at the head of the line turning away at the end of each movement to take her place behind. The absence of sedentary Fulani influence is obvious as soon as music starts; the rattles and cymbals made of segments of calabash on a stick, peculiar to the Fulani in Nigeria, are not used.

Ethnically it is a very mixed area. In most cases each hamlet in a village group is inhabited by a different people. Magazawa Hausa, Kanuri from Damergu, and more recent Kanuri from Bornu predominate, but there are also nomadic Fulani and semi-nomadic Tuareg.

This is the edge of the country called Damergu, which, on the direct road from Tessawa, may be said to begin at the village group of Garari in a small valley, tributary of the Gulbi n’Kaba. Just before reaching the southern edge of the valley the thorn bush suddenly ceases. In the hollow are two or three hamlets of Kanuri, Bornuwi, sedentary Tuareg and Hausa with common wells in the valley bottom. Instead of interminable thorn scrub just so high that nothing can be seen above it, an open wind-swept plain of rolling downland covered with yellow-gold grass appears in front. On the sharp African horizon to the N. and N.E. are the blue peaks of Damergu, quite small and humble, but clear cut against the sky-line with all the dignity of isolation in a sea of waving sun-washed prairie.

Damergu begins and ends abruptly: as soon as the belt of bush which surrounds it on all sides is crossed, the ground lies open to the sky and visibility becomes good. There is no more suffocating feeling in the world than marching through Central African bush. The discomforts and disabilities of travelling are not compensated for by any advantage except a ready supply of firewood. The bushland around Damergu is particularly unpleasant. It is never so tall that one may not hope to see over the top of the ugly stunted trees at the next low rise, and never in reality low enough to allow one to satisfy one's passionate longing. Visibility is limited to a few yards and one's sense of direction is confounded. It is infernally hot, because the undergrowth effectively shelters one from any breeze. The country is uniformly rolling and unbeautiful. A high proportion of the trees are of the virulently thorny variety which arch over the rare paths and make life on camel or horseback intolerable. Walking is equally distasteful, as the ground is strewn with burr grass which enters every fold of clothing and mortifies the flesh like hot needles. Camels get lost pasturing, game appears in vast quantities and disappears before a shot can be fired. There are scorpions, snakes, centipedes and tarantulas, not to speak of bush folk who have an uncanny sense of their own whereabouts, and of yours as well. They are armed with poisoned arrows, and though I did not suffer from their unkind attentions, the bush through which I passed north of Daura has a bad reputation. There are vast areas with no accessible water in the dry season, but when it rains the trees drip their moisture down your neck.

I know the particular and private hell which is in store for me one day for the many misdemeanours I have committed. It will be to wander eternally through Sudan bush in search of the desert, where one may see what will bring happiness or oblivion at a distance and where one may at least face Destiny in the open.

On each separate occasion when I entered Damergu, in the east returning from Termit, in the west going north from Tessawa, and in the north returning home by way of Nigeria, I experienced such a sense of relief and pleasure at emerging from the bush as to dull my perception of the really somewhat monotonous nature of the country. The winding hollows flow more or less aimlessly east or west, except in the Gangara area, where the drainage is definitely westwards into the Gulbi n'Kaba basin. The general level of the country is about 1700 feet above the sea. Except in the hollows around the rain pools the country is devoid of trees or scrub. Every here and there small groups of hills rise 300-400 feet above the surrounding country. They are so far apart that the next system only appears on the horizon. The black ferruginous outcrop forms conical peaks or stretches of pebbly surface, which break the round contours of the prairie. These little hills, set on a rolling golden prairie of very wide prospect, are the great characteristics of Damergu. The land is vast and generous in its proportions.

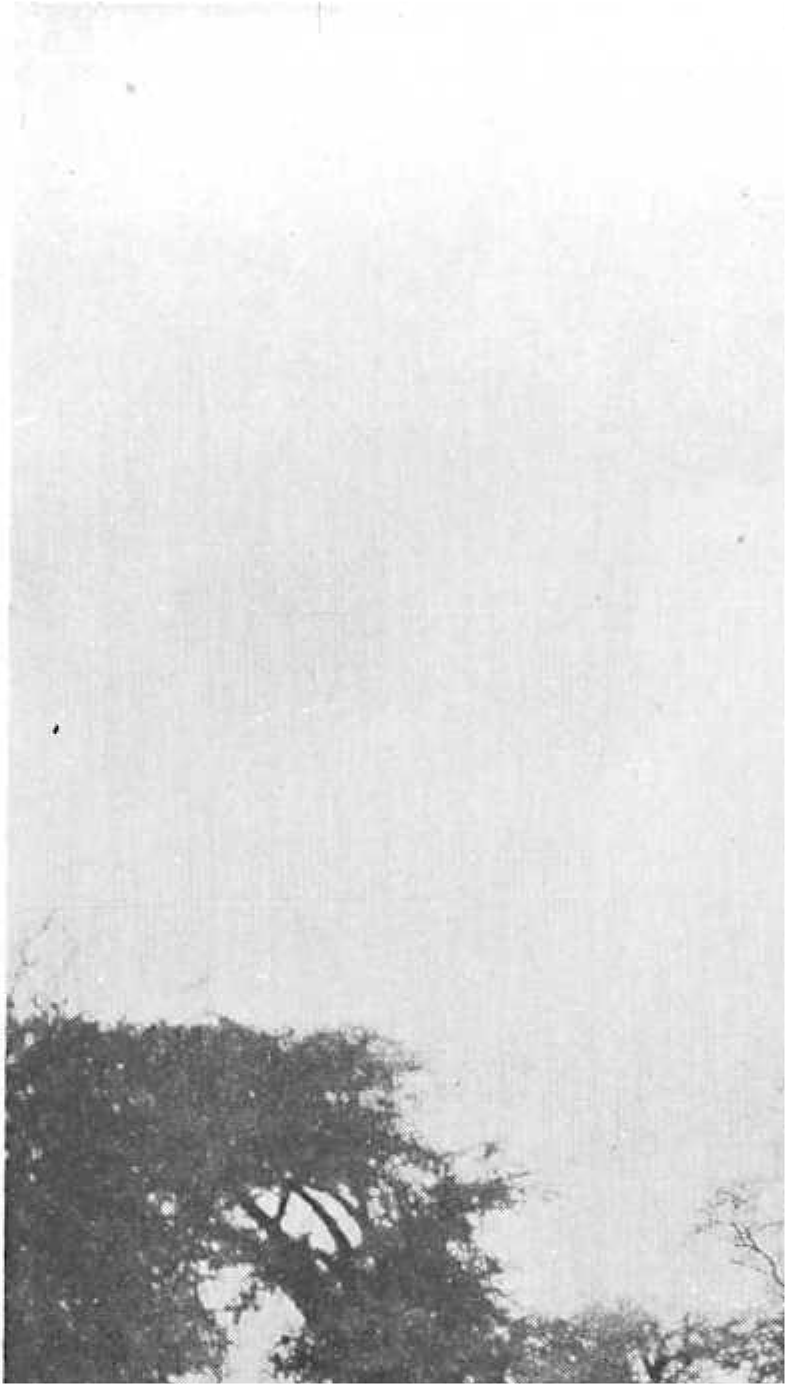
The hills of Gangara in the west mark the site of a group of four villages called Zungu and Gangara close under the principal peak, Malam Chidam to the east and Karawa to the south. The hills are a series of cones rising a few hundred feet from the plain and are connected at their bases; a series of gullies or ravines clothed with little bushes descends from them; there are no cliffs or great masses of bare rock; the slopes are covered with low scrub. The Gangara hills divide the Gulbi n'Kaba basin from a wide depression on the east which sweeps south towards the cone of Zawzawa near the large village of Kallilua, with Dambida and Mazia not far to the north. North and east of Gangara are the low hills of Dambansa, Birjintoro and Ollelua, while further east again in a confused medley of aimless valleys are Mount Ginea and the triple peaks of Akri. The Akritan[48] hills are a landmark for the towns of Jajiduna, Tanut and Gamram. These various groups are the signposts of Damergu; even a raw traveller can learn them in a short time. Between the more important villages and towns the scattered hamlets are of such frequent occurrence that, once the general lie of the land has been observed, travelling is easy.

It is a country of considerable potential wealth. It was known in the past as the granary of Air; even now great quantities of grain are exported to the north and to the more densely populated Hausa countries of the south. The long, broad downs, usually well fed by the summer rains, are admirably suited for growing millet and guinea corn. The surrounding margin of bush, especially on the northern side within reasonable distances of the plentiful water holes in open places, is full of the cattle of nomad Fulani and the camels of the Damergu Tuareg. The cultivable area to-day is limited only by the scarcity of population and some lack of enthusiasm for work. A periodic cycle of dry years with the inevitable sequels of drought and famine can only be guarded against by administrative measures, which have not been enforced since the fall of the Central African Empires. One after another they dominated this part of the world, but whether Melle, Songhai, Bornu or Sokoto was pre-eminent in the Central Sudan, Damergu remained an appanage of Air, whose destinies it followed and of which it is economically a part. After the first arrival of the Tuareg from the east, a progressive descent of other tribes from the north led to the establishment of a reigning class in the country, recruited among the People of Air. To them the sedentary Kanuri people, who then and since have constituted the majority of the population, were subjected. The Tuareg Sultans of Damergu in the early period of modern history ruled in Jajiduna, Gamram, Tademari and Demmili. Even when they fell under the political influence of Tessawa or of Damagarim or were conquered by Melle, Songhai or Sokoto in turn, they remained in close touch with their relations in the north. The economic necessity of keeping open the great caravan road to Tripoli, which was a source of wealth to the Tuareg and to the south alike, was realised by everyone.

The more intense cultivation and thicker population of earlier days are proved by the profusion of deserted sites all over the country, where the passing of the villages has left no more tangible, if unmistakable, evidence than acres of cleared and levelled ground strewn with potsherds and heaps of stones. The greater population of those days and the administrative ability of the empires of the Sudan combined to counteract the effects of dry years by creating proportionately larger reserves of grain, which were so conspicuously absent just before the late war that a severe drought brought about wholesale emigration to the Southland.

The present-day villages in Damergu are all of the grass hut variety of the usual African type. In the past a few towns appear to have been built of mud. The ruins of old Dambiri show a walled mud-built town, although Demmili, once the seat of a Sultan who probably moved to Gangara when his village fell into decay, must have been wholly built of grass, for it has entirely disappeared. A lonely tree on a barren patch of ground marks its passing. The Gangara villages are all straw built, as are, among the larger settlements which have survived, Mazia and Kallilua. There are mud buildings, I believe, at Tademari and Jajiduna, and certainly at Tanut. The latter is the French centre of the country. It has an important grain market and a fort containing a small garrison of Senegalese troops. The principal native place was Jajiduna, where the first French post was established; but the town has rather declined since the move of the official capital to Tanut, where the water supply for caravans is better. At Jajiduna there is a Senussi “zawia,” one of the few points where the influence of this sect has taken root in Tuareg countries. The principal Senussi “zawia” in the Southland is at Kano, with another smaller one reported at Zinder.

PLATE 5



North of Jajiduna and north-east of Tanut is Gamram,[49] a town of some importance in the past for the Tuareg, and the seat of one of their rulers of Damergu. Now a small collection of straw huts is surrounded by the ruins of mud walls like any of the towns of Hausaland. Gamram was the Warden of the South on the marches of the desert. As the most northerly permanent settlement of the Sudan on the Tripoli road it became a point of vital strategic importance for the caravan traffic. The town has occupied many sites on the edge of a basin that becomes a lake in the rainy season. The present site is on the north side, but the most important settlement was probably to the south-west. The beauty of Gamram struck Barth very forcibly. It was the first definitely Sudanese settlement to which he had come after the inhospitable deserts and the mountains of the Sahara. He had suffered intense discomfort in the waste called Azawagh, intervening between Damergu and the Sudan, but when he came to Gamram, the rains had filled the lake which laps the feet of some immense acacias that are perpetually green. Their roots live in water, and when the pool dries up, wells only a few feet deep are dug under their shade. The trees are filled with the song of many birds and the sound of running lizards. The gardens around the edge of the basin produce vegetables and luxuries rarely encountered in the Sahara. There are eggs and chickens and milk and cheese in the market. All these things are found at Gamram, not in plenty but in just sufficient quantities to delight the traveller in barren lands. I came to Gamram a day after leaving the impenetrable bush of Elakkos and found it as good as Barth had described.

The town has lost its Tuareg character. It is now a small settlement of a few hundred Kanuri and mixed inhabitants. The Tuareg element in the immediate neighbourhood is accounted for by some sedentary serfs or slaves living in other hamlets near by. The noble Tuareg of the Isherifan tribe who used to possess Gamram wander in the district between this place and the bush of Guliski. They have not counted for very much since they were decimated in a raid by Belkho, the great leader of the Air Tuareg during the latter years of last century. Belkho had complained that the Isherifan at Gamram were interfering with the caravans which crossed Damergu, and as his people were especially interested in the traffic, he demanded an assurance that the annoyance should cease, failing which he would have to take measures. The Isherifan returned an insolent reply and Belkho warned them again. He offered to accept a fine in camels for their misbehaviour, but when this was refused, collected a body of some two hundred to three hundred men and came swiftly down the road from Tergulawen with hostile intent. He reached the town at nightfall. Next morning he fell on the Isherifan, who had prepared for the attack, defeated them, and carried off so many camels that each of the victorious participants, as one explained to me, secured five female beasts for his share. Since then, my informant remarked, “the Isherifan are not.”

Damergu has been the scene of many bloody raids in recent times. At Farak, one day from Gamram, a great assemblage of men and camels from the Southland, bound for Ghat, was caught by the Imuzurak under Danda. Merchandise and camels were looted and the personnel was massacred.

During the four years which elapsed after the journey of the Foureau-Lamy Mission took place in 1900, a series of important events occurred in Damergu which ultimately led to the occupation of Air. In July 1900 the French military territory of Zinder-Chad had come into official existence, with a base of operations under Colonel Peroz at Say, and subsequently at Sorbo Hausa, on the Niger.[50] In February 1901 Colonel Peroz set out towards Lake Chad. Sergeant Bouthel, left in command at Zinder by Lieut. Joalland of the Voulet Mission, entered Damergu, defeated the Imuzuraq tribe of Tuareg at Tademari or Tanamari and killed their chief, Musa. His place was taken by his brother, Danda, who became ruler of the country, while a third brother, afterwards killed at Bir Alali (Fort Pradie) east of Lake Chad, in January 1902, with the assistance of the Senussi organised Kanem against the French. Of all the Air Tuareg, the Kel Owi confederation of tribes alone, on account of their commercial relations with the Hausa countries and with the north, adopted a pacific attitude. The rest of the Air and the local Tuareg in Damergu set about fortifying Tademari, Jajiduna and Gamram and raided as far afield as Zinder. Their defeat by Sergeant Bouthel had so little effect that they soon plundered a Kel Owi caravan at Fall near Mount Ginea. The French in consequence were forced to occupy Gidjigawa near Kallilua in southern Damergu, and finally, when the Farak massacre occurred, Jajiduna itself, where a fort was built and a nucleus of camel corps established. The latter, however, was restricted in its action to a small area north of the post; operations did not even extend to Farak, only thirty odd miles away. The effect of this French expansion was nevertheless to make many of the prouder Tuareg, who would not submit but foresaw the inevitable, move eastwards. Some of them migrated as far afield as Kanem and Wadai, others only to Elakkos. It was the continuation of a movement which had begun after the advent of the Foureau-Lamy Mission. But even east of Chad the ubiquitous white men arrived; the migrants fought the French with conspicuous success at Bir Alali on two occasions, though they were finally defeated. Of these Tuareg of the Exodus, some returned to Air, but the rest moved yet further east to the strange land of Darfur, where they still live in voluntary exile near El Fasher.

The repeated attacks on the north- and south-bound caravans in Damergu induced the French to escort the larger convoys of 1902 and 1903 as far as Turayet on the borders of the Air mountains. The departure of the irreconcilables towards the east, whence only a part was to return after the third encounter of Bir Alali, and the gradual penetration of the Southland, with the consequent pacification of the population, left the Imuzurak alone in Damergu in open defiance of the French. But in the meanwhile a second pillage had taken place at Farak, and, moreover, in Air itself the situation from every point of view was most unsatisfactory. The Sultan of the Air Tuareg was tossed about between the important Kel Owi confederation and their pacific policy on the one hand, and the irreconcilables of Damergu and Air on the other. In Gall in the south-east of Air had become a head-quarters of the raiders, and the Sultan began to find his position intolerable. He concluded by inviting the French to enter and take over. The occupation of Agades took place in the autumn of 1904 by a camel patrol under Lieut. Jean, when the modern history of Air and Damergu commenced.

Osman Mikitan, the Sultan of this critical period, lies buried in a square tomb of mud bricks in the Zungu hamlet of Gangara. He had changed places three times with Brahim as Sultan of the Air people, and died unregretted because he had sold his country to the foreigner.

The Tuareg of Damergu number among their tribes factions of many of the most famous Air clans. The Ikazkazan are represented by the section known generically as the Kel Ulli, the People of the Goats; these tribes include the Isherifan of Gamram and the Kel Tamat, in addition, of course, to many others in Air. The Imuzurak round Tanamari, with the

Imaqoaran, Ibandeghan, Izagaran and Imarsutan are tribes which seem to represent the earliest Tuareg stock in the neighbourhood; some of them certainly belong to groups which, when the first migration into the plateau from the east occurred, never reached Air at all. The omnipresent Ifoghas reappear in Damergu near Tanut and roam northward; they are apparently cousins of the great division of the Ifoghas n'Adrar (Ifoghas of the Mountains), whose centre is around Kidal, north-east of Gao on the Niger. These Ifoghas of Damergu also I believe to have been left here in the course of the westward migration of the first wave of Tuareg, though some of them may have returned east after the initial movement. The Tamizgidda of Air apparently also had a section in Damergu in Barth's day:[51] their name connects them with "the mosque," and they are said by this explorer to have been regarded by the Arabs in his day[52] as "greatly Arabicised, having apparently been settled somewhere near a town." A tribe of the same name occurs in the west; they also may be remnants, powerful as they were in Barth's days, of a westward migration from the Chad area, or possibly of a returning wave which is known to have reached Air. The Tegama in Damergu, says Barth,[53] "form at present a very small tribe able to muster, at the utmost, three hundred spears; but most of them are mounted on horseback. Formerly, however, they were far more numerous, till Ibram, the father of the present chief, undertook, with the assistance of the Kel Geres, the unfortunate expedition against Sokoto. . . ." But this fighting certainly occurred at a more recent date than 1759, when, according to the Agades Chronicle, they were at war with the Kel Geres. Barth adds that they were said originally to have come from Janet, near Ghat, that they were already settled in the south long before the Kel Owi came to Air, and that they are found on the borders of Negroland in very ancient times. Ptolemy speaks of a Tegama people beyond Air towards Timbuctoo and the middle Sudan. Hornemann, from what he heard of them, “believed them to be Christians,” says Barth; though the only reference I can find in this authority is to the fact that they were probably idolatrous. I think Barth’s reference is to a generic group, now called the Kel Tegama, a collective name for the people living in the southern part of the area known as Tegama, which is on the west side of the northern borders of Damergu. Among the Kel Tegama to-day would be classed the Damergu Ifoghas and other tribes already mentioned. I fancy Barth has used a generic local and geographical name as a tribal name.

The belief that they were Christians is, however, particularly interesting. It is possible that these Tegama were not Tuareg at all, and that Barth’s informants may have been referring to the nomadic Fulani who pasture their cattle in the area where he met them, round In Asamed and Farak, though his description of the time spent in their company certainly points to their having in reality been Tuareg. Their “customs showed that they had fallen off much from ancient usages,” for not only did the women make advances to the eminent explorer, but even the men urged him to make free with their wives. He adds that the women had very regular features and fair skins and that the men were both taller and fairer than the Kel Owi, many of them dressing their hair in long tresses as a token of their being Inisilman or holy men (“despite their dissolute manners”), a peculiarity which connects them with the Ifoghas of Azger, who also are a tribe of "marabouts."[54] His general description of the Tegama, taken in conjunction with their hunting and cattle-herding habits, corresponds so closely with the appearance of the Ifoghas of Damergu to-day that there is little doubt that Barth is referring to them, and that he should consequently more accurately have written, not "the Tegama" but the "Kel Tegama." He distinctly states that they acknowledged the supremacy of the Sultan of Agades rather than that of the Kel Owi leaders, which will be seen to point to their early origin in the country. Normally resident in Northern Damergu, they move to Tegama and Azawagh after the rains to feed their cattle, goats and camels. The conquests of the later Tuareg immigrants reduced them to a low stage of poverty and degradation, though they have retained their nobility of caste, race and feature to a remarkable degree.

The history of Damergu shows clearly the predominant rôle which the Tuareg played among the lower-caste Kanuri sedentaries and the nomadic Fulani. The prepotency of a noble race among people of inferior class is one of the most interesting phenomena of history. The Kanuri in Damergu are, and probably have always been, numerically the stronger; they are armed with bows and arrows, the weapon *par excellence* for bush fighting. The Tuareg was less numerous at all times, but everywhere, except in the west, where he has been so long associated with the Sudan as to lose his nobility, disdained any weapon but the sword, knife or spear. Like the knight in medieval Europe, the Tuareg has always held that the *armes blanches* were the only weapons of a gentleman, yet with all these disadvantages his prestige was sufficient to ensure an ascendancy which would have continued but for the advent of the gun and gunpowder. In Damergu this prestige ensured the maintenance of the Tuareg Sultanates until the advent of the French. In the Southland all legends continue to magnify his prowess.

In Hausaland, at Dan Kaba in Katsina Emirate, a strolling player came one day to give a Punch and Judy show for the delectation of the village people, who were in part Hausa, in part sedentary Fulani, and in part nomadic cattle-owning Fulani. The old traditional play had been modernised, and although it was full of topical allusions to the Nigeria of 1922, enough of the past remained to show the reputation and moral ascendancy which the Tuareg enjoyed in the Southland. The showman's apparatus was simple: divesting himself of his indigo robe, he arranged it on the ground over three sticks and crouched hidden beneath its folds. He had four dolls in all and worked them like those in our Punch and Judy shows in England. In the place of the squeaky voice of the Anglo-Saxon artist he used a bird whistle to conceal his words; the modulations of tone and inflexion in the dialogues and conversations between the puppets were remarkable. The Tuareg doll is the villain of the piece: his body is of blue rags, most unorthodoxly crowned with a white turban and armed with a huge sword and shield. Divested of the latter and crowned with a red turban, the same doll in the course of the play becomes the "dogari," or native policeman of the Hausaland Emirs. The King of the Bush is a Fulani man, impersonated by a puppet made largely of orange cretonne with huge hair crest and bow and arrow. He suspects his wife, made of the same material but ornamented with cowries before and behind, of having relations with the Tuareg. She soothes and pets and sings to her suspicious husband, playing music on drums and calabash cymbals. Her mellifluous tones finally persuade him to go out a-hunting in the bush. Needless to say, in Act II she flirts outrageously with the attractive Man of the Open Lands, but is surprised by her husband *in flagrante delicto*, most realistically performed, whereupon, in the next act, a tremendous fight ensues. The King of the Bush, discarding his bow and arrow, fights with an axe, the Tuareg with his sword. The latter is victorious and kills the King of the Bush. The wife calls in the “dogari” to avenge her husband and to please her Southland audience. In Act V the Tuareg is haled off before the British Political Officer, presented in khaki cloth with a black basin-shaped hat like a Chinese coolie and the face of a complete idiot. In the ensuing dialogue the fettered Tuareg scores off the unfortunate white man continuously, but, as all plays must end happily, he is condemned to death. The execution of the plot is good, the technique admirable, although the performance was unduly protracted for our tastes. The one I witnessed lasted nearly four hours. The predominant rôle is that of the envied and handsome villain, the noble Tuareg. He is glorious in life and fearless in death.

It is unfortunately impossible for lack of space to discuss the Kanuri or Fulani of Damergu. The latter affect the political life of the country but little. They shift continually to fresh tracts of bush or better water for the sake of their great black cattle, which used to be sold in the far north as well as in Hausaland. They do not mix with the Tuareg, though they are recognised by them, as anyone must recognise them, to be of a noble race. Slender, fine-featured, but dark-skinned, with the profiles of Assyrian statues, the Damergu Fulani are of the

Bororoji section of this interesting people which, in the course of its sojourn and gradual movement along the fringe of the Sudan from west to east, has provided the ruling class in most of the Hausa States. The recent history of Sokoto, of Katsina and of Kano is their history. Their conquest of power in Hausaland is but another instance of the ascendancy of nobility and a glaring contradiction of the Socialist theory of equal birth. When they came to power they were illiterate and pagan and had no political virtues; their success was due to breeding and caste.

The Bororoji are a darker section of the Fulani than many of the purer divisions in the south. In Northern Damergu they can be seen stalking through the bush with their herds of black kine, naked except for a loin skin and a peaked cap of liberty of embroidered cloth, but patently conscious of their birth. They come and go as they please, and no one interferes with them. Some may settle in towns or villages, living for a time on the produce of sales of cattle, in which they are rich. Most of them have no permanent habitation. A few can be seen in villages like Gangara, where they come to sell an occasional bull and buy a few ornaments or some such luxury as grain. Their women are slender, tall and straight, with fine oval faces and straight, jet-black hair. The triangular form of face from the cheek-bones to the chin is noticeable among the Bororoji as among the Rahazawa Fulani of the Katsina area, but the face is somewhat longer in proportion to the breadth than further south. Their appearance is Semitic, though the nose is never heavy but straight, and this is the case even more among the women than the men. Both sexes wear bead necklaces; the peaked cloth cap is the ornament of the men. The women have anklets and bracelets of copper and as many as six large copper curtain rings in their ears, the only disfigurement of their handsome faces. Of the customs, religion and organisation of the Bororoji little is known. Like their cousins in the south, they anoint the wide-branching horns of their cattle, and when they drink milk, though none must be spilled, a little is left in the bottom of the calabash as an offering to the Eternal Spirit. The Fulani believe that one day they will return to the East, whence their tradition says that they came, but how or why or when they left this unknown home has not been explained. Obedient to tradition, numbers of them are settling year by year in the Nilotic Sudan.

The last belt of bush between the Sahara and Sudan is reached a day's march from Tanut. The Elakkos bush further east ceases completely in about Lat. 15° 20′ N.; on the road to Termit the vegetation becomes very scanty some way south of a belt of white sand dunes in Lat. 15° 30′ N.: north of them the country is pure steppe desert. The Damergu bush, however, extends as far north as Lat. 15° 50′ to the Taberghit valley on the eastern road to Air, and to Tembellaga on the western road. Damergu forms a salient in the line of the Sudan vegetation.

The belt of sand dunes on the way to Termit is said to run eastward even beyond the Bilma-Chad road south of Agadem well, and gradually to broaden all the way; in the west it hardly reaches the edge of Damergu. Some fifty miles north of Talras in Elakkos the same zone of acacia trees, which occur in the hollows of the dunes on the Termit road, follows a depression called the Tegama valley.[55] The surface, like that of the steppe desert, is of heavy buff-coloured sand in long whale-back dunes.

The Northern Damergu bush is different to the belt which runs along the southern side of the country. The trees and shrubs are principally of the acacia variety. The larger vegetation which is typical of the Sudan has disappeared, but the grasses and ground plants are still characteristic of the south. The burr grass which makes life burdensome to the traveller reigns supreme. The “Karengia” (*Pennisetum distichium*) grows in clumps or small tufts some fifteen inches in height. In Northern Damergu the ground is densely carpeted with this grass. As soon as the summer rains are over it sheds a little seed with a crown of small sharp spikes. Leather and the bare human skin alone afford the burrs no hold; any other material seems to attract them irresistibly. In the presence of this pest the bush natives have found the only solution, which is to go almost naked; the clothed but unhappy European blasphemes until he is too weary to speak. Water is the only remedy; it softens the little burr and makes it possible to remove it without disintegrating entirely the mesh of one’s apparel, but water in this belt of land is scarce.

The next watering-points after leaving Gamram are Farak, and Hannekar on the Menzaffer valley. The latter is now on the most direct road to Air, since the slightly more eastern track from the former point by In Asamed well to Tergulawen became impossible when the latter well was filled in during the late war. At Hannekar there is a large depression covered with thick undergrowth and small trees standing in a pool of water which lasts for some months after the rains. As the pool dries up, shallow wells are dug in the bed. The water supply at Farak is all contained in shallow wells, but as watering from them is a much slower process than sending cattle and camels to drink at a pool, it is customary for the local Tuareg and Fulani to stay in the

Hannekar area as long as they can. After the rains and until the wells are re-dug at Farak there is consequently a period when there is practically no water there at all, as Barth found early in 1851. Nevertheless, since the permanent supply at Farak below the ground is greater than anywhere else in Northern Damergu, it has come to be considered the real starting-point of the eastern road to Air. Its importance as a rendezvous for pasturing tribes as well as for north-bound caravans explains the numerous disasters which have occurred there at the hands of Tuareg and Tebu raiders.

North of Farak is a long hill falling away steeply on the side towards the wells. It gave Barth[56] the impression of forming a sharply defined southern border to the desert plateau between Damergu and Air. The existence of so marked an edge is, however, not borne out in fact, for no similar escarpment exists west of it on the road north of Hannekar, nor yet, as Foureau[57] points out, on the western road to Air, by Abellama. The hill of Farak, like another smaller one at Kidigi north of Hannekar, is an isolated elevation.

Permanent habitation used to extend about one day's march north of Farak, to the neighbourhood of In Asamed well, but after the latter was filled in, which I understand occurred during the 1917 revolt, when Tamatut well, further east, and Tergulawen on the borders of Air were also destroyed, Farak became the last village of the Sudan. Neither in recent years nor of old, however, did it ever possess the same permanency or importance as Gamram. Farak was always liable to be deserted at a moment's notice in times of danger. To-day the skin and straw huts of the Ifadeyen and Kel Tamat tribes are scattered about in the dense bush all over the district. The camps change from year to year. When I passed this way there were Isherifan near Guliski and Ighelaf south-east of Gamram, Ifadeyen at Farak, and Ifadeyen and Kel Tamat at Hannekar.

Since the more direct road from Farak by In Asamed to Tergulawen has been abandoned, there is now no water for caravans between that place or Hannekar and the Air plateau except at Milen,[58] which is one day south of the mountains. The present track from Farak, after crossing the Tekursat valley at a point near the site of In Asamed well, inclines slightly west and joins the direct track from Hannekar to Milen, running almost due north and south. The apparent angle made by the Farak-Milen track at In Asamed puzzled me when I came to plot it on paper from a compass traverse, for the extraordinary straightness of these old roads between important points, even in the rough hill country of Air, is very remarkable. I eventually realised that a line from Farak produced through In Asamed was on the direct bearing of the old well of Tergulawen. This disused track is the original southern end of what is called the "Tarei tan Kel Owi," or Kel Owi road, in other words, of the main caravan track from Tripoli to Nigeria. The road in Air and in the south is usually called among the Tuareg after the confederation of tribes in control of the way. Down this eastern track came Barth and his companions in 1850-1.

In Asamed, meaning in Temajegh "(The Well) of Cold Water," was just over 100 feet deep; its existence shows that Damergu has been left behind and Azawagh has begun, for the former is a land of rain pools and shallow and seasonal wells, while the latter, north of the last Sudan bush, is a desert country with occasional very deep wells and no surface water. It is called Azawagh, a Temajegh name applied to several semi- or totally desert areas in the Sahara. The fact that it is not confined to the country south of Air must be borne in mind in seeking to identify the various areas referred to under this name by the Arab geographers. There is, for instance, an Azawad, a name corrupted in Arabic for Azawagh, north of Timbuctoo.

North of the broad Tekursat valley, with scarcely any marked channel and sparsely covered slopes, is a low plateau with three small valleys, rejoicing in the uncouth name of Teworshekaken. Beyond is the Inafagak valley, and finally the smaller and probably tributary valley of Keta. From here to the Taberghit valley the bush thins out more and more; patches of bare sand become frequent, and the trees are considerably smaller. In none of these valleys has the rain-water left a definite bed of flow, though dry pool bottoms and short sections of channel may be seen here and there. The valleys are sometimes several miles from side to side; they were probably in the first instance longitudinal depressions between heavy sand dunes formed along the direction of the prevalent wind; the sides are even now of too recent formation and too permeable to spill the rain-water into definite beds along the bottoms.

At the southern edge of the immense Taberghit valley the character of the country changes quite definitely. The surface becomes dotted with little hummocks where the sand has been washed against a small bush or piece of scrub; otherwise the ground is bare. The few trees are grouped in scattered clumps. The ground vegetation is no longer predominantly “Karengia,” but one of several kinds of less offensive and more useful desert grasses impregnated with salt. The best camel fodder, curiously enough, is the true desert vegetation. The animals eat it avidly on account of the salt it contains, and even long periods of drought do not conquer its obstinate greenness. Its nutritive power is greater and it is more wholesome than the luxuriant Southland fodder.

At Taberghit a track runs direct to Agades by way of Ihrayen spring. When both the eastern roads were in use, the Hannekar track was used by people going to Agades, while the more eastern Farak-In Asamed route by way of Tergulawen was frequented by caravans bound for Northern Air.

A day before reaching Milen well you feel very strongly that the Sudan lies behind. The last bush has been left near Taberghit. In front is an open depression perhaps five miles wide and not more than fifty feet deep: it contains no stream bed, but here and there patches of dry cracked mud indicate the formation of short-lived rain pools. East and west the same stark valley runs as far as eye can see. Its course is clearly defined and it is without intersecting basins or tributaries or curves. On the far crest are loose buff-coloured sand dunes and then a few small acacias. The levels gradually rise in a series of folds, one of which contains the closed basin and disused Anu n'Banka[59]; another forms a valley called Kaffardá, which is like Taberghit but on a smaller scale. The folds lie parallel to one another along the line of the prevalent E.N.E. wind which always blows in Azawagh. This wind is one of the peculiarities for which the country is notorious. Both times I crossed this region it was blowing with great violence. In June it was suffocatingly hot; I camped one noonday to rest out of sheer exhaustion in a group of trees on the northern side of Taberghit. There was practically no shade: the leaves of the stunted trees were too thin to shelter even three persons. The temperature was over 110° F. in the shade, and visibility did not exceed a quarter of a mile, owing to the blowing sand and dust. Six months later I returned the same way. The same wind was blowing, but it was so cold at midday that I was unable to keep warm, even walking, with two woollen shirts, a drill coat, a leather jerkin and a blanket over my shoulders. Where a bush or sand dune offered shelter from the wind the sun was quite hot, but that night the thermometer fell to 31° F., after having registered 92° F. at 3 p.m. in a sheltered spot in the shade. It was very unpleasant. Barth's experience of the wind and cold of Azawagh was much the same as mine. He writes: "The wind which came down with a cold blast from the N.N.E. was so strong that we had difficulty in pitching our tent;"[60] it was responsible for the most "miserable Christmas" he had ever spent. I was there a few days before Christmas in 1922 and can vouch for the accuracy of his verdict. Even the blinding glare and heat of June were preferable to the bleak cold of the winter nights.

One effect of the constant wind is that the longitudinal dunes in Azawagh have retained their characteristic form more generally than further south. Their gentle rounded contours, which the wind tends to restore whenever the rain happens to have modified them, are characteristic. There is, of course, less precipitation here than further south, though it has been sufficient in Tagedufat to produce a considerable growth of desert vegetation along the bottom of the valley, where there are a number of small trees and an abundance of every conceivable type of salt bush and grass. It is said at certain seasons of the year to produce the finest camel fodder in this part of Africa.

All over Azawagh are numerous deserted sites where millet used to be grown on the sandy slopes. The people who cultivated this arid country lived in temporary tents and huts except further north between Tagedufat and Milen, and consequently no trace of their dwellings remains. The evidence, however, of cleared and levelled patches and of broken earthenware is as unmistakable here as in Damergu. Between Keta and Tagedufat there is a succession of such clearings. It is borne in upon one that this heavy buff-coloured sand country where only desert vegetation now appears to thrive is in reality quite fertile so long as it receives any rain at all. The climate has probably not altered enough in recent times to account for the desertion of Azawagh; it seems rather to have been due to a decrease of the population. The Kel Azawagh, according to tradition, were numerous at a time when Damergu was thickly peopled, and there was not enough land available there or in Air to satisfy the needs of a people squeezed between the south and the north, whence the population was constantly being driven into the Sudan. It is clear that the Kel Azawagh who made these millet cultivations in a zone of desert steppe must have been of a fairly sedentary disposition, for a nomad people would have contented itself, as the modern Tuareg inhabitants of Azawagh do, with grazing herds and flocks on the excellent pastures.

In referring to the Kel Tegama a plea was advanced that the name was primarily a geographical one, and one not properly appertaining to a single tribe. The name Kel Azawagh, to which the same considerations certainly apply, is found to some extent interchangeable with Kel Tegama. Now it will be shown later that the Tuareg of Air and Damergu only reached these lands comparatively late in history; consequently an allusion in Ptolemy to a Tegama people appears to refer to a non-Tuareg folk in this or some other area of the same name. I see no reason to doubt that it was these Tegama and Azawagh areas which were meant by Ptolemy, and therefore conclude that before the Tuareg arrived they were possessed by a people to whom the millet clearings and village sites are probably due. The later Tuareg Tegama, or Kel Tegama, as we should more properly say, as well as the Kel Azawagh, were merely a section of People of the Veil who later lived in the areas, and in the course of time were named after them, though it is possible that the name Azawagh was one given by the Tuareg to an area previously called Tegama by its former inhabitants.

We shall see[61] that among the ancient divisions of the People of the Veil in the Hawara group is a Kel Azawagh. The peculiarities of the Hawara clans would not connote any sedentary instinct in this tribe, whether it lived in this or in another area called Azawagh; but when we find in the Tetmokarak tribe of the Kel Geres group now living near Sokoto (whither they migrated from Air through this Azawagh area) a subsection called Tegama, and when we have learnt[62] that the Kel Geres are almost certainly a Hawara people, we can be even more inclined to the view just suggested regarding the use of the names Azawagh and Tegama and the origin of the people at various times living there. As a tribal name Kel Azawagh has now disappeared. The French 1/2,000,000 map displays it in the valley between Agades and the Tiggedi cliff, but out of place, for when still in use it was applicable to an area rather further east. Although it is no longer a proper name, it serves the Ifadeyen who now live in Azawagh for a descriptive term of themselves in accordance with the usual practice regarding local tribal nomenclature.

In the periods between the rains the village sites in the Taberghit or Tagedufat valleys watered at the deep wells of Tagedufat, Anu n'Banka, Aghmat, Taberghit and presumably Tateus, though I know nothing of the last named. All these wells have now become silted up by wind-borne sand, but could easily be cleared if the population returned, as the water has not disappeared.

The whole area between Taberghit and Tagedufat is covered with small mobile dunes; the two valleys themselves are, however, free of them. There is no loose sand at all in the Tagedufat valley, a curious phenomenon probably connected with the eddies formed by the prevalent wind in the channel of a depression between the higher banks. If this were true, the existence of dunes at Kaffarda would conversely point to its being an isolated basin, and this indeed is probably the case. Anu n'Banka is in a little hollow, the sides of which are also covered with small dunes. The bottom itself is clayey and free from blown sand, showing traces of having been a rain-pool at certain seasons. Surrounding the depression are millet clearings and a little rock outcrop. It is the most southerly point in Azawagh where stone occurs, and the outpost of the more conspicuous rock formations of the Tagedufat valley.

Although the first part of the descent into Tagedufat is imperceptible, the appearance of the ground has changed considerably on account of the small crescentic dunes of very fine white sand which overlie the heavier buff-coloured sand of the surface. The crescentic type is characteristic of young dunes in process of formation,[63] their last stage being the long whale-back down of heavy particles which tend to settle or become cemented and eventually to support some vegetation. The Azawagh valleys present a series of interesting examples of the youngest type of dunes, which are still moving rapidly, superimposed upon the oldest fixed dune formations oriented along the line of the prevalent wind. It is curious that at no point has the fine and very mobile sand which is continually being carried in from the great Eastern Desert collected in large masses: the small crescentic bodies, the horns of which, of course, lie down wind, or, in other words, point west to south-west, are neither continuous nor contiguous. The underlying buff-coloured surface is covered with a number of small trees and scattered scrub or grass in isolated clumps. This vegetation becomes covered by the crescent dunes and in time uncovered as the white sand moves westward. Where this vegetation can be seen emerging from the crescentic formations on the windward side it is still alive, pointing to a fairly rapid motion of the body of sand. It is true that some of this desert scrub is sufficiently hardy to withstand a period of, it is said, as much as four years without any rain, and even then it only requires very little moisture in the air or some dew; the numerous small acacias, however, if wholly engulfed for any length of time, would die. Yet at no point is there either a wake of dead vegetation behind the larger crescentic dunes or even an unduly large proportion of dead trees. The progress of the small dunes is therefore undoubtedly rapid, and is due to the constant wind, which should, however, have tended to create larger masses. The crescentic dunes are rarely more than twelve feet high at the most; their individual area is, of course, relatively large owing to the very flat slipping angle of the fine grains. Barth records dunes as far as Tergulawen; but there is no evidence regarding the country east of this point,[64] which is probably too far north of the dune belt on the Termit road to be connected with that zone.

The Tagedufat valley bottom, unlike the Milen and Taberghit valleys, is marked by a more continuous stream bed along which water flows every year for a short time during the rains. The most remarkable feature of the valley is a series of flat bare patches formed by the pools of rain-water; they are of no great size, but the surface is stained bluish-white by chemical incrustation. The Milen and Taberghit valleys, while possessing a few similar rain-pools, none of which survives for more than the briefest period, do not exhibit this complexion. The point is of particular interest in connection with a report given to me by my guide, Sidi, who was with me on the way south. He is a widely travelled and knowledgable man. He stated that the Tagedufat depression extended eastwards across the desert all the way to Fashi, and was marked along the whole of its course by such patches of chemical incrustation. My travelling companion, Buchanan, observed that the ground shortly before reaching Fashi was stained in the manner described. In the open desert, where in the immensity of space it is difficult to determine the direction of a very slightly accentuated valley, such noticeable features are valuable evidence.

Considering the size of the Tagedufat basin south of Milen, the valley shown as extending towards Termit on the French 1/2,000,000 map and called Tegemi (Téguémi), is perhaps a confluent, or even an inaccurate representation, of the main valley itself. A recent Camel Corps[65] reconnaissance from Talras to Eghalgawen possibly followed up one such affluent in the east bank of the main channel of Tagedufat. The importance of the Tagedufat valley from the hydrographic point of view cannot be overstated.

Directly the Tagedufat valley is crossed the rock outcrop on the north bank becomes a striking feature. Increasing in size towards the west, it falls away below the surface to the east. Crescentic dunes reappear between the outcrops and continue almost all the way to Milen. On the north side of Tagedufat, near the track, for which it serves as a landmark, is a prominent mass of black rock called the Kashwar (Stone) n'Tawa or Tawar. Far away to the N.N.E. the relief becomes bolder, rising to a group of small summits clothed with loose sand, called the Rocks of Oghum. The remains of some stone houses, at one time the southernmost permanent settlement of Air, appear in the loose sand near the hills. North of Oghum in a little depression filled with acacias is Gharus n'Zurru.[66] After a further stretch of dunes a small valley running northwards diversifies the general lie of the ground. It is called Maisumo, and contains another deep well which is still in use. This valley after a short distance runs into the Milen depression, with the conical hill of Tergulawen visible to the east and the little massif of Teskokrit to the west. The northern part of the latter group extends eastwards from the main summits as a steep ridge forming the northern bank of the Milen valley itself.

East of Tergulawen again is a small and almost unknown group of hills called Masalet, where in recent years Kaossen, afterwards leader of the Air revolt in 1917, dug a well. It only yielded brackish water, which, though good enough for camels, proved too medicinal for the Tuareg, who filled it in again. It had been dug for political purposes largely in order to facilitate parties from and for the Southland participating in the yearly caravans which fetch salt from Bilma. Masalet was designed to obviate these parties making a detour along the River of Agades or via Eghalgawen: it provided an easterly watering-point in Azawagh corresponding with Tazizilet further north in Air itself. The unsatisfactory nature of the supply, especially for caravans engaged in crossing the eastern desert, did not, however, justify the risk of leaving so remote a watering-point available for Tebu raiding parties. The fact that Masalet was constructed in recent years is interesting, as showing that the Tuareg have not lost the art of locating deep water.

The western road from Tanut to Agades via Aderbissinat and Abellama runs over much the same sort of country as that which I have just described between Farak and Milen. Aderbissinat well, seventy-five miles from Tanut and ninety-three miles from Agades, is a point of such strategic importance that the French from Zinder built a fort there during the war in order to secure their communications with Air. It has not been garrisoned of late, but proved of paramount importance during the operations of the column which marched from the south to relieve Agades during the rebellion of 1917. With the exception of the deep but copious well of Abellama, there is no useful permanent watering-place between western Damergu and Agades, as the spring of

Ihrayen in the Tiggedi cliffs has too small an output to provide for many animals. Nineteen miles north of Aderbissinat the bush ceases. As at Taberghit further east, the country rises some 200 feet to an average level of 1700-1800 feet above the sea. Beyond Timbulaga sand dunes appear on the level buff-coloured steppe, which is covered with the usual scanty vegetation of desert grass in tussocks.[67] The ground then slopes gradually down to the deep well of Abellama in Lat. 16° 16′ 30″ N. and Long. 7° 47′ 20″ E. G. Abellama as a stage corresponds with Milen on the other road.

On the easternmost or Tergulawen road Barth[68] shows that the country is again substantially the same. South of the “spacious” well, which is in a depression “ranging east and west,” with sand-hills on the south side bearing a sprinkling of desert herbage, the country is covered with small dunes on a “flat expanse of sand, mostly bare and clothed with trees only in favoured spots.” To the north is a great sandy plain running as far as the Ridge of Abadarjan, where the level descends to the upper basin of the River of Agades. The area is covered with “hád,” the most nutritious of desert plants and the most characteristic of the desert steppe of Africa. In all parts of the Sahara the distribution of the plant marks the division between the Desert and the Sown. This “hád” of the border line advances or recedes, sometimes from year to year, according to the rainfall. It is the tidal mark of the desert.

The northern part of Azawagh is geographically important, as it contains the transverse valleys which collect the southern rainfall of Air and carry it westwards into the Niger basin. The course of the

Beughqot (Beurkot) and Azelik[69] valleys is wrongly shown on the French maps. They do not unite until they have reached a far more southerly point than where they are shown to do so on the Cortier map. Furthermore, when they have joined, they turn S.W. and not S.E. A recent reconnaissance as far as Masalet proved that after these two valleys meet they turn west into a large depression which is probably the same one as that in which the well of Milen is situated, though it might, on the other hand, be the Tagedufat basin; this is a point which must for the moment remain undecided. On a solution of this problem depends the answer to the question as to whether Milen or Tagedufat is the principal basin into which the Air valleys east of Beughqot as far as Tazizilet drain. All that is clear is that they turn southwards and then westwards to join one of the two systems in question, and do not peter out in the desert as Cortier's map suggests.

West of Milen well the valley in which it is situated eventually joins the lower Tagedufat, which runs on S.W. or W. towards the Gulbi n'Kaba or the Tafassasset-T'immersoi basin. That the Tagedufat system does not enter the River of Agades over the Tiggedi cliff at some point near Ihrayen is probable owing to the fact that all this country has been subjected to a slight southerly tilt. The Tiggedi cliff, the Eghalgawen-T'in Wana massif, the cliff east of Akaraq and its continuation along the great valley, finally represented by the ridge of Abadarjan, as Barth rightly judged, are the northern boundary of this area, which slopes gently from north to south. The River of Agades receives hardly any left-bank tributaries.

Milen well could never be found without a guide. The wide valley, with sand dunes on the south side and a steep north bank where the now omnipresent rock of Air appears, is bare, dry and stony. It shimmers in the heat. Teskokrit appears as a black mass in the west on a bank of milk-white mirage set round a group of trees. The bottom of the valley is a gravel plain with a small patch of bare rock in it which an unwitting traveller would most probably pass unheeding. In this patch of rock is a small hole with a large circular stone near by. The hole, barely three feet across, is the mouth of a well driven through hard sandstone all the way down to the water-bearing stratum, seventy feet below the ground. The mouth can scarcely be seen fifty yards away. The rounded stone is several inches thick and was said to have been used to cover up the mouth of the well to prevent its becoming silted up with driving sand.

I came there in June, after more than forty hours' march from Hannekar with four tired camels and two men, an Ifadeyen guide and an Arab of Ghat in the Fezzan. We had very little water left, so little, in fact, that it was all used in one pot to cook some rice for us three. The place was deserted and very lonely. The wind was driving the sand so hard that it stung the naked calves of my legs as I stood at the well with Ishnegga the guide, drawing water for the thirsty camels. Camels in hot weather drink a great deal, and hauling water in a two-gallon leather bucket from a seventy-foot well is hard work in a temperature of over 150° F. in the sun. The camels drank interminably. The last and best camel was still thirsty and remained to be watered. The beast was rather weak. It had a bad saddle sore, a hole about the size of a large man's hand, in its back, and it was festering and full of maggots. We had all just done a journey of over 500 miles from Tanut to Termit and back, in thirty-five days, including nine days of halts, averaging, in other words, nearly twenty miles per marching day for twenty-six days. The camel had begun to drink. Then as we were drawing a full bucket the well rope broke six feet from my hand and fell to the bottom of the well with a splash. A vain hour was spent, while the rice cooked and got more and more full of sand, trying to fish up the rope and bucket with an iron hook made of the nose-piece of a camel bridle fastened to a knotted baggage rope. This too was lost after hooking the tangle, which it joined at the bottom of the well. Prospects looked gloomy as our thirst increased. I have distinct recollections of the sky and valley getting whiter and more metallic and the heat more intolerable. Finally, just enough rope was found by untying all the baggage to ladle up water a half-gallon at a time in a small canvas bucket. But the poor camel had to wait a long time to finish its drink, for the first of the supply to reach the top was used to refill the tanks.

As I was leaving the well two men with three camels came in from the south. They had started to return to their own country in the hills, after an enforced sojourn in the neighbourhood of the fort at Tanut on account of their rebellious propensities in 1917 and 1918. They had no possessions but three young camels, and had started with only enough water in one small skin for half their journey. The two men reached Milen, having drunk nothing for twenty-four hours. They were rather exhausted, but had fully expected to have to do another ten or twelve hours' march the same night to the nearest water at T'in Wana, as they had only a calabash bottle and no rope with which to draw any more water. They had risked death sooner than stay a moment longer than was necessary in the south, even to collect enough well rope or equipment for a journey which most Europeans would consider difficult. It was very pleasant to give these two men, an old noble and his serf, some especially good cold water from a small canvas cooler which I had prepared. When the serf carried away a pan of icy water, he first offered it to his master, who drank it.

The second time I came to Milen was in December. There was such a crowd of people and of flocks belonging to the Ifadeyen watering that the supply was practically exhausted, and it took me five hours to get enough water for the return journey to Hannekar. But in June the camping grounds were deserted, for there was hardly any pasture during those last few days before the rains.

The deep wells of Azawagh fall into two categories. The narrow wells, like Milen, Aouror, higher up the Milen valley, and Maisumo, are intended primarily for watering flocks. Their output is copious but slow, and not unlimited. Not more than two buckets can draw water comfortably at the same time: for watering flocks where time is not important and the animals can be brought in from pasture in small batches, these wells are adequate. Tagedufat, like Tergulawen, on the other hand, was a caravan well; it was broad and capable of watering a whole caravan rapidly. It became silted up with drifting sand, like the pasture wells, Anu n'Banka and Gharus n'Zurru. Of Aghmat, Tateus and Taberghit I have no details, but when Barth passed this way no stop was made at either of the first two, which were on his road. The supposition is that unless these wells were dug since his day, which is not likely, as the population of Azawagh had by then already decreased, they also were intended for pastoral purposes. They are now all silted up.

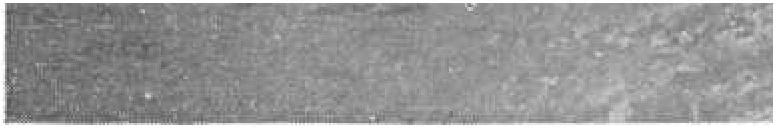
The theory that the wells of Azawagh were made by the Ifadeyen, who have only recently come into this area for winter pasturage, was advanced to me, but my informant, who joined my caravan as an unbidden but welcome guest at Milen on my way south, was himself a member of this tribe, so the information is prejudiced. The wells are certainly very old and are probably the handiwork of the denser population which cultivated millet and had its permanent villages in the Taberghit and Tagedufat valleys. The pasture wells were regarded as the property of the tribe in the area, and now, therefore, of the Ifadeyen. The big caravan wells were under the tutelage of the keepers of the great highway to the south, the Kel Owi confederation, and before them, therefore, of their predecessors in Eastern Air. These big wells were always considered to be free for passing caravans to use without let or hindrance at any time, except in the event of a feud being in progress between the Kel Owi and the owners of the caravan. Caravans, on the other hand, using pasture wells, could only do so with the permission of the tribe pasturing in the area. The latter, conversely, had no rights over the great wells. The maintenance of these rights is the origin of confederations like the Kel Owi, for the freedom of the great wells is a vital necessity to a society of caravaneers, and has to be retained by force if necessary. It accounts for such raids as those conducted by Belkho on Gamram, where the Isherifan had interfered with passing caravans just once too often.

One of the Azawagh wells, Aouror, has been the object of much dispute among the Tuareg: there are inscriptions on a neighbouring rock recording the ownership and, to some extent, the history of the well. It would be attractive to think that “Aouror” meant the “Well of the Dawn.” It is not impossible, since Arorá or Aghorá[70] means “dawn” in Temajegh, and Aouror is almost the easternmost well of Azawagh. Like Milen, it is driven through the rock, but is only some four fathoms deep. Like Milen, too, its sides are scored by rope-marks which in places have cut deep into the hard sandstone. Wet ropes covered with sand of course cut into rock quite rapidly, but even so the antiquity of these wells must be considerable. The rock cutting, which no Tuareg to-day is capable of executing, is perfect; the walls are perpendicular and smooth; the plan is a perfect circle.

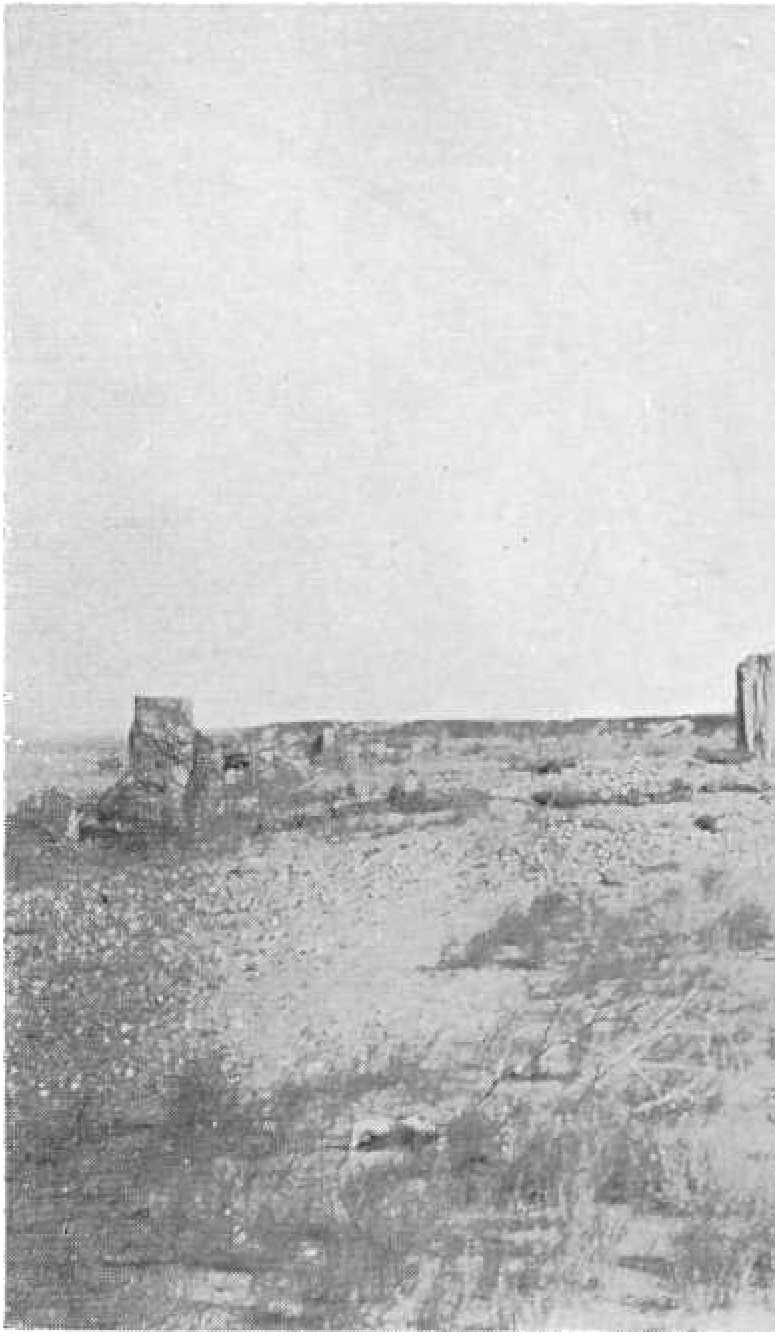
Abellama and Aderbissinat in the west of Azawagh are deep caravan wells with good water; the former is in friable soil, and has a tendency to fall in.[71] These two, with Aouror, Maisumo and Milen, are the only live wells in Azawagh to-day.

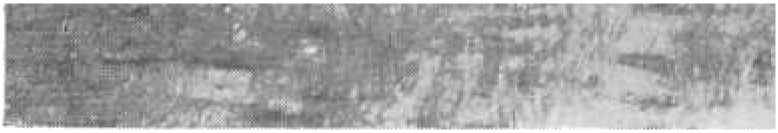
After a short gentle slope up, the ground descends from the ridge on the north side of the Milen valley in a series of long terraces to a basin, the lower part of which is known as the Eghalgawen valley. It joins either the River of Agades at the south-west corner of the T’in Wana massif, or turns south-west towards the Milen and Tagedufat basin; my own impression, based on native sources which are not wholly reliable, inclines to the first view. East of the watering-point of Eghalgawen, the valley runs in a fold, into which flows one of the Southern Air valleys. The actual stream bed is wide and well marked by the heavy annual flood which it carries away from the hills of Eghalgawen and T’in Wana. In character the lower part of the valley along the foot of the hills, with its short tributaries from this little massif, belongs to the Air plateau, and not to Azawagh. The vegetation in the bed is dense and heavy. Dûm palms (*Cucifera thebaica*) and large trees appear. Geographically and geologically the Air plateau has already commenced at the rocks of Tagedufat: actually, however, it is not reached till the River of Agades is crossed, for Eghalgawen is still held to be in Azawagh.

PLATE 6



RIVER

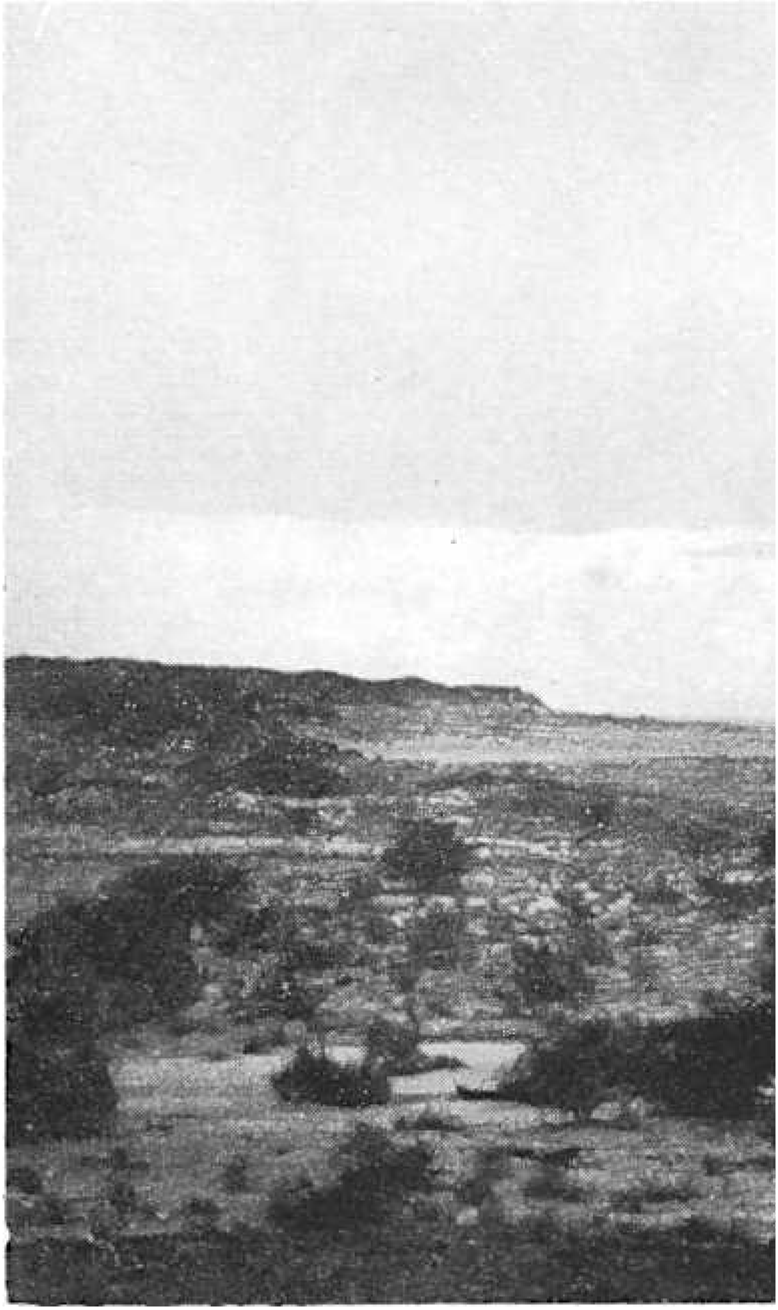


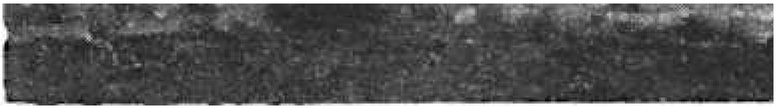


The cliff of Tiggedi, with its continuation eastward for some way beyond the Eghalgawen hills, is the southern shore of a wide valley which serves as a catchment for all the waters of Southern Air that do not escape by the south-east corner of the plateau into the Azawagh valleys previously described. The cliff is a geological phenomenon of great interest. At the point where the Abellama road descends into the valley some forty miles south of Agades the cliff is sheer for a height of over 200 feet. The path down from the general level of the desert to the dry alluvial plain, which forms the bottom of the River of Agades, is steep and rough. Standing at the top and looking east and west, it seems like a cliff on the sea-shore broken by capes and small inlets; the illusion of maritime action is remarkable. Westwards at Marandet, though still a definite feature of the area, it is less abrupt; erosion has broken down the precipice, while the Marandet torrent has eaten away a ravine leading even more gradually up to the level of the desert. Eastwards, on the other hand, the cliff continues unbroken as far as the Eghalgawen and T'in Wana massif, where higher hills above the desert level take the place of the cliff itself. Though they form a salient in the line, their abrupt northern slopes continue the eastward trend until they come to an end near Akaraq, where the cliff reappears. Here again it is absolutely sheer, if somewhat less elevated; it is broken by a narrow inlet where the Akaraq valley, the only tributary[72] of any size on the south bank of the River of Agades, enters the main basin. At this point the cliff assumes the most fantastic form. The sandstone has been shaped by erosion into pinnacles and blocks of the strangest shapes. The Akaraq valley itself runs back like a cove in a cliffbound sea-coast; both banks are nearly vertical, decreasing in height as the level of the bottom gradually rises to the desert, where the bare rock has been deeply cut into by the water, lying in a semi-permanent pool in a very narrow gully. The bottom of the inlet is covered with luxuriant pasture and some fair-sized trees, while at the mouth, in the main valley, stands an island of rock with vertical sides to complete the illusion of a sea-coast.[73] From the top of the cliff you may look across the great broad valley toward the mountains of Air that are scarcely visible in the north. No defined bank appears to limit the far slope of the basin. There is deep green Alwat pasture[74] in the nearer distance, merging imperceptibly into yellow grass and bare sand further away. The blazing glare and shimmering heat wash the feet of the cliff where a shelving beach of loose white sand has been thrown up against the rocks. The plateau at the top of the cliff is quite flat, and covered with a layer of small hard gravel over the rock. It is without any vegetation.

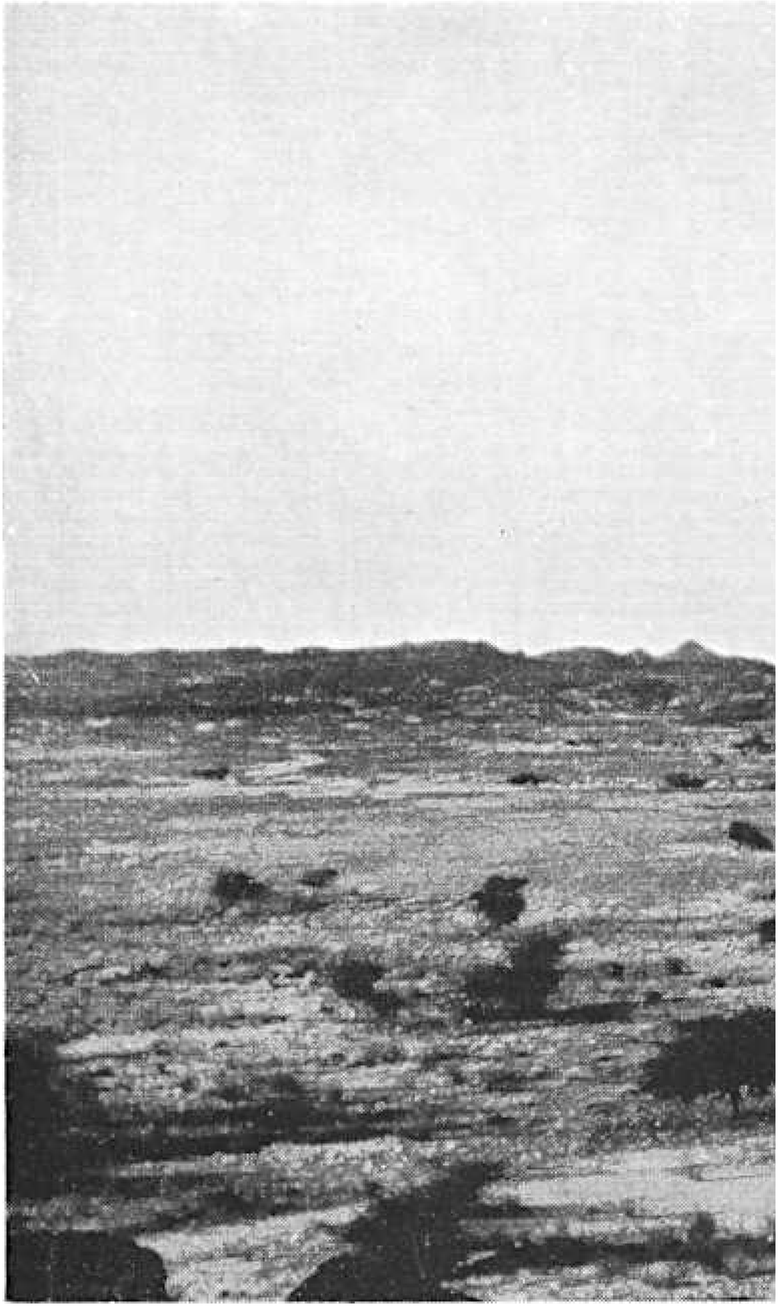
The great valley bears several names. At the Akaraq inlet it is called Tezorigi. Opposite the Eghalgawen massif it is the T’in Dawin, and further west the Araten valley. West again it has no name, but where it finally leaves the mountains of Air for the Assawas swamp on the way to the T’immersoi basin, the natives call it the Ighazar n’Agades, or River of Agades, from the city which stands on its northern shore, and this is the name I have adopted for the whole. How far the cliffs extend eastward I do not know. A great fork in the valley is visible from Akaraq, the channel is divided by a bluff promontory, but the cliff continues along the southern bank of the southern branch until it is lost from sight. The ridge of Abadarjan which Barth crossed north of Tergulawen, I expect, is part of the same formation.

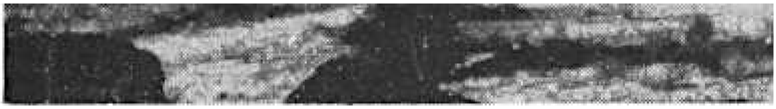
PLATE 7





RIVER OF AGADES LOOKING





EGHALC

Maritime action is highly improbable as the origin of the cliff. No traces of shells or beaches at different levels, to be accounted for by a receding sea, have been noticed. The supposition that all the Sahara was once a sea-bed is untenable, and in any case maritime action would hardly be limited to a few small areas such as this one. It seems easier to look for another explanation. The cliff and the Eghalgawen massif are a sandstone formation, but the Taruaji mountains of Air opposite the little Eghalgawen-T’in Wana massif are granitic. The cliff represents, I hazard, a fault north of which the igneous formation of the Air plateau has been extruded. The ground to the south slopes gradually away from the edge of the cliff, accounting for the virtual absence of any tributaries on the left bank of the River of Agades. There is apparently no igneous rock south of the basin, there is very little else to the north of it, with the exception of some Archean and very early rock. The fault, occasioned by the volcanic action which formed the massif of Central Air, erected a barrier to the southward drainage of the mountains, and the waters of Southern Air were diverted westward. A larger rainfall than now caused the gradual silting up of the area between the bottom of the fault and the southern part of the mountains. As the ground level rose and became an alluvial plain from which practically only Mount Gadé and the island off Akaraq emerge, the rain floods began to wash along the cliff and eroded the sandstone into the fantastic forms which are now seen. Wind-borne sand from the eastern desert completed the process of shaping the rocks. The accretion of alluvium diminished with a decreasing rainfall in Air, and the surface deposit of wind-borne sand formed what is now in dry weather a hard gravel-covered plain which, in the rainy season, turns into mud-flats and becomes almost impassable. The water flows aimlessly in the alluvium along deep-cut gullies with vertical sides that constantly change their course. The alluvial origin of the plain of the River of Agades is unmistakable.

---

[44] That is, "The People of Katsina."

[45] Chudeau has called this transitional area the Sahel Zone, but the name is borrowed from the north and does not seem to be used in the latitudes under discussion: cf. *Le Sahara Soudanais*, passim.

[46] Now called the "Colonie du Niger-Tchad."

[47] The natives pronounce the name Tasawa, but "Tessawa" is consecrated by European usage since Barth's day.

[48] The plural of "Akri" in Temajegh.

[49] Wrongly spelt Gum*rek* by Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. chap. xxi.

[50] Jean: *Les Touareg du Sud-Est*, p. 15.

[51] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 36.

[52] *Ibid.*, Vol. V. p. 554.

[53] *Ibid.*, Vol. I. p. 529.

[54] *Vide* Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, pp. 328 and 359, *et infra*, Chap. XI.

[55] On the French 1/1,000,000 map. Cf. Appendix VII.

[56] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 521-2.

[57] *Documents de la Mission Foureau-Lamy*,

Fasc. II. p. 206.

[58]There are other small wells in the immediate vicinity of Milen: cf. *infra*.

[59]Anu (plural Unan) means “well” in Temajegh.

[60]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 523.

[61]*Infra*, Chap. X.

[62]*Infra*, Chap. XI.

[63]Cf. V. Cornish: *Waves of Sand and Snow* (Unwin).

[64]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 523.

[65]*Vide* Appendix III.

[66]“Gharus” means “deep” in Temajegh, and when thus used of places always signifies a “deep well.” This one, however, was silted up.

[67]Buchanan’s *Out of the World*, pp. 128-30.

[68]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 523.

[69]The indications on the Cortier map that the south-eastern and eastern valleys of the Air massif peter out into the desert in the direction of Termit are certainly inaccurate. Cf. 1/500,000 Carte de l’Air, 2 sheets, Service Géogr. des Col., 1912.

[70]This word is believed to have been borrowed by the Tuareg from the Latin. *Vide infra*, Chap. IX.

[71]The French are lining it with concrete.

[72]Unless, as has been mentioned, the Eghalgawen valley also joins the River of Agades, S.W. of T’in Wana.

[73]A similar island, but considerably larger, has been left isolated in the plain by the erosion of the water in the River of Agades; it is a low conical hill, rather similar in shape to the

Tergulawen peak, called Mount Gadé, lying between the T'in Wana hills and Agades.

[74] A fleshy plant, growing about two feet high rather like a veitch, and containing as much moisture.

CHAPTER III

THE CITY OF AGADES

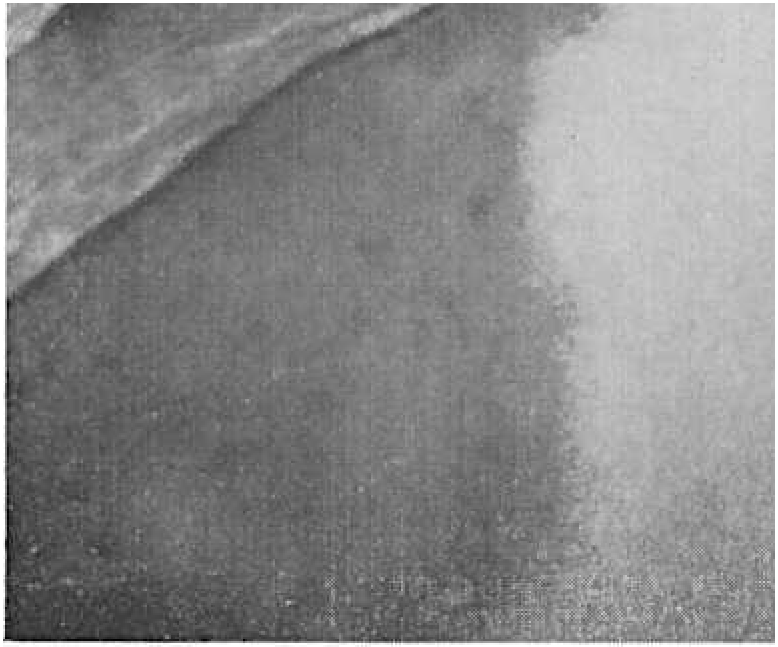
THE Eghalgawen massif contains a number of watering-points. The pool of Eghalgawen is near the junction of a valley sloping down from the hills, the main valley here assuming the name of the watering-point. Abundant water exists all the year round under the sand in the bed near a low rock on the left bank. It has rather taken the place of Tergulawen well as a *point de passage* for caravans on the Great South Road, and used in the past to be a favourite resort for caravan raiders. The neighbouring hill, like the one at Tergulawen, is a well-known watch-tower in times of trouble, since both of them command the approaches to a strategic point.[75] T'in Wana, Tarrajerat, Tebehic and some pools in the Isagelmas valley on the southern periphery of the Eghalgawen massif, are watering-points for the camels and flocks of the tribes which range over Azawagh, to-day the Ifadeyen. Their winter camping grounds can be seen all the way from Tagedufat to the River of Agades; they are readily distinguishable from the older permanent settlements of the original Kel Azawagh who grew millet in this area. Besides the Ifadeyen, the Kel Giga section of the Kel Tadek use the Eghalgawen hills and Azawagh pastures very considerably after the rains. The Ifoghas of Damergu rarely come so far north, since, having few camels, they lack incentive to seek these superlative desert pastures. Those members of this tribe whom I saw in Azawagh were typical in possessing only donkeys and goats, which of course will eat almost anything.

After a 560-mile excursion to Termit and Elakkos, I rejoined my travelling companions, whom I had forsaken at Tanut, in the little massif on the south side of the River of Agades. They were camped a short day's march from Milen, at the famous permanent pool in the T'in Wana valley. Of all pools in Africa it is of T'in Wana that I shall keep the pleasantest recollections. I was greeted by a fusillade of welcome and immediately went for a swim in the deep pool that had recently been filled by the rains. The channel cut by the water in the rock was in places fifteen feet deep. The pool had a sandy bottom, with a rock four feet high at one end for a diving platform. A length of twenty yards was clear to swim in, and then came a succession of smaller pools beneath the arches and overhanging sides of red and black rock. The erosion of the sandstone was most remarkable. There were witches' cauldrons and buttresses and enchanted caves, with deep crannies in the tall vertical sides. In the wide valley above, masses of green bushes and branching palms seemed to make the place a heaven-sent garden of rest in a hot land. We were all very happy, and the camels were improving fast. Our men were delighted to see the mountains of Air again. My guide from the south, Ishnegga, who was of the Ifadeyen, found relations in a neighbouring valley. There were acquaintances on the road to gossip with and discuss. Poor Ishnegga shot himself accidentally some months later, as I heard from his beautiful old mother, whom I had met at Hannekar and saw for a second time on my way home.

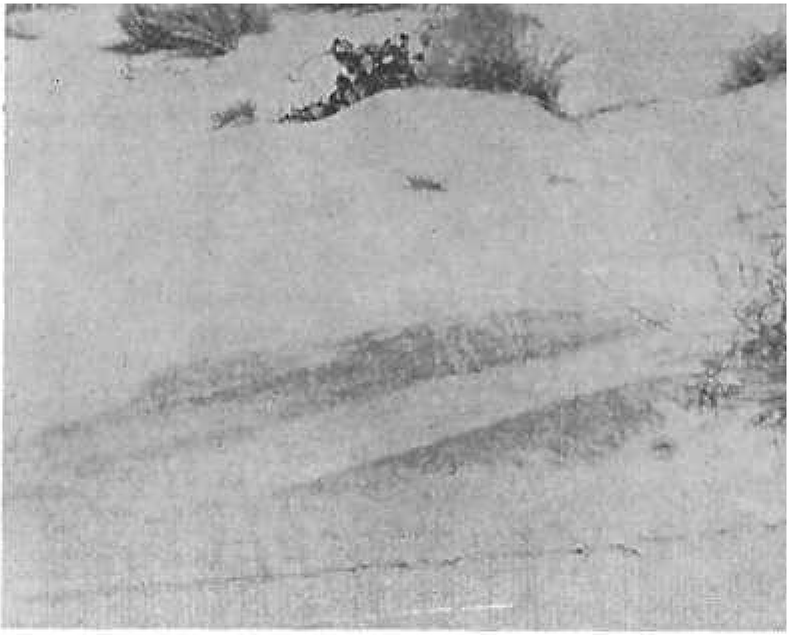
The sides of the T'in Wana ravine were covered with T'ifinagh inscriptions relating to the tribes that had pastured here in their time; they recorded the names of people, messages to and from their friends, and the professions of love of their men and women. The low hills behind were rough and without vegetation or soil; but some mountain sheep, gazelle and sand-grouse subsisted on the coarse grass in the ravines. The sandstone of the massif seemed to have been subjected to volcanic heat. A deposit of fossil trees among the rocks and boulders was found: a specimen piece picked up near Akaraq a few miles north-east had probably been brought from this deposit near T'in Wana. It was identified on my return as a Tertiary conifer, but the siliceous replacement had been too complete to permit of more detailed examination, except by microscope.

A very pleasant camp was eventually broken, and Tebehic, on the north-west side of the hills, with two watering-places, was reached after crossing the Isagelmas valley, a collector for several small rivulets draining the western side of the hills. In spite of an attack of malaria, which overcame me, Tebehic proved most interesting, for I made friends with a family of Ifadeyen who were camping there during the rains. The man had some cows and supplied me with fresh milk, a great luxury after camel's milk and the condensed sort out of a tin. He was a widower with several children, and quite charming. One of the children was suffering from a severe abscess in the right ear. It had been "treated" by blocking the orifice with a paste made of fresh camel dung and wood ash mixed with pounded leaf of the pungent Abisgi (*Capparis sodata*) bush. I suppose the mixture was intended to act like a mustard poultice, but the discharge from the abscess being unable to escape had been causing the child acute pain, which it was easy to relieve by clearing out the mess and washing the ear. The abscess having previously opened of its own accord, the pain ceased almost as soon as the "remedy" had been removed. It was the first of my "cures" as a doctor among the Tuareg, and laid the foundations of a great reputation!

PLATE 8



TIN WANA P



ROCK OF THE TWO SLAVES, AT THE JUNCTION OF THE

After a few days at Tebehic we proceeded to cross the broad plain of the River of Agades, whither one of my companions had preceded me. Memories of that plain are unpleasant. A day’s march from the shelter of the Tebehic valley we were overtaken by a violent thunderstorm right out in the open just south of T’in Taboraq. As a convalescent cure for malaria, designed to make any reputable European doctor shudder, I recommend getting up after three days in bed, marching six hours on a camel in the sun, and then spending two more holding up a tent in company with four other men in an eighty-mile-an-hour storm with a rainfall of three-quarters of an inch in about half an hour. The exertions of five of us were successful in keeping the tent up and the baggage dry, but proved tiring. As soon as the wind was over the five human tentpoles were turned on to canalisation, which soon became necessary to drain away the deluge. When this passed, a search over the countryside had to be instituted for articles of equipment carried away by the storm. The camp stove, an unwieldy cube of sheet-iron some fifteen inches each way, and weighing nine pounds, was found 3000 yards from the camp. But the storm had been magnificent. It had commenced at about 3 p.m. as a black cloud hanging over the Air mountains in the north. The wind, before it acquired full force, bore along a cloud of orange sand gleaming in the sun, which was still uncovered by the blue-black storm above. Suddenly everything seemed to be going on at once, sunshine, sand-storm, wind, purple squalls and a white uniformity of tearing, sweeping rain. By six o'clock it was all over. The sun set in a pale yellow sky behind the T'in Wana range. The northern hills grew slate-coloured and then black, and the storm went rolling on into Damergu, illuminating the night with lightning. Hitherto my worst experience of rain had been at Guliski in Damergu, when myself, three natives and our baggage lay in a hut nine feet in diameter; it rained all night, and slowly flooded us out. One felt the water rising among the blankets in an atmosphere of damp clamminess and native humanity. Then had come a hopeless dawn, but the air soon dried everything. Yet I had still to learn what storms in the mountains could be like.

The north side of the River of Agades opposite Tebehic has no definite bank. The mountains of Air slope gradually down to the valley; they are intersected by larger and smaller valleys, forming a series of roughly parallel right bank tributaries all in close proximity to one another. The widest of them are the Azanzara, Tureyet, Amidera, Teghazar and

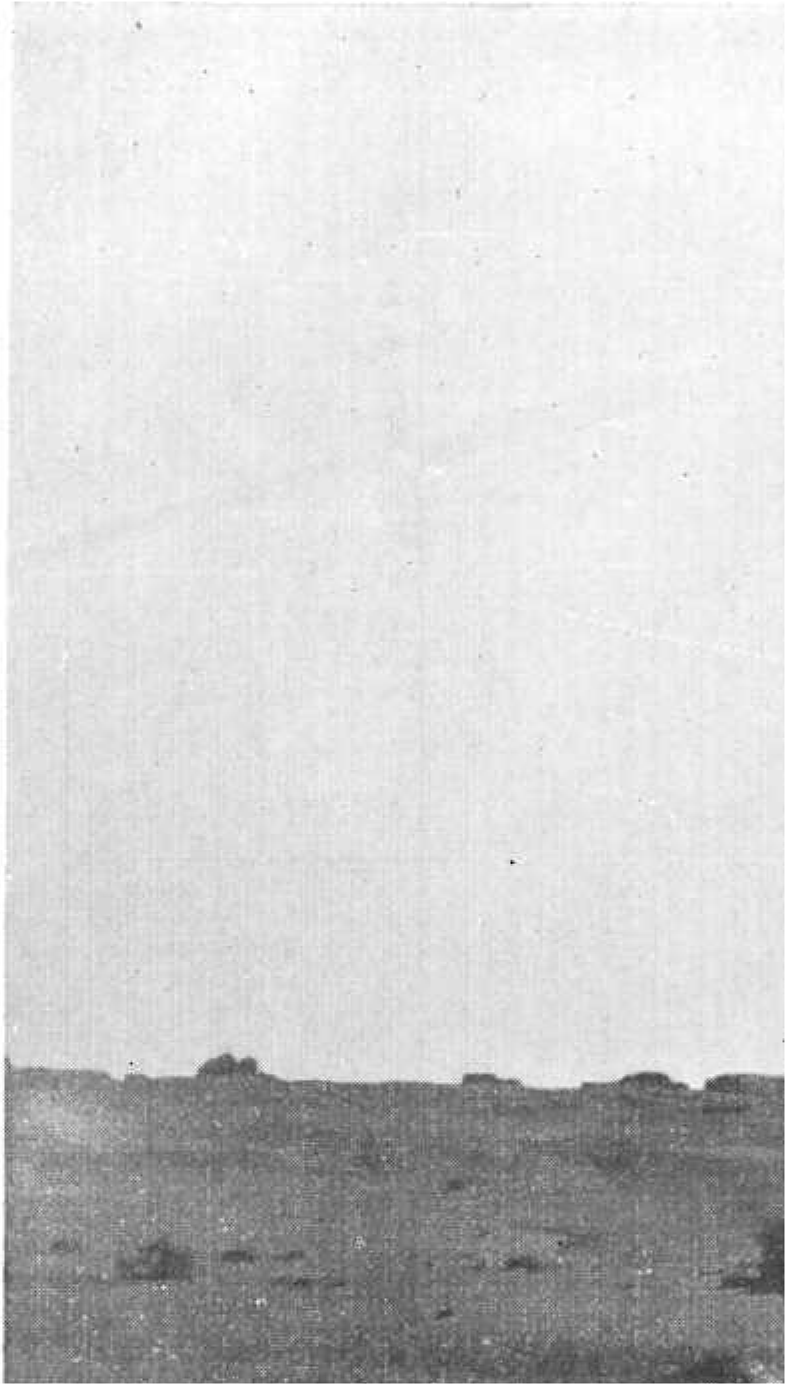
Telwa, most of which start north of the Taruaji mountains—the Tureyet and Telwa, in fact, have their head-waters in the Bagezan and Todra groups in Central Air. Some small villages lie among the foothills by these valleys, but it is dull country. A few small ill-grown trees and a little grass are all the vegetation on the succession of gravel patches which constitute the plain. The sight of the mountains of Air in front makes one want to hurry on.

South of one of these villages the opening tragedy of the 1917 revolution took place. A platoon of French Camel Corps, after completing their duties as escort to the Bilma salt caravan, had supervised the dispersal of the camels in their various tribal groups at Tabello, east of Bagezan, and were returning to Agades for a rest. They had been away perhaps a month and now were within a day's march of the city. They knew nought of what had happened in Air, suspected absolutely nothing of the unfriendly disposition of the Tuareg. Near T'in Taboraq a large force of Tuareg, which had been lying in ambush behind a little hill on the northern edge of the plain, fell on the column as it was beginning its last day's march into Agades post. A running fight ensued, in the course of which nearly the whole platoon of Camel Corps were destroyed. One officer, who was returning to France on leave, escaped southward, and a few wounded Senegalese "tirailleurs" found their way with difficulty into the fort at Agades, which had been attacked early one morning a day or two before while the garrison was out on parade. The revolution had been prepared for some time, with the connivance of the Sultan of Agades, by a Tuareg noble named Kaossen, an inveterate enemy of the French since 1900. The outbreak had been proposed by Kaossen and aided by the Senussiya and hostile elements in the Fezzan and Tripolitania as part of the anti-French and -British activities which continued in North Africa throughout the European war. The development in Air, however, came as a surprise to the French. All the Tuareg in the plateau rose, and although the garrison at Agades held out for over three months in doubt and in complete isolation, the revolt spread into Damergu and fears were even entertained for the safety of Northern Nigeria. The defence of Agades and the arrival of a column from Zinder, acting in conjunction with another column from the Niger, eventually saved the situation. The heroic resistance of the garrison at Agades and the magnificent work of the military organisation of French West Africa, over these huge expanses of country at the end of 1917 and early in 1918, have probably never even been heard of, still less recognised, in England, where events nearer home at a most critical period of the war obscured the issue of “another minor incident in the Sahara.” The column from Zinder, in spite of a severe check on the way, was the largest single body of men ever successfully sent over a desert against a nomadic people. It is my privilege to record in England, I think for the first time, the courage of those gallant French soldiers who indirectly defended Nigeria. Their efforts in Air saved a British colony from facing a situation which might have become serious owing to the general depletion of forces there, as elsewhere during those tragic months of the Great War. I am happy to make this acknowledgment, both as tribute to the French soldiers whom I had the pleasure of meeting during the Great War and in 1922, and particularly because even in Nigeria the gravity of the 1917 revolution has never been sufficiently recognised.

My route over the plain of the River of Agades lay in sight of Mount Gadé, a flat-topped hill standing alone to the south. The track used by parties from Sokoto passes this conspicuous landmark after crossing the Azawagh on the way to the rendezvous of the annual salt caravan at Tabello, under the eastern slopes of Bagezan in Central Air. After cutting this track we joined the Agades-Tabello road somewhat west of T'in Taboraq. East of this village the road passes through the other settlements which lie on the southern spurs of the Taruaji massif before it turns north to Tabello.

The track now entered and wound along a valley called the Teghazar.[76] The small torrent bed was very sodden after the rain of the previous day. On either side were low hills of bare gravel with some rock outcrop beginning to appear here and there. On the low scarps or patches of loose stones a few ragged acacias had secured an existence, marking the foot of the Air hills along the River of Agades. Eventually the track rose up to the level of the highest undulations and we came in sight of Agades. Almost simultaneously two Tuareg on camels appeared on the road. They had been sent out from Agades with an accumulation of letters, months overdue, and a message to say that we were the guests of the French officers in the fort, about a mile north of the city. As the last fold of ground was crossed, by a steep bluff where Kaossen had constructed a military work during the siege of the French garrison in 1917, the whole length of the city came in sight on a low ridge to the south-west. The far end was marked by the stately tower of the Great Mosque, unchanged since Barth saw it more than seventy years ago. Straight ahead lay the French post, surrounded by a defensive wall flanked by blockhouses and containing the tall masts of a wireless station, near the wells of T'in Shaman in a diminutive plain where the Foureau-Lamy Expedition had camped over twenty years earlier. In 1917 there was no W/T station and scarcely any fort; the buildings were all disconnected and scarcely defensible.

PLATE 9



The city of Agades used to be surrounded by mud walls, intended to baffle raiders rather than to withstand a siege. The distance along the line of their elliptical circumference, so far as it can still be traced, is a matter of three and a half to four miles. The wall has been much broken down and in some places is hard to find; its perimeter and plan seem to have varied from time to time according to the number of inhabitants. The best preserved parts are to the north-west beyond the Great Mosque, and to the north, where gates may be seen; there has evidently been considerable decay even since 1850.[77] At a distance the whole ridge on which the city stands appears covered with low, earth-coloured houses, for the most part without an upper storey.

The regular sky-line is scarcely broken save by a few dûm palms and tenuous trees rising above the uniform level of the roofs. Only the tower of the mosque, like a finger pointing up to heaven, soars over the drab habitations. Their dull uniformity seems to enhance its dignity.

Agades is not a Tuareg city. Its foreign aspect is at once apparent. Although it also struck Barth immediately, he was, curiously enough, not so much concerned with what is really the most obvious feature of the alien atmosphere as he was with the foreign language and origin of most of the people he met there. His wanderings perhaps brought him less into contact with the permanent settlements of the Tuareg in Air than my good fortune did me; he could not otherwise have failed to remark that the houses in Agades are those of a Sudanese town and not those of the People of the Veil.

The most striking characteristic of the towns of the Sudan, of the immense walled cities of Kano and Zaria, as well as of the smaller places, is the mode of construction of the dwellings. There are two types of houses and in neither of them is stone used. The first type is the circular hut with a low vertical wall carrying a conical roof; the fashion extends throughout Central Africa. This abode is constructed of straw, or grass, or boughs, or of whatever material is readiest to hand. The ground plan is circular unless specific conditions have exerted a contrary influence, which occurs rather seldom. In the more advanced settlements of this sort in Northern Nigeria a development of the primitive form has taken place: it is a much larger structure with vertical mud walls which support the conical thatched roof, sometimes as much as twenty feet in diameter, standing within a compound. In many North Nigerian villages the dwellings consist exclusively of groups of such huts surrounded by low walls or enclosures.

The second type of house in the large towns of the Sudan is many-roomed and formless. The whole building, including the roof, is made of mud and often has one or more stories. The flat roof of mud and laths is carried on rafters of dûm palm wood which is one of the only available trees that resists the invasion of the white ant. Houses of this type often cover a considerable area, rambling aimlessly hither and thither in rooms, courts and alley-ways, according to the requirements and fancy of the owner or his descendants. The mud construction at times displays architectural features of real distinction. The thick tapering walls are wide and smooth. The doorways have a pylon-like appearance reminiscent of Egypt. The heavy squat façades are by no means unimposing: deep cold shadows cast by angles and buttresses break up the surface of the red walls. The broad panels around the doors are sometimes elaborated with decorative mouldings or with free arabesque designs in relief. The larger rooms which cannot be spanned by one length of rafter are vaulted inside with a false arch of mud, concealing cantilever timbering; the effect is that of a series of massive Gothic arches, plain but often of noble proportions. Technically, mud construction is easy, inexpensive and adequate in a climate where the rainy season is short and well defined. Balls of mud are dried in the sun and cemented together with wet mud. The outer and inner walls are faced with a plaster of earth and chopped straw. In the hot tropical sun the walls dry as hard as stone. The houses survive for an unlimited period of time if the outside surfaces are refaced every year after the torrential rains have washed away the stucco skin. Roofs, of course, have to be carefully levelled and drained to prevent the water accumulating in puddles and, in time, soaking through the ceilings. Gutters are provided with spouts projecting through the parapets of the roofs to prevent the water running down the sides.

The rambling mud house and the circular mud or straw and thatch huts, grouped in compounds, together make up the towns and villages of Northern Nigeria. The two types may be seen side by side, for instance in the country between Kano and Katsina, where the Fulani and Hausa population is mixed. It would be interesting to establish, as *prima facie* seems to be the case, whether the circular houses were those of the sedentary Fulani, who are nearer the semi-nomadic state, and the more ambitious mud dwellings those of the Hausa. In neither of these two types of house is stone used, either as ashlar or as rough masonry. Nor do dry stone walls occur, for mud is more convenient even when stone is available.[78]

When the Tuareg, on the other hand, builds permanent or semi-permanent dwellings, he displays characteristics which at once differentiate him from the people of the south. His straw and matting huts are not of the Central African type; they have no vertical wall of reeds or grass and a separate conical roof; they are built in one piece as a parabolic dome. Another, movable, type of hut or tent consists of a leather roof arched over four vertical uprights surrounded by matting walls on a square plan. The appearance of these tents is that of a cube with a slightly domed top. The permanent houses in Air are regular, carefully built constructions of stone and cement. In them mud is not employed except where the fashion of the south has been directly copied in comparatively recent times. The rambling house plan of the south is almost unknown. The Tuareg dwelling has a definitely formal and rectangular character. It rarely consists of more than two rooms. Even the exceptions to this rule[79] display considerable differences from the southern type of house.

Both the temporary huts and the permanent dwellings of the People of the Veil, therefore, are intensely individual. They differentiate the Tuareg sharply from the southern peoples. But even a casual glance at the houses of Agades makes it obvious that they belong to a city of the south. There is plenty of stone all round the city which might have been used for building, yet nearly all the houses are rambling mud constructions like those of Kano or of any of the towns of Nigeria. The number of houses at Agades which reflect the formal Tuareg fashion of planning is small. The characteristics which one learns to associate with the truly Tuareg houses of Air are conspicuously difficult to find. When I was in Agades at the commencement of the rains before the annual refacing of the walls had been carried out, it was possible to observe the absence of stone building. An inspection of the broken walls of the many ruined houses confirmed this observation of the past. The number of pools in the town alone was evidence of the prevalence and antiquity of mud construction; Barth mentions the names of several of them. The borrow pits in the Sudanese towns, where water accumulates in the rainy season and rubbish is shot in the dry, are features which no one can escape, were it only on account of the smells which they exhale; for in the Sudan, even when stone is available as at Kano, it is not used. I have vivid recollections of Agades at this season and was particularly impressed by the efficiency of the spouts designed to carry the water off the roofs. Progress was necessarily circuitous in order to avoid drowning in the flooded holes and borrow pits, while distraction was afforded by a determined but usually unsuccessful effort to escape a series of shower-baths in the narrow streets.

The ridge on which the city stands is surrounded by several depressions where are the wells that supply the needs of the population. In addition to those outside the town there were formerly nine other wells within the walls, but, like the pools, they were nearly all adulterated by the saline impregnation of the ground.

I cannot here refrain from quoting Barth, whose capacity for meticulous observation depended on never missing an opportunity, however strange, of acquiring information. “The houses of Agades do not possess all the convenience which one would expect to find in houses in the north of Europe; but here, as in many Italian towns, the principle of *da per tutto*, which astonished Goethe so much at Rivoli on the Lago di Garda, is in full force, being greatly assisted by the many ruined houses which are to be found in every quarter of the town. But the free nomadic inhabitant of the wilderness does not like this custom, and rather chooses to retreat into the open spots outside the town. The insecurity of the country and the feuds generally raging oblige them still to congregate, even on such occasions. When they reach some conspicuous tree the spears are all stuck into the ground, and the party separates behind the bushes; after which they again meet under the tree, and return in solemn procession to the town. By making such little excursions I became acquainted with the shallow depressions which surround Agades. . . .” He then proceeds to enumerate them. [80] The plain where the French fort lies is called Tagurast, that to the S.W., Mermeru; to the S.E. is Ameluli, with Tisak n’Talle somewhat further away to the S.S.E.; Tara Bere lies to the west.

The city is divided into several quarters, the names of which are recorded on Barth’s plan. The only two I heard mentioned were Terjeman and Katanga, the former so called from the interpreters who used to live in the neighbourhood, the latter from the market where what Americans would term “dry goods” of the Air fashion are sold. Little seems to have changed in seventy-five years; necklaces, stone arm-rings, wooden spoons and cotton cloth can be bought, now as then. In the larger market near by, called by the Hausa name of Kaswa n’Rakumi (the Camel Market), live-stock of all sorts is sold. The vegetable market seems to be as ill furnished now as it was in 1850.

I visited two or three private houses. They were not imposing, lacking the architectural features of the better-class houses in the Sudan. The use of white and colour washes in the interiors and on the outside walls was interesting. This practice is the only feature in which the houses of Agades differed from those of the Sudan; it appears to be peculiar in this part of Africa to the Tuareg, the habit having, no doubt, been copied from the north. The pigment is made of a chalky substance found near Agades, or of ochreous earths occurring in various places in Air. One of the houses which I saw was that of the Añastafidet, the administrative head of the Kel Owi tribes. The rooms were small and ill-planned; there was no attempt at decoration. The technique of the south had evidently not flourished in the atmosphere of the Sahara. The two plans of private houses reproduced by Barth give an idea of the rambling and haphazard designing.

The most elaborate and well-kept house is the one which belongs to the Kadhi, near the Great Mosque. It must have been here that Barth attended several sittings of the Kadhi's Court, adjudicating on inter-tribal matters which could not be settled by the tribal chiefs. It did not seem at all remarkable after the great houses of the Sudan, but was perhaps rather better kept than most of the other buildings in Agades. The people call it the House of Kaossen, and his family still live there. He carried on his intrigues from this place, and plotted with apparent impunity through 1917, until the time was ripe for open rebellion. He had returned from the Fezzan full of ambition to free his country from the white men whom he fought all his life. He had taken part in the operations against the French in Equatorial Africa, largely directed by the Senussiya from their "zawias" in Tibesti and Ennedi. When this period of hostility came to an end, but not before the French had sustained several severe reverses, notably during the fighting at Bir Alali (Fort Pradie), north-east of Lake Chad, Kaossen took refuge with the Azger Tuareg in the Eastern Fezzan, raiding and fighting with these lawless folk against their neighbours. Of his own initiative, but aided by the Senussiya and their Turkish and German advisers, Kaossen returned to his native country in 1917 with a small band of supporters to drive out the French, an effort in which he very nearly succeeded.

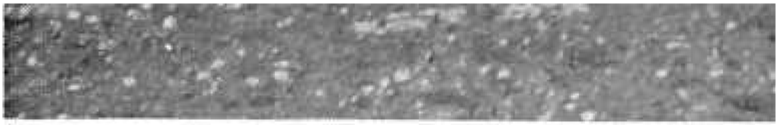
By far the most considerable monument of the city is the Great Mosque. I was unable to visit the interior, but from the general appearance of the building I am sure that I should have agreed with the description of Barth, who wrote: “The lowness of the structure had surprised me from without, but I was still more astonished when I entered the interior and saw that it consisted of low narrow naves divided by pillars of immense thickness, the reason of which it is not possible at present to understand, as they have nothing to support but a roof of dûm-tree boards, mats and a layer of clay.” He goes on to speculate on the superstructure which these “vaults or cellars” may have been designed to carry but which was never completed. I do not think such speculation is necessary. The description fits accurately every one of the seven or eight other mosques in Air which I saw within and without. In none of them were the walls ever meant to carry an upper storey. In all of them the ceiling was low and the roof flat, with rows of massive pillars and the naves running transversely from north to south across the buildings, which were usually far broader than they were deep.

The Great Mosque of Agades as it stands to-day was built in 1844.[81] It would hardly be remarkable were it not for the minaret, which was rebuilt by the Sultan Abd el Qader in 1847 to replace the one which had fallen. From a base thirty feet square resting on four massive pilasters in the interior of the mosque, this four-sided tower of mud and dûm-palm rafters rises to a height of between eighty and ninety feet, tapering from about one-third of its height to a narrow platform less than eight feet square at the top. Access is obtained by a spiral way between the solid core and the outer wall, which is pierced with small windows. From a little distance the foreshortening produced by the tapering faces gives the impression of immense height without accentuating the pyramidical form. The four-square, flat sides are bound together by transverse rafters projecting some three or four feet. These ends serve the purpose of scaffolding when refacing is necessary after the rains, an operation without which the tower would not have stood any length of time. Near the mosque is a heap of mud, the remains of an older tower called "Sofo," presumably of the same type. [82]

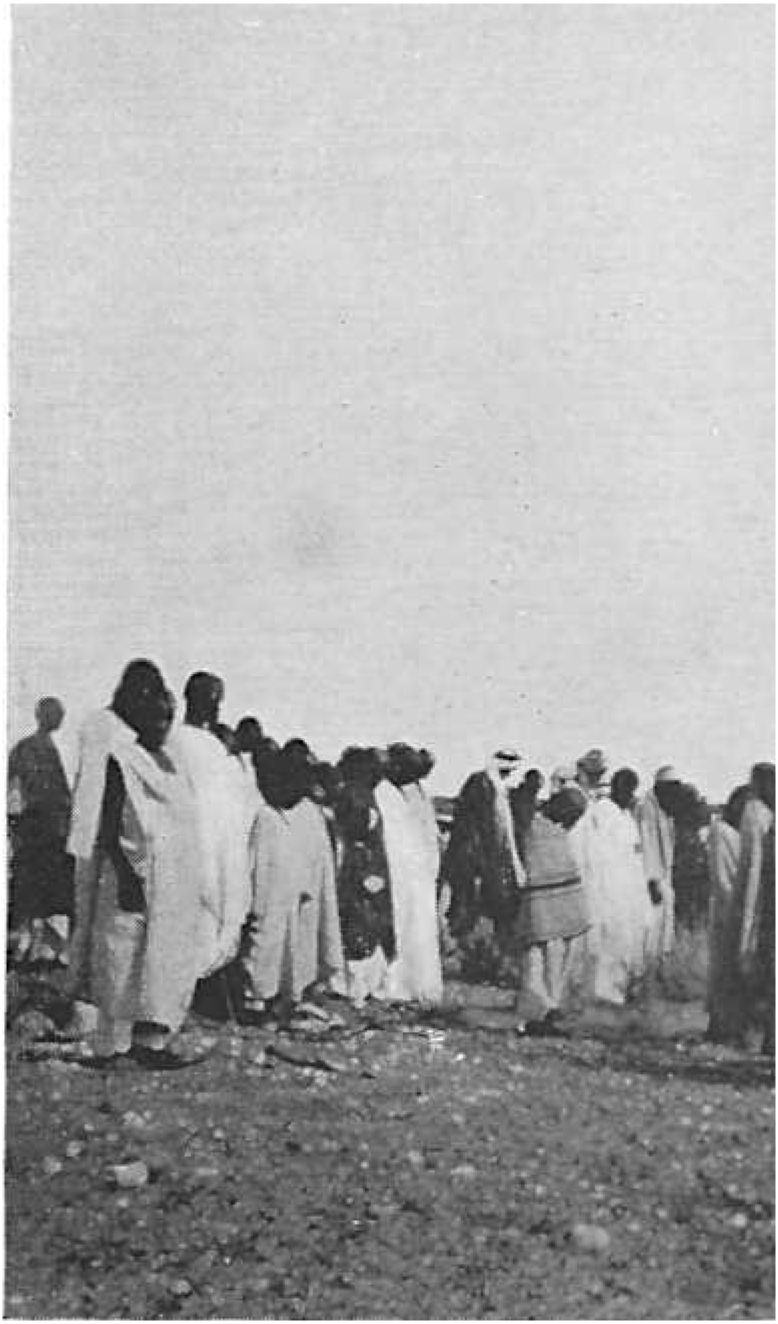
The structure is properly speaking a minaret, but was used as a watch-tower in time of war. It is not now used for either purpose. The muezzin stands on the roof of the mosque below to call upon the Faithful at the prescribed hours to forsake their pursuits and turn to the only God. The Tower of Agades stands like a beacon, showing far over the monotonous plains. I remember this solitary pillar towering above a confused mass of low and ruinous buildings against the blood-red setting sun, which appeared and disappeared in the black clouds of an evening in the rains. The blue hills and sharp peaks of Air were distant in the north; to the south lay a drab plain, unbroken as far as eye could see in the gathering twilight. The Tower seemed like the lonely monument of a decaying civilisation.

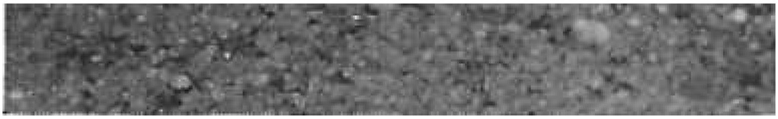
There are said to have been as many as seventy mosques in and near the city, but only two, I think, are still used. Outside the walls to the S.W. there is a shrine known as Sidi Hamada, "My Lord of the Desert," appropriately named considering the barren nature of the ground all round. It is an open place of prayer of much sanctity, and reputed to be the oldest Moslem place of worship in the neighbourhood. The Qibla is in a low bank, faced with a dry stone wall, which slopes down to the level of the surrounding ground a few feet on each side of the niche. On certain occasions prayers are said at Sidi Hamada, notably on the Feast of the Sheep, known to the Tuareg as Salla Laja, which I was fortunate enough to witness at Agades in June 1922.

PLATE 10



GA



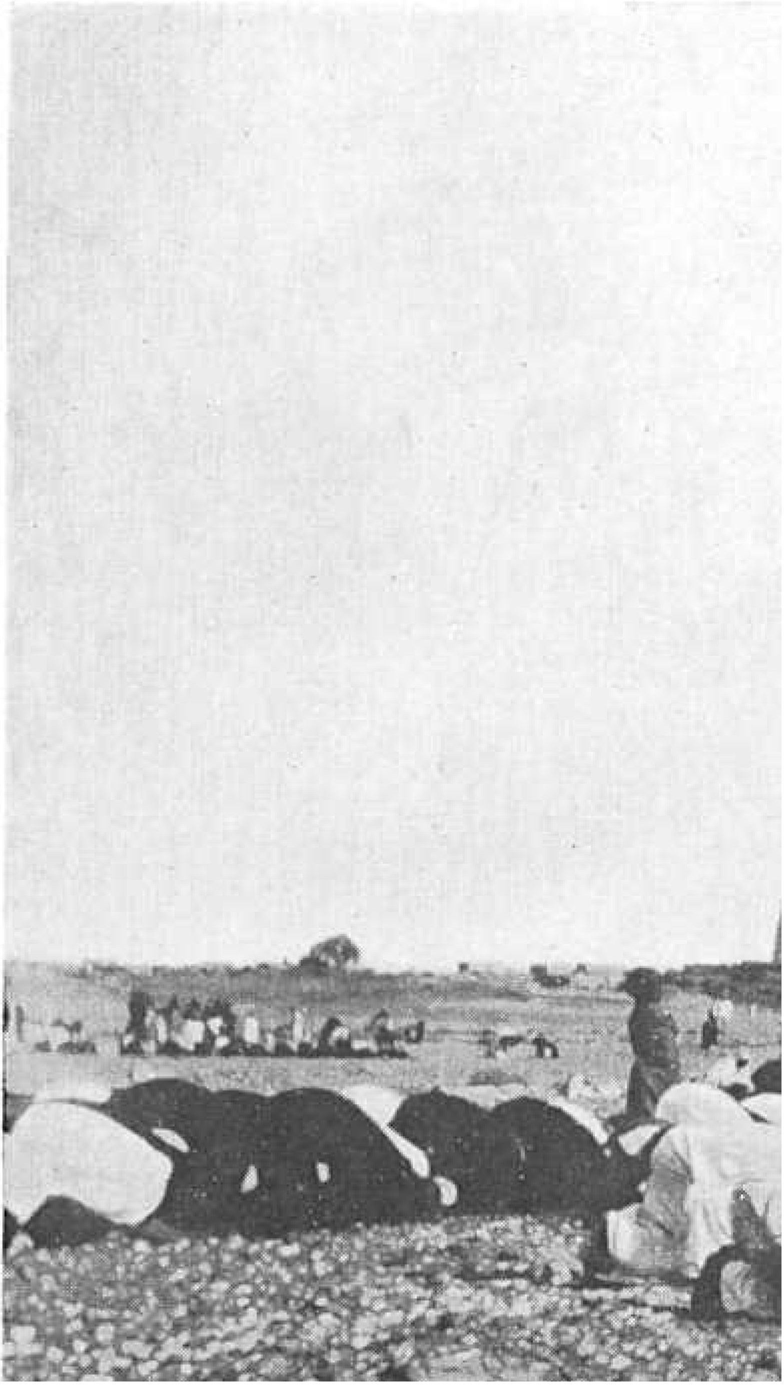


P

It was made the occasion of much festivity. Every available camel in the vicinity was ridden by a Tuareg in the gayest saddle and bridle from the city to the shrine. These people do not feel that they are making the best of themselves unless they are mounted on a camel. A man and his camel are complementary and reciprocal to one another. When there is an occasion to celebrate they wear their best clothes and borrow any ornaments they can find to adorn their sombre garments. They are vain of their personal appearance and covetous of those pretty things which are considered in good taste, but their unselfishness is nevertheless remarkable. I have seen men forgo the real pleasure of wearing a silver ornament or a new face veil in order to lend them to a less fortunate companion whose general appearance was more ragged, or whose means and opportunities did not allow him to secure anything to smarten his turn-out. I had bought of the local jeweller-blacksmith in Agades a number of small silver ornaments of the sort which are affected by the Tuareg. All these, and even certain articles of clothing from our own scanty wardrobes, were borrowed for the day. It was curious to see that their sombre apparel was never lightened by any of the coloured materials so much in evidence in the Sudan. The best-dressed man is considered to be the one with the newest indigo-cotton robe and veil of the traditional plain design. At the most a red cloth is tied round the head over the face veil, or, in the case of the guides employed by the French, around the waist and shoulders: the robe must, however, always be plain white or dark indigo. The Tuareg of our own retinue picked out the best of our camels to ride. They turned out a very smart patrol, the camel men Elattu, Alwali and Mokhammed of noble caste, with two or three buzus or outdoor slaves, and Ali the son of Tama, the Arab from Ghat.

At an early hour the poorer people on foot began to stream over the tufted plain which lies between the place of prayer and the city. They were followed by little parties of men on camels, black figures on great dun-coloured or white riding beasts, girt about with their cross-hilted swords, and some also carrying a spear and oryx-hide shield. Finally, a larger group of men, preceded by three or four horsemen, was seen approaching. They were the Sultan of Agades, Omar, the Slave King of the Tuareg of Air, with his attendants, and the Añastafidet, a noble of the Kel Owi tribes, who, from the purely administrative point of view, is the most important man in the country. They were accompanied by the chief minister of the Sultan, the notables of the place, and other dignitaries. Among them was El Haj Saleh, the father of our camel man Elattu; he had performed the pilgrimage three times, in the course of which he had acquired the Arab fashion of dress used in the north. He wore the white woollen robe that is supposed to be descended from the Roman toga, with his head covered only by a fold of the cloth. El Haj Saleh has lived so long in foreign parts that he no longer veils his face and prefers speaking Arabic, but he is much respected as a learned and holy man; he is now employed by the French at the fort as Oriental Secretary and interpreter. With him were the Kadhi and the Imam, a solitary exception among the veiled Tuareg in the matter of display, for he had obtained from the south a buff-coloured silk robe embroidered with green. The Sariki n'Turawa, or chief minister of the Sultan, came next; near him gathered a number of Arab merchants from Ghat and Tuat in white robes; with one or two from the extreme west, there were a dozen or fifteen in all, who have the trade of Agades in their hands. Among them I perceived one Arab from Mauretania, a little man with delicate, sensitive features and a brown beard. He came straight up to where I was standing to repay me a debt of five silver francs which he had incurred some months before at Gangara in Damergu.

PLATE 11



When the crowd had collected, the men ranged themselves in rows facing east before the Qibla; the women stood together on one side. The Sultan and his party were immediately opposite the niche with the Imam facing them. He began to read the Quran and the multitude then prayed. On either side of the Sultan, as he knelt to make his prostrations, a Tuareg remained standing with his sword drawn, extended point downwards at arm’s length, in protection and salute. As the Sultan rose to his feet the guard sloped their swords, repeating the salute every time he bowed before the name of God. These two men are distinct from the officials in the local administration; [83] they are the personal body-guard of the Sultan, chosen among the “courtiers of the king,” who are young men selected in turn from the tribes in Air which owe allegiance direct to the Sultan.

After the prayers were over two sheep were slaughtered in the orthodox manner. Their throats were cut by the Imam, reciting the invocation of Islam, and the blood was wiped away with holy water to the accompaniment of suitable prayers.

The Sultan and the people then returned to the city, making a detour by the N.W. side through the ruined suburb outside the walls and past the Great Mosque to the present palace, an indifferent building, both tumbledown and dirty. The reigning Sultan, Omar, like all his predecessors, is of slave descent. He was chosen in 1920 by the tribes which have the right to elect him, from a collateral branch of the ruling family. He is a weak man, and too much in the hands either of interested advisers or of the French, which does not always mean the same thing. His predecessor, Tegama, on the other hand, was a remarkable man. His intrigues with Kaossen were successful in preparing the revolution in Air so quietly that practically nothing was suspected of his intentions until the fateful dawn when the black troops on parade at the post were fired upon from the outskirts of the city. After the French columns had relieved the besieged garrison, both Kaossen and Tegama fled east to Kawar, whence the former found his way to the Fezzan, only to be killed, so it is believed, in obscure circumstances north of Murzuk by some Arabs. The native accounts of the story cast some doubt on his actual death on the grounds that his body was never found among those of his massacred companions. It is further represented that the very Turks and Senussiya whom he had served put him to death for his failure in Air, but it appears more probable that on his way to seek refuge with the Senussiya in Cyrenaica, Kaossen and his friends had the misfortune to fall in with a band of Arabs whom he had raided in the olden days, and to have been killed by them.

The Sultan Tegama, on the other hand, betook himself to Tibesti, hoping to find sanctuary among the Tebu, who, though the hereditary enemies of the Tuareg of Air, were probably sufficiently hostile to the French to be counted on to harbour any prominent refugee from the wrath of the white man. By the influence of the Senussiya in these parts he expected to reach Kufra and so take up his residence among the malcontents who live in that remote land. Treacherous as ever and true to their reputation current all over North Africa, the Tebu entreated Tegama generously and took the first opportunity which presented itself to hand him over to a French camel patrol from Bilma. In the course of time he returned to Agades as a prisoner under an escort of negro Senegalese soldiers and was thrown into prison at the fort to await his trial by court-martial. He died suddenly one night in May 1922, by his own hand it is said, in the prison, while under the surveillance of the French, and he was buried. But one chief who was at the funeral told me that he looked under the mat which covered the alleged corpse and discovered that there was nothing there. The story spread that Tegama escaped and fled to the north, where he is still living. Perhaps it is better that this story should obtain credence than any other. Instead of Tegama, the French officer in charge of the post was court-martialled for the suicide of the king, but acquitted. The whole episode is curious, but the truth is perhaps rather unsavoury. It is another of the fierce tragedies of the Sahara.

Before Tegama, Osman Mikitan and Brahim (Ibrahim Dan Sugi) were Sultans. Mikitan was Sultan when the post was first established at the wells of T'in Shaman, but they changed places several times in the course of the intrigues which took place between the passage of the Foureau-Lamy Expedition in 1899 and the occupation of Air in 1904. In Barth's day Abd el Qader, son of the Sultan Bakiri (Bekri), was on the throne. His tenure of office was as precarious as that of his successors, for he had been Sultan on a previous occasion before Barth reached Agades, only to be deposed in favour of Hamed el Rufai (Ahmed Rufaiyi), whom he again succeeded; they once more changed places some three years afterwards, Abd el Qader having reigned in all about thirty-two years, Hamed some twelve. The tenure of office of the Sultans of Agades during the last century has been as precarious as it was in Leo's time, for we read in this authority[84] that the Tuareg "will sometime expel their king and choose another; so that he which pleaseth the inhabitants of the desert best is sure to be king of Agades." Bello in his history says the same:[85] "whenever a prince displeased them, they dethroned him and appointed a different one."

The installation of the Sultan with the customs that obtain is in the nature of a ceremonial recognition, by the representatives of the principal tribes of the Tuareg of Air, of his elevation to office. Taken in connection with the traditional mode of his selection, it throws an interesting light on relationships of the various groups of the Tuareg in Air. Barth, who was in Agades on such an occasion, wrote: "The ceremonial was gone through inside the *fada* (palace); but this was the procedure. First of all Abd el Kader (Qader) was conducted from his private apartments to the public hall: the chiefs of the Itisan (Itesan) and Kel Geres who were in front begged him to sit down upon the *gado*, a sort of couch or divan, made of the leaves of the palm tree . . . similar to the *angarib* used in Egypt and the lands of the Upper Nile, and covered with mats and carpets. Upon this the Sultan sat down, resting his feet on the ground, not being allowed to put them on the *gado* and recline in the Oriental style until the Kel Owi had desired him to do so.[86] Such is the ceremony, symbolical of the combined participation of these different tribes in the investiture of their Sultan."[87] The throne-room in the old palace seems to have been more imposing than any part of the royal dwelling of to-day. The present audience chamber is a low, arched room, with a small daïs or seat at one end near a narrow stairway leading up to three rooms in an upper storey, which is now not in use. These rooms are lighted by small windows looking over the outer court. I wandered at random in and out of the palace except that small part which is still used by Omar himself and his women-folk. The deserted rooms were deep in dust and fallen plaster. The courts were infested with dogs, children and chickens. The palace was far less magnificent and certainly less well kept than many other houses in the city. Even the small house of the Añastafidet, with its mats and solitary carpet of horrid colours on the floor of the guest-chamber, was more cleanly.

The present Sultan enjoys little or no authority; his predecessors, unless they were backed by the more important chiefs in Air, were almost equally powerless, for the position of the Sultan, or Amenokal, as he is called in Temajegh, is curious. It is said in the native tradition that in the early days there was no authority in the land other than that of the chiefs of the various groups of tribes, and these did not in any way acknowledge one another's authority over affairs which interested the community at large. The groups and single tribes were constantly at war with one another, and there were then 70,000 people in the land, with no common ruler.[88] The more reasonable chiefs recognised that some figure-head at least was necessary, but they could not agree that he should be chosen from any of the principal groups of clans in Air. They therefore sent a deputation to Istambul or Santambul (Constantinople) to the Commander of the Faithful, asking him to appoint a Prince to come and rule over them. The Khalif called together the sons of his wives and offered them all the country from the land of the Aulimmiden in the west to Sokoto in the east (*sic*), and from Tadent in the north to the lands of the Negroes in the south. But Air was so far away that none of the sons of the Khalif was willing to leave the comforts of Stambul. The Embassy was kept waiting for three years. Finally the Commander of the Faithful, weakening before the tears of his legitimate wives, the mothers of his sons, selected the child of a concubine to rule over the Tuareg of the south. The candidate returned with the deputation to Air and from that day to this there are said to have been one hundred rulers in the land. This figure does not, of course, represent the exact number; it is only meant figuratively to indicate a long period of time.

From the original impressions I had received in Air I came to the conclusion that the installation of the first Sultan could be assigned to the beginning of the fifteenth century A.D., or, in other words, to a period prior to the capture of Constantinople by the Moslems. In the course of some research on the subject I discovered that 1420 A.D. had been suggested by one authority on the evidence of tradition, while the Agades Chronicle, independently of all this evidence, had recorded that the first Sultan, Yunis,[89] ascended the throne in 809 A.H., or about 1406 A.D.[90] The important thing in any case is that, if the story of his choice has any historical foundation whatsoever, it must be referred to a period when Christian emperors were still ruling in Constantinople. It is therefore all the more interesting to learn that the first Sultan was called Yunis, which means John, and that the wife of the first Sultan, a noble girl said to have been given to him in marriage by the Kel Ferwan tribe, was called Ibuzahil or Izubahil, a name bearing a curious resemblance to Isabel. It is a fitting name for the companion of John, the man from the distant land.

If a deputation went to the Mediterranean at all, it was natural at this period that it should go to Constantinople, still regarded as the capital of nations, with which no other city in the fifteenth century could compare for civilisation or splendour. But we shall probably never know whether a Byzantine prince came to Air in 1406 A.D. or whether the names and legend of John and Isabel are only coincidence. Yunis is described as the son of Tahanazeta, and I must leave for others to discover Byzantine resemblances to this name. For the name of one of his successors, Aliso, I suggest Louis may have been our equivalent, and regarding the latter’s brother, Amati, who followed, comment is hardly necessary.

Yunis reigned twenty years and was succeeded by Akasani,[91] who was the son of Yunis’s sister. Elsewhere El Haj Ebesan or Abeshan, a son of Yunis, and his son, El Haj Muhammad ben Ebesan, are said to have reigned respectively as second and third Sultans, but this is not substantiated by the Agades Chronicle, which mentions El Haj Ebesan only as the grandfather of the sixteenth Sultan, Yusif, who came to the throne about 1594. From this record there appear to have been some forty rulers, several of whom reigned more than once, but there are certain gaps in the series.[92]

After the very first ruler the reigning family divided into two branches, which keep on reappearing, many of the Sultans of one being deposed by powerful tribes like the Itesan in favour of candidates of the other line. The family of El Guddala or Ghodala figures prominently with several notable rulers like Muhammad Hammad, who was known as the Father of his People. From such records as are available I have tried to recover the genealogy of this stock; but the Agades Chronicle is neither accurate nor complete;[93] although it is almost the only detailed information which we possess for the present. One noteworthy fact accords well with Ibn Batutah's observations and with certain matriarchal survivals which will be referred to in detail hereafter: there are repeated instances of descent being traced through the female line. Nevertheless, this was not an essential condition. The ruler to this day is elected by the same tribes originally responsible for the elevation of Yunis to the throne: he must be drawn from one of the two branches of the original family, and his heir, subject to due and proper election, is normally considered to be his sister's son.

Being the son of a concubine or slave, the king, according to the rules of descent of all the Tuareg, was himself of slave caste, nor could he ever achieve the distinction of being ranked among the nobles. As it is the law among the People of the Veil that the child must follow the caste of the mother and not the father, whatever the latter's claims, only the offspring of a noble Tuareg woman can be noble. In all other matrimonial combinations the child must be a serf or slave. A slight distinction is sometimes drawn if only the mother is inferior, but it has the effect, at the most, of creating a mixed caste, without admitting the possibility of the child becoming a noble. When the problem arose of finding a wife for the first ruler who had been selected by the Khalif, despite the pre-eminence of his sponsor, tradition prevailed, that he was to be given a slave woman for wife. The arrangement had the advantage of perpetuating the status of the original Amenokal, since his children perforce had to continue in the inferior caste. For political reasons certain exceptions seem to have been made, and the Amenokal, though a serf, was also allowed to marry a noble woman, but in that case her children were not eligible. The marriage of John and Isabel—if she came from the noble Kel Ferwan, and not from Constantinople, as I suspect—may be an instance of such political dispensation. The restriction of the choice of the Amenokal to one of the two branches of the original family, and the force of tradition in regard to his descent, have resulted in the apparent paradox that in order to be Sultan of Agades the candidate has to be a slave. These considerations duly influenced the choice of the present Amenokal, Omar.

Insignificant as his power nominally is, and unimportant as the office may practically be, many of the traditional stories which purport to explain the circumstances attending the Sultan's elevation to the throne are probably fanciful. They may be accepted but still be fictions in the legal sense. Unless or until Byzantine researches can come to our assistance, the logical explanation, if there is one, must be sought. Shorn of romance, what appears most likely to have happened is that the Tuareg of Air at a certain stage were unable to reach any agreement regarding the selection of a head of the State. They were divided up into groups which their piecemeal immigration had accentuated. But the necessities of trade and caravan traffic made it essential for the common weal to have some sovereign or head, even if he were only a nominal ruler, to maintain foreign relations and transact political business on behalf of the inhabitants of Air generally with the Emirates and Empires of the Sudan. Since none of the principal tribes was willing to forgo the privilege of providing the ruler, the expedient was hit upon of appointing a man whose status would never conflict with the authority of the tribal chiefs within the borders of the country, but who could still be delegated to speak for the whole community with the rulers of the Southland. With all the jealousy that exists among the tribes on the question of relative nobility or antiquity, the only people fulfilling the essentials were of servile caste. The choice of such a man was nevertheless possible among the Tuareg, for neither "imghad" nor slaves are despised or regarded as mere animals. This, I think, is the only explanation of the usage which obtains, that whatever may be the caste of the Amenokal's children, only the servile ones are eligible. Although the family of the Sultan may include noble persons, it is, as a whole, a servile group in both its branches; it seems that Barth is mistaken in regarding the group as noble. The family may, as he says, be called "Sherrifa," but probably only on account of its reputed origin. It is not considered any the more noble in the Tuareg sense of the word for all that.[94]

This does not exclude the possibility of the Constantinople Embassy being true, but the explanation I have given of the slave kings of Air seems to be sufficient on its own merits and also reasonable. Every factor in the situation points to the care which was taken to eliminate all possible chances of dispute; even the relegation of the choice to one servile family singled out for the purpose would tend to diminish friction. On the whole the procedure may be said to provide a rational if cynical solution of what has always been a difficult problem in all countries.[95] Inasmuch as the explanation also serves to elucidate a number of other problems, it may be said to receive confirmation.

Thus, the principal Minister or Vizir of the Amenokal is the Sariki n’Turawa,[96] a Hausa term meaning the “Chief of the White People.” The White People are the Arab traders from the north, who themselves call this official the “Sheikh el Arab.” His functions are those of Minister for Foreign Affairs: [97] his duties are to regulate the foreign community of Agades and settle all questions of trade with the outside world. Though originally appointed to deal with the Arabs of the north, he came eventually to have more to do with the Southland. He used to collect the duties on merchandise in Agades and accompany the salt caravans to Bilma, a service for which he received an eighth part of an average camel load of salt. After the salt caravan returned, the Sariki n’Turawa proceeded south with the camels returning to Sokoto, and then went on to Kano. The latter part of his journey had already been discontinued in 1850, but he still accompanies the salt caravan as the representative of the Sultan and nominal leader of the enterprise. In addition to these duties involving foreign relations, he is the Amenokal’s chief adviser and “Master of the Interior of the Palace,” with the Songhai name of “Kokoi Geregeri.” He is also known as the “Wakili” or Chief Agent of the king. The reason for the Chief Minister in Agades being also Minister for Foreign Affairs needs no further comment after what has been said of the Sultan himself and his *raison d’être*.

Other officials and courtiers round the Amenokal include the Sariki n’Kaswa, or Chief of the Market Place, who collects the market dues and supervises the prices of commodities. There are, besides, police officials or policemen who are also the executioners, and a number of persons called after the class from whom they are chosen, the “magadeza.” The word seems to be a corruption of “Emagadezi,” meaning People of Agades, but has acquired a more restricted meaning, and is commonly applied to a number of rather fat men who are reputed to be the posterity of the attendants of the first Yunis who came from Constantinople.[98]

By virtue of his own position the Amenokal enjoys very little authority. He is used as an arbitrator and Judge of Appeal. In cases where the disputants are both from the same group of clans their quarrel would normally be referred to the head of their aggregation, except amongst the Kel Owi, over whom the Añastafidet is the administrative authority, or court of the second instance; in minor matters the tribal chief can, of course, decide on his own initiative. But in disputes between persons of different tribes who cannot agree on the finding of the chief of either of their factions, the case may be referred to the Sultan, on whose behalf the Kadhi renders judgment. Such functions as the Sultan performs are executed with the consent of the governed. Although all serious cases might be referred to him in theory, in practice his authority has never run in local tribal affairs. He has a common gaol for criminals, used in the first instance for those of the city, but also for such as cannot be satisfactorily punished under the tribal arrangements of a nomadic and semi-nomadic people. There were cases when chiefs of tribes might be, and were, imprisoned at Agades, but then it was because the power behind the throne had so desired it. The Sultan apparently at one time also had a dungeon with swords and spears fixed upright in the floor upon which criminal malefactors were thrown; but already in 1850 it was rarely used.

It cannot be too carefully emphasised that the rule of the Sultan as the elected head of the State of Agades was founded upon the consent of the governed. He is the figure-head of the community and performs the same useful duties which so many heads of more civilised States undertake. The Tuareg have probably never had occasion to discuss the social contract, and the works of J. S. Mill or Rousseau are not current in Air, but nowhere are these theories of government more meticulously carried into effect or do they assume the practical form which they have often lacked in Europe. With all their aristocratic traditions of caste and breeding, the Tuareg have never favoured an established or hereditary autocracy. The government they prefer seems to be a democratic monarchy. Their king is a slave elected by the representatives of certain, at one time doubtless the most important, tribes; he exists and carries out certain functions because the mass of the people desire it so. Authority is not inherited, and even men of inferior caste may become chieftains. The evolution of society has also inevitably rendered the king dependent for support upon the principal men of the country, and the latter upon the smaller chieftains. Where there is much rivalry or where the ruler is weaker than usual the frequent changes and inconsistency inherent in democratic government ensue. Equally the ascendancy of one man's personality independently of his position may override the voice of the people, but in the absence of organisation or bureaucracy the conditioning factor is efficiency and competence. Tribal leaders are selected because they can lead; when they cease to lead they are deposed.

The unenviable position of the king and his dependence on the influence of the chiefs seem consequently to have been the same throughout the ages. Leo[99] refers to the practice of deposing one king and electing another from the same family who was more acceptable. Bello on the subject has also already been quoted. We have just seen how often and why Osman Mikitan and Brahim changed places. Barth recounts how in his day Abd el Qader was completely in the hands of the Kel Owi, who were represented by the dominant personality of their paramount chief, Annur. His own tribe was not even, as a matter of fact, among those responsible for the selection of the Sultan, but his personality was such that the Amenokal, at his request, or with his support, felt himself strong enough to imprison three turbulent chiefs of the Itesan who were stirring up the people in Agades in favour of a pretender. Yet the Itesan, a tribe of the southern Kel Geres, are the foremost of the tribes responsible for the Sultan's very election and his maintenance in power. Without Annur’s support, Abd el Qader was powerless.

I think that the persistence of tradition shows how essential the method devised for choosing the head of the community was, and is still considered to be among the Air Tuareg. Even to-day the Itesan retain their predominant voice in the election, though they live in the Sudan and are in part within the border of the country administered by the British Government, and though their king is in French territory hundreds of miles away. They were the deciding factor in the election, after the death of Tegama,[100] of Omar from the collateral branch which lives with them.

Only in rare cases was the Amenokal a leader in war. Muhammad Hammad is an instance in point, but it is clear he was an exceptional man. When raids had taken place or were threatening in such a manner as to affect the people of Air indiscriminately, or where individual tribes might not consider themselves sufficiently involved to occasion reprisals, the Sultan used to lead a counter-raid recruited from several clans and provisioned according to his direction from those groups most capable of supplying the needs. In no case could a Sultan lead a raid against an Air tribe, whether in the north or in the south, unless he had definitely thrown in his lot with a local intrigue, which theoretically would, and usually did, entail his eventual deposition. Within Air the Sultan was neutral, or as we should say “constitutional.” He could only take the field against people like the Aulimmiden of the west, or the Tebu of the east, or the Ahaggaren of the north beyond the borders of his country. As a general rule, however, leading in war was the task of tribal chieftains and not of the king.

The Amenokal does not seem to have had a fixed revenue. He lived principally on the presents given to him by the tribes on the occasion of his accession, and more especially by those tribes which owe allegiance directly to himself. He was entitled to collect a tax on foreign merchandise entering the city and a tithe from certain servile tribes in the southern parts of Air.[101] In addition he had certain perquisites in the shape of judicial fines imposed on individuals and tribes, and a revenue from legitimate trading with Bilma during the great salt caravans.

In considering the history of Agades one cannot fail to be struck by the peculiarity of the site.

Elsewhere in North Africa, where any of the great caravan roads pass through areas of fertility which break up the journeys into sections, towns and cities, in some cases of considerable magnitude, have grown up. Where these settlements are near the margin of belts of permanent sedentary inhabitation, they play the part of termini or ports for the trans-desert traffic. They have become markets and the seats of the transport and produce brokers, a development which has its parallels in Arabia and Central Asia. There are many instances in Northern Africa of such terminal points becoming large and important centres: some of the more active of these “ports,” as they may be called, in the north are Sijilmasa, Wargla, Ghadames, Tripoli, Orfella and Benghazi. Corresponding with them at the southern end of the various roads are Timbuctoo, Gao, Sokoto, Katsina and Kano.[102] In addition to that there are also the true Cities of the Desert. They have arisen in places where caravans can call a halt to rest and replenish food supplies, where water is plentiful, and sometimes also, where these requisites are present, at the intersection of important routes. These settlements are like island coaling stations in maritime navigation, but they are not termini; they are particularly interesting ethnologically, for they often mark the ends of stages where the transport of merchandise changes hands. At these points one tribe or race hands over its charge to another group of people. They are thus entrepôts where goods are discharged and reshipped—not markets, but broking centres where the transport contractors and merchants who live at either end of the routes have their agents. A money market often develops, but the local trade is small, for it is confined to the requirements of the place and immediate neighbourhood. At all costs, either by means of a strong local government or by mutual consent, tribes which elsewhere may be at war with one another must be compelled to meet in peace to pursue their lawful occasions. The essentials for the growth of such centres are invariably the presence of water, pasture and, to a lesser extent, food. Where these factors can be obtained at one definite point only, the centre is fixed, whereas if there are several places all more or less equally convenient for the traffic, the settlement has a tendency to move under the influence of political changes. In Tuggurt, Laghuat and Ghat may be found instances where the centre has been unable to shift on account of geographical conditions; but in the Tuat-Tidikelt area the most important town of In Salah has had many rivals, which have prevented it acquiring the same compactness or prominence as, for instance, the city of Ghat. At the latter place a large permanent water supply in an arid country practically limited the choice of sites to one spot. A commercial city of paramount importance, if of no great size, sprang up in the earliest times and continued uninfluenced by political vicissitudes. As an entrepôt of commerce where there was peace at all times among the local population, where feuds and racial hostility were set aside within its precincts, where free trade was the oldest tradition and where an efficient municipal organisation did not seek to extend its influence far beyond the walls, Ghat developed a government similar to that of an autonomous Hanseatic town. Ghat is the most interesting of all the cities of the desert, but the decline of caravan trade has brought ruin to its people and war among the tribes, which no longer have the material incentive of trade to refrain from fighting.

On the eastern of the two central roads across the Sahara there is a stage where one would expect to find a town like Ghat, for to the south on both these routes there is a tract of desert to be crossed before reaching Kawar or Air respectively. But in the Eastern Fezzan the choice of locality was not restricted by geographical and economic considerations, and Murzuk, as the counterpart in modern times of Ghat, has consequently not always been the most important centre of the area. In early classical times Garama, now known as Jerma, some sixty miles to the north of Murzuk, was the capital of the Garamantian kingdom. When Jerma was destroyed by the Arabs in the seventh century, Zuila, probably the Cillala of the Romans, became the capital of the Eastern Fezzan, maintaining its supremacy even after conquest by the Beni Khattab in the tenth century. When in the fourteenth century the Fezzan was overrun by the people of Kanem the capital again moved, this time to Traghen.

Air is the next stage on the road to the Sudan after crossing the desert to the south of Ghat. The requisites of water, pasture and food are found all over this vast oasis; the principal settlement might therefore be presumed to have changed its site under the influence of politics, and in a great measure this has happened, but the largest settlement in the country, the City of Agades, is comparatively modern and appears to owe its existence to political rather than to economic reasons.

Standing on the north side of the valley which is named after it, Agades is in one sense a City of the Desert, since it lies on the edge of a Saharan oasis. In so far as it is a true desert city at all, it is the greatest of them, but, as we shall see, it has not quite the same characteristics as its smaller rivals. Ghat, before the war, was said to number less than 4000 people, but may have attained double this figure at one time; the population of Murzuk was variously estimated at 2800 by Barth and at 6500 by Nachtigal; Ghadames is believed to have a population of about 7000. But Agades in the days of its prosperity must have contained not less than 30,000 inhabitants.[103] By 1850 the population had fallen to about 7000; ten years ago the number was estimated at 10,000. To-day there are not 3000 people in the half-ruined city, but the numbers are again increasing since the efflux of population after the 1917 revolution. These astonishing variations in population are a normal feature of desert cities, even as they are of harbours and seaport towns where the places are entirely dependent on conditions of trade, which is affected by political change; in the Sahara the mode of life of the surrounding nomads makes these fluctuations even more conspicuous.

None of the considerations governing the site of other desert cities applies to Agades. It lies on the southernmost foothills of the Air mountains, and in the history of the country there has never been any danger of invasion except from the south. Some of the Tuareg, it is true, gradually penetrated Air from the north, and pushed south by the progressive occupation of the northern mountains, which the original population may not have been sufficiently interested or numerous to occupy and defend. Small raiding parties can always enter the country, but it is certain that with even inconspicuous opposing forces the success of an invading army approaching Air from any direction except the south is out of the question, owing to the difficulties of moving large bodies of men over the appalling desert which separates the plateau from Ahaggar or the Fezzan. The same conditions obtain in the east, and to a great extent in the west also. On the south only is the position rather different. The steppe desert between Air and Damergu is neither so waterless nor so pastureless nor so deep as to preclude military operations from that direction. In point of fact Air was invaded on at least one occasion from that side with conspicuous success.[104] It is therefore anomalous that the capital of the country should have been located on the fringe of the mountains, where every road is defensible, in possibly the most vulnerable position which could have been chosen.

Nor is the explanation to be found in such economic necessity as has dictated the choice of site in other examples of desert cities. Agades is some distance from the great north-south road which runs, and always has run, east of the Central massif of Air, leaving the country on its way to the Sudan at the water of Eghalgawen or Tergulawen. An alternative route to the Sokoto area branching off the main road in Northern Air and descending by the Talak plain and In Gall passes some distance west of the city. No caravan road suitable for heavily-laden camels passes through Agades for the north, owing to the barrier of the Central massifs, through which the tracks are difficult even for mountain-bred camels. The old pilgrim road from Timbuctoo to Cairo enters the western side of the Air plateau at In Gall or further north, and passes to Iferuan and so to Ghat without touching Agades. Ibn Batutah's route shows that this was so in his day, as it certainly has been the case since then. Caravans from the south crossing the Eastern Desert for Bilma pass across Azawagh to the eastern fringes of Air without going to Agades, which would involve a detour, as was explained in referring to the importance of the well of Masalet.[105]

While the trade routes of the country do not, therefore, provide an adequate justification for the choice of the site, climatic or geographic conditions have equally little bearing, for there are a number of points in Air where the pasture is good and where there is sufficient water to supply the needs of a large settlement. At Agades, as a matter of fact, the water is indifferent; while the surrounding gravelly plain, like the rest of the valley, is only covered with scanty vegetation, the neighbouring Telwa valley contains some pastures, but they are not abundant, and camels in the service of the local merchants have to be sent to feed as much as three or four days distant.

If the conditions which had led to the growth of a city in Air had been of a purely economic order, it might have been anticipated that it would have occupied the site of Iferuan, the first point south of Ghat where a permanent settlement with plentiful water, pasture and land fit for cultivation was possible. So convenient is the Iferuan valley that caravans, in fact, usually do rest there for long periods to allow both men and animals to recuperate after the difficult stage to the north has been negotiated. Or, again, a city might have stood at the eastern end of the River of Agades at the north end of the stage across the Azawagh, although this position would have been less dictated by necessity than the first alternative, since the steppe desert of the south cannot be compared for hardship with the northern waste. It would nevertheless have been convenient, if somewhat exposed to raiding parties, as a point for the concentration of caravans crossing the Eastern Desert to Bilma, or in other words at the branching of the Salt Road and the north-south route. On its present site, Agades is out of the way for travellers from any direction who may be bound beyond the city. Some other explanation must then be found, and it occurred to me only when I had reached the city itself.

The fact of the matter is that Agades is not the capital of Air at all. As we have seen, the city is not the seat of the central government because there is no real central government, and the King who lives there is not really King at all. Agades is only the seat of an administration set up in the first instance to deal with exterior affairs, and more especially those connected with the Southland. These affairs were in the charge of a figure-head ruler unconnected, except to a very minor degree, with the internal problems of the Tuareg tribes. When this is once grasped, Agades assumes a different position in the perspective of history and it becomes apparent that the site is really suited to the purpose for which it was intended. The place where the city lies is neutral as far as the tribes of Air are concerned; it has easy access to the Sudan yet is removed from the main roads, which are considered the property of certain groups of clans. But it follows that the character of the city must inevitably partake rather of the south than of the Sahara.

Finally, there is the most conclusive evidence of all; during the early part of the Tuareg occupation of Air, there was no city of Agades at all; it fulfilled no need despite the caravan traffic. It was presumably not founded when Ibn Batutah travelled through Air, for he makes no mention of the name; although this is negative evidence, it is valuable in the case of so observant a traveller. By 1515, when Askia conquered the Tuareg of Air, Agades, however, was certainly in existence, since it is on record that he occupied the city for a year, “sitting down north of the town,” possibly at T’in Shaman. Marmol, moreover, is quite definite on the subject, saying that the city was founded 160 years before he wrote, a date which has been reckoned at 1460 A.D.[106] We know that the first Sultans of Air did not live at Agades, but by inference it may be supposed that they soon came to do so, so that the date suggested is probably correct. With the advent of a figure-head king there sprang up a figure-head capital. The story of Agades is the story of its kings: the explanation of both is similar.

What seems to have struck Barth most about Agades was that the people spoke Songhai and not Temajegh; it was, in fact, one of the few places left where the language of the greatest Empire of the Niger still survived. There is reason to believe that most of the Emagadezi are not of Tuareg race at all. The Songhai element is probably preponderant even now, four hundred years after the conquest of

Agades by the Songhai king, Muhammad Askia, who planted a colony there. The face veil has been adopted universally, but the physical type of the inhabitants is much more akin to that of people of the south than to that of true Tuareg. The descendants of the Songhai conquerors are coarse, broad-featured people with dark skins and untidy hair, which is an abomination among the noble Tuareg. The same characteristics reappear among the inhabitants of certain points west of Agades on the south-western outskirts of Air, where the Songhai element is also known to have become established and to have survived. The people of Agades are hardly even considered as natives of the country by the rest of the inhabitants of Air. They are not classed as a group, like the inhabitants of other settlements in the mountains. It is rarer to hear the “Kel Agades” mentioned than it is to hear such exotic compositions as “Kel es Sudan” or “Kel Katchena.” The people of Agades are more usually spoken of as the “Emagadezi,” in much the same way as the Kanuri in the Air dialect are called “Izghan” and the Tebu “Ikaradan.”

The family of the Sultan is foreign in appearance. The physiognomy of Abd el Qader, who wore the white face veil usually associated in the north with servile caste, was not, as far as could be seen by Barth, that of a Tuareg. His corpulence was equally a foreign peculiarity, despite which Barth considered him “a man of great worth though devoid of energy.” The personality of the present Sultan, Omar, has already been described; his dark skin and coarse features betray a very mixed ancestry. These peculiarities are not unexpected in a family descended through slave women, who may, of course, be of any race.

The different races and languages of Agades would be interesting to study in greater detail. The name Terjeman, given to one quarter of the town, is evidence in the estimation of its inhabitants of the Babel which has occurred. Temajegh, Hausa, Kanuri, Songhai and Arabic are spoken; even the more exceptional Fulani, Wolof and Tebu are heard, while the advent of the French garrison with its negro troops has introduced further linguistic complications, and will, of course, in time accentuate the Sudanese element in the racial composition, for at no time do the morals of the ladies of Agades appear to have been beyond reproach. The consequences of city life are felt even here in the Sahara. The forwardness of the ladies so moved Barth to indignation that he discoursed at considerable length on the standards of conduct which should be observed by Europeans in these far countries towards native women. He no doubt owed much of his success to the respect in which he held the feelings of the people among whom he travelled. Rather than provoke criticism, he recommends explorers to take their own wives with them. A few pages further on, describing his journey through the Azawagh, he is again referring to advances of the Tuareg women of the Tegama. One appreciates his resentment at these importunities, but is inclined to speculate on the true inwardness of his thoughts. On one occasion at least his artistic feelings rather than his sense of propriety seem to have been offended, for he writes: “It could scarcely be taken as a joke. Some of the women were immensely fat, particularly in the hinder regions, for which the Tawarek have a peculiar and expressive name—‘tebulloden.’”

---

[75] Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 523.

[76] Literally “a small river or torrent” in

Temajegh.

[77]Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 454.

[78]This generalisation is not intended to cover exceptional examples of stone construction such as those in Sokoto Province.

[79]For the houses of Air see Chap. VIII, where characteristic plans are given.

[80]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 477.

[81]According to Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 451; but the minaret was built in 1847, according to the Agades Chronicle (*Journal of the African Society*, July 1910).

[82]This is the one to which Chudeau (*Missions au Sahara*, Vol. II, *Le Sahara Soudanais*, p. 64) refers as 980 years old according to tradition, presumably basing himself on the same information as Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 86. The date is improbable, as Agades was not founded at that time.

[83]Cf. Leo Africanus, Vol. III. Bk. VII. p. 829: “The king of this citie hath alwaies a noble garde about him.” Cf. Plate 11.

[84]Leo Africanus, Vol. III. Bk. VII. p. 829.

[85]Denham and Clapperton, Vol. II. p. 397.

[86]The same procedure is indicated in the Agades Chronicle, which also states that the Kel Owi give him an ox (*Journal of the African Society*, *loc. cit.*)

[87]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 422.

[88]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 89.

[89]Isuf or Yusuf according to Jean, who is certainly wrong in this respect. *Op. cit.*, p. 89. Chudeau, *op. cit.*, p. 70, gives his name as Yunis, as did my informants in Air.

[90]The date of the founding of Agades is a measure of confirmation: *vide infra*, Chap. XI.

[91]The second Sultan is given by Chudeau, *op. cit.*, p. 64, as Almubari (El Mubaraki): a ruler of this name succeeded a Yusif whom he deposed in 1601; some confusion has probably arisen on account of Jean's error in supposing that the first Sultan was called Yusuf instead of Yunis.

[92]See Appendix VI.

[93]See table in Appendix VI.

[94]Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 468.

[95]See also the remarks made in Chap. XII regarding the tribes which elected the Sultan.

[96]For the explanation of the sense which these words have acquired, see second footnote, Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 471.

[97]The Tuareg have forestalled many European Powers in making their Prime Minister also Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs.

[98]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 89.

[99]Leo Africanus, Vol. III. Bk. VII. p. 829.

[100]The influence of the Emir of Sokoto to which Barth has referred is exercised through the Itesan by virtue of their domicile near this city. Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 468.

[101]Cf. Leo Africanus, Vol. III. p. 829.

[102]Cf. map in Chap II.

[103]My estimate of 30,000 inhabitants was arrived at locally without any books of reference. On my return I found that Barth had arrived at the same figure, with a possible maximum of 50,000 (*op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 472).

[104]The French operations of 1918 against Air, the occupation of the country from the south

in 1904 and the passage of the Foureau-Lamy expedition are not considered, as the superiority of European weapons makes it impossible to compare these exploits with native enterprises, though the success of the first two and the appalling losses in camels and material of the last in a measure confirm the thesis.

[105] *Vide supra*, Chap. II.

[106] By Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 459, and by Cooley, *Negroland of the Arabs*, p. 26, as 1438 A.D.

CHAPTER IV

THE ORGANISATION OF THE AIR TUAREG

On 6th August, soon after noon, I marched out of Agades with twenty-six camels and eight men for Central Air. My two travelling companions had left the same morning with ten camels in the opposite direction, bound for a point called Tanut[107] near Marandet in the cliff of the River of Agades. Some men of the Kel Ferwan, who were camped under the cliff south of the river, had brought information concerning a lion. At Marandet, it appeared, a cow had been killed and the trail of the offending beast was plainly visible; notwithstanding, Buchanan was unable to secure this lion or any specimen, or even a skull, so it proved impossible to classify the animal.

Circumstantial evidence goes to show that the lion still exists in Air, but is nevertheless very rare. In the Tagharit valley, a few miles north of Auderas, there is a cave in the side of a gorge which a large stream has cut through a formation of columnar basalt: a pink granite shelf makes a fine waterfall in the rainy season with a pool which survives at its foot all the year round. A lion used to live in this den until recent years, when it was killed by the men of Auderas because it had pulled down a camel out of a herd grazing in the neighbourhood. The carcase had been dragged over boulders and through scrub and up the side of the ravine into the lair; a feat of strength which no other animal but a lion could possibly have accomplished. When I came to the overhanging rock the ground was fœtid and befouled, and the skeleton of the camel was still there and comparatively fresh. One of the men of Auderas who had been present at the killing secured a claw as a valuable charm; another had apparently been severely mauled in the shoulder. They had surrounded the “king of beasts,” as the Tuareg also call him, and had attacked with spears and swords. There was no doubt of the animal having been a lion.

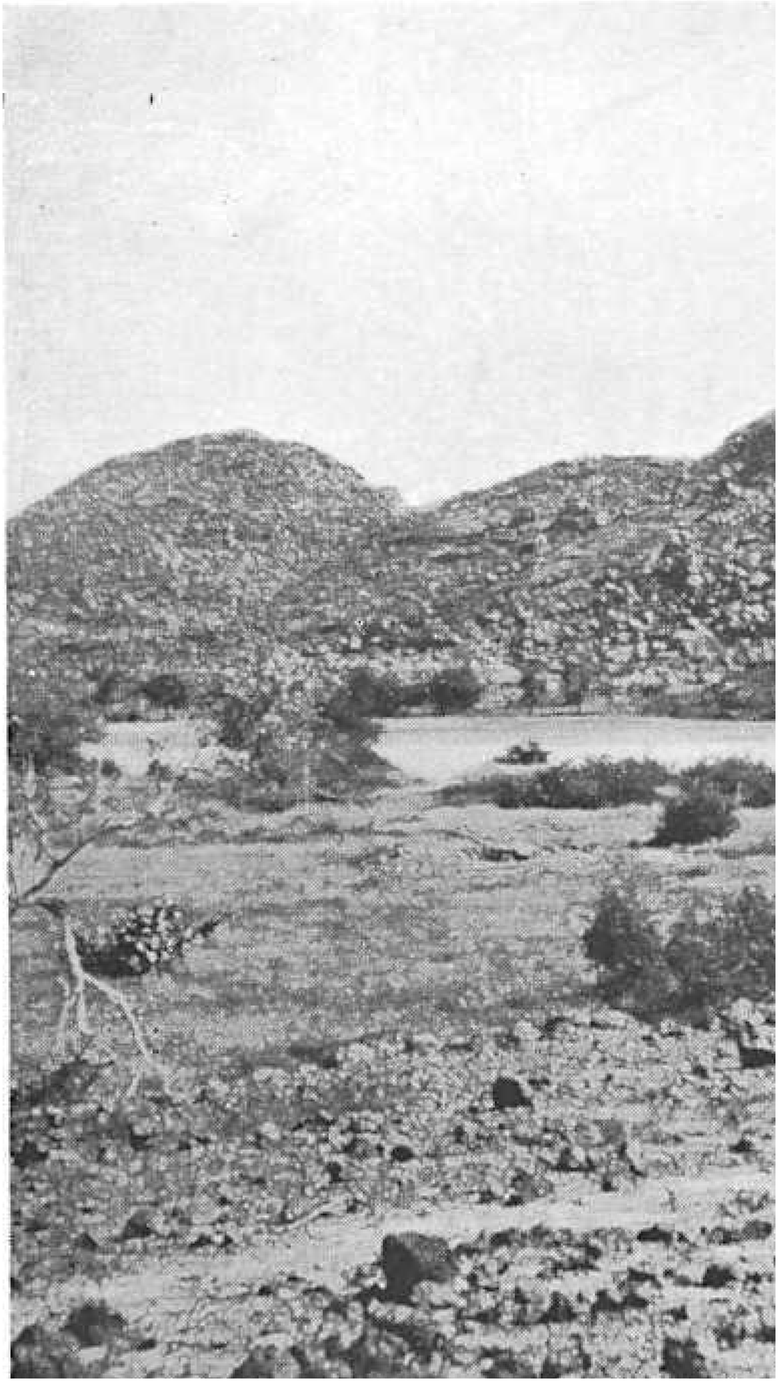
The cave in the Tagharit gorge is a short distance from the point[108] where Barth[109] saw “numerous footprints of the lion,” which he conceived to be extremely common in these highlands in 1850, albeit “not very ferocious.” In 1905 a lioness trying to find water fell into the well at Tagedufat and was drowned; her two small cubs were brought into Agades, and one of them was afterwards sent to the Jardin des Plantes in Paris.[110] This lion, however, may not have been of the same variety as the Air species, for the latter is said never to have been scientifically examined.

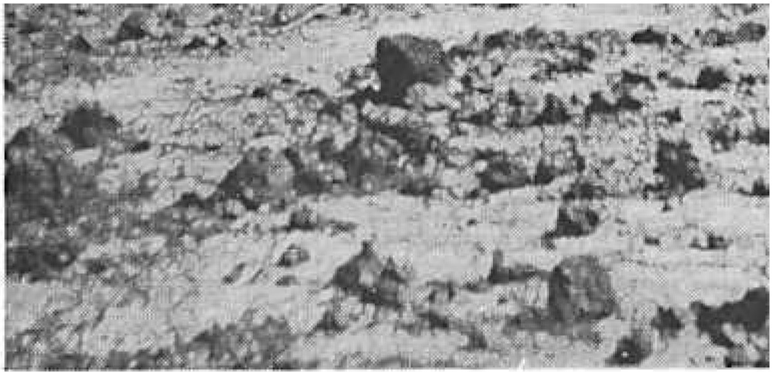
The Air lion has been described as a small maneless animal like the Atlas species, though von Bary, who, however, never himself saw one, heard that it had a mane. He confirms the report that the animal was common, as late as in 1877, especially in the Bagezan massif, where it used to attack camels and donkeys.[111]

The advent of the rains during the latter part of July made travelling through Air in many ways very pleasant. But there were also disadvantages. With the first fall of rain the flies and mosquitoes came into their own again. The common house-flies were especially trying during my journey north of Agades. They infested the country miles from any human habitation or open water.

PLATE 13

AUD





AUDERAS VALLEY: AEF

South of Agades the rains proved a terrible burden. The combined onslaughts of flies, mosquitoes and every other form of winged and crawling insect made life intolerable for Buchanan's party; meals had to be eaten under netting and naked lights were rapidly extinguished by incinerated corpses. Camels got no rest. Even the hardened natives had recourse to any device to snatch a little sleep. They went so far as to make their beds in the thorny arms of small acacia trees in order to escape the plague. The alluvial plain of the River of Agades had become so soft as to be almost impossible to cross. Mud engulfed the camels up to their bellies. The drivers used to unload them and push them bodily over on to their sides at the risk of breaking their legs in order to let the brutes kick themselves free. The several stream beds of the system, even if not too swollen to be completely unfordable, had such perpendicular banks where the water had cut its way down several feet below the surface of the ground that they became formidable obstacles. The constant threat of rain made long marches impossible, though it was abundantly clear that the longer the time that was spent in the valley the worse the ground would become. Buchanan was rewarded for his disappointment at not finding a lion by securing near Tanut two fine specimens of ostrich and an ant-bear. He also reported the existence near Marandet of a cemetery in the bank of a stream bed. It was unfortunate that he had not time to examine this site, as it seems to be an example of urn burial, probably of pre-Tuareg date.[112]

Half a day's march from Agades brought me to the village of Azzal on the valley of the same name, the lower part of which is called "Telwa," the most convenient name for the whole of this important basin. Azzal and the neighbouring Alarsas[113] are small settlements with a few date palms and some gardens. They were formerly inhabited only by serfs engaged in cultivating the gardens which supply Agades with vegetables. After the 1917 revolution in Air the noble population of certain villages in the Ighazar, which was evacuated, settled there temporarily under their chief, Abdulkerim of T'intaghoda. They were living in straw and reed huts, hoping in the course of time to return north and resume possession of the more substantial houses in their own country. During my stay in Air several families did, as a matter of fact, go back to Iferuan and Seliufet. But the presence of the remainder of these Kel Ighazar in the south is somewhat anomalous, as the country from the earliest times has been almost exclusively inhabited by servile people. The area, extending over the foothills of the main plateau, is not yet, properly speaking, Air, in the sense in which the name is used by the Tuareg. Like the desert further south, it is called Tegama.

After following the Telwa for a short distance the track crosses to the left bank and winds over low bare hills and torrent beds. A little before reaching

Solom Solom there is a wooded valley which the road leaves to cross a stretch of higher ground by a small pass covered with the remains of stone dwellings, the site, I presumed, of Ir n'Allem. The track is evidently very old at this point, for in places it has worn deep into the rock. The country is wild and picturesque, but the earth-brown hills are fashioned on a small scale. The district used to be infested by brigands who preyed on the caravans bound to and from Agades.

The southern part of my journey followed the usual route, though Barth on his expedition from T'intellust to Agades travelled both there and back by an alternative track rather further east in the Boghel valley and via Tanut Unghaidan, which is not far from Azzal, where he rejoined the more habitual way.

At Dabaga my road from Solom Solom rejoined the Telwa valley and crossed the stream bed after a short descent into a basin covered with dense thickets of dûm palms and acacias. The trees were filled with birds. The river was in full flood, over a quarter of a mile wide and some two feet deep—an imposing stream draining south-western Bagezan and Todra into the River of Agades. I was luckily able to cross it with my laden camels, but some travellers only a little behind me were held up for several days by the floods which followed the heavy rain in Central Air. Travelling at this season of the year is slow, as camp must be pitched before the daily rains begin, usually soon after noon. On the other hand, it is very convenient to be able to halt anywhere on the road regardless of permanent watering-points; for every stream bed, even if not actually in flood, contains pools or water in the sand.

Climatically Air is a Central African country. It is wholly within the summer rainfall belt, the northern limit of which coincides fairly accurately with the geographical boundary of the country at the wells of In Azawa. The rains usually commence in July, and last for two months, finishing as abruptly as they have begun. Within the limits of the belt, the further north, the later, on the whole, is the wet season, though great irregularities are observed. In Nigeria the rains fall during May and June, at Iferuan they occur in August and September.[114] They are tropical in their intensity, and in Air nearly always fall between noon and sunset.

During my stay at Auderas there were a few days when the sky was overcast for the whole of the twenty-four hours, with little rainfall; the damp heavy feeling in the air reminded one of England, as the atmosphere was cold and misty. On one particular day it rained lightly and fitfully for fourteen hours on end with occasional heavy showers. Such phenomena, however, are rare. Precipitation follows a north-easterly wind and usually lasts three or four hours; as soon as the westerly wind, prevalent at this season, has sprung up, the nimbus disperses rapidly, leaving only enough clouds in the evening to produce the most magnificent sunsets that I have ever seen.

In 1922 the rainy season at Auderas was virtually over by the 10th September, though it continued a little later in the north. The rains were followed by a period of damp heat, and then by some days when the ground haze was so thick that visibility was limited to a few hundred yards. Until recent years there seems to have been a short second rainy season in the north of Air coinciding with the first part of the Mediterranean winter precipitation. In November near Iferuan I experienced several days on which rain appeared to be imminent, but none fell. Natives told me that up to three or four years previously they had often had a few days' rain in December and January. In 1850 the last rain of the summer season, which, exceptionally, had begun as far north and as early as 26th May at Murzuk, was recorded on 7th October, but in November and December after a fine period the sky had again become overcast, and a few drops of rain actually fell in Damergu on 7th January, 1851. The cycles of precipitation in the Sahara are constantly varying and data are as yet insufficient to permit any conclusion. It would be quite incorrect, from the accounts of the last ten years alone, to suppose that the rainfall had markedly diminished, or that the second rainy season had disappeared.

During the rains the larger watercourses meandering among the massifs of the country often become impassable for days on end, which is inconvenient, for in ordinary times they are the channels of communication. Owing to the lack of surface soil and vegetation on the as yet undisintegrated volcanic rock, streams fill with surprising rapidity during the rains and are very dangerous for the unwary traveller. The great joy of these weeks was the freshness of the air after the intolerable heat of June and July, especially in the plains. With the rain too came the annual rebirth of plant life, which made one's outlook very sweet. In European spring-time Nature awakes from winter sleep, but in Africa a new world, fresh and green and luxurious, is born after the rains out of a shrivelled corpse of sun-dried desert.

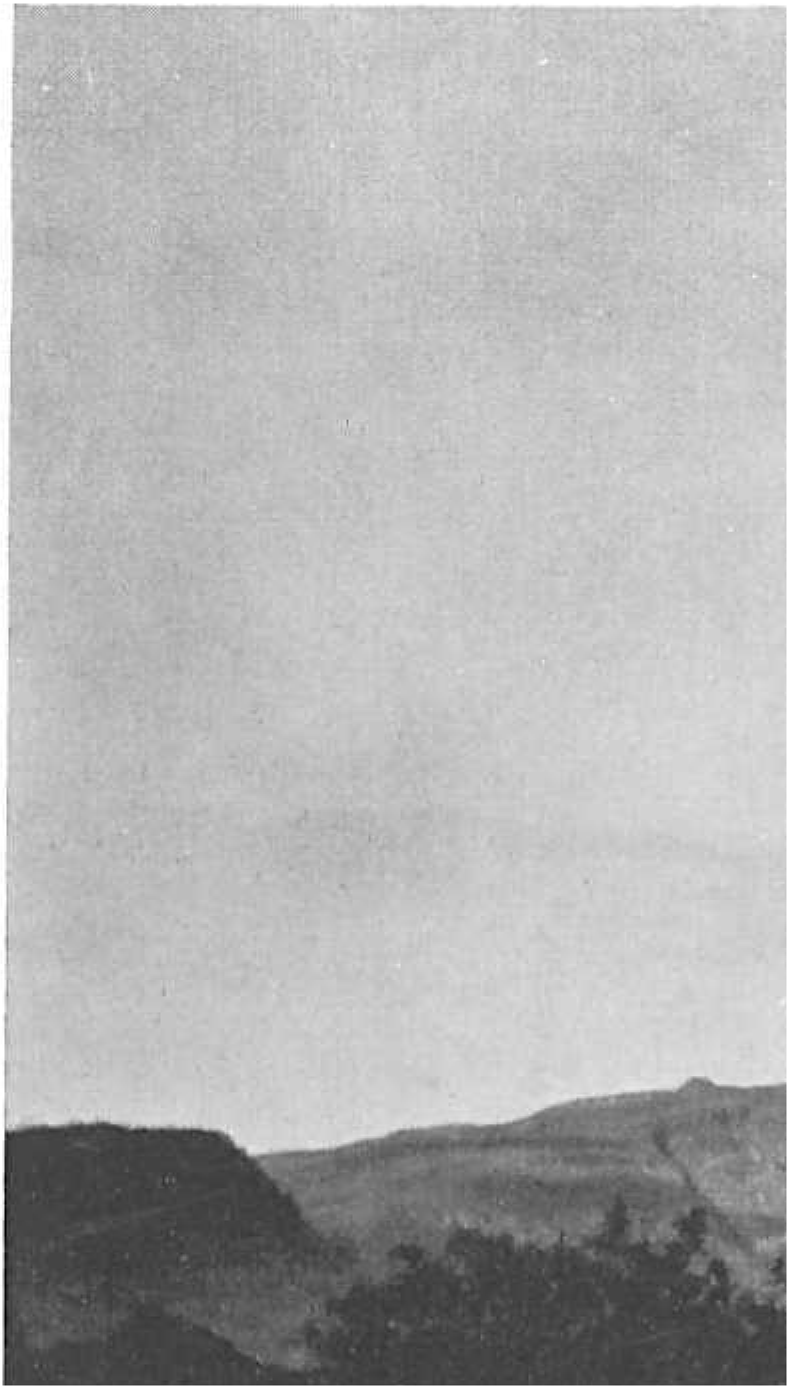
At Dabaga I was persuaded to forsake the caravan road which continues up the Telwa and take a riding road by Assa Pool and the T'inien mountains. Difficulties began at Assa, when I tried to pitch my tent on rocky ground, with the result that it was almost impossible to keep it erect in the rain squalls which followed. The evening, after the rain, was unsatisfactory. I wounded two jackals at which I had shot, but did not kill either. I missed several guinea-fowl and only secured a pair of pigeons among the dûm palms of the valley. Also, there were many flies. However, I made the acquaintance of one of the greatest guides in Air, Efale, who overtook me on his way north, and camped near me. He talked volubly that night. Next day, after dropping sharply into the T'inien valley by a narrow defile, the road became frankly devilish. At the bottom of the steep sides the soil is impregnated with salt, which effectually prevents anything growing. There are a number of circular pits where the sandy salt, called "ara" or "agha," is worked. The mixture is dried in cakes and sold in the south for a few pence. It is only fit for camels, which require a certain amount of salt every month, more especially after they have been feeding on fresh grass. "Ara" can only be used for human food if the sand has been washed out and the brine re-dried.

After leaving Assa the vegetation had almost entirely disappeared. Low gravel-strewn hills on the right obscured the view to the east. The T'inien valley soon made a right-angle turn to the north, closing to a narrow cleft, which became even rougher. The track was a series of steps between huge granite and quartz boulders, among which the camels kept on stumbling. Their loads required constant readjustment and there was no room to kneel them down. The way was really only fit for unloaded camels or riders on urgent business. There had not been a tree or bush for hours. We climbed some 600 feet in about a mile, almost to the very top of the jagged peaks on the left that marked the summit of the T'inien range. By 11.15 a.m. I was beginning to despair of finding a camp site before the rain was due, as I foresaw a similar unpleasant descent on the other side of the col which had so long been looming ahead. Then as I reached the gates of the pass a view over the whole of Central Air suddenly burst upon me in such beauty as I can never forget.

The ground sloped imperceptibly to the east. It fell away only about a hundred feet to the north, where a row of small crags, the continuation of the T'inien range, cut off the western horizon. Straight in front in the distance, piled mass upon mass, the blue mountains of Central Air rose suddenly out of the uplands, soaring into the African sky. Between the bold cliffs and peaks of the Bagezan mountains and the long low Taruaji group to the right, a few little conical hills of black rock broke the surface of the vast plain which rolled away to the east. From so great a distance the plain seemed tolerably smooth, veined like the hand of a man with watercourses winding southwards from the foot of the mountains. Black basalt boulders covered the flat spaces between lines of green vegetation and the threads of white sand, where the stream beds were just visible. Over the whole plain the new-born grass was like the bloom on a freshly-picked fruit. To the south-east stood the blue range of Taruaji itself, flat-topped and low on the horizon. Either side of the hills the curve of the world fell gently away towards the Nile.

I camped a mile or so north of the pass in a valley below the precipitous cliffs of a rock called Okluf, which has a castellated crown several hundred feet high. The rocks shone blue-black, with their feet in a carpet of green that seemed too vivid to be real. There were plenty of guinea-fowl and many other birds in the palm woods and thorn groves, and such grass as I thought only grew in the water meadows of England. I shall never forget the beauty of Central Air on that noonday in the rains, though I have it in me to regret the fiendish temper in which the day’s march had left me. The flies in the evening and the fast-running things upon the ground at night only made it worse. I had hurriedly and laboriously pitched a tent, and it never rained after all.

PLATE 14



On the following day I ascended the T’ilisdak valley which flows into the Telwa, and reached Auderas village, where some huts had been prepared for us by the chief Ahodu, a man who soon became my most particular friend. The T’ilisdak valley is renowned for its excellent grazing and for some mineral springs where men, camels and herds go after the rainy season to take a “cure” of the waters.[115] Near Okluf there are the remains of several hut villages, and some with stone foundations of a more permanent character. They belong to a servile tribe of Southern Air called the Kel Nugguru, who at present are living somewhat further west.

Air proper may be said to begin at the head of the T'ilisdak valley. The part of the plateau I had traversed was therefore still in Tegama, which includes the whole area south of Bagezan and Todra as far as the River of Agades, as well as the Taruaji massif, but not the country east of the latter and of Bagezan. Most of the villages in Tegama have gardens, and some have groves of date palms. That they are inhabited by serfs is, of course, natural, since the cultivation of the soil, in the estimation of the noble Tuareg, is not a worthy occupation for a man. When, however, in a nomad society agriculture is relegated to an inferior caste of people, it is inevitable that the practice should undermine the older allegiances. It becomes possible for the settled and therefore originally the servile people to accumulate wealth even in bad times when the profit from raiding or caravaning is denied to the upper classes of Air. The social effects of the disruption caused by the 1917 revolution may be observed in the village organisations, where people of different tribes are now tending more and more to live in association under the rule of a village headman, who for them is displacing the authority of their own tribal chiefs. The village headmen, it is true, are sometimes themselves the leaders of the tribes in whose area the village is situated, but more often they are merely local men acting on the delegated authority of the tribal chief, who in Tegama is probably the head of an Imghad or servile tribe dependent in turn upon some noble tribe living in a different part of Air. But in time the population of a village may become known collectively as the people of such and such a place, and so reference to the old tribal allegiance of the inhabitants disappears.

Tuareg tribal names deserve close investigation. They are of two categories: those which begin with

"Kel" (People of . . .) and those which begin with "I" or sometimes "A." This "I" or "A" may be quite strongly pronounced, but often represents the so-called "neutral vowel,"[116] which is very difficult to transliterate. Thus the word "Ahaggar" might as correctly be written "Ihaggar"; the initial vowel indeed is so little emphasised that the French have come to write simply "Hoggar" or "Haggar." On the other hand, in the name Ikazkazan, an Air tribe, the "I" is marked; in the Azger tribe, again, the Ihadanaren, it is so lightly accentuated that Barth writes "Hadanarang." This point, however, is of little moment: what matters is the question of the type of prefix to the name. To simplify reference I propose to call these two types "Kel name" and "I name" tribes. After examining the two categories at length, a distinction seemed to me to stand out clearly; I believe it holds good among other Tuareg as well as those of Air. The primary tribal divisions have names of the "I" category, except in certain cases where they are nearly always known to have been forgotten; the subdivisions of these tribes have "Kel names." The former are proper names; the latter are derived either from the place where the people usually or once lived, or from some inherent peculiarity. The word "Kel" is also used to cover generalisations of no ethnic importance: the "I name," on the other hand, is scarcely ever geographical or adjectival. The generalisation will be clearer for a few examples, chosen among the Air tribes. The noble tribe called Imasrodang has for sub-tribes the Kel Elar, Kel Seliufet and Kel T'intaghoda, called after the villages where they lived in Northern Air. Again, the Ikazkazan have one section or group of sub-tribes called the Kel Ulli—the People of the Goats—who are themselves subdivided into other factions bearing “Kel names.”

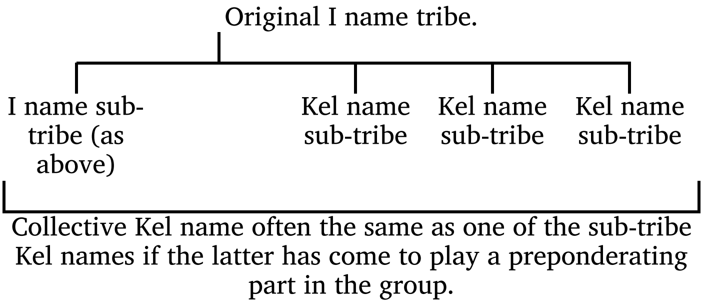
Certain other “Kel names” like Kel Ataram or Kel Innek are often heard in Air, but are not proper names at all; they were erroneously regarded by Barth as tribal names, but simply mean the “People of the West” and the “People of the East” respectively, and have no inherent ethnic significance. In Air the former term logically includes, and is meant to include, the Arab as well as the Tuareg tribes of the west.[117]

So clear is this use of geographical “Kel names” that we shall find repeated instances later on of tribes who, having migrated from a certain area, retain their old names, though these are no longer applicable to their new ranges. Take, for example, the Kel Ferwan—the People of Iferuan, in North Air; they now live in the southern parts of the country. Or, again, there are two Kel Baghzen, called after a mountain group in Central Air; the one group is still in that area, the other, which once lived there, has since migrated to the country north of Sokoto.

In certain forms the word “Kel” corresponds to the Arabic word “ahel,” but the latter seems more usually employed in connection with wide geographical indications of habitat, without much ethnic significance, like Kel Innek. The use of this type of “Kel name” is the exception rather than the rule in Temajegh and has a colloquial rather than traditional sanction. The more common “Kel names,” on the other hand, are definitely individual tribal names, and refer to small areas. They are not by any means restricted to sedentary tribes.[118]

A third category of names commencing with the “Im” or “Em” prefix is regarded by Barth[119] as virtually identical with the “Kel” class, but this is not quite accurate. The "Im" prefix is used to make an adjectival word form of place names; the "Kel names" only become adjectival by prefixing "People of . . ." Thus "Emagadezi" would be more correctly translated as "Agadesian" than as the "People of Agades," whose correct designation is Kel Agades. "I names" partake of neither of these characteristics. For the most part their significance remains unexplained. It follows that "Kel names," although proper to the tribes that bear them, being descriptive or geographical, are certainly not so old as the individual and proper "I names."

There are examples of tribes which have lost their "I names" and are only referred to by a "Kel name," though in many cases this is more apparent than real. When a tribe with an "I name" increases until the point is reached where it subdivides, one of the subdivisions retains the original "I name," the remainder take other and, usually, geographical appellations. This process might be shown graphically:—

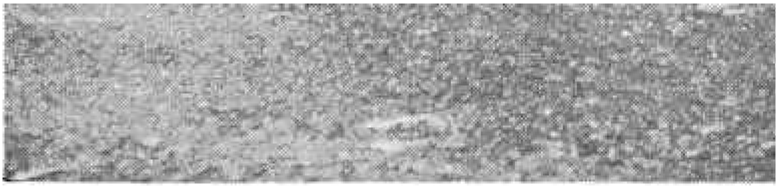

Original I name tribe.
I name sub-tribe (as above)
Kel name sub-tribe
Kel name sub-tribe
Kel name sub-tribe
Collective Kel name often the same as one of the sub-tribe Kel names if the latter has come to play a preponderating part in the group.

This difference of nomenclature has a definite bearing on the difficulties of co-ordinating sedentarism and nomadism in one people, which must have occurred to everyone who has studied the problem in administration. The exact relations between a village headman, the tribal chiefs of the persons who are living in his village and the tribal chief of the area in which the village is situated cannot be defined. One set of allegiances is breaking down and another has not yet been completely formed. This was already going on in Air when the position was complicated by the advent of a European Power demanding a cut-and-dried devolution of authority, and tending to encourage sedentary qualities in order to prevent raiding. These problems in Air to-day are almost insoluble, but they are of an administrative rather than of an anthropological order.

Auderas at the present time is probably the most important place in Air after Agades. As an essentially agricultural settlement it is an excellent example of the village organisation. The valley of Auderas lies about 2600 feet above the sea. Seven small valleys unite above the village and two affluents come in below, draining the western slopes of Mount Todra and a part of the Dogam group. The main stream eventually finds its way out into the Talak plain[120] under various names. The sandy bed of the valley near the village contains water all the year round. Both banks are covered with intense vegetation, including a date-palm plantation of some thousand trees. Under the date palms and amongst the branching dûm-palm woods, where the thickets and small trees have been cleared or burnt off, are a number of irrigated gardens supplied with water from shallow wells. Some wheat, millet, guinea corn and vegetables are grown with much labour and devotion. Onions and tomatoes are the principal vegetables all the year round, with two sorts of beans in the winter. Occasionally sweet potatoes and some European vegetables like carrots, turnips and spinach are grown from seeds which have been supplied by the French. Pumpkins do well and water melons are common. There is also a sweet melon. Three different shapes of gourds for making drinking and household vessels are cultivated. Cotton is found in small quantities, the plant having probably been imported from the Sudan. Its presence in Air is interesting, as in 1850 Barth had placed the northern limit of Sudan cotton in the south of Damergu. The cotton plant does very well when carefully irrigated and produces a good quality of fibre. Two samples which I brought home from Air were reported on respectively as: “good colour, strong, fairly fine $1^{3}/_{16}$ staple,” and “generally good colour, staple $1^{3}/_{16}$-1¼ inches, strong and fine”; the materials were respectively valued at 20·35 and 21·35 pence per pound when American May Future Cotton stood at 17·35 pence (May 1924).[121] The Tuareg spin their cotton into a rough yarn for sewing or making cord, but in Air they do not seem to weave. The indigo plant grows wild in Air: it is not cultivated, nor is it used locally for dyeing.

The gardens require much attention and preparation. The ground is cleared and the scrub burnt off as a top dressing. The soil is then carefully levelled by dragging a heavy plank or beam forwards and backwards by hand across the surface. The area is divided up into small patches about six feet square with a channel along one side communicating with a leat from an irrigation well. These wells are usually unlined and shallow, with a wooden platform overhanging the water on one side; on this a rectangular frame is set up with a second cross member carrying a pulley over which a rope is passed. An ox or a donkey pulls up the big leather bucket by the simple process of walking away from the well, returning on its tracks to lower it again. The bucket is a tubular contrivance, the bottom of which is folded up while the water is raised; when it reaches the level of the irrigation channel, a cord is pulled to open the bottom of the leather tube and the water allowed to run out. The other end of this cord is attached to the animal, and the length is so adjusted that the operation is performed automatically each time the bucket comes to the top. The pole and bucket with a counterweight and the water wheel are not known in Air for raising water; nor are any dams constructed either to make reservoirs in ravines or to maintain a head of water for flow irrigation in the rainy season. Each little patch in the gardens is hoed and dressed with animal manure. The seed is planted and carefully tended every day, for it is very valuable. Barth records seeing at Auderas a plough drawn by slaves. This was clearly an importation from the north; the plough is not now used anywhere in the country, which at heart has never been agricultural.

PLATE 15



As in the south, millet and guinea corn are sown during the rains, but they usually require irrigation before they reach maturity. In certain areas rain-grown crops could be raised most years. In the past a fair amount of cereals seems to have been produced in this way; to-day the Tuareg are too poor to risk losing their seed in the event of inadequate or irregular rainfall. Although the wheat grown in the Ighazar used nearly all to be exported to the Fezzan, where it was much in demand on account of its excellent quality for making the Arab food “kus-kus,” Air at no time has produced enough grain for its own consumption. In the economics of Air necessary grain imports are paid for by the proceeds of wheat sales or live-stock traffic with the north, and by the profits of the trade in salt from Bilma; these provide the means of purchasing the cheaper millet and guinea corn of Damergu. Any additional surplus, representing annual savings, is invested in live-stock, especially camels, within the borders of the country.

The breakdown of the social organisations of the Tuareg in Air compelled numbers of nobles out of sheer poverty after they had lost their camels and herds to cultivate the soil; before the war not even the servile people were very extensively so employed if they could find enough slaves to do the work.

Neither the advent of a European Power nor the subsequent changes in the social structure of the country has had very much effect on the position of slaves in Air. Of these there are two categories,[122] the household slave and the outdoor slave, and both of them are chattels in local customary law. The former are called “ikelan,” the latter “irawellan,”[123] or alternatively “bela,” “buzu” or “bugadie,” which, however, are not Temajegh words, but have been borrowed from the south. The term “irawel” is also used generically to cover both categories of slaves, although it primarily refers to the latter. In the use of this word Barth[124] makes one of the few mistakes of which he has been guilty, where he states that the most noble part of the Kel Owi group of tribes in Air is the “Irolangh” clan, to which the Amenokal or Sultan of the Kel Owi belonged. The paramount chief of his day, Annur, belonged to the Kel Assarara section of the Imaslagha tribe, which is probably the original and certainly one of the most noble of the Kel Owi, for it includes the Kel Tafidet, who gave their name to the whole confederation. The traveller’s mistaken reference to Irawellan or Irolangh is probably due to his having been informed by a member of some non-Kel Owi tribe that Annur and all his people were “really Irawellan,” or servile people. Such abuse of the Kel Owi is common among the other Air Tuareg. It is certainly not justified in fact, and is due to the contempt in which an older nobility will always hold more recent arrivals.[125]

The negro slaves, the Ikelan, are primarily concerned with garden cultivation, and are consequently sedentary. One half of the produce of their labour goes to their masters and the other half to support themselves and their families. Ikelan also perform all the domestic duties of the Tuareg to whom they belong, and herd their masters’ goats and sheep if they happen to be living in the same neighbourhood. A certain proportion of the offspring of the flocks is also given to the slaves. Since, primarily, they are cultivators of the ground, they do not move from place to place with their owners. They consequently often escape domestic work and herding. Despite their legal status they are in practice permitted to own property, though, if their masters decided to remove it, they would be within their rights to do so. In other words, the theoretical status of slavery which makes it impossible for a chattel to own property has been considerably modified, and not as a consequence of the altered conditions, or of the legislation of a European Power, but because slavery among the Tuareg never did involve great hardship. Their slaves, furthermore, always had the hope of manumission and consequent change to the status of Imghad or serfs, a rise in the social scale which, in fact, often did occur. It was in slave trading and not in slave owning that the Tuareg sinned against the ethical standards which are usually accepted in Europe, and obtained so unenviable a reputation last century.

Herding live-stock, and especially camels, is the primary function of the outdoor slave or Buzu. Though often also a negro, he is considered to possess a somewhat higher status than the Akel, for he does not as a rule work in the house or village. The Buzu’s work, if on the whole less strenuous than that of the tiller of gardens, is felt to be more manly because he is associated with camels. He travels with nobles or Imghad, to either of whom he may belong. He does all the hard menial work on the march. He is responsible especially for herding the camels at pasture and for loading and unloading them each day on the road. Such duties as filling water-skins, driving camels down to water, feeding them on the march and making rope for the loads, all fall to his lot. The Buzu may even accompany his master’s camels on raids or act as personal messenger for his lord. When the camels are resting he spends his days watching the grazing animals, or looking after any other herds which his master may own in the neighbourhood. On the whole I have found the Buzu a remarkably hard-working person. He is almost useless without his master to give him orders and to see that they are carried out, but ready to undertake any exertion connected with his work, which he regards as his fate, but not his privilege to perform without complaint.

It is difficult to determine whether there is any racial difference between the Buzu class, the tillers of gardens, and the ordinary household slaves. The first are more respected than the last, which may mean that they are more closely related in blood to their masters. The practice of concubinage, though not very widespread, has probably created the caste, and from them, in time, a certain proportion of the Imghad. While theoretically the children of a slave concubine and a Tuareg man ought to be “ikelan” like their mother, in practice they tend to rise into the superior caste of the Buzu, and eventually in successive generations to Imghad. In Air at least the general tendency is for the old-established caste distinctions to become more elastic and for the ancient order to pass away. Although the events of the last twenty years have contributed greatly to this change, the strongest factor has certainly been the increasing wealth of the Imghad, but another reason is probably that many Imghad tribes in Air were themselves originally Imajeghan before their capture in war or their subjugation by some means. Consequently with the dissolution of tribal allegiances in Air and enhanced prosperity they have tended to revert to their former status. They cling so tenaciously to nobility of birth that, rather than accept the logical results of inferiority consequent upon defeat in war, the people collectively combine to admit the fiction of servile people possessing dual status.

The presence of more than one racial type among the Imghad has led certain travellers to make quite unjustifiable generalisations about this section of Tuareg society. There have also been advanced numerous and most unnecessarily complicated theories to account for the division of the race as a whole into these two castes. The problem is really much simpler. Although by no general rule can it be said that the Imghad originally belonged to this or to that people, they are all clearly the descendants of groups or individuals captured in war and subsequently released from bondage to form a caste enjoying a certain measure of freedom, and having a separate legal or civil existence under something more than the mere political suzerainty of the noble tribe which originally possessed them. In this first stage, the noble tribe represents the original pure Tuareg race, while the oldest Imghad are the first extraneous people whom they conquered, in some cases perhaps as early as in the Neolithic ages. “It is necessary,” says Bates,[126] with great justice, “to state emphatically that the division into Imghad and Imajeghan is so ancient that the Saharan Berbers preserve no knowledge of its origin.” This antiquity may be held to account for the complete national fusion which has taken place among the two castes: nearly all Imghad would utterly fail to grasp a suggestion that they were not to-day as much Tuareg as their Imajeghan overlords, however they may dislike and abuse the latter. As time went on more and more Imghad were added to the race, each group being subject to the noble tribe responsible for its conquest. The possibility of a group of people becoming the Imghad of an Imghad tribe was precluded by the relations obtaining between serfs and nobles, whereby it is the sole prerogative of the latter to wage war or make peace. Should an Imghad tribe capture slaves in war they could not be manumitted except by the Imajegh tribe, the lords of the victorious Imghad; and by the act of manumission the newly-acquired slaves would then become the equals of their Imghad conquerors under the dominion of the Imajeghan concerned.

The Imghad of Air may be divided into three categories whose history is so intimately bound up with the noble tribes that it cannot be considered separately. There are the Imghad whose association with their respective Imajeghan dates from before their advent to Air; their origin must be looked for in the Fezzan or elsewhere at some very early date. Secondly, there are the Imghad who were the original inhabitants of Air before the Tuareg came, and who by some agreement at the time, like the traditional one of Maket n'Ikelan,[127] were not enslaved but allowed to continue living in the country side by side with the new arrivals in a state of vassalage or semi-servitude. Lastly, there are the Imghad who are either Arabs, Tuareg of other divisions, or negroids from the south captured in the course of raids from Air, in some cases as recently as a generation ago. With these different origins it is not surprising to find among the Air Imghad both a strongly negroid type, a non-negroid and non-Tuareg type, and a type showing the fine features and complexion characteristic of the Imajeghan themselves. The first type is the pre-Tuareg population of Air. It is the most common, if only for the reason that negroid characteristics always appear to be dominant in the cross-breeding which ensued. The second type represents the Arab or Berber element acquired by conquest. The third type represents the subjugated groups of Imajeghan of other divisions.[128] Of the latter category are, for instance, the Kel Ahaggar, Imghad of the Kel Gharus, who were originally nobles from the great northern division of the Tuareg. Many of the Kel Ferwan Imghad are believed to be Arabs or Tuareg of the west, captured comparatively recently on raids into the Aulimmiden territory. The Kel Nugguru are the freed slaves of the Añastafidet, the administrative head of the Kel Owi confederation: they have become so prosperous that they are now laying claim to be of noble origin, a pretension which no right-minded Imajegh in Air will admit for a moment. But it is almost impossible nowadays to trace the history of each Imghad tribe in detail. Generally, in the absence of more precise data, it may be assumed that those Imghad tribes which have "I names" are the oldest; for here the process of assimilation to the mass of the Tuareg race is most complete, either on account of the length of their mutual association or owing to the fact that they were originally themselves of the same race; the "Kel name" Imghad, on the other hand, are probably more recent additions.[129]

The confusion reigning on the subject of the "Black" and "White" Tuareg in the minds of the few people in Europe who have ever heard of the race is due to the practice in the north of the servile wearing a white, and the nobles a black, veil. But a "Black" Tuareg, being a noble, will, in the vast majority of cases, have a much fairer complexion and more European features than a "White," or servile Tuareg. In Air the colour of the veil affords no means of distinguishing the caste of the wearer. The best veils, being made in the south, are consequently cheaper in Air than in the north, and this is probably the reason why Imajeghan and Imghad alike in Air wear the indigo-black Tagilmus. When a white veil is seen, it usually means that the wearer is too poor to buy a proper black one and has had to resort to some makeshift torn from the bottom of his robe.

Slaves, domestic or pastoral, do not wear the face veil at all. This is the essential outward difference between them and the Imghad. The latter, whatever their origin, are considered to be a part of the Tuareg people; the former cannot be so, for they are simply accounted to belong, as camels do, to the People of the Veil.

The exact status of the Imghad, or "meratha" (merathra) as they are called by the Arabs in Fezzan, is somewhat difficult to define. There is no adequate translation in any European language of the word "amghid."[130] The process of their original enslavement and subsequent release to form a category of people who have achieved partial but not complete freedom has, I think, no parallel in Europe except in a modified form in the state of vassalage. Yet, as "servile" conveys too narrow and definite a relationship, so "vassal" is certainly too broad a term. In the state of servility or, to coin a word, "imghadage" to which the pre-Tuareg inhabitants of Air appear to have been reduced, the process of enslavement and release may be said to have taken place only as a legal fiction, and not, if the tradition is to be accepted as accurate, in real fact. The general practice seems to have been that when large groups of people were subjugated or captured in war they were simultaneously released into the state of imghadage, but when individuals or a few persons were acquired by force or by purchase, they were only manumitted in the course of time, if at all, and incorporated at some later date into an Imghad tribe or village already in existence.

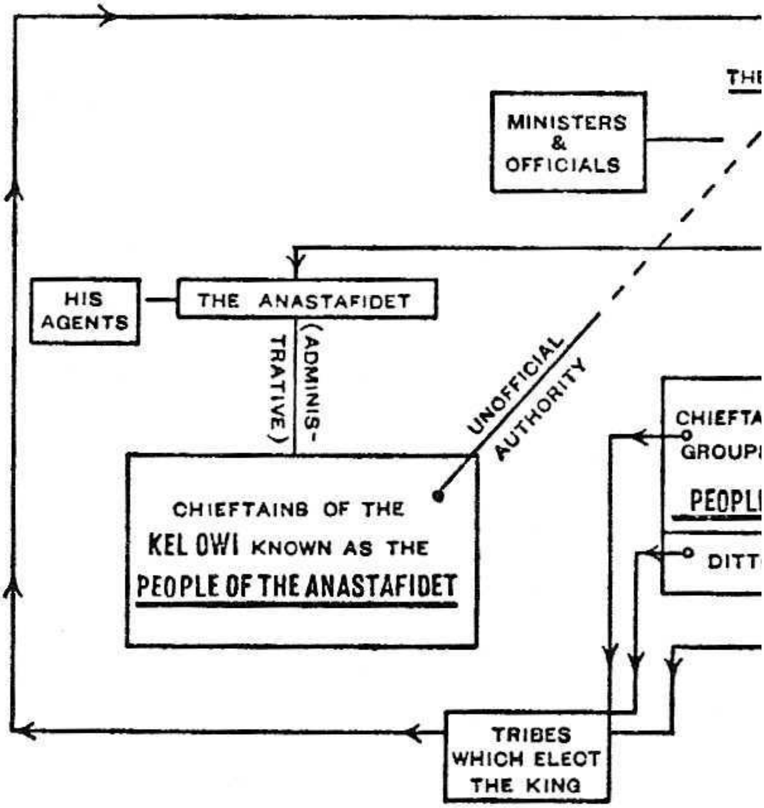
In contradistinction to slaves, the Imghad are not bound individually, but collectively, and not to individuals, but to a noble tribe or group of tribes. They are in no sense considered to be the property of the latter; but the relationship is closer than that of suzerain and vassal. It is not within the power of an Imghad tribe to change its allegiance, since in the first instance its members were theoretically at least the property of its overlord tribe; they owe their separate existence to an act of manumission freely and voluntarily accomplished. A change of allegiance could occur only if a servile tribe were captured in whole or in part; it follows that when this has occurred one servile tribe might owe allegiance in several parts to different noble groups.[131] The bond between them consists of the right of the responsible noble tribe alone, and therefore of its chief, to administer justice among the dependent Imghad, either in small cases by tacitly confirming the verdict of their own headman, or in more weighty matters by express reference. The Imghad tribe may be fined or punished collectively by their lords, and would have no right to appeal to the Amenokal without permission. For the Amenokal to interfere on behalf of an Imghad tribe would constitute a breach of tribal custom and ensure a rebuff, if not worse. A certain proportion of the marriage portions payable in the Imghad tribes goes to their Imajeghan, who have the right to give or withhold consent to these contracts. One of the functions of the Imghad is to take complete charge of and use the camels of their lords for long periods or to trade with them on their behalf. In such cases the Imghad act as the agents of the nobles, each one of whom has a right to ask the servile tribe as a whole to undertake these duties.

But such obligations are imposed collectively on the tribe and not on any one Imghad. It is the custom to share the offspring of the camels thus herded in equal shares, though in the event of any of the animals dying whilst under the charge of the Imghad, the latter are collectively responsible for making good the loss, save in extenuating circumstances. Conversely, the nobles are, in every case,[132] the protectors of their dependents. The relations between Imghad and Imajeghan are a mixture of those obtaining under the feudalism of Europe and the “client” system of Rome.

A consequence of the interruption of caravan traffic and the disappearance of one of the principal sources of revenue of the noble Tuareg is that the Imghad as camel herders, and generally speaking as the more laborious members of the community, have gained where the nobles have lost.

Prosperity is emancipating the Imghad, and is materially assisting the breakdown of social distinctions which in time will survive only in the philosophic contemplation of the Imajeghan dreaming idly of the return of better days. The Imghad tribes used to be the unquestioning allies of their overlords in war; their numbers contributed greatly to the strength of any Imajegh tribe. Though they might not make war on their own initiative, the Imghad carried and still carry weapons.[133] They used to go on raids with their masters, or, if the Imajeghan were busy elsewhere, represent them with their masters’ camels and the weight of their own right arms. But the chiefs of the Imghad were never more than subordinates, or at the most advisers to the nobles.

To-day this unquestioning subservience has almost disappeared and we even find Khodi, chief of the Kel Nugguru, disputing with the noble Ahodu the leadership of the village of Auderas. This issue was one of great importance in local politics and originally arose out of the disputed ownership of certain palms which had been given to Ahodu when he was installed as head of the village as a reward for service rendered by him to the Foureau-Lamy expedition. The village is on the edge of the Kel Nugguru country, while Ahodu in fact comes from a northern tribe, the Kel Tadek, who have no real concern with this district. The impossibility of reconciling the tribal and settled organisations was clearly demonstrated in every aspect of this controversy. Khodi, living as a nomad with his people and camels at some distance from the village, sought, without success, to govern the community through various representatives, while Ahodu, who had given up wandering, was suspended by the French during the settlement of the legal case, and sat in the village watching mistake after mistake being made. Under the old system Khodi could never have pretended to dispute with a noble the position of chief of a large village: in fact an Imghad tribe without a protecting noble overlord would have been unlikely to administer a village at all. Similarly among the Ahaggaren Imghad of the Kel Gharus, a man of servile origin, Bilalen by name, has come to share with T'iaman the lordship of a once noble people of the north, a position of such importance that he is regarded as one of the most influential chiefs in Air. Bilalen has only become associated with the Ahaggaren by marriage; he could never have achieved even this, much less could he have attained so powerful a following in the country, under the old *régime*.


THI
MINISTERS & OFFICIALS
HIS AGENTS
THE ANASTAFIDET
(ADMINIS- TRATIVE)
UNOFFICIAL AUTHORITY
CHIEFTA
GROUP
PEOPL
DITT
CHIEFTAINS OF THE KEL OWI KNOWN AS THE PEOPLE OF THE ANASTAFIDET
TRIBES WHICH ELECT THE KING

Note.—The scheme is largely theoretical, as the Amenokal has rarely h authority over a part of the Aulimmiden has been even more nomina

In addition to the social distinctions between nobles and serfs, the Tuareg attach great importance to tribal classification. Among the inhabitants of the mountains a man will describe himself as, say, "Mokhammad of the Kel Such-and-such of the Kel Owi," or of the other category, which is called the "People of the King," as the case might be. These two great tribal divisions (there were three before the departure of the Kel Geres for the Southland) will be referred to in detail when the history of the migrations of the Air Tuareg is considered. The divisions are absolute; a tribe either is of the Kel Owi or is not of the Kel Owi. There is usually never any doubt; the erroneous attribution of a man’s tribe to the Kel Owi confederation would provoke the indignant rejoinder that his clan were “People of the King” and did not “belong (*sic*) to the Añastafidet.” The distinction means all that the difference between an ancient landed nobility and a *parvenu* commercial aristocracy denotes. Many of the older men of the “People of the King” go so far as to say that there are no nobles among the Kel Owi at all.[134] Apart from their slightly different ethnic origin, the principal reason why the Kel Owi have stood apart from the other tribes is that they possess an administrative leader of their own who represents the whole confederation; as they say, “he *speaks* for them to the Amenokal at Agades.” He is called the Añastafidet, the Child of Tafidet. The non-Kel Owi tribes, on the other hand, have no single leader other than the king; in their case each tribal chieftain transacts the business of his own tribe with the former independently of the other chiefs. For them the Amenokal of Air assumes the dual function of nominal ruler of the whole country and of direct overlord of certain tribes.

In accordance with the democratic traditions of the Tuareg, the Añastafidet,[135] like the Sultan, is elected. He must be a noble, but need not always be chosen from the same family. He is elected for a period of three years, but his tenure of office is really dependent upon a yearly revision by the Kel Owi tribes when they concentrate in the autumn to go with the salt caravan to Bilma. The tribal groups mainly responsible for the choice are the Kel Tafidet and Kel Azañieres; the Ikazkazan, being the junior group of the confederation, have little voice. The Añastafidet's badge of office[136] is a drum; he retains no authority on leaving office, though it entitles him to a certain degree of respect, and leads to his being consulted on State matters. In practice if the Añastafidet is reasonably capable he is confirmed in power for a succession of three-year periods. During the last fifty years there have been in all about six Añastafidets; one, I think the last holder of the office, is at present living at Zawzawa in Damergu. The Añastafidet's official place of residence was at Assode in Central Air, but since the evacuation of the north he has been living at Agades in direct touch with the Amenokal. His principal duties are to represent the confederation at the Court of the Sultan and maintain the freedom of transit through Air and Damergu for caravans, on which the prosperity of the tribes depends. Trade with the north and the position of the Kel Owi in Air astride the great caravan road which passes from north to south, east of the Central massifs, have in effect combined to place the foreign relations of all the Air people with Ghat and the Fezzan in the hands of the Añastafidet, business with the potentates of the south, on the other hand, being, as has already been stated, in the hands of the Amenokal at Agades. The breakdown of the trans-desert traffic during the war deprived the Kel Owi of most of their prosperity and the Añastafidet of his work.

The Añastafidet was assisted in his duties by four agents, two of whom dealt with local business, while the other two lived in the Southland to assist the Kel Owi tribes in their transactions there. Neither the Añastafidet nor his agents ever seem to have received a salary, and the former at least was expected to give munificent presents, but no doubt their official positions brought perquisites which compensated for any outlay. As in the case of the Sultan, the importance of the Añastafidet's office depends entirely on the personality of the holder. When von Bary visited the country, Belkho, chief of the Igermaden tribe, living at Ajiru in Eastern Air, thanks to his military prowess and political wisdom, was the *de facto* ruler of the whole country. His relations with the Amenokal were strained, even though he had him more or less under his influence; the Añastafidet had become of so little moment that he is only once mentioned by this traveller.[137] In Barth's day, when Air was under the domination of Annur, another Kel Owi chief of the same type, the Añastafidet was a mere shadow in the land.

The Añastafidet doubtless represents the surviving functions of a Kel Owi Amenokal. The restriction of his duties was probably the result of a compromise arrived at when the Kel Owi entered Air and found an Amenokal already established in the country, supported by the Kel Geres and the various tribes known as the "People of the King." The more intimate inter-tribal relations between the various units of the Kel Owi confederation and the organisation of the "People of the King" will be referred to hereafter in detail.

The system by which the Kel Owi have an administrative leader who seems to have practically no warlike or judicial functions has in no way modified the tribal or social organisation of the confederation. As in the case of all the Tuareg tribes, other than those which have become entirely sedentary, the government of each unit, large and small, is patriarchal and similar to that of Bedawin tribes. The chief of a noble tribe is the leader in war and the dispenser of justice in peace. The functions are not necessarily hereditary. In council with the heads of families he exercises authority over the Imghad tribes associated with his clan, through the chiefs of these servile groups in the manner already described. The council of the heads of families is of great importance, but plays an advisory rather than an executive part. The heads of families rule their own households, including their slaves.

Within ill-defined limits, certain tribes are grouped together under a common leader known as the "agoalla" or "agwalla." This usually occurs in the case of tribes which are nearly related to each other. Three groups in the Kel Owi division have already been mentioned; in two of these, the Kel Tafidet and Kel Azañieres, the office of "agoalla" is said[138] to be hereditary, but I have been unable to find any confirmation of this except in so far as the son of a man who, by his personal ascendancy, has secured control over more than one tribe, would probably more easily step into his father's shoes than another person. The grouping of tribes may also occur for military reasons, but in such cases it has a tendency to be of a temporary character. It is best to assume that the tribe is the unit of Tuareg society and that the tribal chiefs are the elements of which their Government is constructed. "Agoallas" are an exotic form principally due to individual personality or temporary conditions prevailing over long-standing customs.

Tribes sometimes group themselves into temporary or permanent alliances. The former probably spring from military exigencies, the latter may be due to common origins in the recent past.

Such aggregations as the Kel Azañieres and Kel Tafidet in the Kel Owi tribes are so obviously due to common tribal origins that they require no further examination. But the Kel Owi confederation in Air plays a far larger rôle than do mere tribal alliances. Here is no mere question of relationship or community of origin, but a more strict bond, which, however, cannot be defined. Such groups as these have been termed confederations, though the term is a little misleading, as no unity of government is implied. The origin of the confederation, which carries with it more moral than material obligations, is to be explained by the entry of the Kel Owi tribes into Air as a mass of people confronted by an already established hostile or at least jealous population of the same race as themselves. It followed that the new arrivals would tend to hold together and act with one another. The conditions of the confederation nevertheless have been such that the representative is only an administrative head and not a ruler. He is there to embody a common policy and to dictate one. Loose as these bonds have been they have served the Kel Owi in good stead, for their commerce has gained by co-operation at the expense of their rivals, the "People of the King," who in the absence of any organisation have been forced to rely on the fickle ties of common jealousy. How far there are groups or confederations like the Kel Owi within the larger northern division of Azger or Ahaggar I cannot say, but the former are a confederation as the people of Air generally never have been.

Much has already been said of the status of the Tuareg men and their tribal organisation, but before it is possible to consider their family life, the method they follow in tracing their descent must be described. A man's status, in Air, as elsewhere among the Tuareg, is determined by the caste and allegiance of his mother. Survivals of a matriarchal state of society are numerous among the People of the Veil. They colour the whole life of the race. A woman, they say, carries her children before they are born, and so they belong to her and not to the father. “After all,” as one of them said to me when we had been discussing this question for some time, “when you buy a cow camel in calf, the calf is yours and not the property of the man who sold the camel to you. It is the same with women,” he added; and he seemed to me to have some show of logic. Our medieval (and perhaps modern) lawyers would have said instead, “partus sequitur ventrem,” but he would have meant the same as my Tuareg friend. If a woman marries a man in her own tribe the children, of course, belong to that tribe, but if she marries away from her people they belong to her own, and not to her husband’s clan. In this case, were the husband to predecease his wife, the children and their mother would return to live with her tribe. If the father survives, the children usually go on living with him for a time, but as they belong to their mother’s tribe in any event, they eventually return there. Should inter-tribal hostilities break out they must leave their father and fight for their mother’s tribe, even against their own parent if need so be. Until this is understood the relationships of the Tuareg appear very puzzling to the traveller. When I first met Ahodu he informed me that he was of the Kel Tadek people, who are Kel Amenokal, but he had a half-brother and a paternal cousin who belonged to the Añastafidet. It appears that the fathers of Ahodu and Efale, the famous eastern guide, were brothers of a man in the noble Kel Fares of the Kel Owi confederation. Ahodu’s father took a wife from the

Kel Tadek, so the son became a member of the latter tribe, whereas Efale's father married within the confederation. The maternal allegiance is so strong that, though proud of his father's repute as a holy man and representative of the fifth generation of keepers of the mosque of Tefgun near Iferuan, Ahodu used to speak of the Kel Owi in disparaging terms when comparing their recent origin with the antiquity of the Kel Tadek and the other "People of the Amenokal."

The following examples of definite cases may assist in understanding the position:

1. A man of the noble Kel Tadek marries a woman of the noble Kel Ferwan. The children are Kel Ferwan, but will live with the father until his death or the divorce of the mother, when they return with her to her own tribe.

2. A man of the noble Kel Tadek married a woman of the Imghad of the Kel Ferwan. The children will normally be Imghad of the Kel Ferwan.

3. If a man marries a slave woman of another tribe, this woman has become the property of the husband's tribe by his purchase or payment of the marriage portion, and the children belong to the father. This occurred in Ahodu's case. One day the Kel Gharus came over and stole eight slaves belonging to the Kel Tadek, who proceeded to retake them. The slaves in question were Kanuri people of Damagerim. The Kel Gharus appealed to the religious court at Agades, which awarded four slaves to each tribe. Later two of those allotted to the Kel Gharus ran away to the Kel Tadek, who were allowed to keep them on the ground that they had been ill-treated by their former masters. One of these two women Ahodu married, and his son is considered to

belong to his own clan and not to his wife's former tribe. In this case Ahodu nevertheless had to pay some compensation to the former masters of his wife.

The derivation of tribal allegiance through the female line has carried in its train the consequence that a man or woman's social status is always determined by that of the mother. But the restricted number of noble women, the deference and respect paid to them, and the impossibility of taking them as concubines have combined to diminish the numbers of Imajeghan as compared with the Imghad. The hard-and-fast rule among all the Tuareg, that nobles can only be born of a noble mother irrespective of the caste of the father, has done much to preserve the type and characteristics of the race. In recent years the custom has tended to break down, for where a noble father, who has taken unto himself a servile wife, is sufficiently powerful to assert himself he will often succeed in passing off his sons and daughters as Imajeghan. Ahodu has done so with his boy; but had this been impossible the child would have been accounted of the Irejanaten or mixed people. The old laws of succession are said by von Bary to have become especially slack among the Kel Owi, but even here the status of noble women has remained so unassailable that it would still be impossible to-day for them to marry outside their own class.

The laws of inheritance and succession also show the strength of the matriarchal tradition. Although hereditary office is rare among the Tuareg nowadays, it seems to have been more frequent in the past.[139] Ibn Batutah states that the heir of the Sultan of Tekadda was the son of the ruler's sister.[140] Similarly of the Mesufa who were Tuareg, he records that descent is traced through the maternal uncle, while inherited property passes from a deceased man to the children of his sister to the exclusion of his own family.[141] The traveller adds that nowhere except among the infidel Indians of Malabar did he observe a similar state of things.[142] Bates thinks that Egyptian records tend to show that the succession of the chieftainship of the Meshwesh Libyans passed in the female line. The genealogy of many of the kings of Agades is recorded by their female parentage. The Tuareg of Ghat not only treat their women-folk in much the same way as their brethren further south, but Richardson specifically states that the succession of the chiefs and Sultans of those parts is similar to the practice of the Tekadda house and at Agades. It is the son of the sister of the Sultan who succeeds.[143] It seems clear that before the advent of Islam, which has tended to modify the system, the Tuareg had a completely matriarchal organisation. In this earlier state of society may perhaps be found the explanation of the reputed Amazons of the west of North Africa, recorded by Diodorus Siculus in a grossly exaggerated version of some story which he had probably heard concerning the status of certain Libyan women.[144]

I know of no reason to suppose that these matriarchal customs were derived from association with the negro people; the reverse is quite as likely to have occurred, as the culture contacts of North Africa, following the trend of migration, seem to have taken a course from north to south and not the opposite direction.[145] The matter is one of great interest,[146] for the matriarchate is found in a highly developed state in Ashanti, and it would be of interest in connection with the origin of this people to learn if the system can be traced to a common origin.[147] I cannot agree with Barth's[148] conclusion that the descent of the Sultan of Tekadda "is certain proof that it was not a pure Berber State, but rather a Berber dominion ingrafted upon a negro population, exactly as was the case in Walata," where he cites the case of the Mesufa. Moreover, this remark is in contradiction with his previous assumption,[149] to wit: "With respect to the custom that the hereditary power does not descend from the father to the son but to the sister's son . . . it may be supposed to have belonged originally to the Berber race; for the Askar (Azger), who have preserved their original manners tolerably pure, have the same custom. . . . It may therefore seem doubtful whether . . . this custom belonged to the black native," with which statement I am decidedly inclined to agree. The problem, however, is one which I prefer on the whole to leave to qualified anthropologists.

---

[107] Not to be confused with Tanut in Damergu. The word "tanut" means a shallow well; there are consequently many places of this name.

[108] Just north of Auderas.

[109] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 385.

[110] Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 148-9.

[111] Von Bary's Diary (French edition), p. 183, etc.

[112] The available data are in the hands of the author, if some more fortunate traveller can check and examine the place.

[113] The "El Hakhsas," Barth: *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 416.

[114] The extremes in variation, for the first rains of sufficient volume to fill stream beds of a certain size with flood water, are recorded by von

Bary east of Bagezan on 3rd June, 1877, and by Barth in Northern Air on 1st September, 1850. Both these dates seem to be exceptional.

[115]This, and not T'efira, is presumably the point south of Auderas where Barth saw "natron" encrustations on the ground (see Vol. I. p. 389). Salt or "ara" is collected at T'efira further east, but Barth would not have described "entering" the Buddei valley after seeing the "natron," for the road past Auderas to T'efira winds down the Buddei valley.

[116]This is the vowel which in English words "oft*e*n," "*a*non," "*u*ntil," may be written as *o*, *e*, *a*, or *u*.

[117]Cf. Barth, Vol. I. p. 350, and von Bary, p. 169, on the Kel Ataram of Auderas. The people of this village were simply "People of the West" for the inhabitants of Ajiru in Eastern Air, where von Bary was living.

[118]As Barth would have it: *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 339.

[119]Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 339 and 347.

[120]The Cortier 1/500,000 map shows a large affluent to the right bank joining the Auderas valley below the village. This is incorrect: a small affluent called the Mafinet joins at the point shown, but the valley purporting to be the upper part of the Mafinet valley is the Tagharit valley, which falls into the Ben Guten, and not into the Auderas basin. The Cortier map is generally somewhat incorrect in this area, especially in regard to the position of Mount Dogam.

[121]I am indebted to Sir J. Currie of the Empire Cotton-growing Corporation for these reports.

[122]For fear of appearing to misinform people who are always ready to mind other people’s business before looking after their own, I hasten to add that the legal practice of slavery has, of course, been abolished in Air since the advent of the French. The psychology and habit of slavery, nevertheless, still remain as strong as ever, and master and slave continue to regard each other by *mutual consent* in the light of their former relationship. I therefore propose to refer to slaves and the custom of slavery as if they were still sanctioned by law.

[123]Respectively “Akel” and “Irawel” in the singular.

[124]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 344 *sq.*

[125]Cf. *infra*, Chaps. XI. and XII.

[126]Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 115.

[127]*Vide infra*, Chap. XI., *et apud* Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 235 and 239.

[128]When von Bary (*op. cit.*, p. 184) says that Imajeghan were never enslaved, he is wrong. Although the Air Tuareg, when they raided the Aulimmiden, often used to lift their cattle but spare the men because they were of the same race, some of the latter division nevertheless, became Imghad of the Air Kel Ferwan, for instance, in the course of these raids.

[129]This is, of course, not an absolute rule, for the “I name” might have been forgotten, as previously explained. The supposition that “Kel names” represent Imghad and the “I names” Imajeghan is, of course, quite untenable.

[130]The singular form of Imghad.

[131]There are several instances of this among the Northern Tuareg, as will be seen from the data contained in Chap. XI.

[132]Cf. Schirmer's note in von Bary, *op. cit.*, p. 184.

[133]Barth's statement, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 237, that the Imghad are not allowed to carry arms is not substantiated: he seems at this point to have confused the Imghad with slaves.

[134]Cf. *supra*, p. 134. Von Bary, *op. cit.*, p. 181, notes that the distinction between Imghad and Imajeghan among the Kel Owi seemed to have broken down. This is perhaps exaggerated, but interesting, as this division in a sense is the most modern in development in Air.

[135]Barth erroneously calls him the Astafidet.

[136]Cf. Badges of Office among Libyan rulers given by Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 116.

[137]Von Bary, *op. cit.*, pp. 172 and 188-9.

[138]By Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 106.

[139]Cf. Bates, *op. cit.*, pp. 112, 114-15.

[140]Ibn Batutah (ed. Soc. Asiatique), Vol. IV. pp. 388 and 443. Cf. also Appendix IV.

[141]The Mesufa are a surviving section of the Sanhaja, and are specifically described by Ibn Batutah and Ibn Khaldun as a part of the People of the Veil, *i.e.* not negroes or negroids (*vide infra*, Chap. XI.).

[142]This statement is made in spite of the reference a little later to the succession of the Sultan of Tekadda, who, though a Tuareg, does not seem to have been of the Mesufa. This little inaccuracy is, however, of no importance.

[143]Richardson: *Travels*, etc., Vol. II. pp. 65-6.

[144]Diod. Sic., iii. 53 *sq.* See also Silius Italicus, ii. 80. Bates, *op. cit.*, pp. 112-13 and 148,

agrees that the existence of matriarchal society would be a reasonable explanation of the Amazon story.

[145]Nevertheless the matriarchate is known to have existed in classical times as far south as Æthiopia, in the Meroitic kingdom as well as in early Egypt.

[146]Perry (*The Children of the Sun*) would doubtless suggest that it came from Egypt.

[147]See Rattray, *Ashanti*, 1924. This authority thinks that the Ashanti people themselves came from the north. Many of the details of their matriarchal system accord closely with that of the Tuareg.

[148]Barth, Vol. I. p. 388.

[149]*Ibid.*, p. 341. On page 342 he says the Aulimmiden, who have the same custom, consider the practice shameful, “as exhibiting only the man’s distrust of his wife’s fidelity; for such is certainly its foundation.” I don’t agree with this conclusion; the origins of matriarchy are certainly not as simple as this.

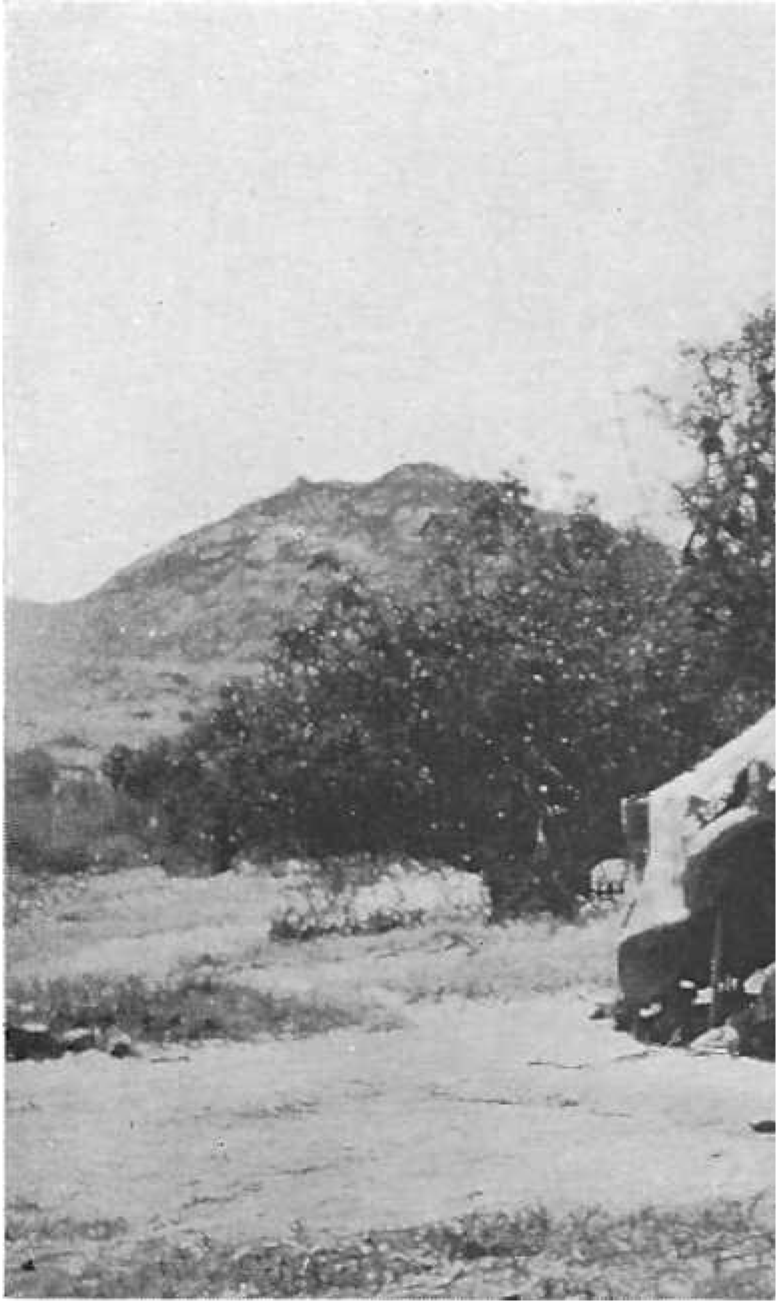
CHAPTER V

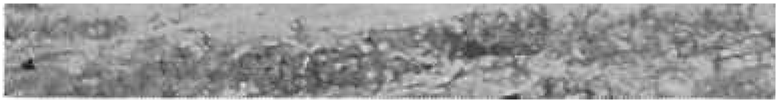
SOCIAL CONDITIONS

BY constantly seeing the same people for nearly three months at Auderas and in the neighbourhood, I was able to dissipate much of the innate diffidence which the Tuareg display in their relations with Europeans. Language always remained a source of difficulty. An interpreter is never satisfactory, more especially if he belongs to a people whom the Tuareg at heart really despise, while real proficiency in a language cannot be attained in so short a time as I had at my disposal. By the end of my stay in Air I had acquired a sufficient knowledge of Temajegh to be able to travel comfortably with a guide speaking only that language, and to collect a considerable amount of vicarious information, but never at any time was I able to discuss really abstruse questions. At Auderas I was lucky enough to find that Ahodu, the chief of the village, had a working knowledge of Arabic which was almost as indifferent as my own; but we both made up for lack of grammar by volubility. The local "inisilm," or holy man, named El Mintaka, was a Ghati who had been settled for fifteen years in Air, where he had taken a Tuareg wife. He, of course, spoke Arabic in addition to Temajegh, and acted as scribe to Ahodu, who could neither read nor write. With these two men in the village, with my servant Amadu, a Fulani soldier who had served with distinction in the West African Frontier Force during the war, and had a working knowledge of English and Hausa, which most of the Air Tuareg speak, and with my interpreter Ali, a man from Ghat, I found myself quite at my ease.

This Ali ibn Tama el Ghati had lived for some years in Kano and had travelled all over the Central Sudan. He was small and very black, but constantly cheerful and as clever as a tribe of monkeys. Somewhat of a rogue unless watched, he was tireless and devoted, and proved to be one of only two natives who, after I had been obliged to return home, completed the whole journey with Buchanan. He was one of the original race of Ghat, now called the Atara, who were there before the Tuareg and Berbers came. Ali spoke no English, but was loquacious in Hausa, Temajegh and Kanuri; he also spoke some Tebu and Fulani, in addition, of course, to Arabic. His especial joy was to wear many different combinations of gay clothes for periods of about ten days at a time. He would then change his apparel and adopt another disguise until the novelty of appearing as a Tuareg or a Hausa or an Arab in turn had worn off.

PLATE 16





AUDE

On reaching Auderas I took up my residence in some huts which Ahodu had prepared on the edge of a diminutive plateau between the main bed of the valley and a secondary affluent. The area between the valleys and ravines which intersected the little plain was bare, but the sides of the valleys were covered with vegetation. About a hundred yards away across a steep gully was Teda Inisilman, the House of the Holy Men, the smallest of the three hamlets which together make up Auderas. On the other side of the main stream bed, where the water-holes of the village were dug in the sand, lay the larger hamlet called Karnuka, containing the house of El Mintaka. The third settlement was a few hundred yards further down-stream. These hamlets were all built of reeds and palm fronds, but the little plain was covered with what proved to be the ruins of stone houses, many of which were inhabited until 1915. Teda Inisilman is the village of the nobles where Ahodu and the only other three Imajeghan families of the place lived, together with their own dependent Irawellan and Ikelan, and the Enad or smith, a most important person in Tuareg society. Down-stream of Teda Inisilman and Karnuka lay the date-palm groves and most of the gardens; there were a few above our camp also, in a side valley and in the main bed under a huge mass of overhanging rock resembling the keep of a fortress rising high above the sheer side of the stream. To the south were only dûm palms and the rugged hills, called Tidrak,[150] which formed the further edge of the valley. Elsewhere the ground was more open. Down-stream to the west were the low Mafinet and T'ilimsawin hills, joining on to the T'inien peaks north of the point where my road had emerged from among them on the way from Agades. To the north the ground rose over a low ridge to the Erarar (plain) n'Dendemu, the Taghist plateau[151] and the distant peak of Dogam.[152] The glistening black domes of the Abattul and Efaken peaks were rather nearer, on the far edge of the Auderas valley itself. A few miles north and north-east, this basin reached to the foot of the mountain group of Todra, which towers 3000 feet and more above the valley to a total height of about 5500 feet above the sea. The rounded sides rose out of a bed of green and yellow to a crest of bare red rock at the top. The mountain used to change colour all day, a whitish gleam off the rocks at high noon giving place to blue-black shadows under storm clouds and in the evening. At sunset it seemed to glow vivid red from within. It is one of the most beautiful mountains in the world. The Tuareg regard Todra and Dogam as one group, but separate from the Bagezan Mountains, and this is certainly the case. They are reckoned among the five principal massifs of Air, the others being Taruaji in the south, Bila or Bilet north-west of Todra, and Tamgak which includes the Azañieres, Tafidet and Taghmeurt ranges in the north.

The advent of Europeans in Auderas caused a certain amount of excitement, but the novelty soon wore off as the routine of life was resumed. I was welcomed by Ahodu's wife and other persons with a present of fresh dates, which were then ripening,[153] and newly-made cheese, known as T'ikammar, which is excellent food. The Tuareg live very simply and take so little trouble about their food that for Europeans it is almost uneatable. The staple diet is milk and cheese, but the more sedentary people eat locally grown or imported grain. The millet is pounded in a mortar as in the south and cooked with water, making a sort of porridge; but whereas in the Hausa countries this “pura,” or “fura” as it is called, can be quite palatable when seasoned or eaten with meat, the Tuareg in Air are too poor and too lackadaisical to dress it in any way. They often even forget to add salt, and without it the mess is peculiarly nasty on account of a certain glutinous consistency which it acquires. The finer flour obtained from the millet after it is pounded is also mixed with water and dry powdered cheese and drunk uncooked as very thin gruel; the dry cheese gives it a sour taste to which in time one gets used, and then it becomes really rather refreshing if one is thirsty. It is much better on the march for the stomach than large quantities of plain water. The drink is called “ghussub” in the south; it is often the sole means of sustenance of a Tuareg travelling quickly without baggage or when a scarcity of fuel makes it impossible to light fires. In the place of millet, guinea corn is also eaten; it is pounded and baked in embers into a heavy tasteless cake which is slightly more edible than millet porridge. The best food in Air is undoubtedly the wheat “kus-kus” of the Arabs and Berbers in the north: it is made in the same way by grinding wheat into rough flour, and then steaming and rubbing it until it forms grains about the size of small barley. It is carried dry and can be prepared by boiling in water or stock for a short time. It has the great advantage of requiring very little fuel to cook it. With no other adjunct than a little salt it is very good indeed. During the latter part of my stay I lived almost exclusively on kus-kus and rice, with hardly any meat, but as many vegetables as I could procure. When neither millet, guinea corn nor wheat is available, the Tuareg collect the seeds of various grasses and grind them, notably of the grass called Afaza and of the prickly burr grass. The former is a tall grass with stems of such strength that they are used when dry with a weft of thin leather strips for making the stiff mats which are spread upon their Tuareg beds. The stalks grow as much as five feet high; the grass is dark grey-green when fresh, or yellow when dry. The burr grass is fortunately rare in Air. One can only be thankful that Nature has found some useful purpose in this damnable plant as food for the Tuareg.

Of all the Tuareg food their cheese is best. It is usually made of equal parts of sheep’s or goat’s and camel’s milk, but any of them alone will do. The rennet is obtained from the entrails of the goat; the curds are pressed in matting made of dûm-palm fronds and formed into cakes about 4 in. × 5 in. × ¾ in. thick. The fresh cheese is pure white and soft, but nevertheless crisp; it is delicious with dates or with any other form of food, for it has no sour or “cheesy” flavour. It dries yellow and hard and is carried about by all Tuareg as a staple commodity, but in this state requires soaking or crumbling before use, and acquires rather an unpleasant sour smell. Butter is made of goat’s or sheep’s milk, churned in bottle-shaped gourds or in small skins. It is not bad mixed with kus-kus or rice or in cooking, but indifferent on bread or biscuits. Meat is very little eaten, for it is a luxury. But even when an animal is slaughtered and divided up the Tuareg do not seem capable of turning it into a very edible dish. They neither roast nor fry; they either stew their meat in a pot with vegetables or with millet porridge, or on the march broil it in the hot sand under the embers of a fire until it becomes shredded. If ever there is a surplus supply of meat, it is preserved by soaking in brine and drying in the sun strung on cords.

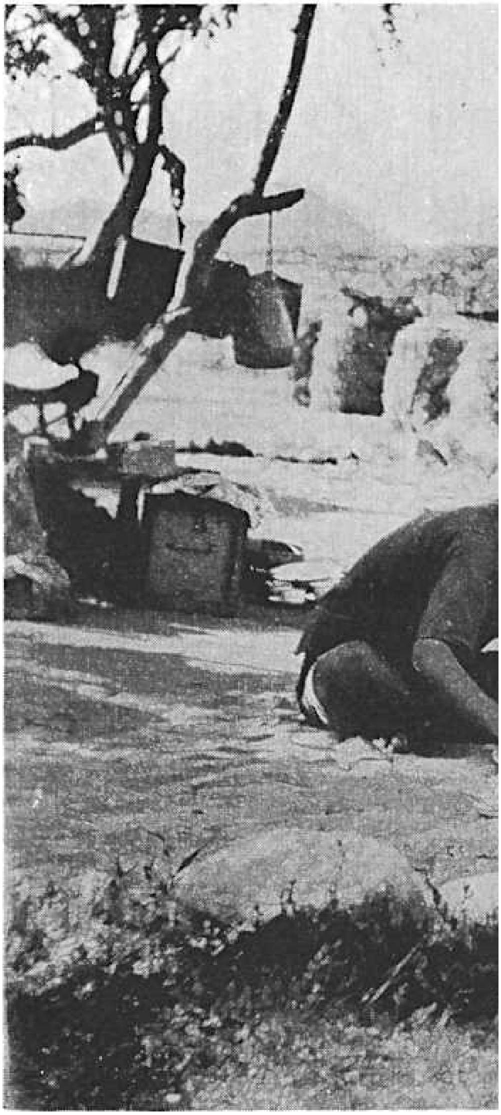
The preparation of food in the villages is done by the women, on the march by the "buzu," or, where there is no slave present, by the youngest member of the party, whatever his caste or status, so long as he has not reached his majority. When there are no minors or slaves an Amghid does the work, but where all are of the same caste, the duty reverts once more to the youngest member of the party. The most arduous function is preparing the millet flour. Nowadays the millet is almost invariably pounded in a mortar with a long pestle, and the meal is then graded and separated from the husk and other impurities by shaking it with a circular motion on a flat tray. The mortar and long pestle, which is used by men and women standing up and working alone or pounding rhythmically with one or more companions, is certainly a southern invention; the wooden pestle is double-headed and some 3 feet long; the mortar is cut out of one piece of wood and stands about 12 inches high. The indigenous and more primitive fashion is to grind grain on the rudimentary saddle-stone quern, a form which has been preserved unchanged since prehistoric times. A large flat stone is placed on the ground, and the person grinding the wheat or millet kneels by it with a basket under the opposite lip of the stone to catch the flour as it is made. The wheat or other grain is poured on to the flat stone and crushed by rubbing it with a saddle-stone or rounded river pebble about the size of a baby's head, held in both hands and worked forwards and backwards. As the grain is crushed the flour is automatically sorted out and pushed forward into the basket in front, the heavier meal remaining on the flat stone. These querns may be seen lying about all over Air on all the deserted sites; the lower stones can readily be recognised by the broad channel which is worn along their length. Except for wheat, which is too hard to be pounded, they have largely been discarded in favour of the handier mortar and pestle. I do not think a more widespread use of the quern necessarily indicates that wheat was more extensively eaten than millet in olden days nor yet that agriculture was formerly more pursued than nowadays. The explanation of the fact is merely that pounding grain in a mortar was found a simpler method in a country where millet was the staple cereal and the consumption of wheat a luxury. Moreover, the Northern Tuareg when they came to Air were probably less familiar with millet than with wheat, and only modified their habits and utensils after they had settled down.

Though certain wild herbs are employed for medicinal purposes, I know of none which is used in cooking. Besides Afaza and the burr grass, several other seeds or berries are used by the more nomadic Tuareg for food; there are said to be some twenty odd varieties in Air which ripen at various times of the year. The Abisgi (*Capparis sodata*) leaf has a biting taste and is sometimes used as a condiment; the tamarind does not grow so far north; limes are found only in Bagezan, and are rare. Dates are eaten fresh, or are preserved by soaking them for a short time in boiling water, and pressing them into air-tight leather receptacles, which are then sewn up. The practice of drying dates and threading them on a string is resorted to in Fashi and Bilma but not in Air.

Food is cooked in pear-shaped earthenware pots of red clay. The vessels are only half baked when they are manufactured, principally in the Agades neighbourhood, and have to be fired before they can be used. They are plain and unornamented, with a lip or rim round the mouth, which is bound with a cord to prevent cracking. More elaborate pitchers with a blue design are used for liquids, since the universal calabash of the south is comparatively rare in Air.[154] These pots are also made near Agades. The designs appear to be of local origin. The Sudanese jars and pots with bands of geometric design in straw-coloured slip and blue pigment are not used in Air. Many small pots for inks, spices and condiments are found in the houses of Northern Air: black and red pottery is used for such vessels and for saucers and little bowls. With the exception of what may be termed the “grape design” (Plate 22), none of the pottery is very remarkable. The pots used in the urn cemetery at Marandet seem to have been shaped like the common cooking-pot or with a slightly more round appearance: they are reported to have stood in saucers or plates. None of the pottery is wheel-turned.

Auderas being essentially a sedentary and servile community, did not contain many characteristic noble Tuareg. Neither Ahodu nor his wife represents the fine physical type of the race, for he is of somewhat mixed parentage, having, according to his own tradition, some Arab blood in his veins, while she is a Kanuri woman. Among the Tuareg, as in all races, it is hard to find the absolutely pure type. I came across one or two examples, and must count myself lucky to have seen so many. I was never able to confirm the story one had so often heard of Tuareg with blue eyes, but such accurate observers have recorded this feature that its occurrence must be admitted. In Air it must certainly be most uncommon; nowhere is it the rule; light brown and grey eyes, however, are not unusual, nor is it rare to see hair which is not so much black as dark brown and wavy; it is never crinkled or “fuzzy” unless there has been an obvious infusion of negro blood. Very fair skins, as fair as among the people of Southern Europe, are comparatively frequent, but the transparent white skin of the North is not known: no deduction can be drawn from this, as skin pigmentation is notoriously unreliable. Fair skins are held by the Tuareg to represent the purest type: a range of every shade to the black of the negro occurs. The Tuareg of Air differentiate the colouring of people somewhat arbitrarily: they call the pure negro “blue,”[155] but the dark-brown Hausa, “black”; the Arab is always “white,” whatever shade of bronze he happens to be; the Tuareg himself is “red,”[156] which is the most complimentary epithet he can apply to others. Fairness of complexion is much prized and is a social distinction, though when carried to such extremes as among Europeans it is apt to be regarded as strange and odd. Certain tribes in Air are reputed, even among the Tuareg, to be more than usually fair. When von Bary was in Air his acquaintances seem to have chaffed him about his celibacy; they offered to find him a woman of the Iwarwaren tribe, for, they said, she would match his own complexion.[157] Once on a time in Auderas I dressed completely as a Tuareg, a disguise which was not difficult, for I had grown a full dark beard and was very deeply sunburnt all up my arms and legs from wearing a sleeveless tunic, diminutive shorts and no shoes or stockings—the ideal garb for hot weather and an active life. I rode into the village on a great white camel by a circuitous path: the people were puzzled about my identity, and some, as I was later told, decided from the colour of my limbs that I came from the Igdalen tribe. It was typical of the Tuareg that they eventually recognised not me, but my camel, and so guessed who I was.

PLATE 17



THE A

In spite of the occurrence of many fair-skinned people, it must be admitted that the vast majority of Imajeghan and Imghad in Air are comparatively dark, yet these Tuareg are among the purest of their race. Their skin pigment seems to have changed before other characteristics. The darkness of their complexion in Air is accentuated by the prize set upon indigo clothing, which is so impregnated with dye that it wears off on the skin of the proud owner, whose ablutions are conspicuously infrequent. The Tuareg does not believe in washing unless it is absolutely necessary, and he avers that an indigo-stained skin is good protection against strong sunlight, which may or may not be true. In justice to my friends, I must admit that they washed their clothing, especially their white trousers, very frequently, and when they washed their person, they did so very thoroughly from head to foot, with much rubbing and a prodigious splashing of volumes of water.

The beauty and grace of their bodies are the principal characteristics of the Tuareg. They are tall, more commonly in the neighbourhood of six feet than shorter. They look much taller owing to their flowing robes. When at rest they have little superficial muscular development; their bodies are not corrugated and knobbly like the powerfully built Latin: they are more like Nordic folk in that their limbs and backs are smooth until exerted, when the muscles stand up hard and tough. Their arms and legs are long and shapely and exceedingly graceful; they never have flaccid or cylindrical limbs like Abyssinians or certain Indian races. Their bones are small. They have wrists and ankles as slender as a woman’s; it is noteworthy that whatever the degree of negro admixture this sign of high breeding is the last to disappear. It is a most infallible mark of pure Tuareg parentage. With it, of course, go slenderness and refinement of hands and fingers. The men never grow fat: they are hard and fit and dry like the nerve of a bow, or a spring in tension. Of all their characteristics the one I have most vividly in mind is their grace of carriage. The men are born to walk and move as kings, they stride along swiftly and easily, like Princes of the Earth, fearing no man, cringing before none, and consciously superior to other people.

Grace and mystery are added to their appearance by the veil over the face and by their long black robes, which are called “takatkat.” They are of plain indigo black cotton stuff, and though some are embroidered on the breast, the old-fashioned men shun such ornament as ostentatious. More rarely their robes are white. Their dress, to be in good taste, must above all be simple. Silk is hardly known and not in great demand: plain native cloth made up of many narrow slips sewn together to the desired width is esteemed superior to the European sorts. Buchanan had brought for presents an indigo stuff of excellent quality, made in Lancashire and better than anything of the sort that could be bought in Kano. It was much appreciated, but as it had a thin white stripe in it, not a single man would wear it for a dress. They gave it to their women for skirts. Broad Moslem trousers called “takirbai” are worn beneath the robe; they are always of white cotton. Sometimes a tanned goat or sheep skin is worn around the loins below the trousers, more especially in bush country where burr grass is very prevalent.[158]

The best sandals used to be made in Agades only, but since the emigration of so many craftsmen from Air they can now also be procured in Kano, and more cheaply. They are of a shape peculiar to the Tuareg and are much in demand all over the Sahara. The form is pleasing: it is wide and round under the toes, slender under the instep, and at the heel, and just broad enough to carry the weight of the body. They are made of two thicknesses sewn together with neat white raw-hide stitching; the top piece is of red leather with a stained black border: the lower piece is of raw hide. Two red straps from the sides level with the instep join a thong, which passes under the top leather and is fastened between the two thicknesses of the sole in order to protect the sewing from wear on the ground. The thong is slipped between the big and second toes; the red straps pass over the breadth of the foot to the sides of the sandal. The heel is free. It is the ideal footwear in sandy country, as nothing can collect on the surface and rub the foot. I wore nothing else for nine months and can vouch for the comfort of these sandals. They are usually made in two sizes[159]; the correct pattern for all those who can afford them is 12 inches long and 6 inches broad across the toes. This great surface, leaving several inches all round the breadth of the foot, gives much support on loose sand, on which it rests like a platform. Many other forms of improvised sandals are made, covering the sole and sometimes the sides of the foot, but the most ingenious home-made type I saw was woven in a few minutes of green dûm-palm fronds. These sandals were really a sole of palm matting under the foot: they have the advantage of costing nothing and, when the fronds are still green, of being supple and springy in any weather, whereas the leather sandals become flaccid on wet ground. They are, however, not proof against long acacia thorns, as I learnt to my cost. During the rains I used to have a new pair made for me every day by Ahodu’s son, aged nine, at the grossly excessive rate of about 6*d.* a dozen. The best leather sandals cost as much as 6*s.* a pair at Agades nowadays.

Walking barefoot over loose sand in time produces severe cracks in the sole of the foot. The ball of the big toe and the inside part of the foot are particularly liable to be affected. In cold dry weather it is common to see men rubbing fat into the callous skin of their feet and warming them in front of a fire to soften the leather, for when a crack has begun to appear it is very difficult to induce healing. The skin of their feet is so insensible and thick that men often take a needle and thread and sew up their sole as one would mend a sandal. Some form of foot-wear is likewise desirable when there are many thorns about, and in the bush, where burrs find their way into the tender skin between the toes. As I often wore no foot-covering at all my feet became very hard, but I contrived on several occasions to pick up thorns, which went as much as three-quarters of an inch into the sole of my foot. I well remember how the extraction of these spikes used to cause a most peculiar form of pain; it produced almost physical sickness. Curiously enough, these wounds never seemed to get septic, and I have always wondered why. For several months I did have septic sores on my feet and legs whenever a rub or scratch occurred, but they were principally due to being run down after malaria and the rainy season. Acacia thorns or burrs in my feet never became infected.

With a veil, robe, trousers and sandals, the wardrobe of the Tuareg is complete. Some carry a white blanket of heavy native cotton stuff known in

Nigeria as “Kano cloth,” woven in six-inch strips sewn together, with a blue border and fringe. But the article is a product of the Southland and almost seems to be considered a luxury in Air, where few men have any additional clothing or covering in cold weather. Some wear the conical hats of Kano basket-ware associated with the Hausa countries, but the practice is regarded as an affectation and is not very common.[160]

The scantiness of the clothing of the Tuareg in Air is very remarkable. Their robe is admirably suited for hot weather, since any covering which hangs in loose folds over the back is good protection against the sun. The garment consists of two large squares of stuff, forming the front and back, the height of a man’s shoulder, or say about 5 feet × 5 feet. The two lower corners of the squares are sewn together, the bottom and sides are left open. The top is sewn up except for a space of about 18 inches where the head is put through, and a slit with a pocket is cut on the breast. The sides of the upper part either fall down the arms or can be looped up over the shoulders to leave them clear. As the sides are open, the circulation of air under the robe is quite free. In cold weather the ample volume of the robe enables it to be wrapped well around the body, nevertheless it is very inadequate protection when the thermometer falls to freezing point. It speaks highly of the hardihood of these people that they wear this garment only throughout the year in spite of variations in temperature, such as in December I encountered on my way south through Azawagh, of as much as 60° F. in twenty-four hours. The three Tuareg with me had no sort of extra covering for the night until I gave them a ground sheet in which to wrap themselves near the fire. But they discarded it, because the canvas, as they said, “attracted the cold” more than did the sand. The dying embers of a fire warmed the soles of their feet, but the rest of their bodies must have been frozen.

The Tuareg woman wears a long piece of indigo cloth rolled round her body as a skirt and tucked in at the waist. Over her shoulders is a garment which resembles a sleeveless coat, but is really a small square of light indigo or black stuff with a hole for the head. The ends hang down in front and behind to the level of the waist, the sides are open. She never veils her face; the upper garment, or a dark cloth worn over the head like a nun’s hood, may be drawn across the face, but more often in coquetry, I think, than in prudery. This upper garment is sometimes embroidered with a simple cross-stitch pattern around the neck; usually it is a piece of plain native cloth made, like the robes of the men, of narrow bands sewn together. Women who can only afford one piece of stuff wear it wound round their bodies close under the armpits, though, as a general rule, it may be said that there is no feeling of immodesty involved in exposing the body above the waist.[161]

This ease of garb among the women and their unveiled countenances are in keeping with the perfect freedom which they enjoy. Irrespective of caste or circumstance, whether they be noble or slave, rich or poor, the women of the People of the Veil are respected by their men in a manner which has no parallel in my experience. It is the more significant in a Moslem people, inasmuch as Islam has not hitherto taught the men of the Eastern world to treat their women-folk as their equals, still less as their betters. In saying this much I write in no depreciatory spirit, for the Western world has happily long ceased to regard the followers of Muhammad's teaching of the Faith of the One God as heathen or pagan. But the morals and ethical code of Islam differ most essentially from those of the north of Europe and America precisely in regard to women; and in this respect Islam has lagged behind. But even in European countries the complete emancipation of women is only a modern development which may perhaps have just begun in Islam. Yet judged by our Northern standards the Tuareg have much in common with ourselves. So strange in Africa seems their conduct to women, that early travellers called them the Knights-Errant of the Desert Roads. The extent to which they have earned this name is their justifiable pride.

Their women have position and prerogatives not yet achieved by their sisters in many of those countries which we term "civilised." The Tuareg women are strong-minded, gifted and intelligent. They have their share in public life; their advice is proffered and sought in tribal councils. Contrary to Moslem practice and to that of many European societies, a Tuareg woman may own property in her own name, and, more than that, may continue to own and administer it after her marriage without interference by her husband, who has no rights over it whatsoever. At death a woman's property, unless otherwise disposed of in satisfaction of her expressed wish, is divided in accordance with the Moslem laws of inheritance, but if her family has been provided for as custom demands, she may bequeath what is over as she pleases. There are many instances of Tuareg women of noble birth being heiresses or receiving a share of property which has become available, by conquest or the extinction of some group, for distribution generally among the community. Sometimes, if a tribe moves away from an old area, the community goes so far as to divide up and settle the free land on the chief women, who become, as Duveyrier has called them,[162] the “femmes douairières” of the Tuareg.

Their bravery is famous in Africa. Instances are not lacking where they have played great parts in war. In one engagement in Air the Kel Fadé women led their men into battle, covering them with their own bodies and those of their children to prevent the French firing.[163] When Musa ag Mastan, the Amenokal of Ahaggar, went to France in 1910 his sister ruled the people in his stead. Though no instances are recorded in Air itself of women becoming chiefs of tribes they rule several villages among the Kel Geres. By usage and by right their functions are more consultative than executive. They do not seek election to tribal councils. They enter them as of right and not in competition, but not even then do they order men about. Their function is to counsel and to charm. They make poetry and have their own way. In recent years there seems to have been only one example in Air of a woman playing a definitely masculine rôle. Barkasho, of the Ikazkazan, was already an old woman when, as a small boy, Musa, of the same tribe, who was with me at one time as a camel-man, knew her. Soon after she married, Barkasho told her husband that she was going about a man’s work and proceeded to don the robe, veil and sword of the other sex. She set off on a raid to the east to avenge some depredations on her people. As her courage grew and became famous she turned her attention to the west and led a raid, it is said, as far afield as the Tademekkat country. On one of these expeditions she lifted, single-handed, seven camels from a party of three men who were guarding them. The curious side of Barkasho's personality was that when she returned from these excursions, she put off her male attire and quietly resumed her place and occupations in the household. Evidently, however, her husband must have become restive, for in the end she advised him to get rid of her, or at least to marry another woman as well, since she was useless to him as a wife. But history does not relate what the husband did. Musa last saw her as an old, old woman, sitting in front of her hut, looking into the sunset over the country where she used to raid, and dreaming. I failed in my endeavours to obtain other stories of women leaders. I found, therefore, nothing to bear out the Amazonian legend,[164] except the survival of the matriarchal system generally.

Kahena lives on among the Tuareg only as a memory and as a proper name. They do not claim as one of their race the Berber queen who defended Ifrikiya against the Arabs in the seventh century. Ahodu had heard of her as a woman of the Imajeghan who were in the north when the Arabs came. "She led these noble people and defeated the Arabs, it is true, and those Imajeghan were great people, of course, but she was not one of our people: our people are older than they; and the Arabs—why, the Arabs have only just come to the land," said Ahodu, who, where his own Kel Tadek were concerned, was always an intolerable snob.

Under Moslem law a man may take unto himself four legitimate wives in addition to a number of slave concubines. The rules laid down by the Prophet for the governance of the marital relations of good Moslems are theoretically, at least, in force among the Tuareg of Air. In practice, however, monogamy is more frequent than polygamy. I am not clear whether an explanation of this phenomenon is to be looked for in a survival of a matriarchal state of society where one would indeed be led to expect polyandry rather than polygamy, or whether the reason is rather to be sought in the economic condition of a people whose poverty does not allow them to keep more than one wife. I have no hesitation in disagreeing with Jean when he says[165] that monogamy is rare and even anomalous in Air. It does not accord with my personal observations, nor is it consistent with what I heard of those traditions and conditions which I was unable to verify. How often has it not been said to me that “the Imajeghan respect their women, and *therefore* have only one wife, not like the negroes, and heathen”? It does not accord with the conditions governing the status of women as described by Jean himself, nor yet with the remarks which he makes on the subject of the matrimonial relations of the Tuareg. It is, finally, in contradiction with the accounts given by Duveyrier[166] and others of the Northern Tuareg, concerning whom his enthusiasm even led him into the exaggeration of asserting that polygamy was unknown.

After considering the question carefully, I have come to the conclusion that monogamy is probably an old tradition dependent upon and consistent with the status of Tuareg women, and not a consequence of economic conditions which have, however, served to perpetuate the custom. It is certainly connected with the matriarchate. The practice of concubinage is restricted, and where it does occur, is usually confined to women of the slave caste. A noble woman is not, and never could be, a concubine so long as the status of noble and of serf continues to exist; but if the maintenance of only one wife were due to economic necessity alone, the same conditions would not obtain in regard to concubinage in a community where every additional slave, male or female, is an asset as a productive unit. The position of women among the Tuareg has no real parallel in any other Oriental country. Even in Ashanti, where there are analogies for some of the matriarchal survivals found among the Tuareg, the exceptional positions of some of the royal women seem to be less favourable than that of any of the noble and most other women in Air, where all the sex is held in honour.

At Auderas I played the rôle of doctor to the best of my ability. I found a great ally in Ahodu’s wife, who, though not a Tuareg by race, had acquired all their traditions and manners. Her appearance was not in the least characteristic; her negroid features were frankly ugly from the European point of view. But she made up for these physical disadvantages by her unfailing sense of humour and constant cheerfulness, which are very valuable qualities in Africa. In general the young Tuareg women are handsome and possessed of considerable charm. They are smaller in build than the men, but when their parentage is reasonably pure, they possess the same aristocratic features and proportions. Their demeanour is modest and dignified. In this Ahodu’s wife resembled them. She was perfectly natural and had great quickness of mind. She was what might be called “une femme du monde.” Ahodu had divorced at least two previous wives for their uncouth or unrestrained behaviour. He was devoted to his present one. He always used to speak with pride of her capability, which he averred was second to no man’s: one could place complete reliance in her. I made a point of taking her with me when visiting sick women and children in the hamlets, and through her tact and presence of mind gradually came to understand their perfect ease and bearing. In their tents or huts they would sit and listen without fear or shyness. After the inevitable diffidence had worn off they talked and were free from awkwardness, but never familiar like the negro or negroid women. They are gay but not infantile. They never lose their dignity. Their dress is staid and sombre like that of their men, with a few ornaments of beads and silver.[167] As they grow older the women of good family and wealth become fat, especially, as Barth remarks, in "the hinder parts," for fatness is a sign of affluence, since it implies a sufficiency of the good things of life, like slaves and food, to obviate having to do much manual work. But among the unmarried women I saw no large-proportioned ladies: indeed few enough even of the married ones at Auderas were fat, indicating, I am sorry to say, the poverty of most of them. When the women do not run to fat, they age with great beauty; nearly all the old women looked typical aristocrats and conscious of their breeding.

The women use henna, which grows in Air, on their finger and toe nails, and "kohl" (antimony) for their eyes. On festive occasions they have a curious habit of daubing their cheeks and foreheads with paint, prepared either from a whitish earth found especially near Agades, or with red or yellow ochres which occur in several places. The effect of these colours on different shades of skin is uniformly ghastly, especially when the more usual yellow pigment is used, but they apparently like the habit. A possible explanation is that in the first instance the custom was intended as a symbolic or conventional method of expressing the respect felt for the fairer complexions of their original ancestors. The negro is despised in Air, the “red” man is respected; painting the face was perhaps at first intended to create an illusion of purer blood. Although the practice is supposed to be restricted to festive occasions, where the women have little work to do, they remain daubed most of the time: this seemed to be the case at T’imia, for instance, where the women were noble and had plenty of slaves. Tuareg men do not so adorn themselves.[168]

Before marriage, which for Oriental women occurs comparatively late in life, Tuareg girls enjoy a measure of freedom which would shock even the modern respectable folk of Southern Europe. They do no work, but dance and sing and make poetry, and in the olden days they learned to read and write. The art of literature is unfortunately dying out, but the women still are, as they always were in the past, the repositories of tradition and learning. Where the script of the Tuareg is still known and freely used, it is the women who are more versed in it than the men. It is they who teach the children. When families have slaves, the noble woman does as little work as she can: her occupation among the poorer people is confined to the household work or to herding goats and sheep. They make cheese and butter and sort dates, but they do not as a rule work in the gardens. They are never beasts of burden. They have never learnt to weave or spin, but they plait mats and make articles of leather. The leather-working industry at Agades is exclusively in their hands. Their knowledge of needlework is limited; the men on the whole are more skilled than the women at cutting out and sewing clothes.

The household duties are simple but laborious. The children for the first few years of their lives are washed frequently, but when they are able to look after themselves in any way the practice is abandoned. The hut or tent is cleaned out several times a day and food has to be prepared. This entails pounding millet in a mortar and stewing the porridge, or steaming wheat to make kus-kus. The women eat their food with the men, a privilege often denied their sex among other Moslems. Among the Kel Ferwan[169] the women eat their food before the men do so, and the latter have to be content with what is left, which is often not very much. A man once said to me, to emphasise the good manners required by usage to be observed before women, that in the olden days if anyone had dared to break wind in their presence, the insult was punishable by death alone.

Half the poetry of the Tuareg deals with the loves and adventures of young men and women. Marriages are not arranged as among the Arabs. It often happens that a girl has two or more suitors, when her free choice alone is the deciding factor. It is common for a girl who is in love with a man to take a camel and ride all night to see him and then return to her own place, or for a suitor to make expeditions of superhuman endurance to see his lady.[170] Fights between rivals are not uncommon. Illicit love affairs inevitably occur: if they have unfortunate consequences, the man is called upon to marry the woman, but infanticide is not unknown. Once married the woman is expected to behave with decorum and modesty. Public opinion on these matters is strong. The married state, however, does not prevent a woman admitting men friends to an intimacy similar to that existing, perhaps, only among the Anglo-Saxon peoples. In a passage in which Ibn Batutah describes the Mesufa, who before becoming debased were of the Western Sanhaja Tuareg, but had in part settled south of Air, he comments on the status of women in these charming terms:[171]

“The women of the Mesufa feel no shame in the presence of men; nor do they veil their faces. Despite this, they do not omit to perform their prayers punctually. Anyone who wishes to marry them can do so without difficulty. . . . In this country the women have friends and companions among men who are strangers. The men for their part have companions among women not in their own families. It often happens for a man to enter his own house to find his wife with a friend. He will neither disapprove nor make trouble. I (that is, Ibn Batutah himself) once went into the house of a judge at Walata after he had given me permission, and found quite a young and very beautiful woman with him. As I stopped, doubting, and hesitated, wanting to return on my steps, she began to laugh at my embarrassment instead of blushing with shame.” The great traveller is evidently very much shocked, for he goes on: “And yet this man was a lawyer and a pilgrim. I even heard that he had asked the Sultan for permission to perform the pilgrimage that year to Mecca, in the company of this friend. Was it this one or another? I do not know. . . .” Again, he goes on to describe how he visited the house of one of his companions of the road and found him sitting on a carpet, “while in the middle of the house on a couch . . . was his wife in conversation with a man seated by her side. I asked Abu Muhammad: ‘Who is that woman?’ ‘It’s my wife,’ he replied. ‘And who is the individual with her?’ ‘It’s her friend.’ ‘But are you, who have lived in our countries, quite satisfied with such a state of affairs—you who know the precepts of the Holy Writ?' He replied: 'The relations of women with men in this country bring good and are correct, they are right and honourable. They give rise to no suspicion. Our women, as a matter of fact, are not like those in your country.'"

And that is the whole truth. The Tuareg men and women are not like the other inhabitants of North Africa. But Ibn Batutah must have been none the less shocked, because, though Abu Muhammad invited him to visit him again, he did not go.

Conditions have not changed since those days among the People of the Veil, but habits which would be considered natural in America or in England admittedly seem strange in Africa. They are all summed up in the Tuareg proverb which says: "Men and women towards each other are for the eyes and for the heart, and not only for the bed," as among the Arabs. The consequence of such a frame of mind is that the men and women of the People of the Veil are often blessed, or cursed, with love so lasting, so sincere and so devoted that, like in our own society, it makes or mars a life.

Bates has discussed the marriage customs of the Libyan tribes mentioned in the classics. While some of these groups of people may represent the ancestors of the Tuareg, there is no evidence of the outrageous performances mentioned, for instance, by Herodotus, having persisted into modern times in Air. Divorce among the Tuareg is fairly frequent and is carried out in accordance with Moslem prescription, but adultery is not very common. Prostitution exists, but perhaps, on the whole, is less common than in more favoured parts of the world. It is, of course, more frequent in Agades than in the villages, and in the latter than among the tribes. The harlot is not respected, and her marriage with a decent man is reprobated.

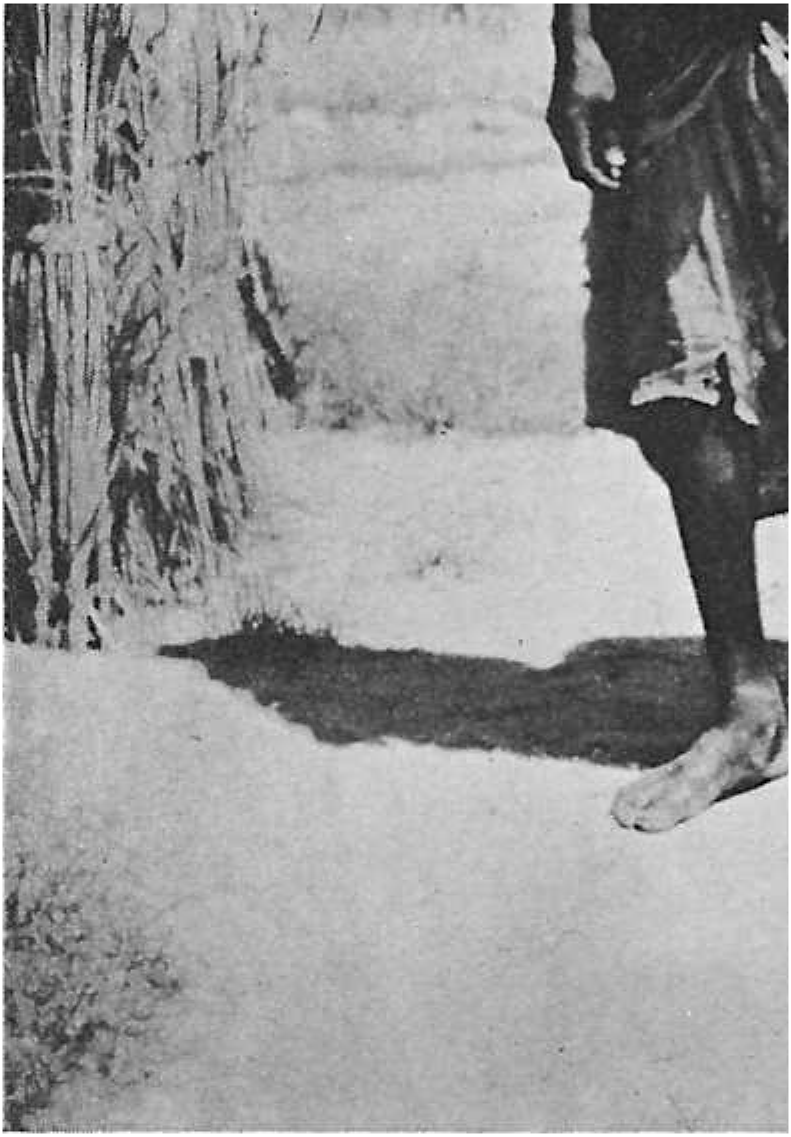
The husband is required to purchase his wife, the money or equivalent being paid to her parents. The sum varies from a few silver francs to several camels. Marriage portions in cattle, sheep or goats, according to the circumstances of the parents, are frequently given to women; the “dot” remains the property of the bride.

The children of the Tuareg, and especially the little girls, are adorable persons. They are fairer than their parents, largely, I think, because they wash more often than their elders, but even discounting this factor they appear to turn darker as they grow up. Up to the age of seven or eight the children wear no clothes at all, summer or winter, indoors or out of doors, except perhaps a rag to keep off the flies when they are asleep. After that, their first clothes are white cotton shifts. Small boys have their hair cropped close, except for a crest along the top of the head; in some tribes, notably in the west of Air, a lock on either side of the head and a patch on top are sometimes left. Little girls are allowed long hair until they first put on a smock or cloth about their waists. At the age of puberty both sexes dress their hair in one of the several fashions current in Air, usually in small plaits all over the head; thereafter the boys continue to wear white shirts, but the girls put on the indigo skirt cloth. The children are so well brought up that European parents might be envious of them. I have never met small boys with such perfect manners and so free from selfishness as I experienced in Air. As soon as they are old enough to take an interest in things, the boys accompany their fathers on journeys, to which they are thus gradually broken from an early age. They are made to work and do all the domestic duties that their powers allow in camp or on the march. They feed the camels on the road with grass or plants picked by the way; they carry water to their elders to drink; they bring in stray camels at loading-up time and hobble them when turned out to graze. The slaves, who prepare the food, are assisted by the boys and send them out to do all the hundred and one little jobs that are required. So the boys grow up to be useful men before they are mature, and in the process learn the respect which is due to their elders, and their elders show them such devotion as these pleasant little people deserve. The training is evidently successful, for nowhere else have I seen children so thoughtful or so kindly to all and to each other. It had never been my lot until I met the Tuareg to see a right-minded boy, for instance, who had been given a sweet or a penny or some equally valuable object, run off and offer it first to his father and then to his companions, who refused it. And this I saw not in an isolated instance, but as an universal practice.

In the primitive conditions of life in Air, infant mortality is high. The happiest and some of the most successful days I spent in Air were doctoring people, and especially children, at Auderas. There are not many diseases in the clean dry mountain air, but under-feeding and malaria, which comes after the rains, take their annual toll. The almost miraculous effect of quinine on the fevers is a very saving grace. One can never have enough quinine, but fortunately small doses at frequent intervals will keep fever in check during bad attacks and prevent collapse. Thus can a great deal be achieved. But it was the good sense of the women, who had some faith in my elementary remedies, that did most to save several children of Auderas in the autumn of 1922.

I was interested to find how long women went on suckling their children. I saw children of three and four years still feeding at the breast, though they were already eating solid food. A woman will go on suckling an older child for many years so long as her younger ones do not suffer; she is especially prone to do so if her last baby has died. In company with most races living under primitive conditions, even advanced pregnancy does not interfere with a woman’s activities, nor do mothers suffer much from the effects of childbirth. The processes of nature take place unassisted: there are neither local medicine men nor midwives. Women in labour are attended by their older relations or intimate friends, whose assistance is limited to massaging the body with hands steeped in butter or fat. Death in childbirth appears to be rare. Newly-born children are wrapped in some ragged garment, but receive no especial care. Cradles or swaddling clothes are unknown; but perhaps a cushion of grass or leaves for the infant is prepared on the family sleeping mat or bed. Babies are carried on their mother’s back or by a slave woman, slung with one tiny leg each side of the woman’s waist, in a fold of the cloth which constitutes her skirt. The cloth is firmly rolled round the baby and the woman’s body, and tucked in over the breast; only the child’s head emerges from this pouch on her back. So the child sleeps or cries or sucks its finger, and the mother goes about her daily occupations, pounding millet or plaiting mats.

PLATE 18



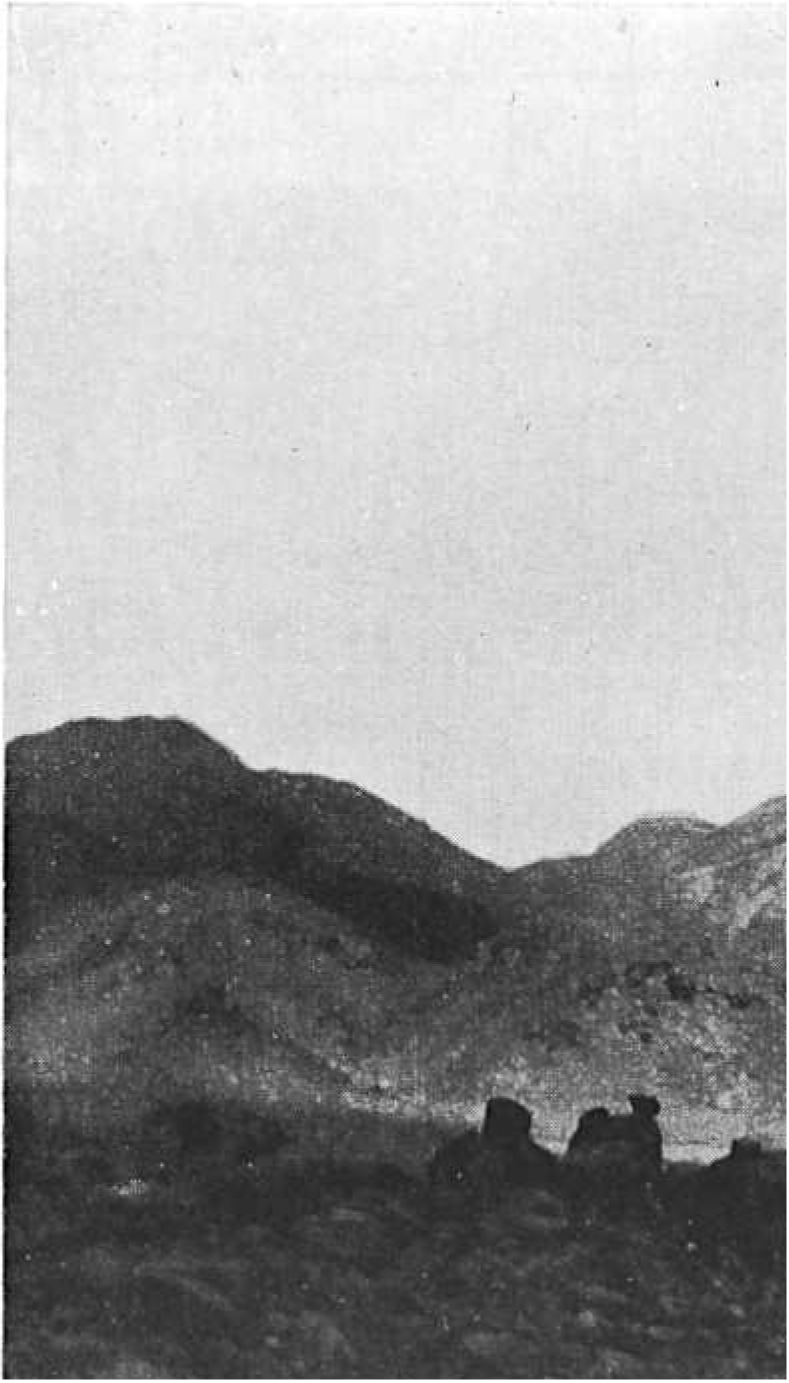
TEKHI

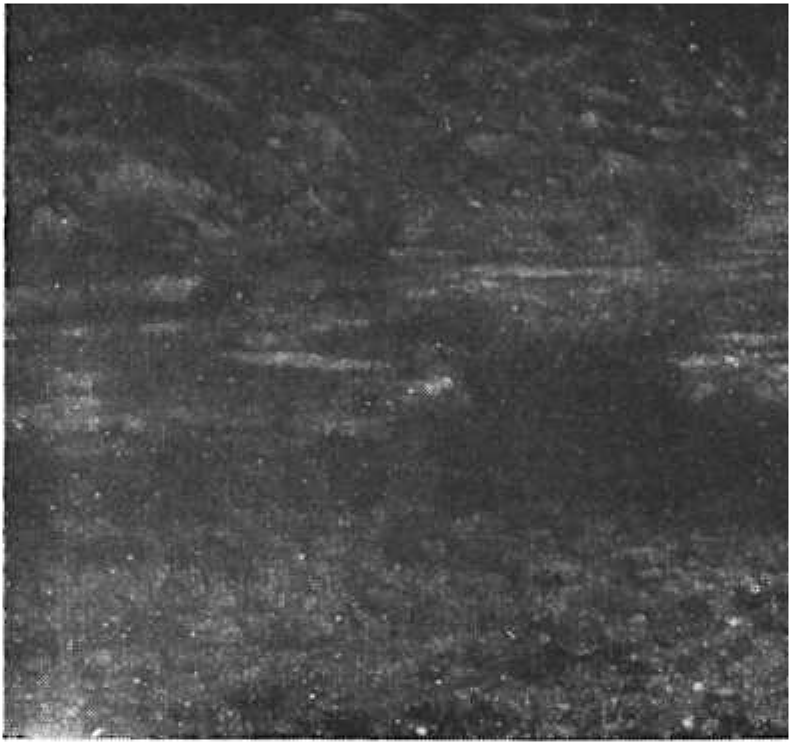
Neither at birth nor later is any form of bodily deformation practised. Such horrors as flattened skulls or filed teeth are unknown. The only eunuchs in Air are negroes purchased in the south. As in the case of all good Moslems, the boys are circumcised at the age of a few months. The diseases which I myself observed in Air, I must admit, seemed few. Syphilis, malaria, certain digestive troubles, dysentery, a few minor skin diseases and eye troubles were the most serious. Syphilis is common, but apparently not very virulent: its method of propagation and origin are well known to the natives: in the Northern Sahara it is called the Great Disease. Von Bary thought that it, like malarial fevers, came from the Sudan, but there is no reason to believe this, for it is very evenly distributed all over North Africa. The juice of the colocynth as a purge is believed to do good in cases of venereal disease. Guinea-worm is fairly common; the milky juice of the Asclepias, known as *Calotropis Procera*,[172] which grows all over Air, is said to have a curative effect, in addition to the usual method of extraction known to everyone who has travelled in Africa. I saw one case of tuberculosis of the lungs at Auderas, accompanied by hæmorrhage. It was rather an interesting case of a woman whose family for three generations was said to have died of the disease. I was too honest, I suppose, to profess to be able to cure her, but I need hardly say that my servant, Amadu, took over the case. He claimed to have established a complete cure in a few days with some herb which he had found. My reputation suffered, but my advice to Ahodu to move her hut to the outskirts of the village was nevertheless admitted to be reasonable, and was followed. Duveyrier[173] mentions a form of ulcer in the nose, said to be due to constant sand irritation. He describes hernia from long-distance camel riding as being frequent: to prevent abdominal strains from this cause the Tuareg bind a long strip of cotton stuff tightly about their waists. Von Bary[174] records having seen, in addition to the above diseases, epilepsy, atrophied children, skin eruptions, small-pox, hypochondria and madness. He remarks that the Kel Owi seemed to suffer more from disease than the other tribes, that their women were very fat, and that they appeared to have irregular periods. My investigations into local medicine were unproductive. I brought home some drugs which were used locally as purges, lotions and astringents, but they were without value. The empiric knowledge of the Tuareg may yet be worth investigating, but has so far disclosed nothing of any value.

Festivals connected with social life are not interesting. Births occur without unusual or curious celebrations. The naming of the child is supposed to be in the hands of the local holy man, but the mother brings her influence to bear in his choice by suitable payments. Marriages are celebrated with feast and rejoicing after the bridegroom has wooed his bride and paid the stipulated portion. Burials equally follow the Moslem practice. The body is laid in the ground on its back, the head to the north and the feet to the south, with the face turned towards Mecca. The rope by which the body is lowered into the grave is left lying to rot away on the tomb. The grave is marked by one or two standing stones according as the deceased is male or female. The graves in Air are intimately connected with the architecture and dwellings of the Tuareg, and are dealt with in a later chapter. There are cemeteries all over Air: the little one now in use at Auderas lies on the south side of the valley under the hills of Tidrak, opposite the site of our camp. In the rains, malaria claimed several victims. They were mournful little processions which I used to see from my hut. One such occasion particularly impressed itself upon me.

I was returning from South Bagezan one evening, climbing down on a rough path in a ravine with three camels and three men, when Ahodu, El Mintaka and a few more appeared, carrying a man to his grave. They were walking quickly so as to have done as soon as possible, proclaiming as they went that there was no God but God. They did that which there was to be done in haste, and returned at their leisure near sundown when the sky and the mountains of Todra were on fire. It had been raining and the black clouds were still in sight, covering the place of sunset. Above, everything was as red as the light of a blast furnace shining on Todra. Already the darkness had gathered in the north-east and the stars were coming out, and the deep valley with its white, sandy bottom was scarcely seen for the many trees in it. A chilly wind blew down the valley, waving the palms and troubling the gardens. As I reached my hut, Ahodu and his men joined me, and night fell, leaving purple and then dark red and then a yellow glow in the west. Last of all came the pale zodiacal light climbing up nearly to the zenith of the night, and the wind died down. Ahodu did not speak of death because it was unlucky, but he sat on the sand and told me many things. Ultimately came the information that a raid of Ahaggaren had plundered some villages in Kawar. He was afraid they would come on to Air, and that the village would have to be abandoned, and that his people would have to retreat into the mountain which towered as a black shadow in the east. He had left this subject to the last, because there was nothing in the matter to discuss. The raiders either would or they would not come. There was a proverb: “Reasoning is the shackle of the coward.”

PLATE 19





[150] Cf. Barth, Vol. I. p. 387. The village of Aerwan wan Tidrak is presumably to be placed in these hills, where there are numerous remains of hamlets. The "village" of "Ifarghan" at Auderas is presumably a mistake, for "Ifargan" means "gardens" in Temajegh. Several of the Auderas gardens are at the point where Barth placed this so-called village.

[151] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I., p. 385.

[152] Mount Dogam is not west of the Ighaghrar (Arharkhar) valley as shown in the Cortier map, but to the east at the head of three tributary streams and adjoining the Todra massif. The latter on the map is not named and is erroneously given as a south-western spur of Bagezan, from which it is really quite distinct.

[153] First half of August, 1922.

[154] Three sorts of gourds do exist, but they are valuable.

[155] As does the Arab, and with some reason, for real negroes in the sunlight have, in fact, a blue-black appearance.

[156] Izagarnen or Ihagarnen—the red ones, possibly the etymology of “Ihaggaren.”

[157] Von Bary, *op. cit.*, p. 166.

[158] Among the Tuareg I have never seen or heard of the “penistasche,” which Bates regards as so typical of the Libyans.

[159] Sandals are called Irratemat.

[160] The hats illustrated by Bates, *op. cit.*, Fig. 32, are typically Sudanese.

[161] I believe this is not so in the north, where Arab influence contrasts with the more negroid customs of Air.

[162] Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 401.

[163] Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 192-3.

[164] *Vide supra*, Chap. IV.

[165] Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 195.

[166] Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 429.

[167] See Plates 36 and 37.

[168] The practice is alluded to in Gsell’s *Histoire de l’Afrique du Nord*, Vol. I. Chap. IV, and a connection with the mysterious term Leucæthiopians is suggested, but I think mistakenly. It is an insult to the classical geographers to suggest that any people were so called because some negroes whitened their faces with paint.

[169] Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 193.

[170] I cannot agree with Jean, p. 193, that until their marriage girls never leave their mothers. They are not taken on journeys like boys, but they walk about the villages or encampments in a remarkably free way. Their romances are a proof of their freedom, which is the topic of discussion and the object of remark of anyone who first comes into contact with this race.

[171] Ibn Batutah (French edition), Vol. IV. pp. 388-90.

[172] Known by various native names. In Air the usual name is the Hausa form Tunfafia. Barth refers to it as *Asclepias gigantica*. It is called Turha or Toreha or Tirza in Temajegh, Turdja in Mauretania, Ushr in Egyptian and Korunka in Algerian Arabic.

[173] Cf. Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, pp. 433-5.

[174] Von Bary, *op. cit.*, p. 185.

CHAPTER VI

THE MODE OF LIFE OF THE NOMADS

ONE of my first trips from Auderas was to the village of Towar,[175] which lies under the south-western spurs of Bagezan on the edge of the plain between this massif and Todra. Leaving Auderas by a very rough path over the hills on the south side of the valley, a narrow track with difficulty climbs up to the watershed of the basin where the central plain is reached. The northern part of the plain skirting Todra and Bagezan is covered with black basalt boulders all the way to Towar. The boulders are polished and range in size from a large water-melon to an orange. They were probably thrown out from

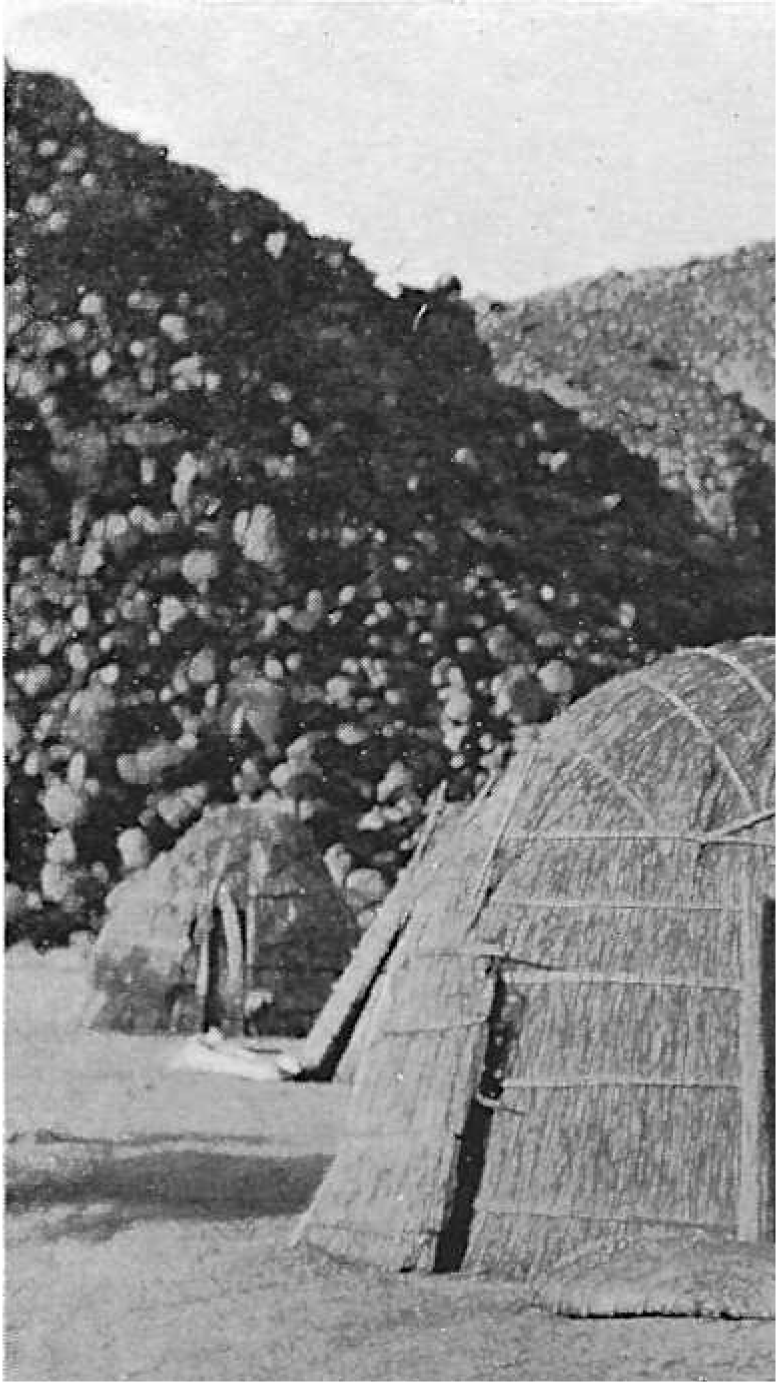
Bagezan by some volcanic activity, which, in conjunction with later eruptions at Mount Dogam, also produced the basalt and cinerite formations in the Auderas valley. The plain is intersected by several valleys, the head-waters of the Buddei-Telwa system which drains the southern slopes of Todra. Further east is the Ara valley, which comes down from the south-east face of Mount Dogam between Todra and Bagezan. Several valleys descend from the south-western parts of Bagezan as tributaries to the Ara and Towar, which both flow into the Etaras, whose waters eventually find their way east of Taruaji into the River of Agades opposite Akaraq by the Turayet valley. The Ara valley is particularly important, for it divides Todra from Bagezan, which are distinct groups and not a single massif as the Cortier map implies.

The plain between Bagezan and Taruaji is dotted with small conical hills. There is no vegetation except along the watercourses: between the boulders a little grass finds a precarious existence. But there are many gazelle always roaming about. Of the two roads from Auderas to Towar village, I first tried the northern one, which is also the shortest. At the point where it crosses a col over a spur of Todra it proved precipitous and dangerous, but the alternative road, on the other hand, is more than half as long again, running south-east from Auderas and then turning north-east to rejoin the first track at the domed peak of Tegbeshi, some six miles east of Towar. At Tegbeshi the road to Towar crosses a track from Agades to Northern Air, running over the pass of the Upper Ara valley not far from the village of Dogam, which lies on the south slope of the peak. A branch leads up into the Bagezan mountains by a precipitous ravine north of Towar village.

After crossing several more tributaries of the Ara and Towar valleys the village itself is reached, on the east side of the stream bed. There are two older deserted stone-built settlements, respectively south and east of the present site, which consist of a group of straw huts. The dwellings are typical of the Tuareg mode of hut construction. The frame is made of palm-frond ribs planted in the ground and tied together at the top; the section of the huts is consequently nearly parabolic. This framework is covered with thatch of coarse grass on top and mats round the lower part. The dwelling is built in one piece; it does not, as in the Southland, consist of two separate portions, namely, the conical roof and the vertical wall.[176] The stone houses of the two older villages point to the former settlements having been more extensive than the present one. There are small palm groves and a group of gardens on the banks of the valley, which contains plenty of water in the sand. The site was deserted during the war and has only recently been occupied. The population is mixed, but principally servile, derived from several tribes. The present inhabitants owe allegiance to the Kel Bagezan (Kel Owi) but the plain all round belongs to the Kel Nugguru of the chief Khodi, whose camels were pasturing in the little watercourses of the plain. One of the first people I met on camping near the village on the east bank was a man from Ghat, Muhammad, who had left his native town many years ago in the course of a feud between the leading Tuareg of the city and some neighbouring villages. He had become completely Tuareg and had almost forgotten his Arabic. The man, however, I had come to see was working on his garden, and I sent a friend whom I had brought from Auderas, one Atagoom, of Ahodu’s group of Kel Tadek, to find him. Eventually the man returned, and I became aware that I had found the purest Tuareg type in Air.

PLATE 20

HUTS AT TOWA



HUTS AT TI

I went forward with the intention of greeting T’ekhmedin, but was met with a look of disdainful inquiry which said more clearly and forcibly than words could express, “Who the hell are you and what the devil do you want?” He is one of the most remarkable men in Air, and the greatest of all the guides to Ghat on the northern roads of Air. Now barely forty years old, he has done the journey from Iferuan to Ghat, which is some four hundred miles in a straight line on the map, more than eighty times. He knows every stone and mark on all the alternative tracks over this terrible desert, as well as one may know the way from Hyde Park Corner to Piccadilly Circus. He is famous all over the Central Sahara, among the hardest travellers of the world, as the surest and toughest guide alive. His birth is noble, his spirit uncompromising. He has fought against the French on many occasions: his activities at Ghat in connection with the capture of the French post of Janet are known to all who followed events in North Africa during the war. He continued to fight against the French when Kaossen came to Air, and was imprisoned after the termination of that revolution; the fetter-marks round his ankles will endure until he dies. He had lost all his property; the rags on his back were pitiful to see, but his leather tobacco bottle and sheath knife, though almost falling to pieces, were of a quality which betokened affluence in the past. When I saw him he had nothing in the world but a small garden at Towar, which he had been reduced from high estate to cultivate like a mere slave. He seemed to be half starved. He was certainly over-worked, trying to grow enough food to keep life in his wife and small boy. The French at Agades have offered him pay to join their Camel Corps as a guide, but T'ekhmedin would have none of them. I wanted him to come with me as a guide, for his knowledge of the Central Sahara would have been invaluable to me in my researches, but he refused to come for pay. After I had broken the ice and explained my purpose in desiring to see him, T'ekhmedin began to thaw, and eventually became more affable. In time I learned to know him well, but in all our relations he never modified his independent attitude. He said: "I will come with you when my wife is provided for out of the harvest from my garden, and when I have placed her in the hands of my relations in T'imia. Then I will come with you for a month or for a year, but only because I want to come, and not for pay: if I come, I will go anywhere you want, but I will not come as your servant. You may give me a present if you like; you must feed me because I am poor, and give me a camel to ride, but I will not be paid for any service. I will come only as your friend because I, *I* myself, want to come." On a second trip to Towar I had occasion to nurse him when he had fever. He was thus one of the few men I ever saw without the veil, and as he is so typical of the pure Tuareg, I will copy the description of his appearance which I recorded in my diary at the time. "On reaching Towar I found the whole village laid low with malaria due to the proximity of stagnant wells in the gardens on the edge of the settlement. So I delivered a lecture on the desirability of moving the huts further away, and set to work to dose T'ekhmedin with quinine, the only drug I had with me. He was very bad, and had been ill ever since he left me at Auderas ten days before. I persuaded him to come away with me again; he came, but had a rotten time riding in the heat of the sun, and arrived rather done up. Thanks to good food and quinine he is better now. He is a handsome man, say six feet tall, of slight build, with a small beard and clipped moustache which, like his hair, is just steeled with grey. His domed forehead joins a retreating skull running back to a point behind. He has heavy eyebrow bones and the characteristic Libyan indentation between the forehead and root of the nose, which from that point is straight to the flat extremity. The nostrils are moderately flat and wide, but thin. The lips are not at all everted, rather the reverse. The upper lip is of the type which is very short, but in his case is not unduly so. There is an indentation between the lower lip and chin, which is very firm, very fine and very pointed. The cheek-bones are prominent but not high, and from here, accentuating their prominence, the outline of the face runs straight down to the chin. The ears are small, thin and flat. The profile is somewhat prorhinous; it is not at all prognathous. His hands and ankles are as slender as those of a woman; his body and waist are also slender; as is the case among all Tuareg, there is no superficial muscular development."

T'ekhmedin's colleagues on the north roads, Kelama, who is nearly blind, and Sattaf, together with Efale, in the Eastern Desert, enjoy enormous respect in Air and indeed among all Tuareg. As a race the People of the Veil are all born to travel, but anyone among them who has a specialist's knowledge is as important as a great scientist is in Europe. In general the topographical knowledge of Air and the surrounding countries has declined since raiding ceased, for this pastime was as much a sport as anything else. It is now confined to the people of those areas which are not under European control, that is, most of Tibesti, all the Fezzan and southern parts of Tripolitania and the interior of the Spanish colony of the Rio de Oro. Some of the exploits of the raiding bands from these areas sound so fantastic that they would hardly be credited were they not established facts. The Arab and Moorish tribes from Southern Morocco and from the Rio de Oro, for instance, when they have finished cultivating their scanty fields, turn out nearly every year for the especial purpose of lifting camels from the salt caravans between Timbuctoo and Taodenit, but the parties do not confine their operations to this area if they miss their objective. They have, on several occasions, gone on until they have found elsewhere a sufficient number of camels to make their journey profitable. Thus they have come as far as Damergu and Tegama, south of Agades, a journey from the Atlantic half-way across North Africa and back. Once, with consummate humour, a band stole all the camels of a French Camel Corps patrol in the Tahua area north of Sokoto. These people usually start out in as large a body of men as they reckon can water at the wells by the way, and break up into small parties as soon as they have looted some camels, returning home by different routes. Although they often lose a part of their booty and suffer casualties at the hands of the French Camel Corps, their tactics make them very hard to catch.

The Tebu and Tuareg from the Fezzan raid Kawar and Air. Their procedure varies considerably, and it is impossible to know which way they will come or return. One year a party from the north-east entered Air by the western side and left in an E.S.E. direction. The raiding season begins as soon as the rains have fallen, when there is plenty of water all over the Southern Sahara even in the most inaccessible places. Outlying watering-points which can rarely be visited are their favourite haunts. The wireless stations at Agades and Bilma are a serious handicap, for intercommunication enables the French Camel patrols of different areas to obtain a start, and very often some idea of the possible roads which the raiders are following. Yet even so the two Camel Corps platoons in Air have let many bands slip through their fingers. It is generally recognised as impossible to prevent a raid reaching its objective; at the most the raiders can be followed up and brought to action or forced to abandon their loot on the way home. The latter politically is the end kept in view, for it exposes the raiders to the ridicule of failure rather than the sympathy of defeat. One of the great difficulties of defensive operations in the deserts of the Territoires du Niger is the use of the Tirailleurs Sénégalais as Camel Mounted Troops. The negro of the coast is not, and never will be, a good camel-man, and his efficiency cannot compare with that of the natives used by the French authorities in Southern Algeria, where tribesmen who have been born and bred in the saddle are enlisted as volunteers. Here, there is nothing to choose between the capacity of the raider and his opponent.

The technique of raids is interesting. The size of the bodies attacking Air must always be limited by the capacity of the outlying watering-points, which, except in Damergu and Azawagh, are small. Bands of as few as ten men sometimes operate; a raid of one hundred men is considered large. They travel astonishing distances on practically no food or water: a few dates and a little water serve them for several days. If I were to record the periods of time for which men have lived without water in the lands of the People of the Veil, I would be accused of such mendacity that I will refrain from risking my good name. I will only say that seventy-two hours without water is an occurrence just sufficiently common not to pass as unduly remarkable. Similarly the distances ridden by raiders are fantastic. A hundred miles in the day have been covered by a band of a few hard-pressed men. Individual performances are even better. A messenger quite recently rode from Agades to In Gall in one day and back the next on the same camel, which therefore covered not less than one hundred and forty miles as the crow flies in forty hours, and probably one hundred and sixty by road. Another man, on a famous camel it is true, rode from the River of Agades near Akaraq to Iferuan, a distance of not less than one hundred and sixty miles, in just over twenty-four hours. The two messengers who brought the news to Zinder in 1917, that the post of Agades was besieged, covered over four hundred kilometres in under four days. And such instances could be multiplied. A raiding party, however, will not usually average more than thirty-five miles a day, and even so the hardship is considerable if this rate has to be kept up for many days. The bands are often made up of more men than camels, some of them in turn having to walk until they can loot more mounts. The Tuareg on raids are generally well-behaved towards each other. They do not kill unless the looted tribe or village puts up a fight, for it is an unwritten law among them that on ordinary raids, as opposed to real warfare, only livestock is taken. Houses are not destroyed and villages are not burnt. This forbearance is, of course, largely due to the fact that there is nothing of any weight worth removing, such wealth as the Tuareg possess being principally in flocks and herds, of which only the camels can readily be driven off. But secrecy is essential, and when, therefore, a stray wanderer is met on the road who might give warning of the arrival of a raiding party, he may be made to accompany the robbers, or, if his presence is inconvenient, he may have to be killed. The Tuareg do not capture each other as slaves unless they are at war, though to steal someone's slaves is, of course, as legitimate as to steal his camels. Descents on French patrols, posts, and tribes known to be engaged in assisting them are considered legitimate, but they generally have had serious consequences. For here more than raiding is involved—it is war. At the end of last century raiding from Air was frequent: lifting camels from the Aulimmiden had, in fact, become so common a pastime that it was proscribed by the Holy Men, who decided that even though no killing of Tuareg was taking place, the People of the Veil should leave the People of the Veil alone and turn their attentions to the Tebu, who were legitimate enemies. With the latter the Air Tuareg neither give nor expect to receive mercy. Raiding eastward at the end of last century became popular, but fraught with more serious consequences. On one such occasion the expedition turned out so badly that Belkho's own people, the Igermadan, after successfully lifting camels and taking many prisoners in Kawar, were virtually exterminated. They were surprised at night in their over-confidence and massacred, a reverse from which the tribe to this day has never recovered.

In his youth Ahodu accomplished some very successful raids in the east. His greatest adventure was when he captured a big Arab caravan bound from Murzuk to Bornu, some thirty years ago. He told the story as follows, with Ali of Ghat sitting near him on the floor of my hut. Now when a Tuareg tells a story he always draws on the sand with his fingers to show the numbers of his camels and men and the direction of his march, and when he counts in that way he marks the units by little lines drawn with two or three fingers at a time till he has reached ten, and then marks up a group of ten with a single line to one side.

"That was nearly thirty years ago," he said, and drew:

II II II II II
II II III III
II III IIIII

I I
I

"I was one leader and Ula with the Ifadeyen people was the other. There were" (rubbing out the first marks with a sweep of the hand):

III III I
II I I I
II II II II II
III

(that is) "twenty-five of us and about I I I thirty of the Ifadeyen.

"First we found a group of camels, the ones we came for, half a day on the Fashi side of Bilma. And some of the men went back with them from here. They were afraid, but we went on. As I was the leader I went too.

"Then we had news of a caravan of Arabs coming down the road from Murzuk, but my men were afraid, for all the Arabs were supposed to have rifles—they were only old stone guns [flint-locks]—and horses to pursue us. We took counsel, and I agreed to go in and stampede the horses, when my men would rush the caravan, which was camped in the open under a dune. The dune had a little grass on it. [He then drew a rough map of the battle-field on the sand.] So we hid for the night behind another dune, and I crept in on the sleeping caravan and lay still till dawn, behaving like a Tebu. In the cold before dawn my men came up, but the Arabs saw them a little too soon and the alarm spread. My men rushed the caravan all right, but one Arab got away on his horse, barebacked, with a rifle, and nearly created a panic among my men when he sat down to shoot at us from a hill. He only fired two shots and they did no harm, but my men ran away till I showed them that we had picked up the only other two guns of the caravan. Then my men regained courage. We took two hundred laden camels with 'malti' [cotton stuff], tea and sugar, and we emptied even our waterskins to fill them with sugar, and still so had to leave much on the ground."

SELF. "What happened to the Arabs?"

AHODU. "A few were able to run away—the rest died."

ALI. "Was that the caravan of Rufai el Ghati?"

AHODU. "Yes; why?"

ALI. “I knew the man: he was my friend: and were Muhammad el Seghir and El Tunsi and Sheikh el Latif there?”[177]

AHODU. “Yes. I killed them myself, but there was a child . . .”

ALI. “. . . who was not killed but was found with his head all covered with blood. He was sitting on the ground playing when someone found him.”

AHODU. “Yes, it is so.”

ALI. “I was in Bornu then, waiting for that caravan. Ai! There was dismay in Ghat when the news came there. It was you who did that! I did not know till now. The boy was my sister’s son. His father was her husband.”

AHODU. “Yes (relapsing into silence); and we also got another caravan that time.”

SELF. “Will you come on a raid with me one day?”

AHODU (quite seriously). “Wallahi, anywhere; and my people will come too, and many more, if you want.”

SELF. “But where shall we go?—there are no caravans now.”

AHODU. “Never mind, there are some fine female camels in Tibesti.”

It was their great sport and had its recognised rules. It kept their men virile, but is finished now.

The essence of rapid travel by camel is lightness of equipment. It is a mistake to suppose that the actual rate of progression on camels is anything but very slow. It may come as a surprise to many to learn that even riding camels rarely move out of a walk.

They say in the Sahara that it is bad for the camel to run. The riding camels of the Tuareg are selected and tried beasts, but they are never, in fact, trotted except for quite brief periods. The French camel patrols, after many years of experience, are by regulation forbidden to move out of a walk: the weight of equipment which they have to carry may be a reason, but there must be more in it than that, for even raiding parties follow the same practice. It is held that the fatigue of man and beast consequent upon trotting is disproportionate to the results achieved. But the walk of a camel is slow at any time; to average 3·5 miles an hour over long distances is very good going, while 2·5 with a baggage caravan is all that can be managed.

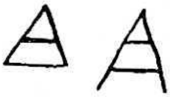
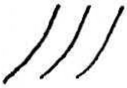
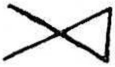
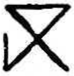
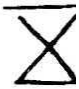
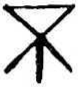
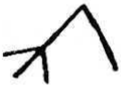
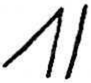
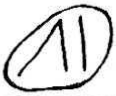
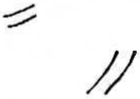
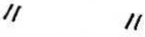
Where the raider has the advantage over any organised military body engaged in chasing him is in the lightness of his load. The Tuareg camel saddle weighs a few pounds only; the head-rope or bridle is a simple cord without trappings: a small skin of water, a skin of dates, a rifle and perhaps twenty to thirty rounds of ammunition are the only serious additions to the rider’s own weight. But long marches under these conditions are tiring, and scarcely anyone not born to the saddle can survive ten to fourteen hours’ riding day after day for hundreds of miles on a minimum diet. It is the habit of the Tuareg, in Air and elsewhere as well, when they start on such expeditions to procure a long length of stuff woven in the Sudan and tie it round their bodies as support for the abdomen, on which the motion of the camel imposes great strain. In Air the stuff they use is rather like a bandage some four inches wide, of unbleached and undyed cotton tissue; the material is similar to that used for making up robes, for which purpose numerous strips are sewn together and then dyed. These strips of cotton stuff are wound several times tightly round the waist and then over the shoulders, crossing on the breast and back.[178] The practice is particularly interesting, because many of the Egyptian pictures of Libyans show the belt and cross strapping. In referring to the dress of the Libyans, who are often described as "cross-belted," Bates[179] has made a peculiarly apposite remark: "As seen on the Egyptian monuments, the Libyan girdles were like some modern polo belts cut broader in the back than in the front." And the Tuareg bandages serve identically the same purpose in similar circumstances, namely, during periods of great physical strain on the stomach muscles. On the analogy of the Tuareg practice, Bates is right in supposing that the Libyan method of wearing the "belt" was to pass it several times round the body: the end was then pushed "down between the body and the girdle, and afterwards again brought up and tucked in."

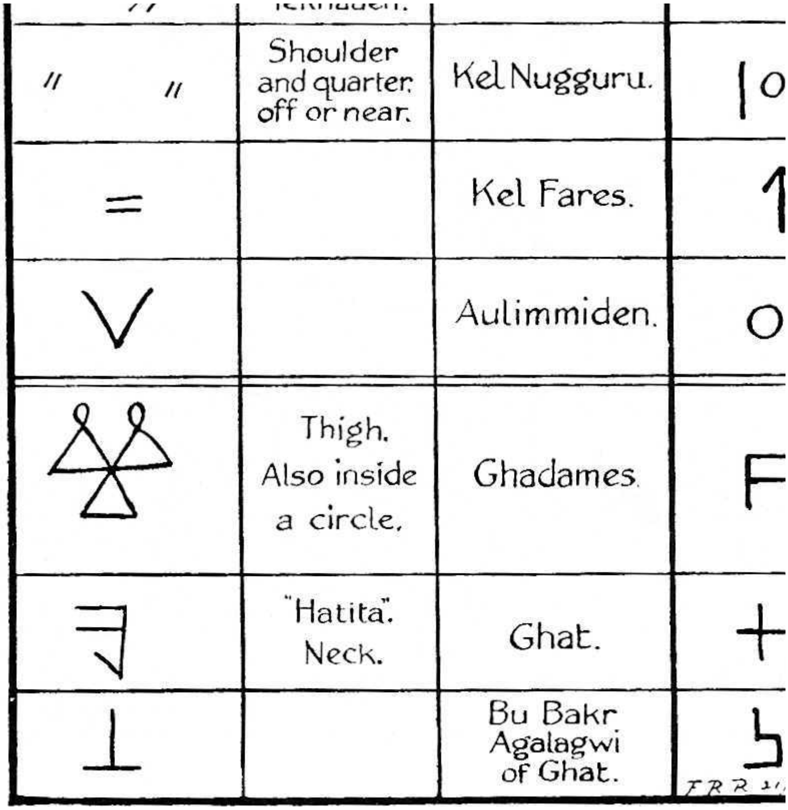
To own camels, and yet more camels, is the ultimate ambition of every Tuareg. A man may be rich in donkeys, goats or sheep, or he may have houses, gardens and slaves, but camels are the coveted possessions. Therein the nomadic instinct obtrudes. When I found T'ekhmedin at Towar, he possessed the few rags on his back, and a garden which just kept him alive. He had no prospects of becoming richer; there were no caravans to Ghat, by guiding which he might earn his fees: the French he would not serve: his surplus garden produce had no market. After I had known him a little while I gave him a white cotton robe embroidered on the breast, of the fashion worn by the Hausa, but not favoured in Air. One day not long afterwards I met him and noticed that he was in his old rags once more. He became confused and avoided me. He eventually begged my excuses and hoped that I would not be hurt; he had sold the robe I had given him to the Sultan of Agades, who had found the Southland fashion more to his taste than a true Imajegh would have done. With the proceeds of this deal, T’ekhmedin had bought a half-share in a young camel which had gone to Bilma in charge of a friend with the great caravan to fetch a load of salt. He became more cheerful as he explained. In a few weeks if all went well he expected to have enough money to buy a small camel of his own, and so build up his fortune once more. He nearly wept with gratitude when he had done telling his story. It seemed, I had been the means of rehabilitating him in the world of men, a prospect which appeared only a short time before to be beyond the range of possibility.

PLATE 21

CAMEL-BRANDS SEEN IN

CAMEL-BRANDS SE

Brand.	Name & Place.	Owner.	Bra
	Cheek or inverted on Neck.	Kel Agellal.	Slit
	Neck.	Kel Azañieres.	
	Neck.	Kel Azañieres.	
	Neck near Shoulder.	Kel Tadek. (sub tribe).	
	"Tamellalif." Neck.	Kel Tefgun. Kel Anuwisheran.	
	Neck.	Assode Tabellawatan.	
	Neck.	Igdalen of Agades.	
	Neck.	Igdalen.	
	Below ear "Izaggan" Neck behind ear. "Teknauen".	Kel Timia.	
	Shoulder and quarter. off or near.	Kel Nugguru.	



// //	Shoulder and quarter off or near.	Kel Nugguru.	
=		Kel Fares.	
V		Aulimmiden.	O
	Thigh. Also inside a circle.	Ghadames.	F
	"Hatita". Neck.	Ghat.	+
⊥		Bu Bakr Agalagwi of Ghat.	

To a European all camels at first look much the same, but a few weeks' association with them enables one rapidly to differentiate between the different breeds. They vary as much in build as they do in colour. Camels of almost every African and some Arabian varieties may, sooner or later, be seen in Air, but only two varieties properly belong to the country or to the Tuareg of these parts. The tall, sandy-fawn-coloured Tibesti camel, standing an immense height at the shoulder, is much prized; the Ghati camel, reddish-fawn in colour, is fairly common. The latter is short-legged with heavy stubby bones and big foot-pads; he has a straight back, holds his head low, and is capable of carrying immense loads over sandy country, but at a slower pace than the Tebu animal, which is generally more of the riding build. The western camel of Timbuctoo is represented by an animal with a well-arched back, generally lighter-limbed and more graceful than the Ghati sort. The Ahaggar camel is recognisable by his great height and strength, and above all by his very shaggy coat with a long beard and fluffy shoulders: he is usually dark in colour. The Maghrabi camel also has very hairy shoulders, the colour varying from red-fawn to very dark brown. The two types of camels belonging to the Air Tuareg are both very distinctive. There is a great white camel and a smaller grey or piebald animal. The white camel is said originally to have belonged to the Kel Geres, to have been specially bred and brought by them originally to the Southland. He has long flat withers and a round hump; but either because the Kel Geres in recent years have lived in the Southland, or for some other reason connected with their original habitat, the white camel is a plain land animal and is almost useless on rocky ground. He is consequently not very highly valued in Air.

The true Air camel is very peculiar. The species may be divided into two categories, the grey and the piebald, the latter being perhaps derived from a cross between the former and some other breed. The Air grey is a sturdy and straight-backed animal with sloping quarters and a long neck, which he holds rather low. He can carry a fair load and negotiate any sort of ground. The colour varies from iron-grey to brown-ash and is quite distinctive; the coat is either uniform or speckled. Although the Tuareg say that the original stock is the piebald, the pure-bred animal apparently has a uniform coat. The “type animal” is called the Tegama camel, the iron-grey colour is known as “ifurfurzan.” In the parti-coloured animal the markings take the form of large patches of dark grey and white with sharp edges, as if the skin had been painted, or of small patches giving a dappled appearance, or of a combination of the two, or, more rarely, of undefined patches merging into one another. Inter-breeding has produced the red-fawn and white, and the brown and white animals. Though very sturdy, they are light-boned and small-footed, but their short legs and short sloping withers give them an agility which is quite unbelievable in what the world has always regarded as an ungainly animal. The eyes of these camels are sometimes pale blue and white, a peculiarity which makes them look very strange. The breed is much prized as a curiosity or freak outside Air.

Temajegh, like Arabic, has innumerable names for various types of camels. The most valuable animal is the cow-camel which has calved once; they are not used more than can be helped for long or very strenuous work, because they are, on the whole, not so strong as the males. They are rested as much as possible prior to, and after, calving. If a cow-camel has calved on the road it is common to see the small calf carried on the mother’s back until it is fit to run alongside, which is within two or three days. Stud fees are unknown: attempts are made as far as possible to avoid cross-breeding. A certain Ahmadu of the Kel Tagei is known throughout Air as the possessor of the finest herd of pure Tegama cow-camels in the mountains: they are maintained exclusively for breeding purposes. These are some of the commonest Temajegh names used in Air:

Temajegh name.	*Meaning.*

[180]

Tefurfuz	Grey and white piebald camel.
Adignas	White.
Aberoq	Dark grey.
Kadigi	Thin.
Alletat	“White belly.”
Banghi	“One eye.”
Awina	Blue (or black) and white-eyed camel.
Korurimi	“The earless one.”
Tabzau	White (but not very white) camel.
Tāurak	Fawn.
Imusha	White-mouthed.
Izarf	Light grey.
Buzak	White-footed.
Ajmellel	Spotted white.
Kelbadu	“Big belly.”
Agoiyam	Tebu camel.

Camels are curiously delicate animals, as anyone who has had anything to do with them will know to his cost. They lose condition very quickly and mysteriously, and do not regain it easily. Camel travelling implies a perpetual fruitless attempt to maintain their condition by seeking to reconcile progress and pasturing. The ideal is to give the beasts at least four hours’ grazing, which must not be at night or in the heat of the day, when the camel is prone to rest in the shade of a tree instead of feeding. At the same time, when it is very hot it is neither good for man nor beast to march; nor should the camel march all night either, when four hours’ rest are very desirable. Lastly, it must be remembered that it is tiring for camels to be on and off loaded more than once a day, since every time they kneel or get up with a heavy burden they are subjected to a considerable strain; it is consequently inadvisable to divide a march into two parts. To reach a satisfactory compromise is difficult. So long as not more than about twenty miles a day are being covered, any system works well enough, but where long marches are necessary there is no really satisfactory solution. The Tuareg himself usually starts late in the morning and marches till dusk, when he off-loads; he then drives his camels to pasture, leaving them out all night; they are slowly collected after dawn, when they have again begun to feed. The disadvantage from the European point of view is that there is always some delay in finding the camels in the morning, as one or two are sure to have strayed, nor is it always safe to leave camels wandering about unguarded at night. The French Camel Corps patrols and other Europeans usually prefer to start in the night and march until high noon or the early afternoon. I have myself tried every course, and with all its disadvantages finally adopted the Tuareg system. To these complications must be added the consideration that if a camel is watered it should be at noon, when the sun is hot, in order to make him drink well. If there is no reason to anticipate long waterless journeys, camels are watered every third day, but if they are required to cross difficult tracts of desert, the intervals must gradually be increased beforehand. Above all, the camel must be made really thirsty prior to his final drink before the longest waterless portion of the journey is attempted. The camel must start almost bursting with the water in his belly.

It is generally more important for a camel not to miss a day's pasture than a day's water. When the rains have fallen and green vegetation is abundant, camels need not be watered for long intervals. If they are not being worked they can go for weeks without drinking. Camels will eat anything if put to it, from hard grass with a straw like wire to any kind of tree or shrub; acacia thorns three and four inches long appear to make no difference to his digestion. Pasture is the most important factor on the march, for the animal is really a fastidious feeder and requires plenty of variety.

The woes which afflict the camel are numerous. First and worst are saddle sores, which rapidly become stinking and gangrenous. They develop quickly from a slight rub or gall under the saddle, and often end by infecting the bones of the spine or ribs. They discharge a thick offensive pus either through the sore or under the skin. In treating them the first thing to do is to open the wound and let the pus escape, after which the best cure, I found as others have discovered, is to wash the wound with a strong solution of permanganate of potash. Thereafter an iodoform dressing is almost miraculous in its quick-healing properties, as it keeps away the flies, and consequently obviates maggots and re-infection. The great black crows in Air have an odious habit of sitting on the backs of camels and pecking at these sores. They do terrible damage with their long powerful beaks. The only way to keep them off is to tie a pair of crow's wings to the hair on the hump of the camel. The remedy is sovereign, as I learnt by experience, but I am at a loss to explain the psychological process governing the action of the live crows which are thus scared away.

Apart from deaths due to eating poisonous plants, which are far more numerous in the Southland than in Air, the highest mortality among camels in Air comes from a disease known locally as “blood in the head.” It is a form of pernicious apoplexy or congestion of blood in the head. The early symptoms are hard to observe unless one happens to be born a Tuareg. As the attack develops the camel becomes dazed and lies in the sun with rather a glassy stare, instead of feeding. Later it runs about, hitting its head against trees, and finally falls to the ground in contortions, dying very rapidly of a stroke. The disease is especially common after the rains, when the pasture is rich or when the animals are idle, recovering condition. If they are left in the Southland for the whole year, the rich feeding there aggravates the incidence of the disease. An attack may be staved off by the remedy, which is also used for dealing with refractory animals, namely, of putting tobacco snuff in their eyes. This apparently cruel treatment is singularly efficacious, and I can only suppose that the irritation or smarting has the effect of a stimulant which draws or dispels the blood pressure. When the disease is more advanced, resort has to be had to blood-letting; the jugular artery is cut a span below the left ear and blood is drawn to an amount which will fill three cup-shaped hollows in the ground made by removing a double handful of sand or earth from each. The blood is seen at first to flow very dark in colour; as it gradually resumes its normal hue, the hæmorrhage is stopped by taking a tuft of hair, dipping it into the coagulated blood and inserting it in the cut. As soon as a clot is formed the incision is covered with sand. The whole proceeding sounds a fantastically imprudent and septic way of dealing with an arterial hæmorrhage, but it works most successfully. If camels are sickening for disease, and especially for "blood in the head," which may sometimes be recognised by the premonitory symptom of very hard, dry droppings, they are dosed with a mixture made of tobacco leaf, onion, and the seed of grain called "Araruf," containing a pungent oil apparently of the mustard variety. These ingredients are pounded up, mixed with about a gallon of water and poured down the camel's throat.

Firing is resorted to for various ills, especially around bad sores to prevent them from spreading and to induce healing. A cow is very often fired across the flanks after calving, when she is also given a goatskin-full of millet and water "to fill up the empty space in her belly." Firing round the breast pad is carried out when the animal is suffering from the disease which causes the pad to split. Mange is fairly frequent, and is treated with a mixture of oil and ashes. The worst disease of all is called "Tara," for which there is said to be no cure: the symptoms are a wasting of the legs, and eventual death from debility and breakage of the bones: luckily I had no experience of the malady, which is said to be infectious or contagious. The Tuareg say that there is no reason for its coming, but that Allah sometimes unaccountably sends it.

The Tuareg empiric remedies, other than those described, are not interesting except in their treatment of gangrenous wounds. When they have washed the wound with a lotion of female camel urine or brewed from one of several plants which seem to have remarkably little effect, they cover the exposed flesh with a powder of crumbled donkey droppings dried in the sun. I was appalled at the danger of septic infection when I first saw the practice, but soon discovered that the powder, which had, I supposed, become sterilised in the sun, was a really effectual method of preventing the great harm caused by flies settling on the wound. I can now confidently recommend this practice.

Camels, of course, are branded with tribal marks, a complete study of which would be worth making. Each mark has its own name, and many of them are derived from certain known symbols or perhaps letters, all of which call for investigation in connection with marks from other parts of Africa. Some of the principal brands in Air are given in Plate 21, the most interesting being the mark of the Ghati Tuareg (Azger); it is called the Hatita, after the name of the famous leader of Barth's day.

This necessarily brief note on the animal which is so intimately bound up with the life of the People of the Veil, not to say their very existence, may be supplemented by some mention of the other domestic animals of Air.

In Nigeria the best horses are described as Asben horses; yet in Air there is hardly a horse to be seen. The explanation is presumably that the Tuareg bring, or used to bring, the best horses for sale in Hausaland; but they were not necessarily bred in Air. The supposition is reasonable, for the Tuareg north of Sokoto, and especially the Aulimmiden, west of Air, possess a number of horses which are renowned for their hardiness, and of course all Tuareg in the Southland are called Asbenawa. In Air the best of the few horses are, with an even lesser show of logic, described as Bagezan horses; but there are no horses in the mountains. The tracks are far too rough for there ever at any time to have been a considerable number of horses in the hills. I can offer no explanation of the name. Air is not a horse-breeding country. The pasture is too rough even after the rains, while during the dry season the only green stuff is on the trees, which, even if it were good fodder for horses, could only be reached by animals of the build of camels. The few horses which I saw in Air belonged to the Sultan at Agades and to the Añastafidet. They were small and wiry but rather nondescript, a variable cross of Arab and Sudanese blood; in no case could they be said to represent an "Air breed." The Tuareg say the horse came to Air from the north, and in point of fact all those I saw bore a certain resemblance to the little animals of Tripolitania. There are probably not more than 100 horses in Air altogether to-day. Water is far too scarce a commodity for horses to be much used for travelling. Those in the mountains are never watered more than once a day, and can easily do three days between drinking without undue fatigue.

The other domestic animals are donkeys, cattle, sheep, goats, dogs and a few Hausa cats. Falconry is not a pastime in Air. The cattle come from the south; they are of the humped and ordinary varieties. The bulls are used for drawing water from the garden irrigation wells; cows are more scarce. Before the war the Tuareg used to carry on an active trade in cattle, buying from the Fulani in Damergu and selling to the people of Ghat and the Fezzan. Incredible as it may seem, cattle used to be driven over the roads to Ghat after the rains, and do as much as four and five days without water. The mortality must have been considerable, but their cheapness in the Southland made the trade profitable. It is curious how all the animals in Air, including man, seem to get used to going without water for long periods. Oxen are used to a certain extent as pack animals both in Air and Damergu; Barth started his journey from Northern Air to Agades on an ox; he considered this mount indifferent as a means of transport, for he fell off and nearly broke his compass. The association of cattle with a well-watered country where they can drink every day must be dismissed in the Sahara, and this disposes of one of the difficulties surrounding the problem of the ox-drawn chariots of the Garamantes which so exercised Duveyrier;[181] loaded oxen can march comfortably with water only every third day.

The donkey is very nearly as good a performer in the desert as the camel. In austerity of diet he is better, being less fastidious about pasture and quite as capable of doing four and five days in cold weather, between wells. But his pace is even slower than that of the camel, and his maximum load should not exceed 100 lbs. Curiously enough, donkeys suffer from the same disease as camels after the rains: they get "blood in the head," but in their case a treatment of snuff in the eyes is said to be useless. They have to be bled by making an incision with a curious bent iron instrument in the roof of the mouth above the lower molars. The operation looks ridiculous, but the donkey is always a humorous beast. The ones in Air and nearly all those in the Southland are small grey animals, standing not more than four feet from the ground, with straight knife-edged backs. I saw none of the large white donkeys of Egypt. Near T'imia and in the north-eastern parts of Air there are a number of wild donkeys, roaming unbroken and unherded. They are the descendants of domestic donkeys driven out to propagate and find their own livelihood by certain tribes who claim them when captured in their own areas. These animals, like the gazelle of the country, exist on pasture alone, for they often encounter no open water to drink for ten months of the year.

The commonest domestic animals are the sheep and goats. Every village and tribe has large herds. After the camels they constitute the principal wealth of the people and do exceedingly well. The sheep are all of the gaunt wire-haired variety without woollen fleeces, resembling goats. The latter provide most of the milk in the villages, and vary in colour from white to black, with every intermediate shade of brown and type of marking. Curiously enough, none of the Tuareg of Air, and, I believe, none of the other groups, either spin the hair of goats or the wool of their own camels. A good sheep in 1922 could be bought for six to seven and a goat for four to five silver francs. Camels ranged between £5 and £12 a head.

The number of domestic animals in Air, hard and barren as the country seems to be, is surprisingly large. In a rough classifying census of the Tuareg of Air, including only a few tribes in the Southland and not counting either the Kel Geres or Aulimmiden, Jean[182] in 1904 estimated (Column I) the numbers as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Camels	20,150	20,000	60,000	25,000
Horses	554	600	—	100
Cattle	2,491	2,600	—	1,000
Donkeys	2,840	3,000	—	2,500
Sheep and Goats	51,300	45,000	400,000	450,000

The figures in Column II are Chudeau's[183] estimate of 1909, while those in Column III were compiled by another authority: those in Column IV are my present estimate. There is little doubt that the number of camels in Air before the war was grossly under-estimated by the early authorities. From fear of taxation and requisition the Tuareg will resort to every device to conceal their possessions, and especially the number of their camels. The same applies to their sheep and goats. In 1913 the number of camels in Air was put down at 60,000, which then was probably a reasonable figure. The herds were seriously depleted by the requisitions made for the expeditions of 1913-14 to Tibesti, when not less than 23,000 camels were taken, few of which ever returned to the country. This was certainly one of the principal grievances which led to the 1917 revolution. During the operations of 1917-18 the herds were further diminished, and have only recently again begun to increase at a rate which is bound to be slow when it is realised that a camel cannot be worked at all till it is over three years old, and ought not to be worked till it is five, while from seven years onward it is at its prime for only about five years. Nowadays there are probably not more than about 25,000 camels in Air; the sheep and goats, however, have once more reached their pre-war figure, which must have been nearly half a million.[184]

The last domestic animals worth mentioning are the dogs, of a type usually resembling inferior Arabian gazelle hounds, with short hair, often brown in colour, or with the brown or liver-and-white markings like foxhounds. The “pi” dog, which is so common in the north of Africa, I never saw in Air. Dogs are interesting owing to the friendly way in which they are treated by the Tuareg; they are much more the companions of man than is usual among Moslems, a characteristic which has probably survived from pre-Moslem days. Duveyrier refers to three types of dog among the Tuareg: a greyhound (*lévrier*), a long-haired Arab dog which is very rare, and a short-haired cross from these two. The latter appears to be the domestic dog in Air.[185]

Chickens are common and are eaten. In this the southern Tuareg differ from the Tuareg of the north, among whom Duveyrier specifically states that chickens, other birds and eggs are prohibited as food.[186]

But all domestic animals sink into insignificance in comparison with the camel, whose rôle is so outstanding in the nomadic life of the Tuareg that one wonders how the inhabitants of the Sahara can have lived before the advent of this animal, which is usually supposed to have come from the East at a comparatively late date in history.

The camel in Africa offers a most interesting historical problem around which there has been much inconclusive scientific dispute. The camel does not appear on Egyptian monuments before the Saitic period, and is not mentioned as living in Africa either by Herodotus or by Sallust, when the horse and probably the donkey were the ordinary means of transport of the nomads. It is fairly clear that the Carthaginians did not use camels, or we should certainly have found some reference to the animal in the accounts of the Punic or Jugurthine wars. It is said by so eminent an authority as Basset[187] that none of the Berber dialects contain any names for the camel which cannot be traced to Arabic origins, but this generalisation is also disputed. Sallust[188] says the Romans first saw a camel when they fought

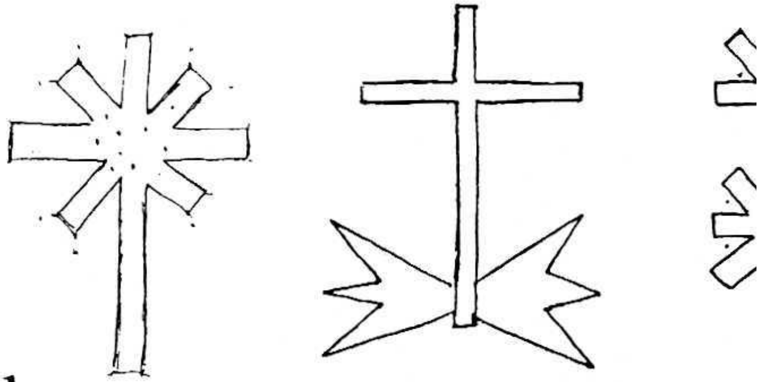
Mithridates at Rhyndacus, but Plutarch says it was at the battle of Magnesia in *c.* 190 B.C. The first text mentioning camels in Africa is in the account of the fighting with Juba, when Cæsar[189] captured twenty-two on the Zeta. A camel figures on a coin attributed either to L. Lollius Palicanus, a prefect of Cyrenaica under Augustus, or alternatively to L. Lollius, a lieutenant of Pompey,[190] but the first mention of camels in any large numbers is during the Empire, when in the late fourth century A.D. the general Romanus requisitioned 4000 animals for transport purposes from the inhabitants of Leptis Magna.[191] Other sources, including sculptures and texts of this period from now on, confirm their frequency, and by the time Corippus was writing the camel was the normal means of transport in the interior. The silence of Pliny[192] the Elder is valuable, if negative, evidence for Africa, as he mentions camels in Bactria and Arabia, and speaks of the East as the home of this animal. He knows nothing of them apparently in Africa. It is on such evidence that it has been supposed that camels were first introduced into Cyrenaica[193] from Sinai and Arabia. The conclusion would be more readily acceptable were it not for the unfortunate discoveries of camel skeletons associated with evidence of human industry of the Pleistocene period in more than one palæolithic site in North Africa.[194] In rock drawings the camel, of course, figures largely; these glyphs may not be of extreme antiquity, but they are quite possibly prior to the earliest classical references. It has been said that in really early rock drawings the camel is not represented, but neither has any complete catalogue of the drawings yet been made, nor has any conclusive scheme of dating been compiled. The question remains undecided, for although the camel was rare on the coast in early historical times, there is no evidence that it was not used more extensively in the interior. It is difficult consequently to discuss the question of early transport methods in the Sahara, of which I would only say that conditions of water supply have apparently for several thousand years been much as they certainly were throughout historical and modern times. An interesting theory has lately been advanced that there is an African and an Eastern species of camel distinguished by the peculiarity that some camels have one and some two canine teeth on each side of the upper jaw.

In the absence of any conclusive evidence it is safest to assume, as do most authorities, that the camel was not common in North Africa till as late as the second century A.D.

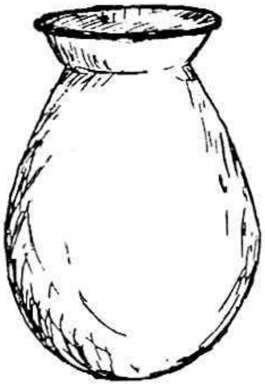
Gsell[195] makes an interesting suggestion that "La prospérité de la Tripolitaine prit certainement un grand essor sous la dynastie des Sévères, dont le chef était originaire de Leptis Magna. Ce fut à cette époque que Rome mit des garnisons dans les oases situées sur les routes du Soudan, ce qui favorisa évidemment le commerce des caravanes. Peut-être le développement du trafic trans-saharien fit alors adopter définitivement l'usage du chameau." The problem of what transport was used before this period is only in part answered by Herodotus,[196] who tells us that the Garamantes harnessed oxen to carts, a statement which is confirmed from other sources, which add that cattle were used as beasts of burden as well. Whether wheeled vehicles ever reached Air is doubtful,[197] but the use of the pack-ox there continues as it does in the south. Whatever the means of transport which they favoured in their original northern homes, the Tuareg were already using camels when they reached Air. Dissociation of the Tuareg from his camel is difficult to conceive, since his life to-day as a nomad is so intimately bound up with the animal, which in turn has served so strongly to maintain his nomadic instinct. Of all animals it alone enables the Tuareg to remain to a great extent independent of his physical surroundings. Neither oxen nor donkeys could do so to the same extent.

The historical and anthropological aspect of the introduction of the ox and camel into Africa, and the identification of the races with which these animals were associated, are questions which concern the general story of North Africa rather than that of the Tuareg in particular. Fundamentally the Tuareg remains the pure nomad even when his habitat has changed and circumstances have obliged him to settle in villages or on the land. In Air all the truest nomads inhabit the Talak plain and the N.W. of the plateau, with the one great exception of the Ifadyen tribe, which during the last generation has moved south to Azawagh and Tegama. The true nomads have no fixed centres of permanent habitation whatsoever, thereby differing considerably from many of the purest Arabian nomads. But, unlike the latter again, they do not migrate very far afield; their winter and summer pastures are usually not very distant from each other. The only exception that I know to this rule is the case of some of the Ahaggaren, who send their herds to graze as far afield as the Adghar n’Ifoghas[198] and at times Damergu.[199]

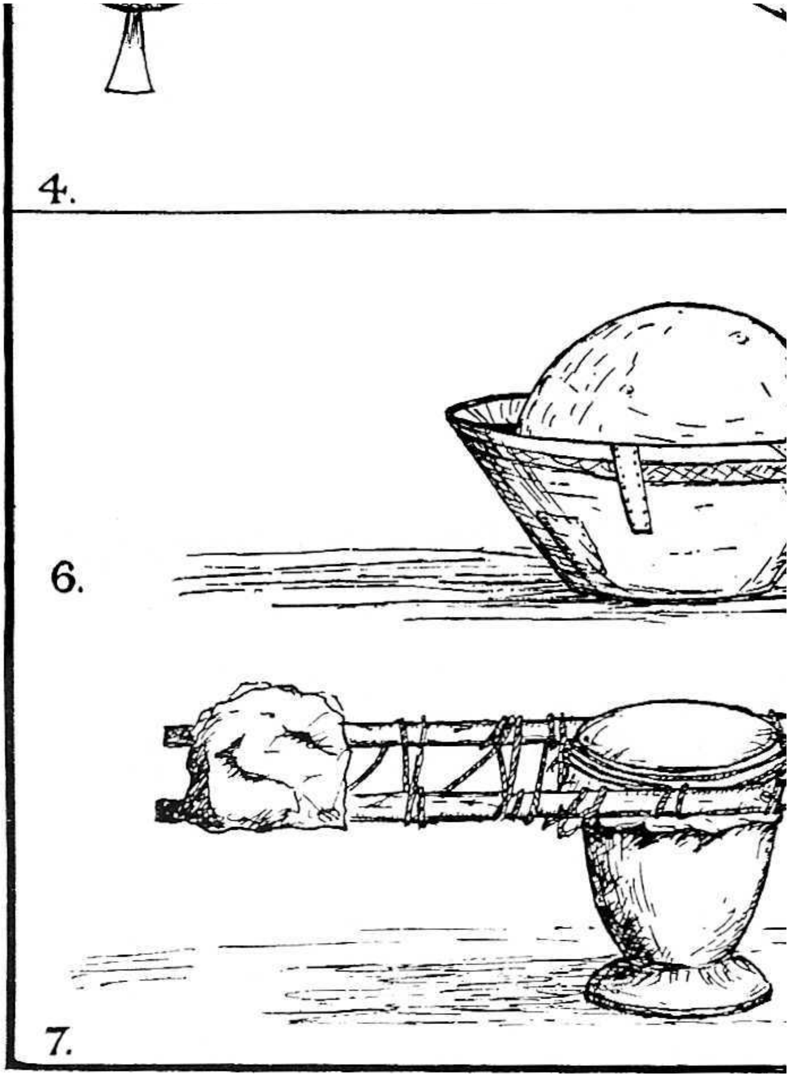
PLATE 22



1.



2.



1. Ornamentation on shields.
2. Clay cooking pot.
3. Clay water pot.
4. Axe.
5. Adze.
6. Drum: calabash in a bowl.
7. Drum: millet mortar.

For many months of the year after the rains the true nomads do not even trouble to cluster round a group of wells; living on the milk of their camels and goats, they dispense with water for weeks on end. So long as their camels are only pasturing and the fodder is green they do not require to be watered. They are therefore able to live many days from the nearest wells. In such conditions water is a luxury, for it entails long marches and is not essential to man or beast. In South-eastern Air I came across a small party of Kel Takrizat, who had wandered some distance away from their usual grounds in North-western Air, to an area which had been uninhabited since the war. I was riding out from Tabello on the upper Beughqot valley to look for an old village site of which I had heard. Neither my companion, Alwali, nor I had any baggage, and we were short of water, as the skin I carried was leaky. For a mere two days' journey Alwali had not thought it worth while to bring any food for himself except a small skin of millet meal milk, which he had finished early the first afternoon. In the evening we entered a wide valley known as Tsabba,[200] where we saw a number of camels pasturing. We discovered that they belonged to a charming man called Ahmadu ag Musa. The valley was about miles broad from lip to lip, very green and full of a veitch-like plant called "Alwat," which contains much moisture. The bottom under the steep sides lay some 100 feet below the level of the plain, which was covered with round basalt boulders wherever there were not hillocks of bare rock rising above it. It is a very arid country looking out towards the Eastern Desert, where the last rocks of Air are swallowed up in sand some thirty miles further on. Ahmadu's camp consisted of a few mats spread under two or three little trees. As we reached it he came out to meet us. When he found out who we were, he asked me to spend the night with him; and this, having at the time intermittent fever which was due that evening, I willingly agreed to do, provided he could let me have some water. He regretted that he had no water, as he had not been near a well for three weeks, but his men went to fetch milk. I had barely dismounted and agreed to stay when a man ran up with a mat for me to sit on and a bowl of sour milk to drink. Among the Tuareg, if a man comes as a guest his host is personally responsible for his guest’s life, camels and property, so a slave unsaddled my two camels and hobbled them in the usual way by tying the two fore fetlocks together with the short hobble rope which everyone carries. My animals were driven off to feed with Ahmadu’s herd of piebald cow camels. I thought at first it was part of the famous Tegama herd of Ahmadu of the Kel Tagei, but it turned out to be another Ahmadu.

I met him only that once, and for a few moments two days later at Tabello. I have the pleasantest recollections of a great gentleman. We sat talking of the impending departure of the salt caravan for Bilma. The sun set slowly, and, as the light grew less, the cruel gleam left the basalt and granite of the plateau beyond the eastern lip of the valley. The rocks ceased to look metallic in the dance of the hot air, and became soft red and purple in the green-blue sky. Here and there white sand from the outer desert had been washed up against the hillocks. Mount Gorset, with one slope inundated by the sand flood, lay just north of the valley where we sat surrounded by acacia bushes and “Alwat.” The wind had fallen. More and more food was brought for us to eat, all of it of the sort on which the true nomad lives. Cheese, sweet and sour milk, curdled milk, whey water, some cakes of baked burr-grass seed and a very little millet. We sat down to eat; they thought I wanted to eat alone at first, but became more friendly when they saw that some white men were only human like themselves. A pot of cooked millet meal was set down in the middle; luckily they had added salt to the porridge. Each man in turn ate a mouthful from the big wooden spoon and handed it on to his neighbour. I ate little, having fever, but drank much milk, both sweet and sour. The former arrived during the meal, warm and fresh from the camel. It is best quite fresh; when it gets cold in the night it is good too, but becomes rather salt and thin to the taste. We went on eating slowly in the evening, and suddenly night came with a greenish light in the west behind our backs. Milk was left for me to drink during the night; a slave was told to fill my skin with millet meal and milk for the next day. We went on talking, and then the snuff-box was passed round. The Tuareg in Air do not smoke: their only vice, in the austere life they lead, is to take snuff, when they can get it, or to chew green tobacco mixed with a little saltpetre to bring out the taste. The tobacco and snuff are traded from the Southland: the saltpetre is found in Air, and is also used in cooking, for they say that a pinch in the stew-pot makes the meat cook in half the usual time. Presently I turned over to go to sleep on Ahmadu’s mat, in a blanket which I had brought. He and Alwali went on talking far into the night, for they were old friends: Alwali had travelled with him when he was a boy many years ago.

I thought of how very happy these nomads were. They have no possessions to speak of: a few mats, the clothes they wear, some water-skins, some camel trappings, a few weapons, some gourds and bowls, a cooking-pot or two and their camels. They have no routine of life, and no cares except to wonder if a raiding party will or will not happen on them. Even in their normal centres where their tribes are living more or less permanently they often have neither tents nor covering. At the best their tent is a leather roof made of two or three ox skins carried on a few poles, with brushwood laid across so that the top is dome-shaped. The sides are enclosed with vertical mats, and inside, if they are rich, they have a bed—two poles supported on four forked sticks stuck in the ground, with six transverse poles overlaid with stiff mats, woven of "Afaza" grass and strips of leather. On this bed, which is perhaps eight feet square, the whole family sleeps during the rains. At other times they sleep anywhere, on a mat on the ground. Their smaller possessions are carried in a leather sack of tanned goatskins, dyed and ornamented with fringes. All the belongings of a rich family could be loaded on one, certainly on two camels. So they move about looking for pasture. They are independent of water; their camels and goats provide both food and drink, the grasses of the field a change of diet; a slaughtered sheep or millet porridge is their luxury. When they want a fire they kindle it by rubbing a small green stick cut about the size of, and sharpened like, a pencil on a dry stick; the dust and fibre rubbed off the dry wood collect at one end of the channel which has been rubbed, and when the friction is enough, ignites. They do not even require flint and steel. I am sure they must be very happy, for they want so little and could have so much when the value of their herds often runs into thousands of pounds, but they prefer the freedom of the open world. They are even envied by the village dwellers, whose sole ambition is to make enough money to buy camels and live in the same way as their wandering kinsmen.

[175]This name would perhaps be more correctly written Teouar for the “o” is pronounced as if with a London Cockney accent.

[176]Plate 20.

[177]For certain reasons the names are fictitious.

[178]See rock drawing at T’imia, Plate 40.

[179]Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 126, and Figs. 17, 20 and 24, where the belt and cross are plainly shown.

[180]The initial “T” represents a feminine form.

[181]*Vide infra*, Chap. X.

[182]Jean, *op. cit.*, Chap. XIII.

[183]Chudeau, *op. cit.*, *Sahara Soudanais*, pp. 71-2.

[184]It must be remembered that since the evacuation of 1918 many of these animals are with their owners in Southern Air, Damergu, and the south, pending a return to normal conditions.

[185]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 234.

[186]*Ibid.*, p. 401, *et infra*, Chap. XVIII.

[187]Basset, in the *Actes du XIV^{me} Congrès des Orientalistes*, II. p. 69 *et seq.*

[188]*Apud* Plutarchus, *Lucullus*, XI. 10.

[189]*De Bello Africano*, LXVIII. 4.

[190]Tissot, *Géographie Comparée de la Province Romaine d’Afrique*. Paris, 1884-8. Vol. I. p. 350.

[191]*Ammianus Marcellinus* XXVIII. 6. 5, and others.

[192] *Pliny*, VIII. 67.Cf. *Strabo*, XVII. 1. 45.

[193] Cf. *Strabo*, XVII. 1. 45.

[194] References in Gsell, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 102 and 105.

[195] Gsell, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 60, note 8.

[196] Herodotus, IV. 183.

[197] *Vide infra*, Chap. X.

[198] Mission Cortier, *D'une rive à l'autre du Sahara*, p. 355.

[199] Observation of the author in Damergu in December 1922.

[200] The Tesabba valley of the Cortier map. It runs into the Afasas valley, which joins the Beughqot valley further down.

CHAPTER VII

TRADE AND OCCUPATIONS

THE Auderas country, still almost in Tegama, is far less interesting ethnically than the north or east. The old permanent habitations in the area are less characteristic of the Tuareg; there are hardly any inscriptions or rock drawings, with the exception of the large group at T'in Wana, and a few scattered about elsewhere. Owing to the many pools and "eresan"[201] there are no deep wells. At Auderas itself there are some ruined stone-built dwellings of the later type, but a few earlier examples may be seen both there and at Abattul, a village about two miles to the N.E. in the same basin of valleys. A famous mosque was founded there by Muhammad Abd el Kerim el Baghdadi. Abattul village lies between the domed peaks of Faken[202] and Mt.

Abattul, which is itself a spur of Mount Todra. Behind, and between them, a valley and rough track run north to Mount Dogam. Just south of the village are the valleys which converge from Todra and Faken on the main Auderas basin. From Auderas Mount Faken is a prominent object on the northern horizon with a rounded top and vertical black sides which look unscalable. Almost at the foot of Faken on the Abattul side is a pool in a deep gorge, usually containing water enough to swim in most of the year. The path from Auderas to Abattul is very rough, as it crosses and re-crosses several small valleys where gazelle, some wild pig, and occasionally monkeys are to be found. Abattul village lies just under a low white cliff in which there are a few caves and many smaller holes inhabited by owls and night birds. It was the first settlement in the basin and was only gradually abandoned as the country became less subject to raids and war. The inhabitants had settled in this place so that they could easily take refuge in the inaccessible crags of Mount Todra just behind their village, in time of raids. Even nowadays the folk from Auderas have to resort to the mountain from time to time, but not so often as to prevent them from living further away. The stone mosque at Abattul is one of the few in Air which is still used for prayer.[203]

The main road from Auderas to Northern Air runs over very rocky ground to a plain west of Faken, bordered by two valleys on the east and by low hills on the west side. The latter continue for some distance along the valley of Auderas until it eventually reaches the foothills of Air on the Talak plain. The different groups of hills are known by names which the Itesan sub-tribes adopted and retained.[204] The plain north of Agades is the Erarar n’Dendemu of Barth:[205] it contains El Baghdadi’s place of prayer mentioned by the traveller, lying under a small hill. Turning left here into more broken country by a small tributary the track enters the Ighaghrar valley, which descends from the Gissat and T’Sidderak hills.[206]

At the head of the basin a steep drop leads into a valley flowing north between Mount Bila to the west and Mount Dogam to the east. This drop, the descent of Inzerak, is equivalent to the ascent south of Auderas at T’inien on to the central platform of the plateau. It leads into one of the most beautiful valleys in Air, called Assada, the head of which, at right angles to its main direction, is formed by small ravines draining Mount Dogam. It runs along the eastern foot of Bila and falls into Anu Maqaran, the central basin of Air. When we came into Assada there were two or three pools near the foot of Inzerak; further up the T’ighummar tributary lay a small village of stone houses with a deep well and mosque on an alternative loop road from Auderas branching off at the place of prayer of El Baghdadi. This alternative track was the one taken by Barth in 1850; it debouches into the Tegidda valley, a tributary of the Assada from the north, at Aureran well.

I camped in Assada three times in all, twice near the foot of the descent and once a mile or so further down at the wells of Tamenzaret,[207] which are temporary and require to be dug again every year. The deep narrow valley with its sandy bed and immense trees growing in the thick vegetation on both banks was magnificent. Towering up on either side the red mountains framed, in a cleft towards the east, the cone of Dogam seated on a pedestal of black lava and basalt. Most of the Dogam massif is so rough as to be impassable. It seems to be a volcanic intrusion in the Todra group, to which it really belongs. I suspect that the basalt boulders covering the plain north and south of Auderas, and perhaps certain features of Todra itself, owe their origin to the Dogam activity. But Bila is hardly less imposing: on the Assada side it presents a wall of vivid red rock. The fine clean colours of dawn on the first morning I saw the mountains against a cold blue sky offered the most lovely spectacle I saw in all Air.

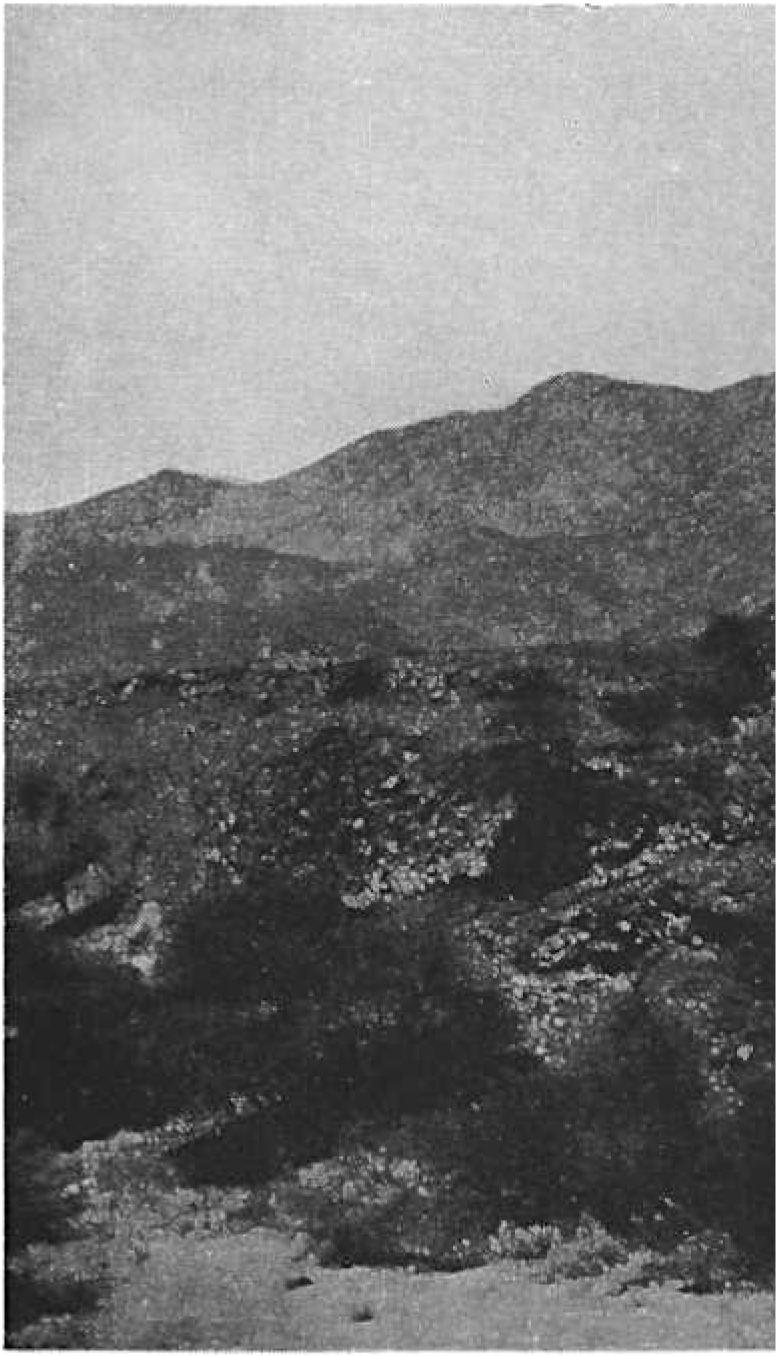
The Assada and T'ighummar valleys are inhabited by a northern section of the Kel Nugguru, who pasture their goats and camels there, and owe allegiance to Ahodu of Auderas. There are a few ruined stone houses below Tamenzaret and the remains of a mosque at the old deep well of Aureran, where the main road divides. From here one branch proceeds north past another ruined settlement to the Arwa Mellen valley and mountain, the other turns east towards the upper part of the Anu Maqaran basin. I took the latter road to T'imia. It crossed several broad valley beds flowing northwards from Dogam, notably the Bacos, where there is a village and palm grove, and the Elazzas not far from where they fall into Anu Maqaran. The road I have had occasion to mention as running from Agades by the Ara valley over the shoulder of Dogam descends from the Central massif by Bacos or Elazzas. The latter corresponds to the Ara on the other side of the Dogam pass. By these two the Todra-Dogam group is divided from Bagezan.

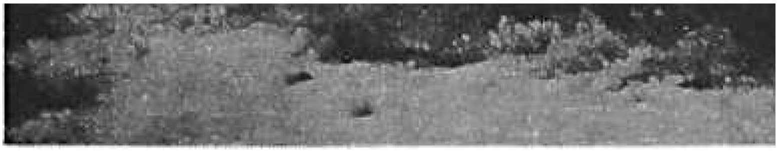
Near its junction with the main Anu Maqaran valley, the Elazzas is a broad bed between low rocky banks. At a certain point where it crosses a ridge of rock large quantities of water are held up in the sand. The remains of a recent village with a few date palms appear on the site. The rocks in the neighbourhood bear a few rude pictures, but the ruins, a few round pedestal foundations of loose stones some 15-20 feet in diameter and 2-3 feet high, on which reed huts used to stand, are uninteresting. Bila from here has the appearance of a long flat ridge, in pleasant contrast to the isolated peaks of Aggata and Arwa in the north, or the confused mass of Bagezan to the south and south-east.

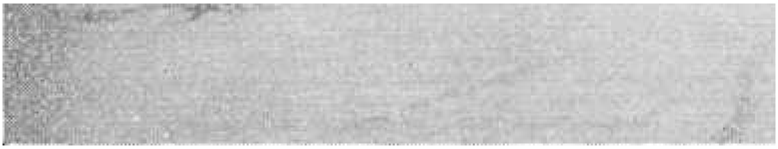
The upper part of the Anu Maqaran valley where the Bagezan and the Agalak mountains at the western side of the T'imia massif approach one another is called Abarakan. The road passes a large cemetery and the valley narrows between high hills with bare sides until a big fork is reached: one valley goes north to T'imia village, the other south, emerging on the central plateau east of the Bagezan mountains.

T'imia village is a veritable mountain fastness. The Agalak-T'imia massif was evidently highly volcanic, for a great flow of basalt overlying pink granite boulders has taken place along the valley towards Abarakan. The track climbs steadily over the broken lava stream. The going is rough. Then suddenly the track seems to end altogether below an overhanging cliff of lava some 30 feet high lying right across the bed of the ravine. We reached this point and found the men of T'imia had come down to meet us in order to help our camels to negotiate the path which follows a narrow crevasse in one side of the cliff. The cleft is so narrow that a camel with a bulky load cannot pass at all; it is so steep that the poor animals were forced to proceed in a series of ungainly lurches or jumps. Above the cliff the valley broadens out again, and where two small side valleys enter it lies the modern village of T'imia.

PLATE 23







TIMIA GORGE: PINK

This settlement of Kel Owi nobles is very different from the servile Auderas. The parentage of these Kel Owi may be obscure and mixed, but their physique, the general cleanliness of the place and the neatness of their domed huts stamp them as nobles. The dwellings stand grouped in compounds, or sometimes as single huts, scattered between a row of gardens with irrigation wells, and the slope of a hill covered with huge boulders. In one of the smaller side valleys is a large grove of date palms with most of the gardens, near the site of the older village, a collection of rectangular masonry houses in ruins, and round hut sites marked by a ring of stones and a hearth. The little mosque of stone and mud construction lies between the old and new villages, but it was desecrated by the French soldiers and is no longer used. A matting shelter and compound in the new settlement serve to-day both for a place of prayer and a school, presided over by the ’alim ’Umbellu. Though over sixty he still works daily in his garden in the intervals of teaching the children of the village. Fugda, chief of T’imia, is one of the cleverest men in Air. Under the guidance of these two men the community has prospered. The villagers are enterprising. In the changing conditions of things they are an exception to the usual rule, for the men combine caravaning and trading on a large scale with gardening and date cultivation, without the help of any Imghad. When we came this way some of their camels were fattening in Abarakan ready to go to Bilma with the annual salt caravan in charge of a selected party of men. Another herd of some 100 head was going to Damergu to fetch millet for sale to the French post at Agades, and later I met yet another drove in Assada going south from Iferuan by way of Auderas to fetch more grain for sale in Northern Air after working on transport duties in Nigeria for the winter.

The life of the camel-owning Tuareg may be said to centre round the autumn salt caravan, which all the best camels accompany. It usually leaves in October, starting from Tabello[208] in the upper Beughqot valley, where parties from all over Air, Damergu and the Southland rendezvous in order to start together. Since the war these caravans have been comparatively small, but even during the last few years they have numbered 5000 camels. Ever since the occupation of Agades by the French, the Camel Corps has been turned out to guard the concentration and escort the caravan across the desert, for so valuable a congregation of camels might any year, as it sometimes did in the past, prove an irresistible temptation for raiders. The largest caravan ever escorted reached the fantastic total of over 30,000 camels. The caravan marches for five days to the oasis of Fashi, where it is joined by a smaller caravan from Damagarim via Termit. There, a halt is made for a short time to water and feed on whatever scanty pasture is available, and in some three more days Bilma is reached. The animals go out empty except for a little grain or live meat in the form of goats and sheep, and some trade goods for the Tebu and Kanuri inhabitants of Fashi and Kawar and Tibesti. They bring back salt and dates both from Fashi and Bilma. The latter place has perhaps the finest salt deposits in Africa. It costs nothing to get except the labour at the pans of making it up into loaves and loading it wrapped in matting bales. The outlay may be threepence to fivepence a load, in addition to an export tax of two francs per camel levied by the French authorities. The salt is sold in Hausaland for anything up to 7*s.* or more a loaf according to the time of year. As a fully-grown camel can carry four to six loaves of salt, the trade is extremely lucrative.

Both Fashi, or Agram as the place is also called, and Kawar have practically no pasture, and the few camels which live permanently there eat dates. The desert for five and a half days between Tabello and Fashi and three days between Fashi and Bilma is not only waterless but also nearly pastureless as well. The camels start out loaded with a sufficient supply of fodder for the outward and return journeys; the huge bales of grass are dropped *en route* at the end of each day's march to provide for the equivalent return stage. Since the practice of escorting caravans has been instituted the French authorities quite rightly forbid isolated parties crossing the desert and attracting raiders to the neighbourhood. The route now chosen for the caravan runs from Tabello to Tazizilet on the edge of the Air mountains, and then straight across to Fashi in an almost due easterly direction. Formerly another road, which was more convenient for the northern tribes of Air, was also in use. It left the mountains at Agamgam pool in North-east Air and went to Ashegur well, north of Fashi; this way the distances between watering-points was shortened, and there was also rather more pasture.

This annual salt caravan is the largest enterprise of its sort in the world at the present time. It is called in Air the "Taghalam," a word derived from "aghelam," meaning a "prize camel," but the French call it the "Azalai," which means the "Parting" or the

"Separation," the name given to a similar caravan which annually leaves Timbuctoo to collect salt at Taodenit for sale along the Niger.

With the advent of European salt in Nigeria the trade has become somewhat less remunerative, as the Air "Taghalam" no longer enjoys its ancient monopoly in the Central Sudan, but the infinitesimal cost of production and the cheap transport in the hands of nomads will always enable it to compete with the imported European trade product to some extent. Bilma salt is of good quality; it is comparatively free from sand or medicinal chemicals and is preferred by the natives of the south to the purer European product. The loaves are made up in conical form and are pink in colour, standing some 18-24″ high by 9-12″ at the base.

The return journey of the "Taghalam" follows the same course as the outward one. The whole trip, which is extremely strenuous for men and camels alike, takes some three weeks. There are always a number of casualties among the camels from exhaustion, but so large are the profits that every Tuareg is ready to take the risk and send as many of his herd as he can possibly spare at least once a year, either in the autumn or on the smaller "Taghalam" which goes in the spring. After returning from Bilma the camels are rested and then proceed to Damergu and the south to sell their salt and their services. They are joined by any other camels fit to go, and when they have disposed of their merchandise engage in transport work between the cities of the Southland until about March or April. Then they begin to move north again before the rains set in in the Sudan. The proceeds of this work and of the sale of Bilma salt, or dates from Fashi and Air, are invested in grain and such trade goods as cotton cloth, tea, sugar, snuff and hardware, which are the only luxuries of Air. By the time they reach the mountains the summer rains have probably begun, and they have some three months in which to recuperate on the fresh pasture of the hills in preparation for the next year's routine.

Transactions in salt and grain are measured by the camel load, which varies considerably from place to place. Metrology is not an exact science in Air, but recognised standards nevertheless exist. The actual measures are kept by the tribal chiefs, and it is, of course, common gossip to hear it said that a certain chief gives unduly short weight. The only truly Tuareg measure is a unit of capacity; in the first instance it is the handful, whether of grain or salt or other commodity. But the measure has been standardised by establishing that a handful shall be as much millet grain as an ordinary man can pick up in his hand with the fingers *closed* palm upwards.[209] Six such handfuls nominally make one "tefakint," which is measured by heaping the grain in a small circular basket with sloping sides 1¾″ deep × 3⅝″ in diameter at the mouth × 2″ at the bottom. The next larger measure is the "muda," a cylindrical wooden cup with a hemispherical bottom in a U section. As the handful and the "tefakint" are too small to measure bulky wares like dates, the "muda" has become the effectual standard in the country, but it varies in certain areas. At Auderas it is of five "tefakint," but in Agades of ten. The T'imia and Kel Owi or Ighazar "muda" is different again, three of them being the same as two Auderas or one Agades "muda." The three "mudas" are, however, generally recognised and are not the subject of bargaining in each transaction. The measure corresponding to the Air “tefakint” basket in Damergu is a round section cut from a large calabash; this slightly convex plate is held by a loop for the fingers fixed to the underside. All these grain measures are considered to be full when the grain is heaped up so that it runs over the edge.

For small weights the silver five-franc piece, or “sinko” as it is called, is now also used, especially in measuring the value of silver ornaments. The rate of exchange current in 1922 in Air at Agades was four silver shillings or five silver francs to the “sinko”; a general rate of five obtained elsewhere in Air, as silver francs and shillings were not distinguished from each other. The people of Air have the nomads’ dislike for paper currency in any form. Various coins, including the Maria Teresa dollar, are still in circulation, but French coinage is gradually replacing all others. Cowrie shells are no longer used and gold is now unknown. The mithkal of Agades dates from the time when the gold trade was still flourishing, and its form here is peculiar to this city. It seems to have been a unit of weight and not of currency; as a recognised amount of gold it was used as the basis for striking bargains, but the metal probably did not pass from hand to hand owing to the inconvenience of handling dust. With the decline of the gold trade the mithkal survived as a unit of weight, but its theoretical value changed considerably in the course of centuries. We find in Barth’s day the exchange was reckoned at 1 mithkal = 1000 cowries, and 2500 cowries = 1 Maria Teresa dollar; but whereas the Agades mithkal was only worth two-fifths of a dollar, the Timbuctoo mithkal was worth one-third of a dollar. It is interesting to arrive by a round-about method at a rough estimate of the change in value of the unit.

The mithkal as a simple unit of weight was a part of a larger unit in the following equation:[210] 100 mithkal = 3 small karruwe = 1 large karruwe = 6½ Arab rottls. The Arab rottl weight varies between 225 grammes in Persia and about 160 grammes in Cairo, several slightly different standard rottls being used in other parts of Egypt. Taking 160 grammes as the equivalent of 1 rottl, and assuming Barth's equation to be correct, we get 10·4 grammes for the Agades mithkal. The unit of 10·4 grammes of gold dust in the fifteenth century A.D. was in the nineteenth century equal to two-fifths of a Maria Teresa dollar weighing 28·0668 grammes silver 0·833 fine, or in other words, 13·5 grammes of silver.

The only measures of length in Air are the "aghil" (plural "ighillan")[211] and the "tedi" or "teddi." The former is the universal dra', ell or cubit measured from the inner elbow-point to the first joint of the middle finger on an average man, say 5 ft. 10 in. tall. Ten "ighillan" make one "amitral," the two measures being only used for cloth, etc. The "tedi" is the fathom and is used for measuring the depth of wells or the length of rope, etc. There is no measure in Air for distance, which is invariably calculated by the parts of a day or the number of days taken to cover the ground.

The pack-saddle of Air is peculiar to the country. It is very simple, consisting of two sheaves of grass or straw, two semi-circular pieces of matting made of plaited dûm palm fronds, a skin filled with grain or stuffed with dry camel dung and a wooden arch terminating in flat boards. A bundle of grass, with the butt ends even and trimmed, is laid on the semi-circular mat, which is then rolled around it and sewn up with ribbands of palm frond by a long wooden or iron bodkin; the flowery ends of the grass project beyond the matting. One of these mat cylinders or cushions is fitted each side of the camel’s hump with the butts nearly touching one another over the withers. Over these pads is placed the arch of wood, the ends of which terminate in boards some 9″ × 3″ at the ends, resting on the pads, which are tied on with twisted dûm palm rope. A stuffed goatskin thrown transversely over the back of the camel behind the hump forms a rear pad. Its corners are tied to the two ends of the arch with adjustable cords to regulate the distance between them. The loads, which must be carefully balanced, are slung over the pack-saddle; two loops on each load are hitched to the other two on the other load with two short sticks. The weight of the load rests on the side pads and the ends of the back pad; the load cords bear on the latter and on the side pads just in front of the wooden arch, which prevents them slipping backwards. The load ropes rest on, and are not tied to, the saddle. No girths, crupper or breastband are used unless the loads are very bulky or need special steadying. Unloading is extraordinarily simple, for as soon as the camel has been knelt down the loops are disconnected by pulling out the short sticks and the loads fall down on either side.

The pack-saddle is simple and cheap, but is not efficient on steep slopes where the camel may stumble or lurch awkwardly. As these conditions prevail all over Air, the arrangement is really far from ideal, though in the plain land it is practical enough. The principal advantages are that every part of the saddle is easily adjustable to suit any particular camel, while the whole equipment weighs next to nothing. The goatskin used as the back pad on long journeys is filled with a provision of grain, saving an additional receptacle on each camel of the caravan. The resultant economy of space and bulk is unequalled in any other system.

The rest of the camel's equipment consists of a head rope, a hobbling rope and the load ropes. In Air all rope is made of split dûm palm fronds soaked in water till they have fermented, or, if no time is available, from fresh material. The strips are twisted like ordinary two or three strand "cable laid" rope. It is a strong, serviceable material costing nothing and available everywhere where the dûm palm grows, which is all over Air and the Sudan. The scarcity of date palms precludes the use of the brown fibre which grows below the fronds, known to camel travellers in the north. The dûm palm rope does not wear so well as the latter but is easier to manufacture. Every camel-man in Air spends a certain part of the day making rope, twisting the fronds from split ribbands about ¼-½″ broad, bundles of which he carries about; he sits on the ground talking and twisting, using his big toe to hold the end of the rope he has made, and weaving in strand after strand with incredible speed. The rope is nearly all two-stranded cable, but the tightness of twist and the finish vary with the use. Load ropes are very closely twisted cable, passed twice round the package at each end and terminating in a loop adjusted by a running half-hitch to raise or lower the load on the side of the camel. Lashing rope and rough nets are made of loosely twisted strands. The camel head rope is a long piece with a slip knot at one end passed over the lower jaw of the camel and pulled tight behind its front teeth. Hobble ropes are stout lengths passed round one foreleg, then twisted and passed round the other, leaving about 18″ of movement between the limbs: the ends are secured by passing a knot through a small loop. Carefully made rope is beaten with a stone to make the strands pack tightly.

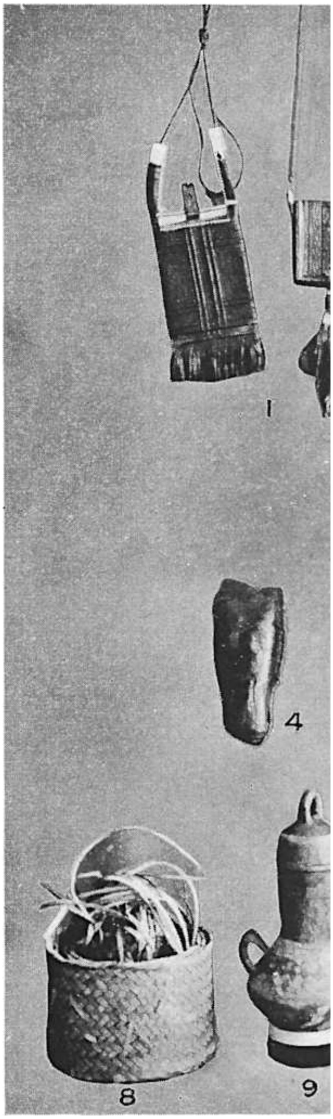
Loading camels is hard work and can only properly be done by two men. The pack-saddle is put on the kneeling camel, which is prevented from rising by slipping one of his knees through a looped hobble rope, which, when not in use, is carried round the animal's neck. The camel protests vigorously in season and out of season and pretends to bite the men. They work stripped to the waist, wearing only their trousers tucked up to the thigh, and the inevitable veil. They stagger under 150 to 200 lbs. loads, swinging them on to the camel's back, slipping the loops through one another and securing them with the two sticks. The camel is then released, gets up with a jerky movement resembling a deck chair being opened, and probably throws its burden to the ground immediately, when the operation recommences. If this does not happen at once the head rope is secured to the next camel in front with a half-hitch that can be released by pulling the free end. By the time fifty camels have been loaded, at least five in an endeavour to graze on the same bush have bumped into one another and their loads have fallen off. The operation of loading may take place in the early morning when it is cool, or before dawn when it is always cold, or at noon when the temperature is like a furnace; it is always tedious and tiresome and bad for the temper, which the incessant complaining of the camels aggravates.

Eventually the caravan moves off. The camel-men walk along, watching their loads if they are conscientious, and when everything is going well they climb up on their camels and sit on the loads.

They jump up on to the neck of the camel after pulling its head down and so reach the top, but they never kneel a camel after it has started on the march until the day’s journey is over, unless the load has been thrown or has slipped very badly. The guide takes the head of the caravan and the march starts. The Tuareg of Air know their mountains as well as the average Londoner knows London: they can find their way along the more important tracks. For the less known ways a special guide must be found: in the outer deserts the reliable guides can be counted on the fingers of both hands. Efale, the leader of the “Taghalam” and veteran of the Eastern Desert, T’ekhmedin and Kalama on the northern routes—are all resourceful, patient and observant men when travelling, but complete autocrats whose orders cannot be questioned. Their knowledge of the roads depends on estimation of time and memory and not on any supernatural powers. They know the stars[212] and have some sense of direction, but especially do they know every fold of ground and almost every bush. Their powers are remarkable but not inexplicable; their observation and memory rarely fail them, but for obvious reasons they do not care to travel by night. Once started the march goes on hour after hour. The heat grows more intense. The narrow path winds down the bed of a valley or among the trees on the banks, or over rocky plains or amid sand dunes.

In Air the vegetation exists principally along the valleys. In the south the dûm palm grows in veritable forests or in low thickets, when it resembles the dwarf palm. The *Acacia Adansonii*, *Acacia Arabica* (“Tamat” in Temajegh), *Acacia Tortilis* (the “Talha” of the Arabs and “Abesagh” or “Tiggeur” in Temajegh), as well as two or three other varieties, are common. They occasionally grow to very large dimensions. The Aborak (*Balanites Ægyptiaca*) also does very well; trees with trunks up to 2 feet in diameter are common in the larger valleys, and in North-eastern Air I have seen some up to 3½ feet across. The bushes and grasses are innumerable, but flowers are rare, except for the yellow and white mimosa blossom on the trees. Nearly all the trees and bushes are thorned, some with recurving barbs which are dangerous for the careless rider. If burr grass is less frequent than in the south, spear grass abounds and is almost as painful. Vegetation in Air defends itself against pasturing animals vigorously but vainly, for the animals in the country seem to thrive on a diet of thorns, and man ends up by being the worst sufferer from these useless provisions of Nature. Thorns are not the only minor horror of life. How often after a long march has some delicious glade appeared at hand, cool and inviting. After angrily dismissing the suggestion to choose a camp site in the middle of an open river-bed where the sun on the sand will cook an egg in a few minutes, you throw yourself down to rest in deep green shade fanned by the breeze. The unwary traveller soon learns the consequences of disregarding native advice, for he will quickly arise from a bed of thorns with his clothes full of burrs, and his mouth full of bad words, while his whole attention will probably be directed towards dodging a large tarantula or scorpion or, happily less often, a little yellow-crested sand viper, than which there is hardly anything more deadly in all Africa.

PLATE 24



ABOVE: NECK WALLETS, POUCH, “STAR” GAME TRAP
CENTRE: AMULET BAG, WOODEN LADLE, WOODEN SPOON, AMULET PO

BELOW: STRIP OF MATTING, LEATHER BOTTLE, HOUSEHOLD POTS OF C

Apart from trades directly connected with camels the Tuareg have practically no industries. They neither dye nor spin anything, except a rough sewing thread of local cotton; nor do they weave in wool or cotton. Mats of two sorts are made; the one of palm fronds plaited in bands some two to three inches broad and sewn together spirally to form rectangles or ovals worked in varying degrees of fineness, the other made of stiff grass and thin strips of black leather. The technique of the latter is good: deep borders with an intricate geometric ornament are woven in the leather warp. Mat-making and leather-working are carried on by the women. They attain great skill, but although leather-working is usual all over the country, it is at Agades that the craft is especially well developed. Fine designs in coloured strips of leather are made on cushions, bags and pouches like a sort of embroidery. The industry is in the hands of a few women and is probably of Manding origin, brought to Air by the Songhai conquerors or even before. Decorated camel riding saddles, leather head ropes and travelling wallets or pouches of various shapes are made. The leather used is the goatskin locally tanned with the seed pod of the “Tamat” acacia, and dyed with red maize leaf or indigo. A certain amount of prepared leather is also imported from the south. In these articles the foundation is usually of black leather, which is ornamented with coloured strips or bands and metal studs. Camel head ropes are made of twisted or plaited leather strands with coloured tassels; the more elaborate, the finer are the strands used; the tassels are bound with coloured leather threads woven in patterns. The technique of these head ropes is the best of its sort I have ever seen. Cutting leather in strands to the thickness of coarse sewing thread is a highly skilled art, and all the more remarkable in that only knives are used, for scissors are unknown except in the blacksmiths' equipment. I have seen cords for carrying amulets or pouches made of ten or a dozen threads, each less than $^1/_{32}$″ thick, bound at intervals and at the ends.

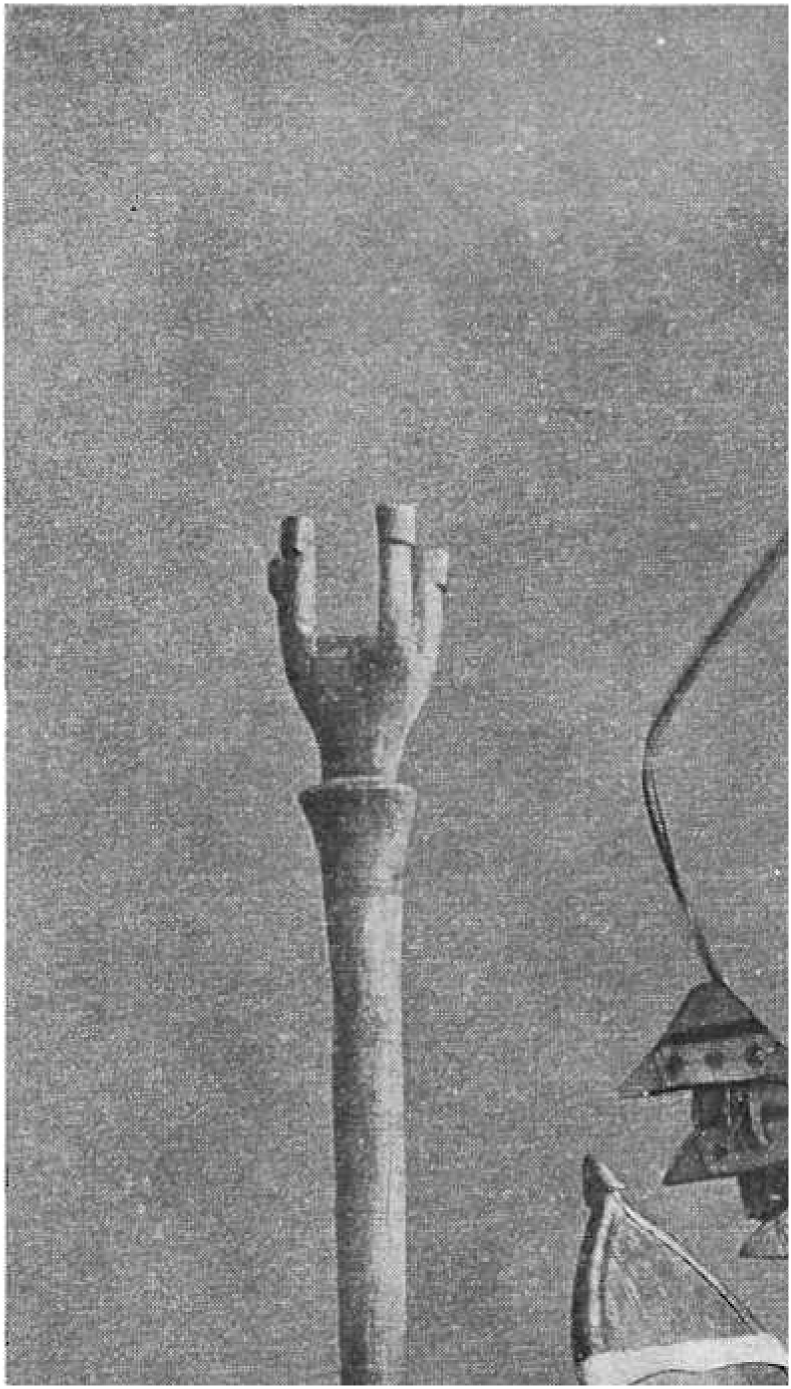
A most characteristic article is a flat rectangular envelope of leather some 6″ long × 3″ broad. It is only open at the bottom and slides up and down the two cords, by which a sort of portfolio is hung from the neck; this consists of four to six leather flaps in which amulets, trinkets, needles and papers are preserved. The black cover is ornamented with some stamped rectilinear pattern and has small tassels at the bottom. A similar object is the small leather amulet case about 3″ broad × 2″ long × 1″ deep, also slung round the neck, and provided with a lid like a box. A larger semi-circular pouch with a design in strips of coloured leather suspended over the shoulder by a long cord is typical Agades work. Triangular travelling bags of all sizes are made of soft leather, closed at the neck with a running cord; they vary in size from those 5 inches long for snuff to others 2 feet or more for clothing and food. Both these bags and ornamented goatskins for packing personal belongings have polychrome patterns on the surface, which is roughed and rubbed with moist dyes. The plaited head ropes and the surface dyeing of leather seem to be a more indigenous technique than the "Agades work" proper, in which the design is procured by appliqué strips.

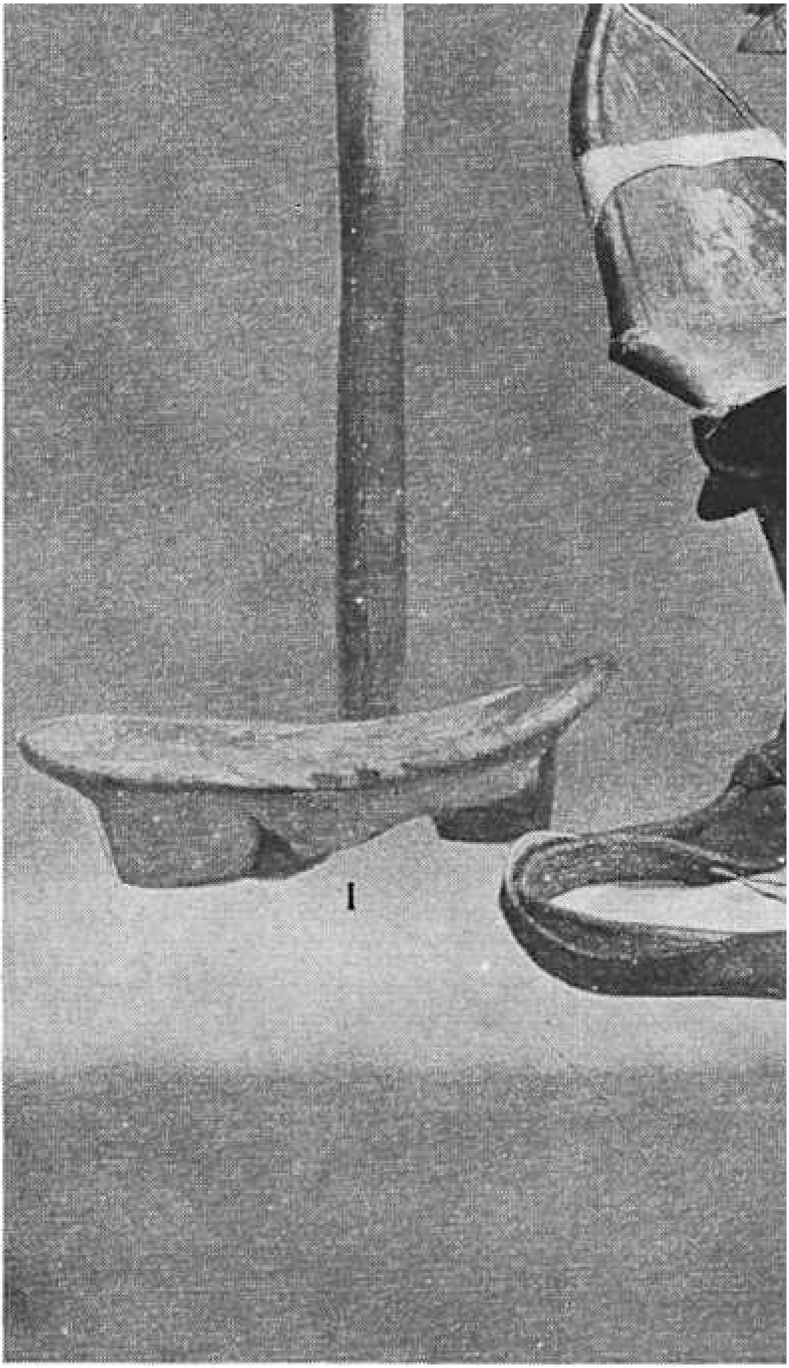
Carpentry is rudimentary and the craft akin to iron-working. The artisan, known as the "Enad" or smith, whatever his caste, is a person of standing in the community: he is a man whose advice is sought in council though he rarely becomes a leader. In the olden days the “Enad” is said even to have had a peculiar form of grave to distinguish his resting-place from that of other men, but however this may have been, there is nothing now to show that the smith of Air ever belonged to a separate race or caste. To-day the smith is only respected for his skill. The position is usually hereditary and includes the duties of the blacksmith, jeweller, carpenter and farrier, with the same set of tools for all these trades. His adze is an acute-angled crook of wood with a socketed iron cutting edge bound on to the point of the short limb; the form dates back at least to the Neolithic period of civilisation. The axe is equally primitive: the cutting edge, instead of having a socket, ends in a point which is fitted into a hole bored through the club head of a wooden haft. With these two tools, a few hammers, usually of European shape, tin-shears, pincers, files and chisels, the “Enad” contrives to turn out some remarkably fine work. Using only his adze he will cut spoons with a pointed bowl at a slight angle to the flat handle, or round ladles, from a solid block of “Aborak” wood. They are then ornamented with geometric patterns burnt on the handles around the edge. The Air “Enad” does not smelt iron, for all the presence of ironstone in the hills and magnetite sand in the river-beds. The only iron-working done is quite simple bending, beating or tempering on an anvil shaped like a huge horseshoe nail planted in the ground. A goatskin bellows closed by two wooden slats and a clay nozzle are used as in the Southland. The iron is heated in a hearth in the sand filled with charcoal. A certain number of inferior iron knives are forged, but the Tuareg of Air must be regarded as having hardly yet reached the iron-working age of evolution.

The Agades blacksmith-jewellers melt down silver coins heated in small clay crucibles. They lose a lot of silver by oxidation, but the work is remarkably well finished, considering the primitive nature of their tools and the heavy hammers employed. The wooden household furniture will be described later; so far as there is any at all, it is well made, but rough. The principal skill of the smiths is displayed in making and decorating camel riding saddles and certain U-shaped luggage rests, to which particular reference will be made hereafter.

The Tuareg riding saddle, or "tirik" ("t'iriken" in the plural) in Temajegh, or "rahla" in Arabic, is a highly efficient production, combining comfort with extreme lightness. It consists of a circular seat over an inverted V frame which fits across the withers of the camel. High above the seat are a broad, tall cantle shaped like a Gothic arch and large cross pommel. The whole saddle weighs perhaps 10 lbs. at the most. Its equipment includes a quilted saddle cloth over the withers and a single plaited leather girth two inches broad. No iron is used in the saddle, except for two rings which pull by diagonal straps from the underside of the seat over the flat Λ shaped frame of the saddle. The girth is permanently attached to these straps at one end, the other end is lashed to the ring on the off-side straps by a leather thong. The seat, cantle and pommel are made of separate pieces of wood held together by raw hide, which is pulled over them wet and dried in place; the violent contraction of the hide holds the component parts together as firmly as if they were screwed or dovetailed. The broad Λ sides which fit over the withers are of soft tanned leather stretched over a rectangular frame: the upper part is covered with leather over hide and wood. The common saddle has dark red leather over the seat and cantle and black leather over the cross pommel and along the edges of the cantle. The elaborate decoration of the more ornate patterns is invariably the same. In this variety the seat and edging are of red and black leather as previously described, but the back of the cantle and the front of the cross pommel are covered with pale green leather, on which is applied a geometric decoration of horizontal and diagonal strips of stamped and fretted silver or white metal, with red cloth showing through the holes. Every example I saw had the same green leather background on the front of the pommel and back of the cantle. I observed no instance where the ornament was on a different background or where green leather without the silver metal design had been used. Where the design comes from I have no idea; it is remarkably well executed and dignified without being so barbaric in splendour as the horse saddles of the Sudan. Every element of the construction and ornament is traditional and rigidly adhered to. I can offer no suggestions regarding its origin, but can only note its presence. Some symbolism is probably involved.

PLATE 25




I

LEFT: BRIDLE STAND AND SEAT
CENTRE: CAMEL RIDING SADDLE WITH PLAITED GIRTH AND THONG
ABOVE: PLAITED LEATHER CAMEL BRIDLE AND LEATHER HOBBLE
RIGHT: WOODEN ARCH OF CAMEL PACK SADDLE

Where a man can afford to have a leather bridle he usually dispenses with the running noose which, when rope is used, is slipped over the camel’s lower jaw behind the front teeth. The leather bridle is fitted to a head collar consisting of an arched iron nose-piece with a curved iron jowl-piece attached to one side by a brass or copper link ring. The bridle is fastened to the other end of the jowl-piece and runs through a ring on the nose-piece itself, so that any pull on the bridle closes the former on to the latter, compressing the jaws of the camel. The nose-piece is kept in position by a horizontal band of plaited leather attached to the ends and passing round the back of the camel’s head below the ears. The top of the arched nose-piece is usually shaped into a loop on to which a crest of black ostrich feathers may be attached.[213] As an alternative or in addition to this equipment the riding camel often also has a nose-ring in the left nostril for a light rope or leather bridle. The nose-ring is the mark of a good riding camel, but is sometimes not employed for guiding the animal, as its use necessitates light hands to avoid injuring the beast.

In addition to its lightness the Tuareg riding saddle has the inestimable merit of bringing the weight of the rider over the shoulders of the camel, or in other words over the part where the animal is strongest. The hinder parts of the camel are sloping and can carry no weight; all the heavy work is done by the fore-legs. The rider, sitting in the saddle, which must be arranged with padding if necessary over the front part of the withers to bring the seat horizontal, rests one foot against the vertical part of the camel's neck just above its curve, holding on to the neck with a prehensile big toe. The other leg is crooked below and falls over the opposite shoulder of the camel at the base of the neck. Bare feet are essential for good riding, as, in addition to enabling some grip to be obtained, they are used to guide the camel with recognised "aids." With a broad cantle and a high pommel between the legs a far better grip can be obtained than on the Arabian saddle, on which a good seat is entirely a question of balance. Provided the saddle cloth under the Tuareg saddle is properly adjusted there is practically no galling of the withers or sides. If provisions or water-skins are carried they are slung under the seat of the riding saddle, their front ends attached to the girth rings, their rear ends tied together behind the hump, resting on a small pad to prevent rubbing over the backbone.

The large goatskins for water and small ones for meal do not differ from those used throughout the East. The goat is skinned without cutting the hide except around the neck and limbs: the skin is peeled off the carcass and well greased. The legs are sewn up and roped for slinging: rents or holes are skilfully sewn up or patched with leather and cotton thread so that they do not leak. A new skin recently greased with goat or sheep fat is abominable, as the water becomes strongly impregnated with the reek of goat. But water from a good old skin can be almost tasteless, though such skins are hard to come by. Some of the water one has drunk from goatskins beggars description; it is nearly always grey or black, and smelly beyond belief. The one compensation is that the wet outside of the skin keeps the water deliciously cool owing to constant evaporation. With a riding saddle, a skin of water and a skin of meal or grain as his sole equipment, the Tuareg reduces the complications of travelling to a minimum.

His weapons are few but characteristic. First and foremost he wears a sword, called “takuba,” as soon as he reaches man’s estate, and before even he dons the veil. His sword has been romantically associated with the Crusaders and I know not who else. It is a straight, flat, double-edged cutting sword of the old cross-hilted type up to 3 ft. 6 ins. long by 2-3½ ins. broad below the hilt, tapering slightly to a rounded point. The guard is square and broad and the hilt is short, for the Tuareg have small hands. The pommel is flattened and ornamented. The hilt and guard form a Latin cross. The type never varies, though of course the blades differ greatly in quality and form, ranging from old Toledo steels with the mark “Carlos V” on them to an iron object called a “Masri” blade made in the north. Some are elaborately ornamented, but the most prized are plain with two or three slight canellations down the middle; they are probably of European manufacture. The commonest Masri blades bear two opposed crescent “men in the moon” faces as their mark; another cheap variety has a small couchant lion. The Tuareg prizes his sword as his most valued possession and many, like Ahodu, speak with pride of a blade handed down in their families for generations. His particular sword was reputed to have magical properties, for it had been lost in a fight at Assode, where the owner, rather than allow it to be captured, had thrown it from him into the air, only, through the instrumentality of a slave, to find it again many years afterwards, buried deep in the rocky ground on a hillock near the site of the battle. The sword is worn in a red leather scabbard slung from two rings by a cotton band over the shoulder. The edges of the blades are kept very sharp. As a weapon these swords are quite effective. Ahodu in a raid received a sword wound from a blow which had glanced off his shield; it ran from the left shoulder to the left knee, and had cut deep into his arm and side. It would have killed most Europeans; he not only recovered but had to ride four days from the scene of the fight back to Air.

Two sorts of spears are used, the wooden-hafted with a narrow willow-leaf socketed blade and an iron socketed butt, and one made throughout of metal. The latter, called “allagh,” is a slender and beautiful weapon up to six feet long.[214] The head is very narrow, not above an inch broad: the greatest breadth is half-way down the blade, which projects on either side of a pronounced midrib. Below the head are one or more pairs of barbs in the plane of the blade. The haft is round and about half an inch in diameter, inlaid with brass rings. Two-thirds of the way along the haft is a leather grip; below that is an annular excrescence, and then the haft is splayed out, terminating in a chisel-shaped butt 1½″-2″ broad. These spears are used as lances or as throwing weapons. They are graceful and well-balanced, but are not made locally. Wherever they appear the influence of the Tuareg can seemingly be traced. It was from this people also that the cross-hilted sword probably came to be adopted in the Sudan, while they themselves certainly learnt its use in the Mediterranean lands, perhaps even from the Romans.

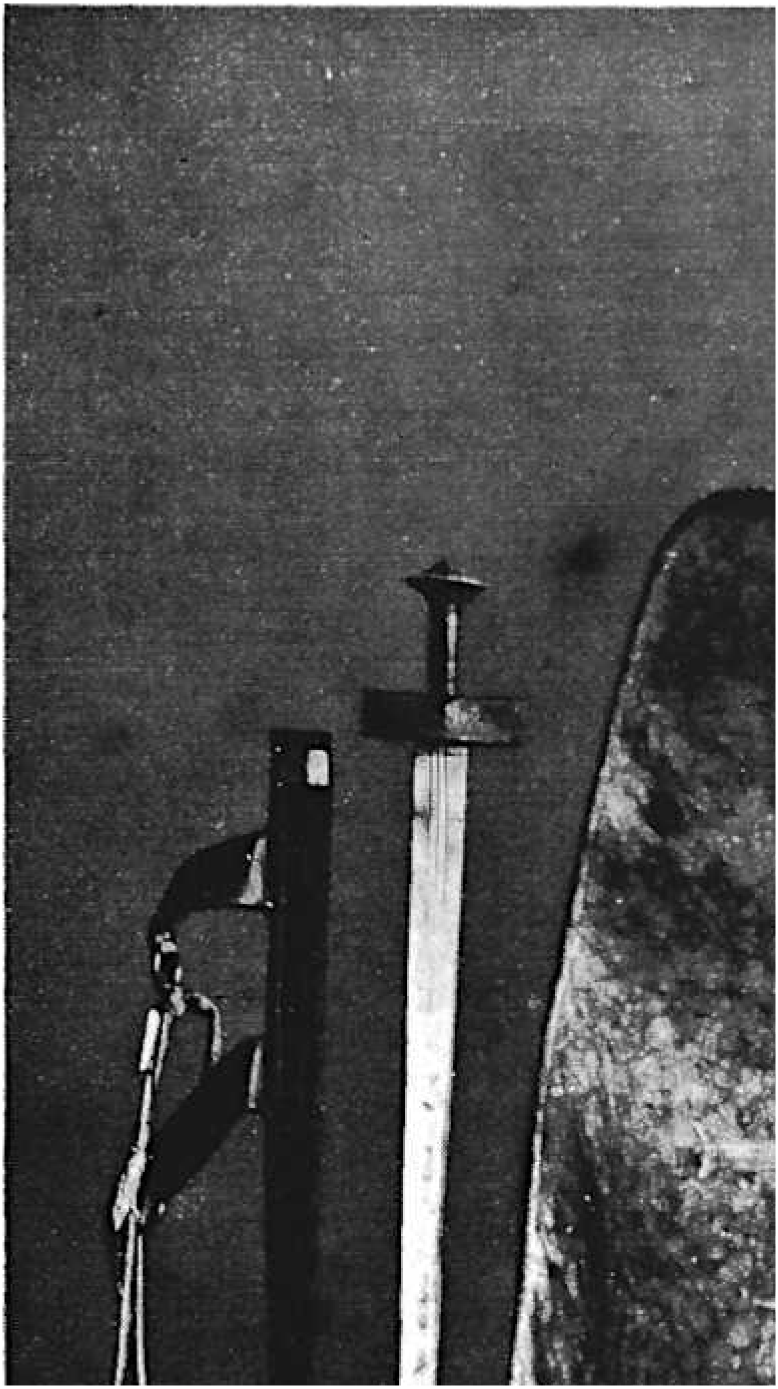
Sheath knives some 6″ long, with fretted or inlaid brass hilts and red leather or leather and brass sheaths, are worn at the waist. The arm dagger is the most typical of all Tuareg weapons. They seem to be the only people to use it: it has a small wooden cross hilt and a long, narrow, flat blade. This weapon is worn along the forearm, the point to the elbow, the hilt ready for use under the hand: the sheath has a leather ring which is slipped over the wrist. The hilt is held in the hand, knuckles upward and two fingers each side of the long member of the cross. It is, in fact, a short stabbing sword, the handiest and most redoubtable of all the weapons of the People of the Veil.

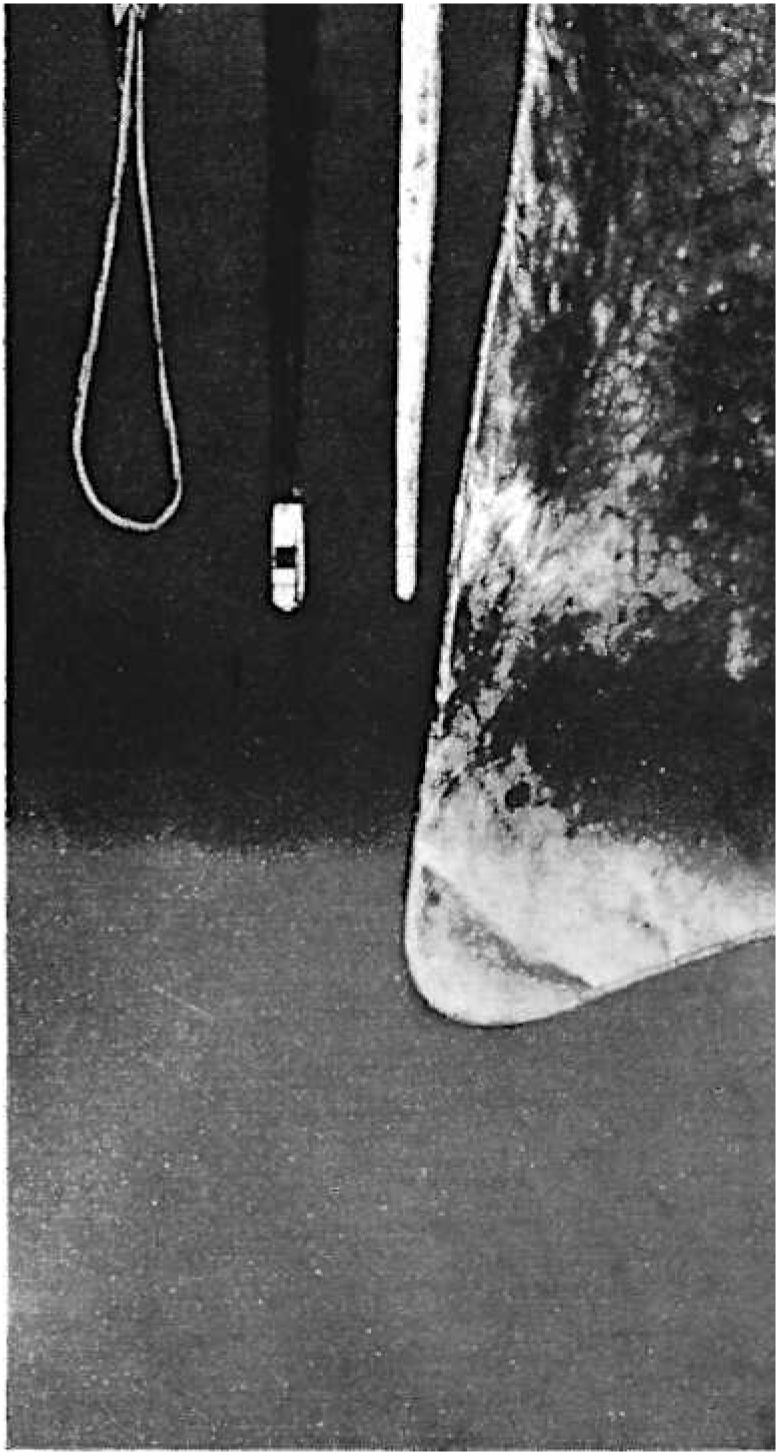
For defence they have large shields[215] roughly rectangular in shape and as large as 5 ft. × 3 ft., of sun-dried hide from which the hair has been removed. The best are made in Elakkos and some parts of Damergu of oryx hide. The edges are bound in leather, but the shield remains stiff yet fairly flexible, as it consists of only one thickness of hide. The corners are rounded and the sides somewhat incurved, the bottom being usually a few inches broader than the top. A loop in the centre of the top side is used to hang the shield from the camel saddle. In use it is held in the left hand by a handle attached behind about a third of its length from the top rim. There are no arm loops, as the shield is too ungainly to move rapidly in parry, though its size effectually protects the whole body. The hide of the white oryx is extremely tough and is said to turn any sword-cut and most spear-thrusts. The shield is especially remarkable for its ornamentation. Some of the more elaborate have metal studs with roundels of red stuff near the edges, but an uncoloured cruciform design worked on the surface by a series of small cuts always appears in the upper part of the shield on the centre line. The design in all examples I have seen, and probably in most cases, is much the same and is certainly symbolic, for we hear of the shield and cross ornament being engraved on rocks. The design seems to be derived from a Latin cross, the lower and longer arm of which terminates in a group of diagonal members, usually three on each side, forming a radial pattern. In this form it resembles nothing so much as the Christian cross standing on a radiating mass representing light or glory, but certain examples have the radiating marks at the top as well as at the bottom of the cross.

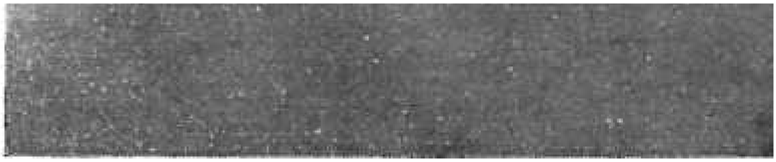
The Tuareg does not usually use either bows and arrows or the throwing iron with its many projecting knife-blades. Instances are not wanting in which these weapons have been used, but they are neither typical of the equipment of the Tuareg nor natural to his temperament. Where they have been used they have been consciously borrowed from some neighbouring or associated people, such as the Tebu, who use the throwing iron extensively. The People of the Veil have one most especial vaunt, which is that they fight with the *armes blanches* and disdain insidious weapons like arrows. The advent of civilisation has brought them the rifle, which they are as proud to possess as any fighting man must be, but they have never been seduced from the sword, spear and knife which are their old allegiances. It is common to hear a Tuareg say that he would be ashamed to stoop to the infamy of the Tebu: he will explain that whatever happens the Tuareg will never creep up to a camp at night and cut his enemy's throat in the dark. He will fight fair and clean, attacking with spear and sword, preferably by day. He prides himself on the distinction which he draws between murder by stealth and killing in a fight or raid. He may be a liar and not live up to his vaunt; but to have the ideal at all is remarkable; it must be said to his honour that on the whole he has proved that he can live up to his self-set standard. In all the bitter fighting with the French during the last two generations I am only aware of one instance in which the Tuareg have stooped to what in their own view was treachery, and that was when they tried to poison the survivors of the Flatters Mission after the attack at Bir Gharama.

Their tactics in war are the usual ones of desert fighting. Guerilla warfare, ambushes, surprise attacks and harassing descents on stragglers are all known. On one occasion in an attack on a French patrol, which had exacted a fine of camels from a tribe, the men came up in the dark on the opposite side of the square to that on which the animals were lying and called to them, whereupon the animals, recognising the voices of their masters, rose and swept through the sleeping camp, which was over-run and decimated. In the desert men neither give nor get quarter, for prisoners and slaves are encumbrances to free movement. In ordinary raids the losing side is either destroyed or dispersed.

PLATE 26







TUAREG SWORD AND SHEATH, SHIELD, ARM-SWORD AND SHEATH AN

As far as possible the Tuareg fight according to their code, which in a less cynical age would be called chivalrous. They obey the injunctions of Islam neither to destroy palm trees nor to poison wells. They will give water in the desert to their worst enemy. They will lie and deceive their opponent whenever possible, but they will not infringe the laws of hospitality. When they have given the “Amán” or peace, they do not break their word. They are faithful to the tribes which they take under their protection and to those who have received their “A’ada” or “right of passage,” confirmed with the “Timmi” or oath suitable to the occasion. Their reputation as base fighters has little real foundation. Every case of which I have heard, when such an accusation was brought against them, has resolved itself into some surprise attack by a raiding party, the essence of whose success depended upon an unexpected descent upon an unsuspecting enemy. Of their courage I will write nothing, for it is too easy to exaggerate; but their proverb says: “Hell itself abhors dishonour.”

---

[201] Singular: Ers. Water-scrapes in the sand of valley-beds.

[202] Or Efaken.

[203] See Plate 35.

[204] See the Kel Geres group in Appendix II.

[205] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 385.

[206] Misnamed the Dogam Mountains on the Cortier map. Dogam is to the east. The Ighaghrar

valley runs south and then, assuming the name of Tagharit, west, and then on to the Talak plain. This valley does not run into the Auderas valley as the Cortier map shows.

[207]The "Assada well" of the Cortier map.

[208]Quite close to the Nabarro of Barth. The name is not given on the Cortier map.

[209]Specifically it is not as much as a man can heap on his open or hold in his half-closed hand.

[210]Cf. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 467 and 479.

[211]In Masquerey's Temajegh dictionary as "iril" and "irillan" respectively.

[212]The Great Bear is called "Talimt," the Cow Camel; the Pleiades are the "Chickens."

[213]See Plate 36.

[214]In Plate 47 Sidi is carrying such a spear flying the author's pennant.

[215]The round shields mentioned by Duveyrier as in use among the Northern Tuareg are unknown in Air. See Plates 22 and 26.

CHAPTER VIII

ARCHITECTURE AND ART

THE Bagezan group looms large in Central Air, but even its general features are unknown. The mountains have neither been reconnoitred nor mapped. The area they occupy figures as a blank on the Cortier map. I travelled around Bagezan and climbed up into one broad valley in the heart of the massif, but my own additions to the cartography hereabouts are confined to a few details along the towering sides. Buchanan in 1919-20 crossed the western side, from Towar to a valley which runs into the Anu Maqaran basin, where it is called Abarakan. A detachment of Jean’s first patrol to Air visited the southern valleys. But no European has ever entered the eastern or north-eastern part of the group. The reason for this apparent lack of enterprise is due to few of the mountain tracks being fit for camels; many of them are not even suitable for donkeys, and the complications of travelling in this sort of country, where none of the inhabitants will act as porters, thus become considerable.

The massif rises some 2000 feet above the general level of the central plateau, except in the north-east, where the latter at 3500 feet above the sea is itself over 500 feet higher than in the north and west. The principal peaks must be well over 6000 feet, the bottoms of the upland valleys perhaps 3500 to 4000 feet above the sea. Many of the latter contain perennial streams, and rumours reached me of a small lake somewhere in the unexplored north-eastern part; but this may only be a fairy tale. The southern sides of Bagezan fall almost vertically on to the central plain between Towar and Arakieta on the upper Beughqot valley. Several small villages are hidden in the folds of the mountains above, wherever there is a permanent supply of water. In some cases the streams are sufficient to irrigate a few gardens; at one or two points there are some date palms and the only lime trees in Air. The climate is cooler and everything ripens some four to six weeks later than on the plateau below. Frost is common in the winter.

A few of the villages, notably those like Tasessat and Tadesa, near the southern edge of the massif, have been visited by French patrols. In addition settlements known as Atkaki, Emululi, Owari, Agaragar and Ighelablaban have been reported to exist, but generally speaking, owing to the difficulties of intercommunication, the villages are almost unknown. They are said to consist of stone houses apparently of the earliest period associated with the Itesan tribes, in whose country the mountains lay. Some of the houses, however, differ from any of those encountered in other districts of Air.

In order to see the type of country and visit some of the people of the mountains I climbed from Towar up to the Telezu valley, where there were some Kel Bagezan, to-day a composite tribe made up of portions of Kel Tadek imghad and various Kel Owi elements. They are under the chief Minéru or El Minir, who owes allegiance to the Añastafidet. My way from Towar led past the ruined town of Agejir to the Tokede valley, which soon turned east and disappeared into the mountain. I subsequently found that the Tokede was the same valley as the one called Telesu higher up and Towar further down. The path turned west along the foot of Bagezan, past a scree of enormous boulders, ranging from five to twenty-five feet across, on which numerous families of red monkeys were playing. There we turned, T'ekhmedin, Atagoom and myself, and wound up the side of the mountain by a path so steep and rough that a self-respecting mule would have walked warily. The camels went up and up over loose stones. The left side dropped away precipitately into the deep valley which divides massifs of Bagezan and Todra. A stream roared in a gorge hundreds of feet below at the foot of a cliff of gleaming rock. Still we climbed over stones and boulders by a two-foot path gradually turning north and then north-east and then east. We followed up a narrowing tributary bed of the stream in the gorge until we came to a pass between bare earth-coloured hills, the tops of which were only a few hundred feet above us, and at last dropped gently down the other side past some grazing camels which seemed interested in our arrival and followed us inquisitively into Telezu. An enclosed plain opened out full of big green trees and grass with wonderful pasture and plenty of water in the sand. It ran from west to east before turning and narrowing southwards to fall over the edge into the Tokede below. The valley was shut in all round by low peaks and rough crags along the sky-line. One had no impression of being so far above the plateau of Air on a higher table-land. The great summits of Bagezan had become small hills.

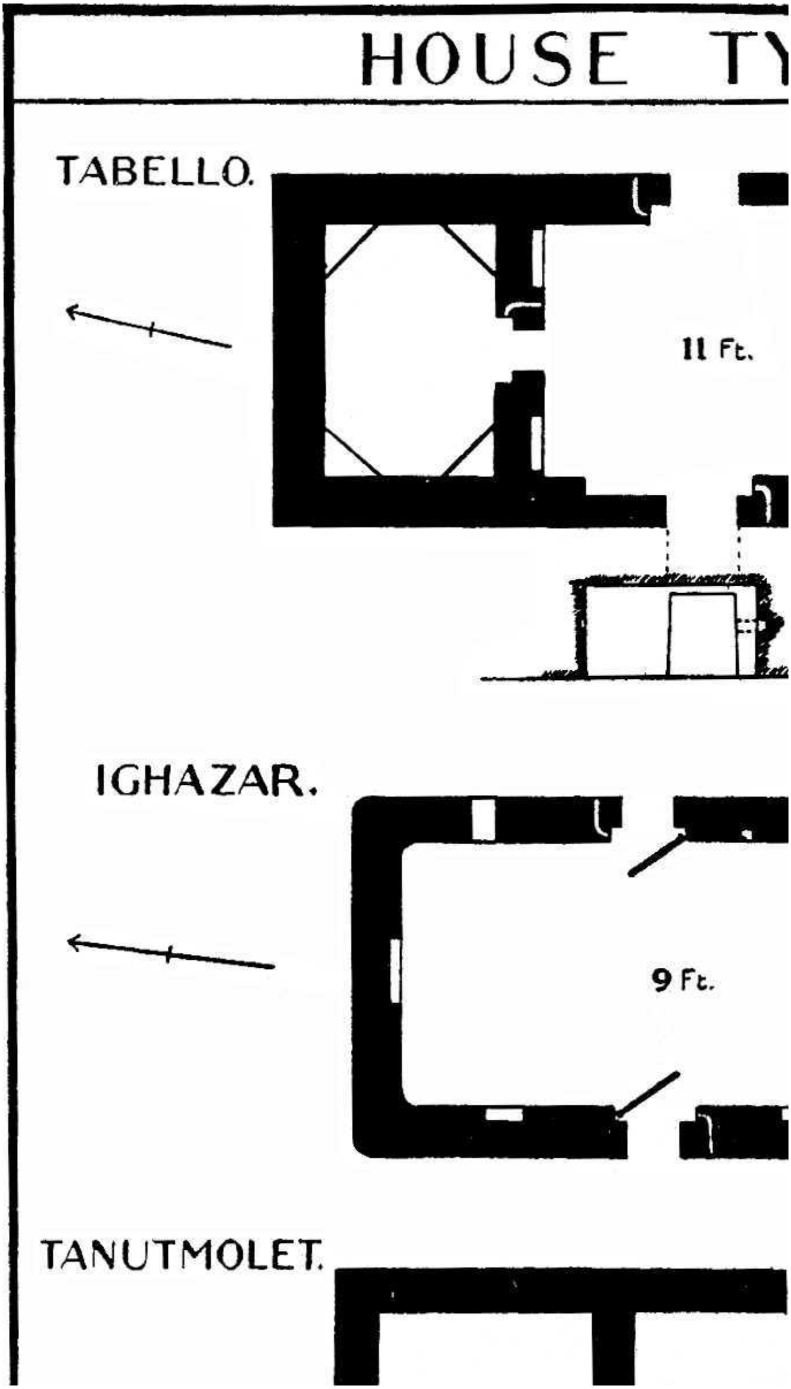
There was no other way out of Telesu except on foot, either over the hills or down the ravine made by the stream falling towards Tokede, so we returned as we had come, after drinking milk with the Kel Bagezan who were living there. The descent was terrific; the camels had to be led and we only made Towar by nightfall. After reaching the bottom of the scree we cut off a corner instead of going by Agejir, and marched towards the standing rock of Takazuzat (or Takazanzat), which looks like the spire of a cathedral, on the edge of the Ara valley near the isolated peak of In Bodinam.

All the ways up to the Bagezan villages are similar, if not harder. The agility of the camels that have to negotiate these paths is unbelievable until it has been experienced.

The only account which I can give of the houses of Bagezan is second-hand, and this is the more unfortunate, because Jean's description[216] of them as the first houses in Air does not correspond with the character of the earliest ones I saw. I will quote his exact words, as the point is important: "Les premières constructions édifiées furent Afassaz et Elnoulli; maisons à dôme central recouvrant une grande pièce sombre entourée de nombreuses dépendances; l'étage aujourd'hui effondré avait été solidement étayé par des piliers de maçonnerie à large et forte structure." To Afassaz, a large group of villages in a valley east of Bagezan, we will turn later; Barth erroneously supposed it lay near Towar, having apparently confused it with Agejir. "Elnoulli" I was entirely unable to trace under this name, and concluded that Emululi, which is one of the Bagezan villages, was intended.

PLATE 27

HOUSE TYPES.


HOUSE TY
TABELLO.
11 Ft.
IGHAZAR.
9 Ft.
TANUTMOLET.

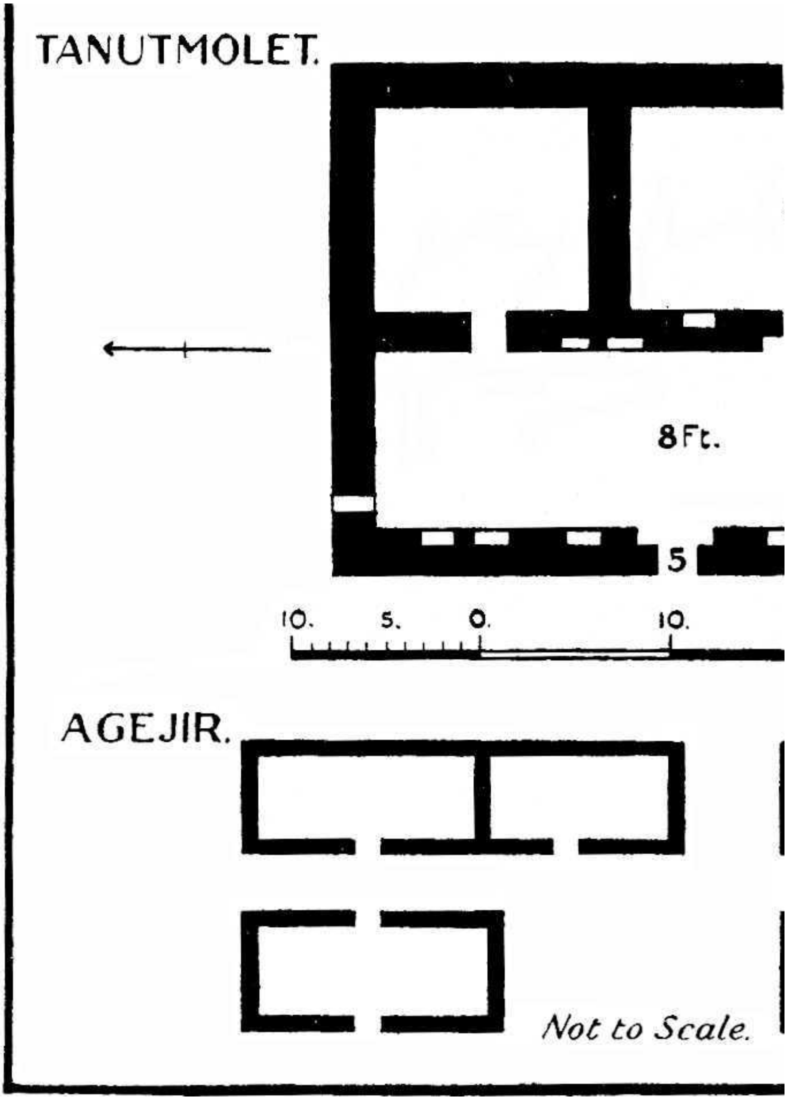
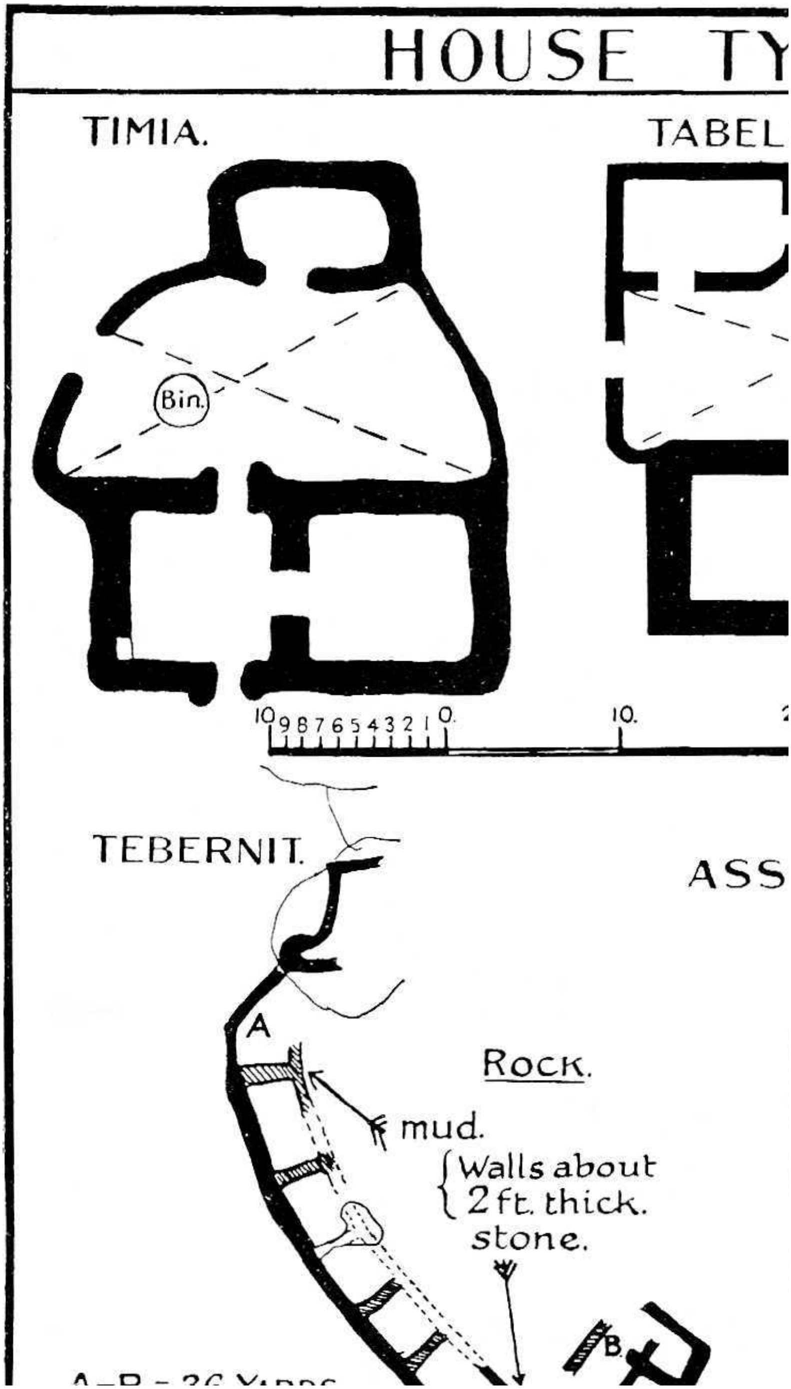
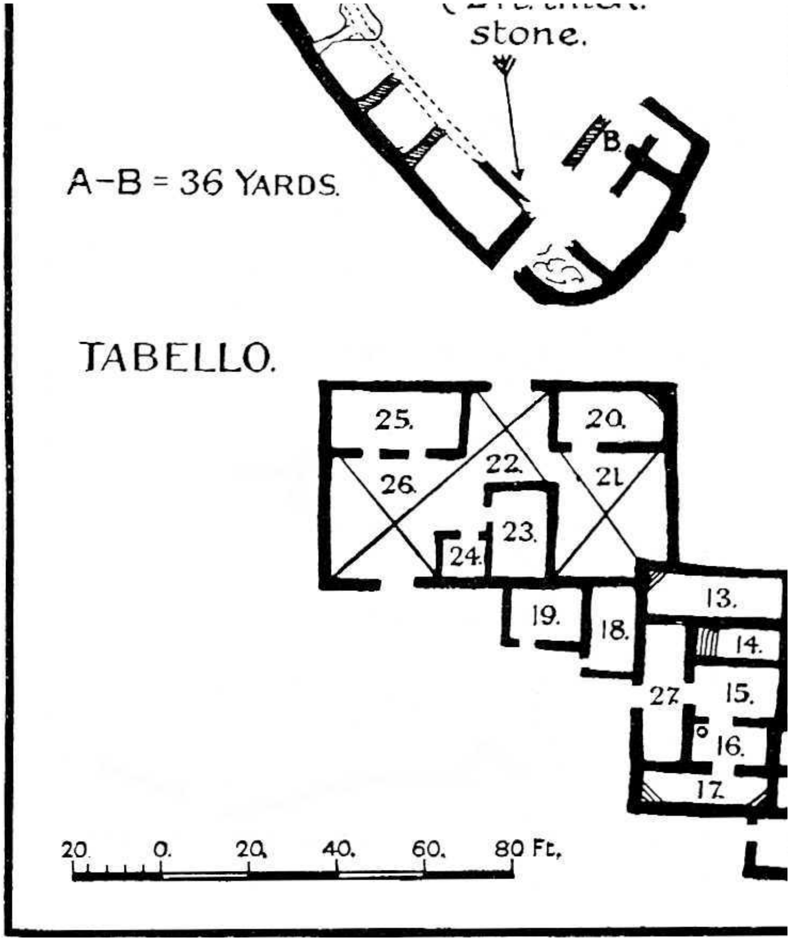

TANUTMOLET.
8Ft.
5
10. 5. 0. 10.
AGEJIR.
Not to Scale.

PLATE 28

HOUSE TYPES.


HOUSE TY
TIMIA.
TABEL
Bin.
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0.
10.
TEBERNIT.
ASS
A
Rock.
mud.
Walls about 2 ft. thick.
stone.
B.
A—B = 36 YARDS


stone.
B.
A-B = 36 YARDS.
TABELLO.
25.
20.
22.
26.
21.
23.
24.
19.
18.
13.
14.
27.
15.
16.
17.
20. 0. 20. 40. 60. 80 Ft.

My interest in Tuareg architecture was first aroused near Tabello, east of Bagezan, a point reached while I was circumnavigating the massif. From Auderas we had been to visit T’imia, whence we returned to the Abarakan valley. We then climbed laboriously up the bed of the Teghazar[217] tributary, and so reached the plateau east of the Central massif. We camped at about 3500 feet, by the spring of Teginjir. The water here is strongly mineralised, and comes out of the ground at about 90° F. charged with carbonic acid gas. Within a short distance of the spring is the volcanic crater and cone of Gheshwa,[218] the only recent vent which I came across in Air. It was visited and described by Von Bary, but curiously enough is neither referred to in other works nor shown on the Cortier map. The cinder cone is small and rather broken down on the west side, but the sides are still exceedingly steep and covered with loose scoriæ. The lava flow which came out of the vent extends from the foot of the cone, for some five miles to the south-east; it appears to have originated in the course of a single eruption. The lava stratum is level and about 20 feet thick, overlying the Teginjir plain, which consists of a surface alluvium from the neighbouring mountains, and, at one point, a disintegrating crystalline outcrop. The lava is acid and vesicular, resembling in appearance recent flows from Vesuvius or at Casamicciola on the island of Ischia in the Bay of Naples. The surface of the Teginjir flow proved indescribably rough and devoid of vegetation; it has as yet had no time to disintegrate and is undoubtedly still in the same twisted and cracked form which it had assumed during the cooling process. E.S.E. of Mount Gheshwa are two small black hillocks which appear to be minor cinder cones, not connected with any lava flows. The eruption which formed the Gheshwa cone and neighbouring lava flow is certainly posterior to the general configuration of the plateau and is a most recent geological phenomenon, but I found no tradition among the natives of any volcanic activity within living memory.

The ground drains eastward from Teginjir along the southern side of the T’imia massif to the Anfissak valley, named after the buttress hills which form the south-east corner of this group. East of Anfissak the plain extends towards and beyond Mount Mari in the north; a number of hillocks litter the plain to the south. The caravan road from Tripoli to the Sudan runs down this plain by the Adoral valley past Mari well, which is now filled in, by Anfissak well, and by Adaudu and the Tebernit water-holes to Beughqot. Thence it goes due south to Tergulawen and over the Azawagh to Damergu and Nigeria.

A short distance to the south the Anfissak valley changes its name to Tamanet, so called after a watering-place which we reached in one day's march from Teginjir. At least it was meant to be a watering-point, but we found that insufficient rain had fallen that year in Eastern Air and there was no water in the sand of the valley bed. We camped and left next day on a short ration of water over one of the most difficult parts of Air which I encountered in the whole of my journey. The plain is not boldly accidentated, but the valleys have cut deep into the disintegrating plateau. Their sides are steep and the flat places between them are so thickly covered with boulders that the area is almost impossible to cross. We eventually reached the Tebernit[219] valley just above Adaudu and sent camels up the valley to find water at a point called Emilía on the way to Ajiru. Our supply had completely run out. It was thirsty work waiting for the watering party to return, and one's worst apprehensions were of course aroused. I prowled about to relieve the tedium, and found a place where a ridge of rock crossed the bed or channel of the valley. I began digging in the sand to find water, for it seemed a likely place for an "Ers," as there was an old village site near by. Sure enough I found water about two feet down, and everyone cheered up, as the Emilía party was not due back for several hours. The place became known to the expedition as "Rodd's Ers."

Marching from here to Tabello was light work; we camped in the valley where the Arakieta tributary comes down from Bagezan near a small hut village, and then made an easy stage to the rendezvous of the salt caravan. The valley known as Tabello we discovered to be the upper part of the Beughqot: it was another example of the confusing habit of giving a multitude of names to a single system. Each section bears a different name to which a traveller, according to where he happens to be, may refer. The Ajiru, Tellia, Tebernit and Afasas are really the same valley; similarly the Telezu, Tokede, Towar, Tessuma and Etaras are another, while the Abarakan, T'imilen, Agerzan, Bilasicat, Azar and Anu Maqaran are also one and the same watercourse.

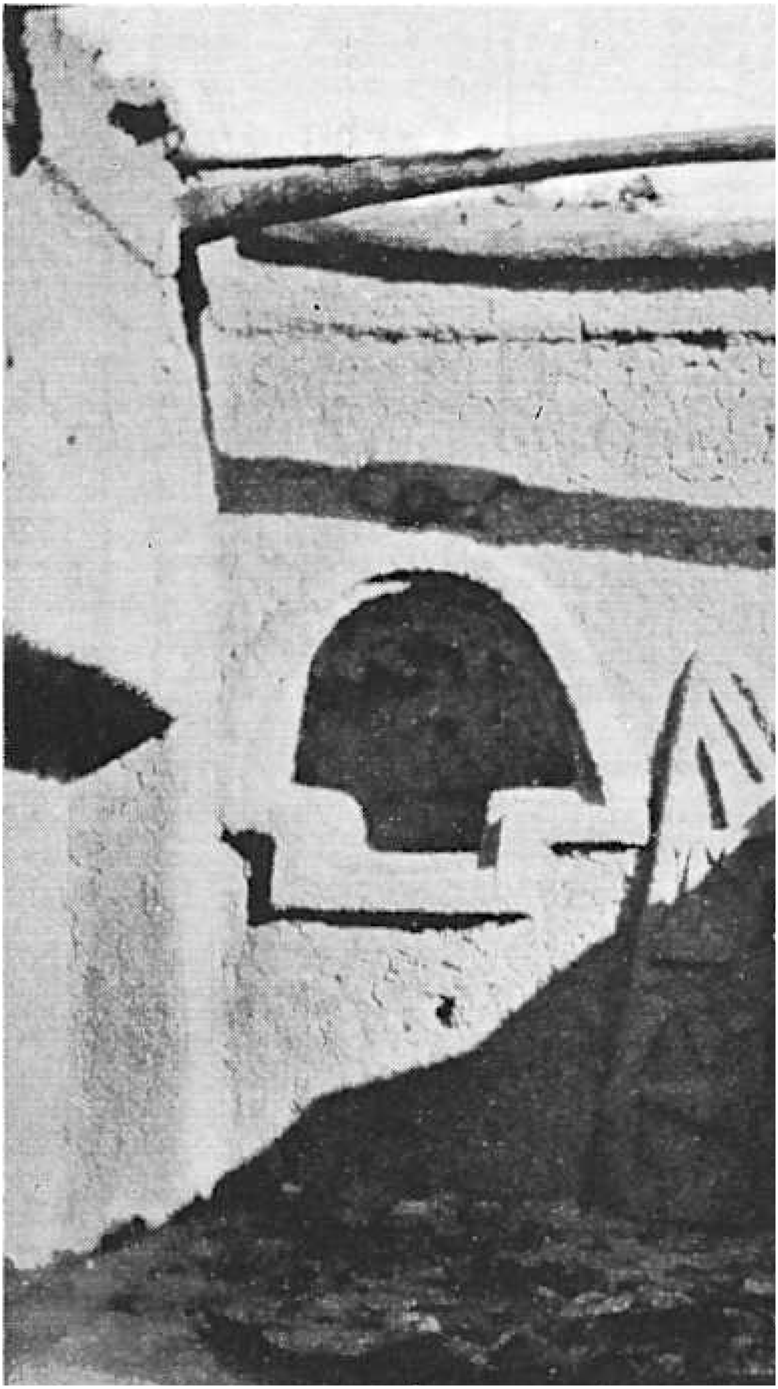
The country east of Bagezan now belongs to the Kel Owi confederation. The northern part of the plain is the country of the Kel Azañieres, but before their advent the Immikitan came as far south as Tamanet. The Kel Anfissak, living presumably at Barth's well of Albes, are a Kel Azañieres sub-tribe. Ajiru was the home of Belkho and the head-quarters of the Igermaden; but Tabello belonged to the Igademawen. It was at Ajiru that Von Bary was detained as a virtual prisoner by Belkho until he decided to abandon his projected journey to the Sudan.

The countryside had evidently at one time been quite thickly inhabited, but presumably before the immigration of the Kel Owi, for nearly all the ruined villages contained a characteristic type of house, which every Tuareg agreed was built by the Itesan, who of course came to Air long before the Kel Owi. In the Beughqot valley where it is called Tabello a great deal of water is available all the year round in the sand, and consequently several villages sprang up on both banks. The largest group, which will be described in detail, is the northernmost on the west bank, called Tasawat. The houses here are all of the characteristic “old type,” which is culturally far the most advanced dwelling in Air. Many of the buildings here are very well preserved except for the roof, which in almost every instance has collapsed. In the Tabello houses the walls are for the most part well preserved, but elsewhere in Air the constructional material was less good, for little remains of the oldest type dwellings but the ground plan.

The oldest houses, which I will call the “A type,” are rectangular in plan and have two rooms, a larger one with two or three outer doors, and an inner one with one door in the partition wall and no outer doors. All the houses of this type and most of the later houses in Air are oriented in the same direction, namely, within a few degrees of north and south, with the smaller room at the northern end. There were a few exceptions in the fourth group which I examined at Tabello; they were houses on a N.N.W.-S.S.E. line, or oriented E.-W. with the small room at the west end. The latter is an interesting point, because although the Air dialect of Temajegh contains a proper word for north (“tasalgi”), the word for west (“ataram”), which in some other dialects of the language has acquired the significance of north, is also sometimes used for this cardinal point.

PLATE 29

TIMIA: “A” AN



TABELL

The big rooms of these “A type” houses in all the village groups examined varied but little in size, the largest one I measured being 29 ft. × 14 ft. inside. The small rooms varied rather more, ranging between 9 ft. and 12 ft. in length, the breadth being the same as for the big room. The head room was in all cases remarkable, one house I measured being as much as 12 ft. from the floor to the underside of the dûm palm rafters of the roof. In every instance the height was more than sufficient for a man to stand upright, a feature which does not obtain in the later houses. The large room was usually provided with three doors, the east and west ones being of similar dimensions, the south door rather smaller. In two cases in one group at Tabello and in other instances in the north I noticed that the east doors of the old houses had small buttresses outside as if to enhance their importance, though in one house the east door had been reduced to a small aperture; but this was exceptional. Buttresses were not observed on any of the west doors. In two cases I noticed here there was no south door, an omission which also occurred elsewhere among the later houses. The east and west doors, varying slightly according to the size of the house, were 4 ft. or more in height by 3 ft. 6 in. to 4 ft. in breadth. In all the Tabello houses the door openings were recessed on the inner side to take a removable wooden door some ten inches broader and taller than the opening itself. The recess was continued for a sufficient space laterally to allow the frame to be pushed to one side without taking up room space. One side of the recess was provided with an elbow-hole in the outer wall of the house about 2 ft. from the ground for access to a latch for securing the door frame. In the later houses, but not at Tabello, the sliding frame door gave place to one swinging from stone sockets in the threshold and lintel; these doors are in some cases over 3 ft. broad and cut out of one piece of wood: they also were provided with a latch or bolt fitting into a catch in the inner part of the elbow-hole by which the door was secured and sometimes locked with a rough padlock of Tripolitan or Algerian manufacture. No doubt the door frames of the earlier houses were provided with a similar latch and lock, but none of the woodwork has survived. The neatness of design of the sliding door recess was particularly striking in these dwellings.

The threshold of the doors in the older houses was on the floor level, which was a few inches above the outside level. The larger rooms had quadrangular niches of different dimensions at odd points in the walls, as well as certain peculiar and characteristic niches in the partition walls. The inner rooms were provided with small niches made of pots built into the walls; in many cases there were four shelves across the corners some 3-4 ft. from the ground made of heavy beams, evidently intended to carry considerable weights. The surfaces of these shelves, like all the inner walls of both rooms, were carefully plastered with mud mortar whitened or coloured with earths similar to those used in the washes on houses at Agades. In one case a dado or wainscot of a different colour had been applied with a finger-drawn zigzag border of another shade. The stucco surfaces were brown, earthy crimson, ochre, yellow or white.

One characteristic feature was observed in all the "old type" houses which still had walls standing of sufficient height for something more than the mere ground plan to be seen. On either side of the doorway in the partition or north wall of the large room there was a niche of very peculiar shape. The top was rather like a Gothic arch, and a recess was cut out in the base. The niches and the door in some cases were ornamented with an elaborate border, in other cases they were entirely unadorned. The shape of the niche, however, was constant and the size generally uniform. The style of decoration will be seen in Plates 29 and 30.

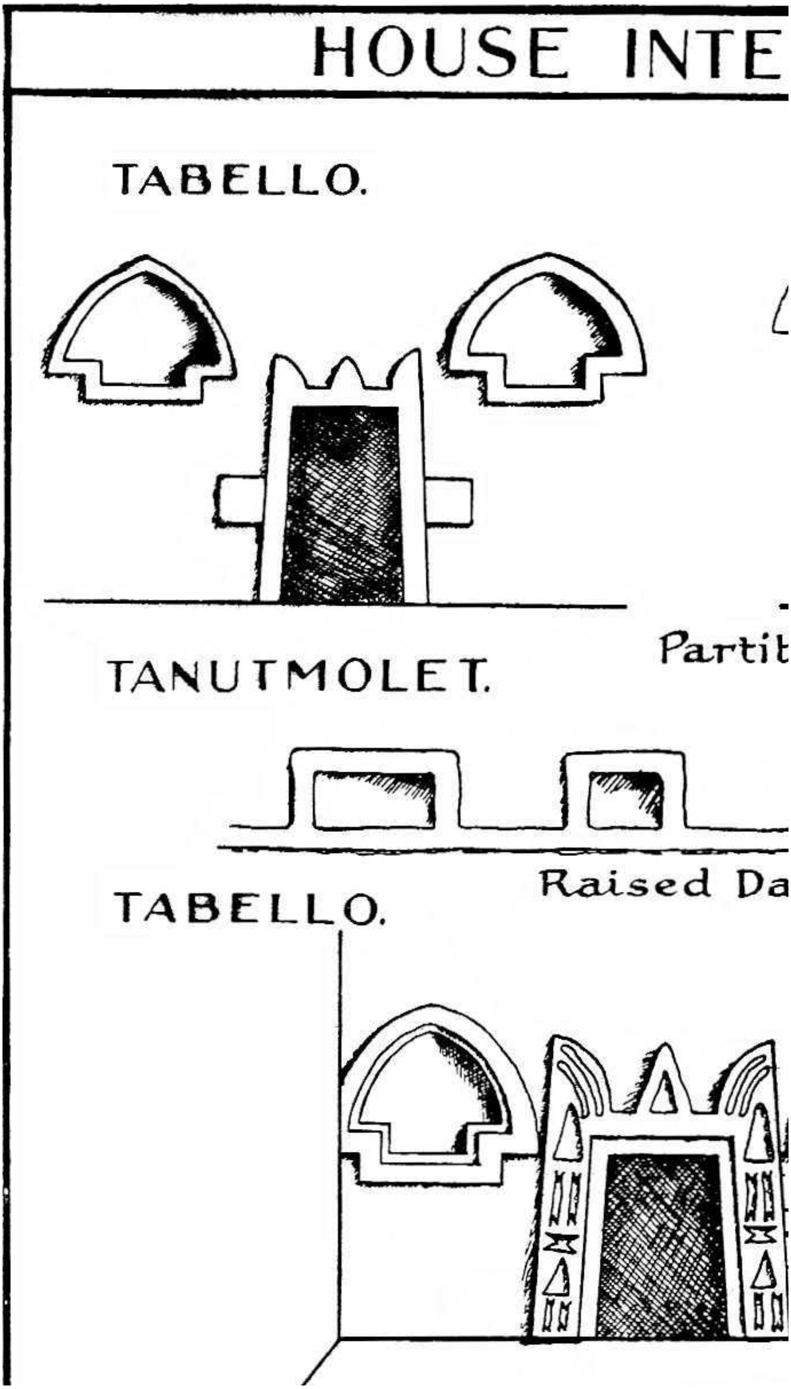
The later houses in Air are clearly an adaptation of the earlier type, for they have many common characteristics. These houses I have called the "B type" to distinguish them from the "A" or "Itesan type." The "B houses" also are rectangular but single-roomed; for the most part they too are oriented north and south. An Imajegh whom I questioned on this point at Iferuan said he did not know why this was so, but that all the correct houses of nobles were built in this manner, including the one in which his own family had always lived. He added that the three usual outside doors were called Imi n'Innek, the Door of the East, the Imi n'Aghil, the Door of the South, but the west door, instead of being called the Imi n'Ataram, was called the Imi n'Tasalgi, which properly means the Door of the North. When I asked him to explain this curious fact, he told me that it was because the Tuareg came from there, a statement which seemed inadequate, albeit significant. The confusion of west and north is especially curious; and the explanation of the house oriented E. and W. at Tabello is probably due to a misunderstanding on this point in the mind of the early builder. The problem is not unconnected with the varying sense of the word Ataram. Analogies between the "A" and "B" types of house are not, however, confined to those peculiarities of orientation and doors. A door in the north wall of the "B type" houses is very rare; on the other hand, in the majority of examples of this type I noticed that there was a long, very low niche on that side of the room. These recesses were not more than four or five inches high by eighteen to twenty-four inches long; they were used for keeping the Holy Books in and for no other purpose. The position of these niches, it is true, was not absolutely constant, nor was the type of niche for the Holy Books in the north walls always that shape, but the conclusion I reached from their frequent occurrence was that they in some way correspond to the ogive niches of the earlier houses, which I conceive had an indisputably ritual or religious significance. In a "B type" house at Assarara in Northern Air I came across two rectangular niches in a west wall which were obviously developments of the ornamented ogive niches of the "A type" house, and may also have been used for Holy Books, but this example of displacement with the varying and fortuitous practices adopted in the later dwellings convinced me that the use which had prescribed the earlier fashion was in process of being forgotten as modern times were approached, and that no explanation was therefore likely to be obtained by consulting local learned men. In the "B type" houses, as in the earlier dwellings, there was usually a profusion of other niches in the walls serving different household purposes.

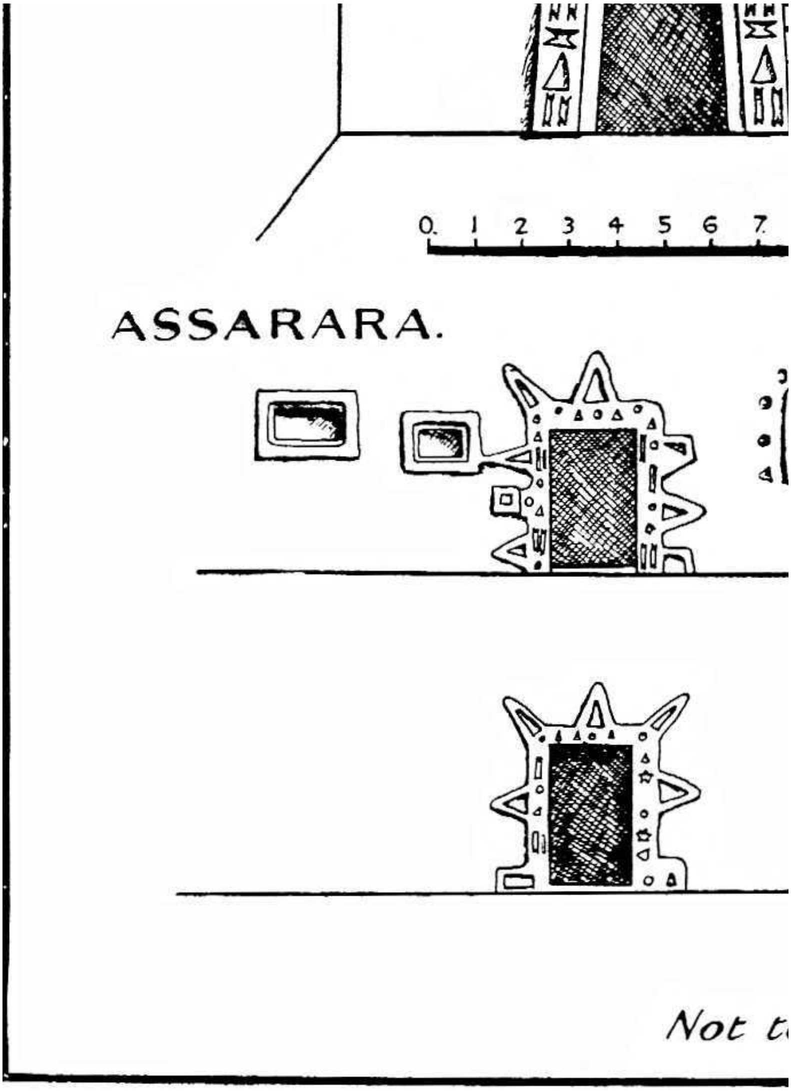
The niches and the style of ornamentation of the

"A type" houses of Air occur in the Sudan, but the formality of planning, the constant orientation and the ritualistic properties of the recesses, so far as I know, have no analogies outside Tuareg lands. I am not aware that attention has hitherto been drawn to these points either in the accounts of Air prepared by the French or in descriptions of dwellings in other parts of Africa, with the exception of one reference in Richardson's account of his travels in 1845-6 in the Fezzan. He describes the houses at Ghat as having niches, and, from sketches he made, some of them are evidently of the same type as those in the Air houses of the first period.[220] They afford a problem which requires elucidation and which might throw much light on the cultural contacts of the Tuareg, among whom they seem to be traditional.

PLATE 30

HOUSE INTERIORS.


HOUSE INTE
TABELLO.
Partit
TANUTMOLET.
Raised Da
TABELLO.



The constant type of the houses, despite their disparity of date, is so marked that it cannot be fortuitous. I examined in the course of my stay in Air the villages and towns of Auderas, Towar, Agejir, the Tabello and Afassaz-Tebernit groups, T’imia, Assode, T’in Wansa, Igululof, Anu Samed, T’intaghoda, Tanutmolet, Iferuan, Seliufet, Agellal, Tefis and Anu Wisheran, and found the “A” and “B types” or their derivatives predominant to an extent which made it quite clear that some fundamental principle was involved in their construction. The earlier houses betray so highly developed a technique of building that we are clearly concerned with the remnants of a far higher cultural state than that which the Tuareg now possess. I say “remnants” advisedly, for since the date of the “A type” dwellings there has been a progressive deterioration in the art of construction. Technically, in Air, what is best is earliest. The first houses of the Tuareg were obviously planned and executed with care. The walls, where still standing, measured about 2 ft. 9 in. to 3 ft. at the base, tapering 9 to 12 in. to the top. The inside faces were perpendicular, all the taper being on the outside, where it is clearly visible in the profiles of the corners. The outsides of the walls were roughly faced with mud stucco; the insides were more carefully plastered to produce a very smooth surface, which in the best houses appears to have been procured with a board; hand marks on the plaster surface seemed rare. The dûm palm rafters of the roofs, door lintels and tops of recesses were carefully placed so that any curve of the wood was upward in order to give as much height as possible. The most noticeable feature in the construction of the “A type” houses was certainly the squareness and accuracy of the corners, which were sharp and cleanly finished. The later houses were less carefully executed and the corners, instead of being square, were rounded both within and without. The walls were less perpendicular and straight, the rectangular planning was sometimes out of true, the stucco-work, while better conserved on the outer walls owing to their more recent date, was manifestly rougher; there was often, nay usually, hardly room to stand upright inside the dwelling. [221]

The constructional material of both types of house was observed to vary very much according to the supplies available on the spot. Small stones up to six inches long set in mud mortar are generally used. The coursing of the stones was carefully levelled, and in the "A type" very regular; a deterioration was seen in the later dwellings. The influence of the Sudanese style of construction is reflected in one or two houses at Tabello, where dried mud cakes have been used instead of stones; but even in these cases the mud cakes have been used like stones, set in mud mortar, levelled and regularly coursed, and contrasting with the more irregular methods of the Southland. Generally speaking the numbers of "A" and "B type" houses in Air built only of mud seemed exceedingly small. In the stone, as in the mud constructions, some re-surfacing every year after the rains must have been inevitable.

The roofs are made of palm fronds, brushwood and mud mortar with a low parapet around the edge, and often with six pinnacles, respectively at the four corners and half-way along the longest sides.

The ruins of the "A type" houses at Tabello and Afasas were nearly always surrounded by other derelict buildings within an enclosure of large stones marking a sort of compound. The enclosures were not formal; they sometimes surrounded the whole house, sometimes only one side. The outhouses in the compound had no particular character: they were storehouses or the dwellings of the slaves. The buildings were as formless as the main houses were formal: they were either one-roomed or manychambered with or without inter-communicating doors. They rarely adjoined the “A type” buildings, and were invariably more roughly constructed, many more of them being built of mud. In the “B type” settlements one was struck with the greater absence of outhouses and enclosing walls. Where subsidiary dwellings existed there had been a tendency to build them on to the main dwelling. A large number of both “A” and “B” houses in the Ighazar had wooden porches or shelters outside the east door, and were surrounded by a sort of wooden fence or stockade.

Such are the two most characteristic types of house in Air. Other forms of dwellings I will refer to as the “C,” “D” and “E types.” The last-named “E type” can be disposed of immediately, for it is of no particular interest in connection with the Tuareg. Plate 28 gives the plan of one such a house formerly inhabited by Fugda, chief of T’imia, before the inhabitants moved to the present village and lived in huts. It is characteristic of the Southland both in design and construction, and, like all the recent “E type” houses, was built of mud.

The “D type” is a many-roomed dwelling, apparently occupied by several families. The largest example I saw was at Tabello. The plan is given on Plate 28. In this case the construction was of stone and mud, but principally of the former. The technique was very inferior; several periods of construction were observable. The individual dwellings in this group were apparently at least four, consisting of areas numbered in the plan 1 to 7, 8 to 10, 13 to 17, and 20 to 26, respectively. Areas numbered 4, 9, 21, 22 and 24 were courtyards, the entrance to 21 having holes in the wall for wooden bars, and being apparently designed as a cattle-pen.

The group had at least one well in area 16, and possibly another one in 12, though the latter might only have been a grain-pit. Another example of the “D type” house situated in the Afassaz valley group is given on Plate 28. It lay at the foot of a rock, beneath which there is a permanent water-hole in the sand. A few hundred yards away was a village of “A type” houses. Along the valley in the same vicinity were enclosures of dry stone walls on the tops of the hills bordering the valley. I hazard a conclusion that these “D type” dwellings were used by the inhabitants of the area when the larger settlements were abandoned by the Itesan and Kel Geres in their move westward as a result of raiding from the east.[222] The “D type” dwelling is a semi-fortified work, or at least a defensible building where several families who had remained in a dangerous area might congregate for safety in times of trouble. These dwellings with the hill-top enclosures along the Afassaz valley are the nearest approach to fortifications which I discovered in Air.

The last type of house to be described represents a later development of the “A type.” The “C type” houses retain many of the characteristics of the earlier buildings, and although it is not always easy to date them, their preservation indicates that they are more recent. The rectangular formality of the earlier type survived but the orientation has been lost. The technique in many cases is better than in the “B type”; but the ogive niches are absent and the interior stucco-work was often very rough. The various forms which the plan may take are given in Plates 29 and 30. Some of the “C type” houses belong to the Itesan period and are descended from the “A type” building, while some of them are certainly late Kel Owi houses. The town of Agejir, north of Towar, from which the plans on Plate 27 are taken was an Itesan settlement, probably founded when these tribes moved away from the plain east of Bagezan. Here I found only one true “A type” house, but as there must be over 300 ruined houses, I may well have missed many more. The state of the buildings here was very bad owing to the lack of good mud mortar, which has preserved those at Tabello. The better houses at Agejir seemed to fall into two categories: the one a single-roomed structure of about 20 ft. × 10 ft. internal dimensions, having usually two doors in the centre of the longest or east and west sides; the other a two-roomed structure. In the latter, the larger room was about the same size as in the single-roomed dwellings, the smaller room being about 10 ft. × 7 ft.; the common wall was not pierced, which may have been due to the use of inferior building materials. All the other buildings at Agejir were formless quadrangular structures, but the two types described are clearly descended directly from the “A type” house.

Of the three villages at Towar, the modern one is a collection of mud huts; the older site on the same bank is a group of single-roomed “B type” houses, while the oldest of the three settlements is on the west bank and is called the Itesan village. Among the twenty ruined houses which I examined there I found three very good examples of the “A type,” correctly oriented north and south, in addition to several others of the single-roomed variety, the better ones being similar to those at Agejir. The 100 odd houses on this site were in too ruinous a condition to be readily identifiable.

The houses in Northern and North-eastern Air will be described in a succeeding chapter, but the subject cannot here be left without reference to certain dwellings which I encountered at Faodet at the head of the Ighazar basin. Here, side by side with some ordinary “B type” dwellings, were a few straw and thatch huts of about the same size constructed on a rectangular plan in obvious imitation of the neighbouring masonry dwellings. They were correctly oriented and had flat thatched roofs. Their inhabitants, though using an unsuitable material, had evidently tried to construct that type of dwelling which they felt was more correct for permanent occupation than the temporary round huts, a more suitable shape, of course, for brushwood, grass and matting construction. This example of innate sense of formality is most significant.

It is possible to draw certain conclusions on the style of Tuareg house construction in Air, even without the material evidence necessary for a more detailed study or comparative dating. Could excavation be undertaken, information would not be lacking, for pottery and stratified débris abound, only, unfortunately, time was not available for such investigations in the course of my journey.

The “A type” houses, according to the unanimous tradition of the present inhabitants, were built by the Itesan. Their vicarious distribution in Air suggests that all the Tuareg of the first wave used this style of dwelling. That fewer have survived in areas from which they were dispossessed by the Kel Geres and Kel Owi is natural. It is not, therefore, fortuitous that the present Tuareg call the houses Itesan rather than Kel Geres, despite the later association of the two groups of people; whatever claim has been put forward on behalf of the latter for a share in the earlier architectural development I am inclined to regard as simply due to their comparatively recent historical association. The later immigrants do not appear to have been so troubled by traditions of the formality which imbued their predecessors. In the essentially Kel Geres areas west of the Iferuan-Auderas-Agades road, other than the part which the Itesan occupied astride the line in the Auderas area, the "A type" houses occur, but are rare. The "B" and transitional "C types," predominate. Nevertheless these Kel Geres "B type" houses are larger and better in technical execution than the late "B type," which are known to have been made and used by the Kel Owi. The latter in their dwellings display a more formal conception than the Kel Geres; many of the old characteristics, like orientation, arrangements of the doors, ritual niches and proportion come out more strongly in North-eastern Air than, for instance, in the Agellal and Sidawet areas. The formless quadrangular buildings of Assode with very few of the old peculiarities are apparently Kel Geres work. The influence of the first or Itesan immigrants was, however, still sufficiently powerful to render their technique of construction in many respects superior to that of the Kel Owi.

The persistence of the characteristics of the Itesan period among the later Kel Owi, in fact its existence till quite recently among all the Air Tuareg in one form or another, is proof that we are not concerned with any fortuitous manifestation. Both the sentiments held by the people to-day and the occurrence of rectangular straw huts on the "B type" plan at Faodet, substantiate this conclusion. But if I am right in my feeling that the characteristics in question were more strongly present among the first

Itesan or Kel Innek wave and among the third or Kel Owi wave than among the Kel Geres, then the explanation is tenable that the features are derived from the civilisation of the Lemta or Fezzanian branch of the Tuareg, who, we shall see, are the original stock from which the first and last wave of immigrants into Air were probably derived, the former by way of the Chad countries, the latter also from the north or north-west, but perhaps by way of the Adghar of the Ifoghas and Tademekka.[223] This line of reasoning, which is put forward very tentatively, indicates that the Fezzan requires to be examined in some detail before an advance in the solution of the problem surrounding the cultural origin of the Air house can be made. Even if the evidence of their houses were all, I should be satisfied that the culture of the Air Tuareg was a shadowy memory of some higher civilisation. I will hazard no guess regarding its first cradle, but only suggest that some clues may be found in the Fezzan.

Another aspect of Tuareg architecture in Air remains to be examined. It concerns the style of their mosques. These buildings are comparatively numerous and all on much the same plan. The simplest form is a long, narrow construction running north and south with a “Qibla” in the centre of the east side. It is noteworthy that in several cases the “Qibla” gives the impression of having been added to the building, after the main walls had been erected, but this may only be an illusion due to defective workmanship. The larger mosques have one or more “aisles,” the wall or walls between them being pierced at many points to give the illusion of columns supporting the low roof. With the exception of one at Agejir, the head room of all the mosques I examined never exceeded 6 feet. Even the mosque at

Assode, which was the largest in Air, had so low a ceiling that it was scarcely possible to stand upright anywhere inside. In one or two examples which I saw there was a separate construction, consisting of a single or double “aisle,” standing some feet away, west of the mosque proper. These buildings were of the same dimensions from north to south as the latter and served as alms-houses or “khans” for the distribution of food to the poor, who were also allowed to sleep there when travelling from village to village. In the mosque of Assode and in that of Tasawat in the Tabello group of villages certain portions of the sacred building were reserved for the worship of women, or as schools. In the Tasawat mosque the windows of the “harim” enclosure looked into the main part of the mosque, but had lattice gratings of split palm fronds crossing one another diagonally. This mosque was certainly later than any of the “A type” houses in the vicinity. Its construction was indifferent, but noteworthy for the elaboration of the holes pierced in the partition walls, every alternate one being shaped like the ogive niches in the partition walls of the “A type” houses with the same recess cut out of the base. Neither in these openings nor in the niches of the houses has the principle of the true arch been applied: the ogives were built up by a wooden cantilever framing set in the thickness of the walls. With the exception of the great mosque at Agades, which is of the same type as the other holy buildings in Air, Assode is the only example which possessed a minaret. It is curious that the early houses of the Tuareg should be so noteworthy for the height of the roof, while the mosques should be equally remarkable for the lowness; the feature is one associated with a late period of building.

It is very difficult to date any of the mosques, or indeed any of the other buildings or graves in Air, absolutely, in the absence of archæological field evidence. Jean[224] has collected a tradition to the effect that the mosque of Tefis is the oldest in Air, and this accords with my information. He dates it, however, at 1150 years ago, and states that it was built by the Kel Geres, who, according to him, were the first Tuareg to reach Air. Though I cannot agree with the last part of this conclusion, I concur in finding that the Kel Geres were the first Tuareg to enter Air by the north, and that they were, therefore, perhaps responsible for the introduction of Islam into the country. If this should prove to be the case, it is indeed probable that they built the first mosques. But Jean's acceptance of the traditional dating of the mosques is closely connected with the dates which he assigns to the advent of the Tuareg, namely, the eighth century A.D., a period which for reasons given elsewhere I am inclined to consider too early.

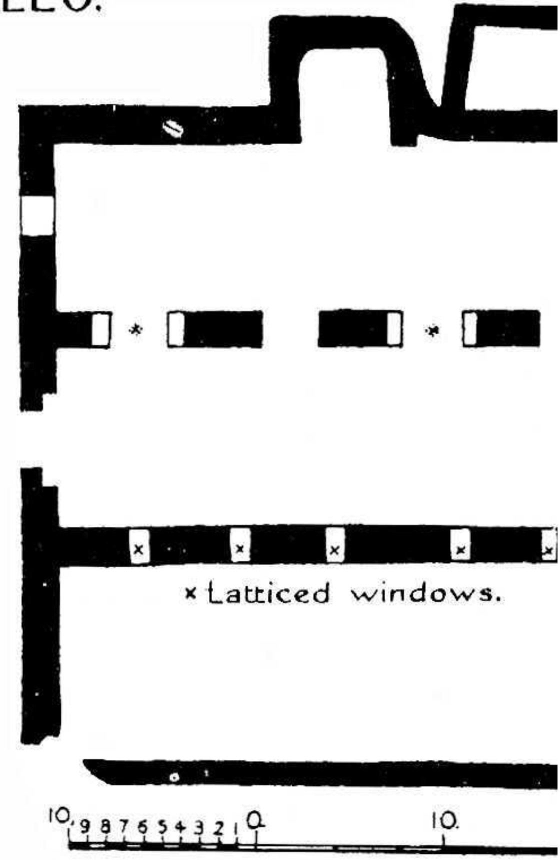
The traditional date for the founding of the mosque at Tefis in the eighth century A.D. is hardly admissible, for it is more than doubtful whether Islam had spread so far south by that time. It is alternatively uncertain whether a Christian Church then existed in the land. By the year 800 A.D. Islam had only penetrated Tripolitania and Tunisia to a limited extent and in the face of much opposition which persisted for long. Jean's dates must be regarded, not as absolute, but only as indicating a chronological sequence. The second mosque according to him was founded at T'intaghoda fifty years after the one at Tefis. The building, he states, was made by the Kel Owi, but if they were responsible for its construction the date must be set down as much later. My information agrees with its having been the second mosque in Air to be built; and this much of Jean’s information I accept, but discard its Kel Owi origin.[225] The third mosque was built at Assode about 100 years later than Tefis. The one at Agades followed after an interval of 40 years, 980 years ago, and is said to have been offered to the second Sultan of Agades as a present from the tribes. Chudeau adds to this information the additional detail that the minaret of the mosque of Assode, which, according to him, was 1000 years old, fell four centuries ago, but as the débris has not been cleared away to this day, the accuracy of the statement seems doubtful. Both Chudeau’s and Jean’s dates are all too remote. Undue importance must not be attached to the round figures in which the Tuareg are prone to reckon their traditional history.

PLATE 31

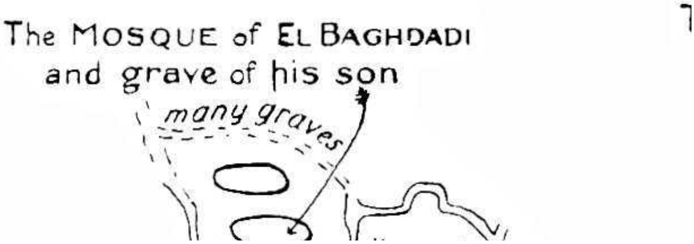
MOSQUES.

MOSQUE

TABELLO.


× Latticed windows.
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
10.

ABATTUL.


The MOSQUE of EL BAGHDADI
and grave of his son
many graves

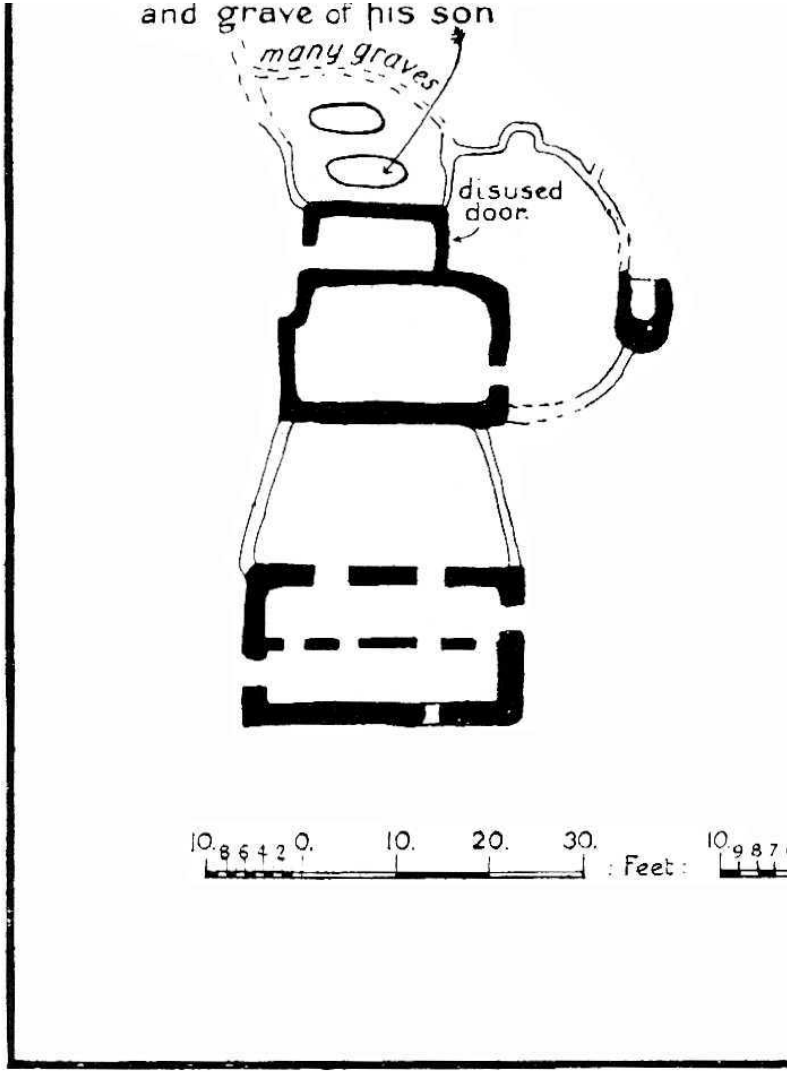
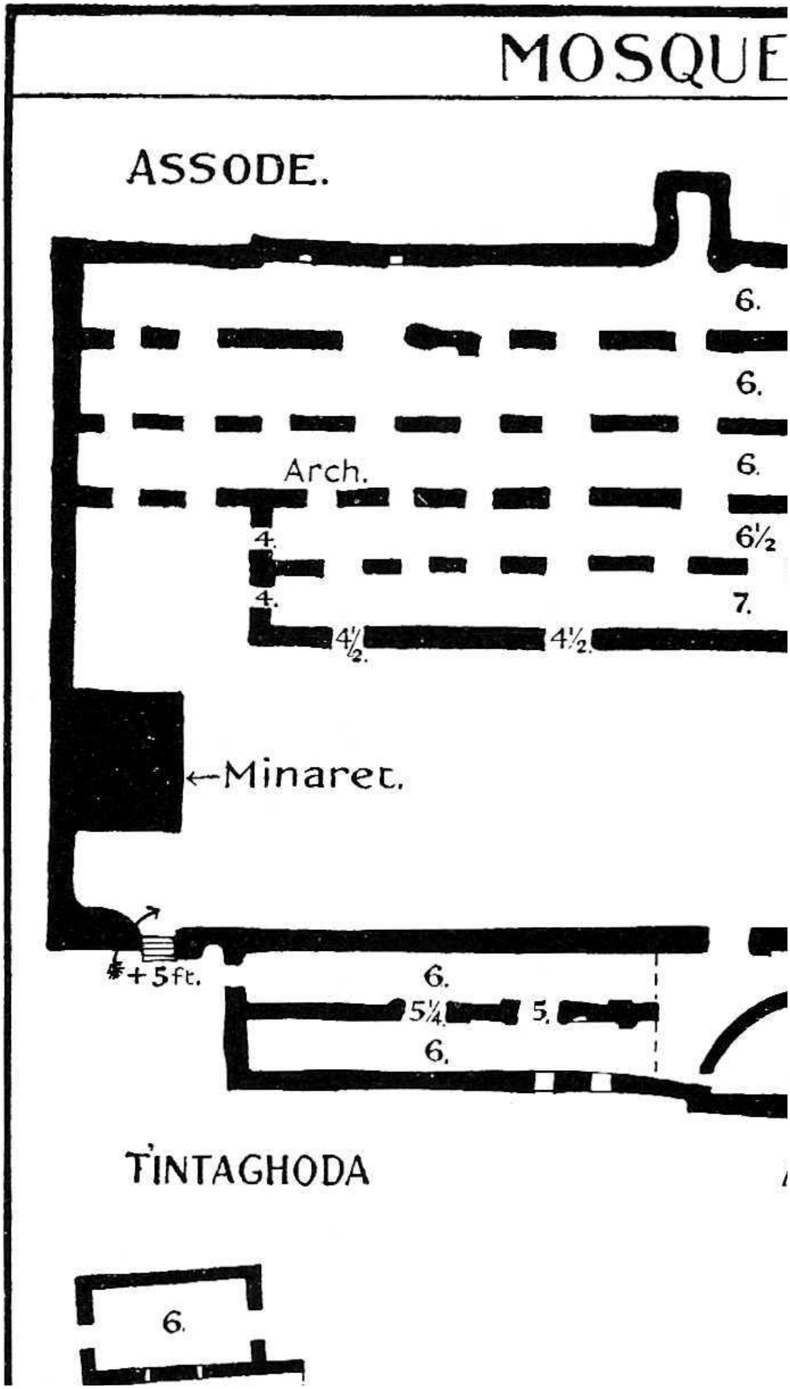
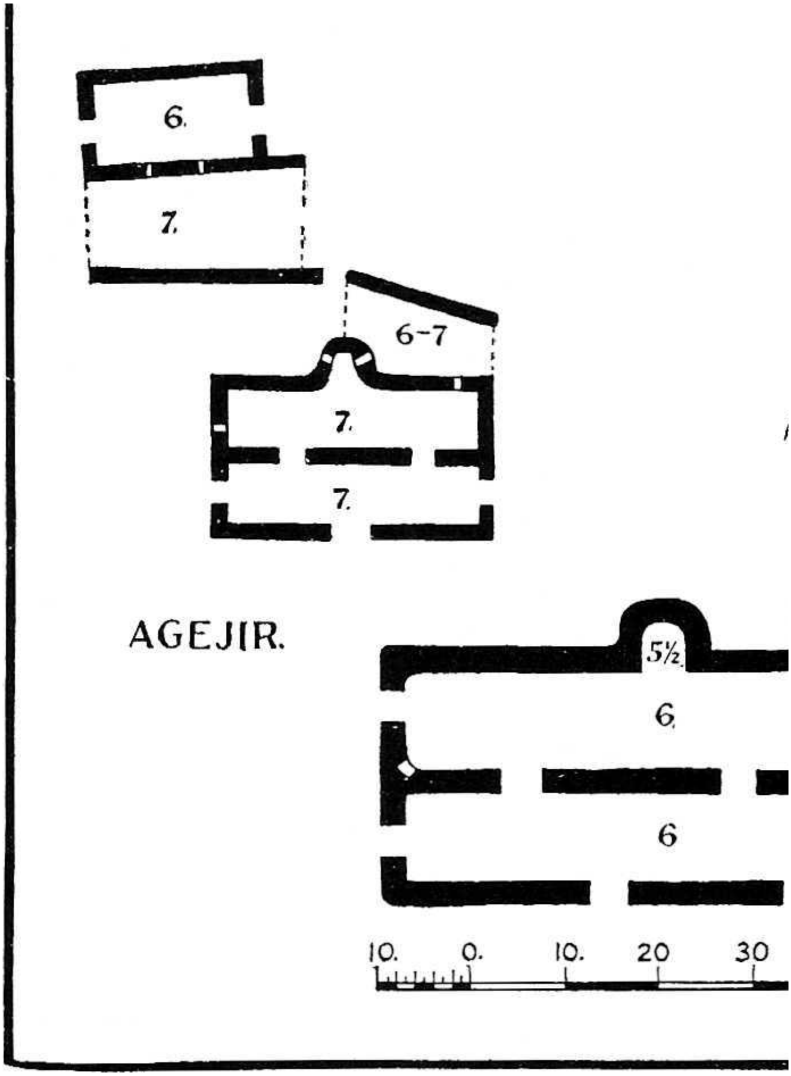

and grave of his son
many graves
disused door
10. 8 6 4 2 0. 10. 20. 30. : Feet : 10. 9 8 7

PLATE 32

MOSQUES.


MOSQUE
ASSODE.
6.
6.
Arch.
6.
4.
6½
4.
7.
4½.
4½.
←Minaret.
+5ft.
6.
5¼
5.
6.
TINTAGHODA
6.



The etymology given by the Arabs to the word "tarki" or "tawarek," even if not strictly accurate, indicates that the People of the Veil adopted the Faith of Islam long after the other inhabitants of North Africa. When they did so, they appear to have been lukewarm converts and to have retained many practices which the Prophet directed good Moslems to abhor. At Ghat, which was ever under their influence and where numbers of them have always lived, the tradition of their recent conversion may be found in the two parts of the town, known as the Quarter of Yes and the Quarter of No, from the people who accepted or refused Islam. At so late a period as when the Kel Owi arrived at the end of the seventeenth century A.D. the Kel Ferwan whom they drove out of the Iferuan valley in Northern Air were still “heathen,” though we are not told what their religion was. A very early date for the mosques of Air is therefore inherently improbable even if the Kel Geres did found Tefis as the first permanent place of worship for the new Faith. Assuming that the Kel Geres came to Air in the eleventh or twelfth century, the foundation of T’intaghoda mosque some 400 years later is not improbable; and it is not wholly impossible to reconcile such a date with the implications involved in the story of the gift of the mosque of Agades to the second Sultan of Air, who, we believe, reigned half-way through the fifteenth century. I prefer to consider that the mosques as a whole are not very old. Their style of construction demonstrates them to be more recent than the “A type” houses, though admittedly this view might have to be altered in the event of excavations providing additional or contradictory evidence.

Apart from the numerous places of prayer marked by a “Qibla” of a few stones laid on the surface of the ground or by a quadrilateral enclosure of small stones, I only came across one site which might have been a pre-Moslem place of worship adapted to the later Faith. In the upper part of the River of Agades, on the south shore below the cliffs, at the entrance of the gulf where the Akaraq valley joins it, there is a square enclosure marked by what looks like the remains of a wall of which only the foundations on the ground level survive. The walls may never at any time have been more than a few inches high; what remains is of stones set in mud cement. At each of the four corners of the square there was a large stone. The four sides, each of some 15 ft. long, were true and square and oriented on the cardinal points. The enclosure was obviously not that of a hut, nor like the ground-plan of any of the houses in Air. In the centre of the eastern side at a later period two standing stones had been set up. The stones were fossil trees, some other fragments of which were lying loose on the top of the neighbouring cliff. They had obviously been brought by human agency, as curious or interesting stones, from another place at no very remote period.[226] The two standing stones were about 2 ft. 6 in. apart. They were intended to mark the east, but were quite clearly later additions to the place, for they were merely standing, and not built into, the foundation of the enclosure. They were not even symmetrical or exactly in the centre of the side. The enclosure may, I think, be regarded as a pre-Moslem place of worship and not merely as a dwelling-house, because the "Qibla" pillars of an Islamic place of prayer could as readily have been set up elsewhere, had there not been a deliberate design to convert a site from one religious use to another. Its form does not resemble that of any of the usual buildings of Air. In the vicinity was a group of graves, some of which were circular enclosures, while others, obviously more recent in date, were oblong and correctly oriented from the Moslem point of view.

The graves and tombs of Air might well form the object of interesting archæological excavation. Many of them display an indubitably non-Moslem appearance. The most common type which continues throughout the period of Tuareg occupation in one form or another is a ring of stones set on edge around a raised area covered with small white pebbles. The grave is too low to be termed a tumulus or mound, it is convex or shaped like an inverted saucer, but the centre rises only a few inches above the surrounding ground. The ring of stones may be roughly circular, oval or elliptical. In the Moslem period the graves are definitely oblong, the major axis being directed north and south, in order that the body may be placed in the grave with the head turned towards the east. The older graves were the round, or elliptical enclosures, the latter with no fixed orientation; the earlier they are the more nearly circular they seem to be. This is especially noticeable in the case of the graves near, and probably contemporary with, the “A type” houses at Tabello. A large central circular grave is often surrounded by smaller oval ones lying in any direction, clustering about a more important burial.

The later Moslem graves are smaller, but the practice of covering the surface with white pebbles or chips of quartz continues. The shape becomes narrower, less circular and more inclined to turn into a rectangle. The appearance of head-stones or head and feet stones, which the Arabs call “The Witnesses,” coincides with correct Moslem orientation, but even in modern times it is rare to find any inscription. The few I saw were rough scratchings in Arabic script and sometimes, in T’ifinagh, of some simple name like “Muhammad” or “Ahmed.” I only saw one instance, at Afis, of an inscription of any length; it recorded the interment of a notable sheikh, and was scored with a pointed tool on a potsherd. Neither in the houses nor in the graves of Air is there any evidence of the Tuareg having attempted to cut stone. Even the petroglyphs are hammered and scratched but not chiselled.

A great deal has been written about the funerary monuments of North Africa known as the “argem.”[227] They are found in many parts of the Northern Sahara, in the Ahnet mountains and the Adghar n’Ifoghas, and in the Nigerian Sudan, but not in Tuat. They have been reported in the Azger Tassili, at In Azawa on the north road from Air and at several points in Air. Bates reports them in the Gulf of Bomba and in the Nubian cemeteries of Upper Egypt.[228]

They are enclosures of piled stones varying in shape from round to square, but generally the former; or they take the form of tumuli containing a cist or tomb. In certain cases the graves are described as surrounded by concentric circles of stones. The distribution of these “argem” recalls immediately the geographical situation of the Tuareg. It would be easy to assume that their existence was due to this people, were it not for the difficulty that the monuments all appear quite late in date. To quote Gautier[229]: “En résumé la question des monuments rupestres du Sahara, funéraires et religieux, semble élucidée, au moins dans ses grandes lignes. Le problème d’ailleurs, tel qu’il se pose actuellement, et sous réserve de découvertes ultérieures, est remarquablement simple. En autres pays, en particulier dans les provinces voisines d’Algérie et du Soudan, le passé préhistorique se présente sous des aspects multiples. En Algérie les redjems abondent, mais on trouve à côté d’eux des dolmens, quelques sépultures sous roche, pour rien dire des Puniques et Romaines. Au Soudan, comme on peut s’y attendre, en un pays où tant de races sont juxtaposées, le livre de M. Desplagnes énumère des tombeaux de types divers et multiples, poterie, grottes sépulcrales, cases funéraires, tumulus.[230] Rien de pareil au Sahara. On distingue bien des types différents de redjem, les caveaux sous tumulus du nord qui sont peut-être influencés par les dolmens et sépultures romaines, les redjems à soutaches du Tassili des Azguers, les chouchets du Hogar qui semblent nous raconter l'itinéraire et l'expansion des nobles Touaregs actuels. . . . Parmi tant de pierres sahariennes entassées ou agencées par l'homme, on n'en connaît pas une seule qu'on peut soupçonner de l'avoir été par une autre main que Berbère." But here the difficulty appears, for "ceci nous conduirait à conclure que les Berbères ont habité le Sahara dans toute l'étendue du passé historique et préhistorique si d'autre part tous ces redjems ne paraissaient récents. . . . Les mobiliers funéraires contiennent du fer, et on n'en connaît pas un seul qui soit purement et authentiquement néolithique. Cette énorme lacune est naturellement de nature à nous inspirer la plus grande prudence dans nos conclusions. D'autant plus que, après tout, les monuments similaires algériens, dans l'état actuel de nos connaissances, ne paraissent pas plus anciens."

While the distribution of "argem" seems then to coincide with, and be due to the Tuareg, the "Berbères" to whom Gautier refers arrived in North Africa and spread into the interior before the advent of the metal ages. The last word has certainly not been said regarding the age of these monuments, and in spite of this difficulty of dates I have little hesitation in finding in them evidence of the individuality and racial detachment of the Tuareg stock from that of the other Libyans, who do not seem to have used this funerary apparatus. After all, the late neolithic and early metal ages in inner Libya were hardly separate from one another, and in the south, where we know the Tuareg are only fairly recent arrivals, the lateness of the “argem” is readily understandable. But if we believe them to be due to the Tuareg, the earliest remains in the north must be far older than Gautier supposes.

Although certain remains of a presumed funerary or religious nature in Air have been described as “argem,” it has apparently escaped notice that both the pre-Moslem as well as the later graves of the country are all linear descendants of the older and more pretentious monuments. Yet if the term has any significance at all, there has been a tendency perhaps to describe rather too many enclosures as “argem.” Certain examples illustrated by Gautier are probably devoid of any spiritual significance. There are in Air, for instance, especially in the north of the country near Agwau, a number of groups of concentric stone circles, which were simply enclosures round temporary huts or tents. The old hut circles of the T’imia village (Plate 29) show clearly how an isolated example might be assumed to have been a prayer or religious enclosure. Again, the circular heaps of stones at Elazzas resemble the “argem” illustrated by Bates[231] so much that one might be tempted to conclude that they were such, if it did not happen to be known that they were the raised plinths on which huts used to be constructed. A deduction drawn from the occurrence of the latter might indicate that the origin of the true “argem” was derived from a desire to commemorate in death the only permanent part of a man’s hut dwelling in life. Such an explanation is not only permissible but even probable; it is even possible that in some cases tombs were actually made in the very floor of the hut or side of the pedestal where the deceased had lived.

In the lower Turayet valley in Southern Air I passed a number of graves which seemed to suggest an intermediate type between the large prehistoric “rigm” and the later small enclosure of stones covered with white pebbles. The Turayet graves were small circular platforms like the hut foundations at Elazzas, but not more than 10 ft. in diameter with vertical sides a few inches above the ground level and flat tops covered with white stones. The occurrence of these tombs on the Turayet valley, not far from the mouth of the Akaraq valley, where also is perhaps a pre-Moslem place of worship, and the existence of what may prove a pre-Moslem urn burial cemetery at Marandet, all of which places are in the extreme south of Air, are interesting points when it is remembered that the first Tuareg inhabitants of Air came to the country from the south. It may nevertheless be pure coincidence that there seemed to be fewer obviously ancient monuments in Northern Air than in the southern part.

The absence of funerary inscriptions is in marked contrast with the profusion of rock writings in Air. Written literature is, however, almost non-existent, but traditional poetry takes its place. The esteem in which poetry is held and the popularity which it enjoys are proof of the intellectual capacity which is present in this people.

When it is realised that, alone among the ancient people of North Africa, the Tuareg have kept an individual script, it seems extraordinary that drawing, painting and sculpture should have remained in so primitive a state. Even if we are to admit that the earliest and therefore the best of the rock drawings of North Africa are the work of the ancestors of the Tuareg, it is hardly possible to qualify them as more than interesting or curious. Few of them are beautiful. Some of the “Early Period”[232] drawings were executed with precision and care, but even if full allowance is made for the possibility of their having been coloured there are hardly any artistic achievements of merit. They do not bear comparison with the bushman drawings of South Africa, still less with the magnificent cave paintings of the Reindeer Age in Europe. But while some doubt exists regarding the authorship of the early drawings, the later North African pictures can be ascribed to the Tuareg without any fear of controversy. The Tuareg are still engaged in making them, but this modern work is even more crude. The drawings have become conventionalised; the symbols do not necessarily bear any likeness to the objects which they purport to represent.

The rock drawings in Air display continuity from bad examples in the style of the early period down to the modern conventionalised glyphs. In most cases both the early and the late work is accompanied by T’ifinagh inscriptions. The earlier drawings represent animals which exist, or used to exist, in Air. The most carefully executed I saw were in the valley leading up from Agaragar to the pass into the Ighazar basin above Faodet. The place was near some watering-point, used by the northern Salt Caravan from Air to Bilma. The pictures were somewhat difficult to see as they had in part been covered by later drawings. The execution was rough, consisting of little more than an outline with a few markings on the bodies of some of the animals. As in the late petroglyphs there was no chiselling or cutting: the lines were made by hammering with a more or less suitable instrument and then by rubbing with a stone and sand. Among the animals thus represented, the giraffe and the ostrich in a wild state survive south of Air. An antelope with sloping quarters and large lyre-shaped horns, the ox, the camel, the donkey, a horse, a large bird, and the human figure, both male and female, could also be traced. The large antelope I cannot identify for certain, but the large bird is probably the Greater Arab Bustard.

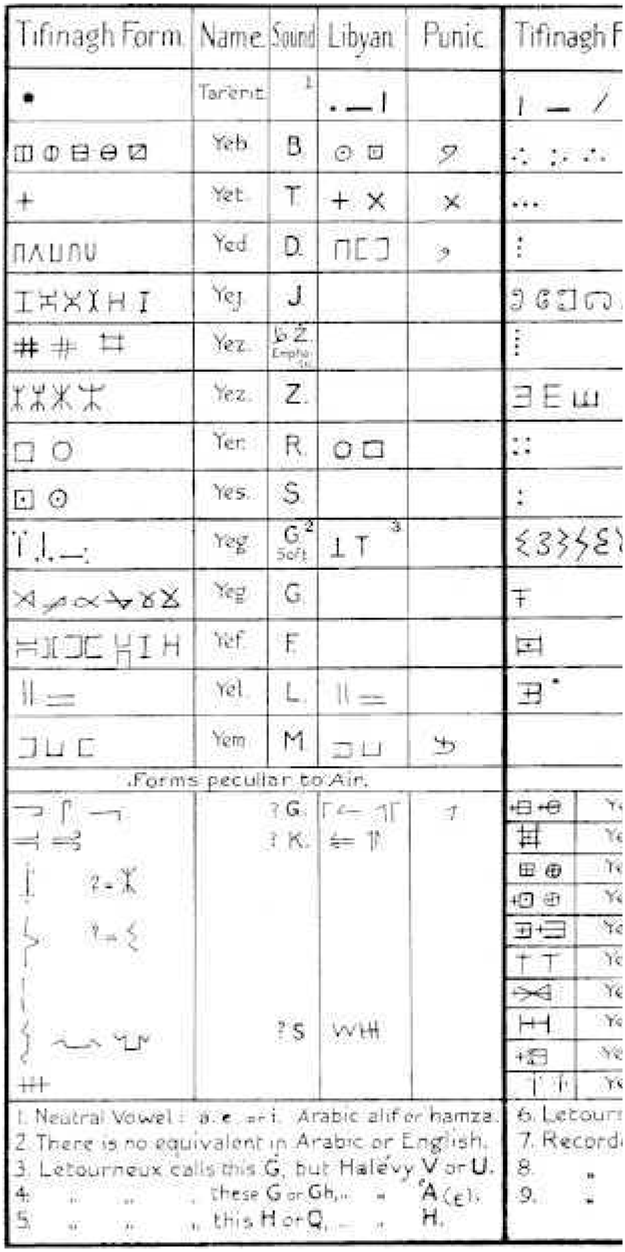
In the later work the conventionalised symbols remain fairly constant. The ox is shown as a straight line with four vertical lines representing legs, a clear indication of the hump, and two short horns. The rectangular camel symbol had become so debased that for a long time I was at a loss to interpret it. The representations of the human figure are only curious inasmuch as they emphasise the long robe worn by the Tuareg and sometimes the cross bands over the breast, so typical of the Libyans in the Egyptian paintings. An interesting point in these rudimentary examples of the pictorial art is that even in the early period they portray a similar fauna and habit of life to those of to-day. A faint Egyptian influence may be detected in the human figures. I know of no drawings in Air to compare with the ones found by Barth at Telizzarhen, nor any which appeared to have a religious significance. The most interesting example is certainly that of the ox and cart referred to in the following chapter.

The necessity of pictorial expression was evidently less felt than that of poetry, a condition to which nomadism has undoubtedly contributed. Yet even in ornament and draughtsmanship the Tuareg seem once to have reached a higher plane of civilisation in the past than that which they now possess and which their life has led them progressively to abandon.

They have little knowledge of history outside their own tribal or group lore with the exception of that modicum of knowledge derived from a superficial study of the Quran. At the same time, men like Ahodu have heard and remembered stories of the past such as those of Kahena, Queen of the Aures, and of her fighting against the Arabs. Their knowledge of local geography is enormous, of the general form or shape of North Africa small. They know of the Mediterranean and their language has a word for the sea. They have heard of the Nile, of Egypt, of the Niger and of Lake Chad, but they have only very vague inklings of the existence of Arabia or of the whereabouts of Istambul, where the Defender of the Faith lived. They can draw rough maps of local features on the sand and understand perfectly the conception of European maps on a wider scale. When I showed them an atlas with a map of the world and laboriously explained that it was a flat representation of a spherical object, Ahodu and Sidi surprised me by saying that they knew that the world was round, and that if you went in by a hole you would eventually come out on the other side. Duveyrier and others have been surprised at the knowledge of European countries and politics which they have found in the Sahara. The communication of news between distant parts of Africa is highly developed and at times astounding.

PLATE 33

TIFINAGH ALPHABE



Tifinagh Form	Name	Sound	Libyan	Punic
•	Tarerit	1	• — |	
	Yeb	B	⊙ ⊡	
+	Yet	T	+ ×	×
	Yed	D		
	Yej	J		
	Yez	[6] Z Emphatic		
	Yez	Z		
□ ○	Yer	R	○ □	
⊡ ⊙	Yes	S		
	Yeg	G[2] Soft	⊥ T [3]	
	Yeg	G		
	Yef	F		
	Yel	L		
	Yem	M		

Forms peculiar to Air.

Tifinagh Form	Name	Sound	Libyan	Punic
		? G		
		? K		
		? S		

1. Neutral Vowel: a. e. or i. Arabic alif or hamza.
2. There is no equivalent in Arabic or English.
3. Letourneux calls this G, but Halévy V or U.
4. " " " these G or Gh, " " ʿA (ع).
5. " " " this H or Q, " " H.

6. Letour
7. Record
8. "
9. "

If only on account of their script the Tuareg have deserved more attention in this country than they have received. I have no intention at this juncture of examining either T'ifinagh or Temajegh in detail, as they require study in a volume dedicated to them alone; but, as an ancient non-Arabic script which has survived in Africa, I cannot refrain from a brief description of the former. T'ifinagh is an alphabetic and not a syllabic script, but owing to the abbreviations practised in writing and the absence of all vowels except an A which resembles the Hamza or Alif, it has come to resemble a sort of shorthand. It is usually necessary to know the general meaning of any writing before it can be read. The T'ifinagh alphabet consists of between thirty and forty symbols varying somewhat from place to place. Duveyrier[233] collected an alphabet of twenty-three letters used in the north: Hanoteau,[234] who wrote the best grammar of Temajegh yet published, gives twenty-four letters: Masquerey[235] gives twenty-three letters for the Taitoq dialect and script: Freeman found twenty-five in the Ghadamsi Tuareg dialects. In addition to these letter symbols there are about twelve ligatures of two or sometimes three letters. All these signs are used in Air, but there are also certain additional symbols which may be alternative forms. Of the twenty-three to twenty-five letters in T'ifinagh, some ten only have been derived from the classical Libyan script as exemplified by the bilingual Thugga inscription now in the British Museum. Of these ten letters perhaps five have Punic parallels, while for the thirty known Libyan letters six Phœnician parallels have been found. It has hitherto been assumed[236] that the T'ifinagh alphabet was descended from the Libyan, which, it may be noted, has not yet been found in any inscription proved to be earlier than the fourth century B.C. Many theories have been advanced for the origin of the Libyan script, but Halévy is usually accepted as the most reliable authority on the subject. He supposed that the Libyan alphabet was derived from the Phœnician with the addition of certain non-Semitic symbols current nearly all over the Mediterranean. If this were universally admitted as the correct view it would still not be possible to explain why the T'ifinagh alphabet contains so many symbols which are not common to either the Libyan or Punic systems. On evidence which cannot here be examined in detail, it seems easier to believe that the ancestors of the Tuareg brought to Africa, or copied from a people with whom they had been in contact before reaching the Sahara, an alphabet replenished by borrowing certain symbols from a Libyan system partly founded on the Phœnician one. A consideration of this problem, like the one which concerns the Temajegh language itself, must be left to experts to resolve. As much false analogy and loose reasoning have been used on this question as on the subject of the origin of the Libyan races. One thing only seems to me to stand out, namely, that the T'ifinagh alphabet and Temajegh language were not evolved in Africa but came from without, probably from the east or north-east, into the continent, where they developed independently. To postulate an Arabian origin, for instance, for T'ifinagh and Temajegh could not be construed as evidence in support of any theory regarding the origin of the Tuareg themselves. Linguistic evidence is notoriously unreliable from the anthropological point of view, since more often than not it only indicates some cultural contact. The most interesting aspect of the linguistic question is the evidence which it may afford regarding the cultural development of the older Tuareg. In their present stage of development there is no reason for them to have retained, still less for them to have evolved by themselves, any form of script. Their mode of life does not necessitate the use of writing: they are for the most part illiterate or are in process of becoming so. To have had and in so far as they still use T'ifinagh, to have retained an individual script, is to my mind the most powerful evidence in favour of the conclusion to which I have already on several occasions referred, namely, their far higher degree of civilisation in the past.

In Air, T'ifinagh is dying out. One tribal group is famous for having retained it in current use more than any other section of the Southern Tuareg. The Ifadeyen men and women still read and write Temajegh correctly if somewhat laboriously. They use it for sending messages to each other or for putting up notices on trees or rocks, saying how one or other of them visited the place. Among most of the other tribes a knowledge of T'ifinagh is confined to the older women and a few men. The younger generation can neither read nor write either in T'ifinagh or in Arabic: the scribes and holy men usually only write in Arabic script. In the olden days all the Tuareg women knew how to write and it was part of their duties to teach the children.

The rocks of Air are covered with inscriptions which have neither been recorded nor translated. Owing to the changing linguistic forms of Temajegh and the absence of any very fixed rules for writing it, it is difficult to decipher any but the modern writings. Words are not separated, vowels are not written, and where one word ends with the same consonant with which the following one begins, a single symbol is usually written for the two.

PLATE 34

T’ifinagh script may be written from left to right or from right to left, or up and down or down and up, or in a spiral or in the boustrophedon manner. The European authors who have written of Temajegh have variously reproduced T’ifinagh running from right to left and from left to right, but the two best authorities, Hanoteau and de Foucauld,[237] have adopted the former direction. It ill becomes me to differ from such learned authorities, but the existence of certain inscriptions in Air leads me to believe that the left to right manner was, there at least, perhaps the most usual system. On Plate 40 is reproduced an *Arabic* inscription written by a Tuareg in Arabic characters running in the wrong direction, namely, from left to right, nor do I think the writer would have made this mistake unless he had been accustomed so to write in the only other script of which he could have had any knowledge, namely, T’ifinagh. The inscription, of course, records the common “La illa ilallah Muhammed rasul Allah.” I came across two or three other instances of the same sort.

The T’ifinagh inscriptions in Air, like the pictures with which they are so often associated, belong to all periods. Some of them certainly date back to the first Tuareg invasion.

There is a tradition that the Quran was translated into Temajegh and written out in T'ifinagh, a most improper proceeding from the Moslem point of view. But no European has seen this interesting book, which is said to have been destroyed. It may possibly have survived in some place, for Ahodu told me he had once seen a book in Air written in T'ifinagh, though all the documents which I found in the mosques were in Arabic calligraphy. Until a "Corpus" of T'ifinagh inscriptions has been compiled it will be very difficult to make much progress.

Such a collection would assist in the study of Temajegh itself, for the language is in a somewhat fluid state, tending to vary dialectically from place to place and period to period. It is one of the languages termed "Berber," the only connection in which I am prepared to admit the use of this word. By many it is considered the purest of the Berber forms of speech. Although related to such dialects as Siwi and Ghadamsi, and to western forms like Shillugh or the Atlas languages, Temajegh is distinct; it was not derived from them but developed independently, and probably preserved more of the original characteristics.

The relationship of the original tongue to the Semitic groups of languages has not yet been defined. The two linguistic families have certain direct analogies, including the formation of words from triliteral verbal roots, verbal inflections, derived verbal formations, the genders of the second and third persons, the pronominal suffixes and the aoristic style of tense. Nevertheless there are also certain very notable differences, like the absence of any trace of more than two genders, the absence of the dual form, and verbs of two or three or four radicals with primary forms in the aorist and imperative only. Berber does not appear to be a Semitic language. But the two are probably derived from a common ancestor.

The Air and Ahaggar dialects of Temajegh differ somewhat from each other. They are mutually quite intelligible, and so far as I could judge not more diverse than English and American. Barth stated that, unlike the rest of the Air Tuareg, the Kel Owi spoke the Auraghiye dialect, which is the name often given to the Ahaggar language. The name is, of course, derived from the Auriga or Hawara ethnic group, which, as we shall see, is the name of the parent stock of most of the Ahaggaren tribes. I have it on the best authority, however, of Ahodu, ’Umbellu and Sidi, that the Kel Owi language does not differ materially from the dialect of the rest of Air and am therefore at a loss to be able to explain Barth’s statement.

The absence of the Arabic ع (*’ain*) in Temajegh necessitates its transcription by the letter غ (*ghen*) which is so characteristic of Berber. In all words, therefore, adopted from the Arabic, and especially in proper names like ’Osman, ’Abdallah, ’Abdeddin, etc., the forms Ghosman, Ghibdillah, Ghabidin are used. The Temajegh letter (*yegh*) ⁝ or *ghen* is common and so strongly *grasseyé* that it becomes very similar to an R. The difficulty of transcription of the T’ifinagh into European languages is therefore very considerable,[238] for the R and Gh sounds are very confusing. In some T’ifinagh inscriptions the Arabic letter ع is frankly used when Arabic words occur.

The great feature of the Temajegh language and of the Tuareg is the diffusion of poetry. It is unfortunately impossible to give any examples in this volume, but the collections made by Duveyrier, Hanoteau, Masquerey, Haardt,[239] and de Foucauld[240] show the natural beauty and simplicity of this art among the People of the Veil. Their prosody is not strict, but nevertheless displays certain formality. Iambic verses of nine, ten and eleven syllables are the most usual forms of scansion, with a regular cæsura and rhymed or assonated terminations. In the matter of rhymes there is considerable freedom: the use of similarly sounding words is allowed. Terminations like “pen,” “mountain” and “waiting” would, for instance, all be permissible as rhymes. Poetry is sung, chanted or recited with or without music. The themes cover the whole field of humanity, from songs of love or thanksgiving to long ballads of war and travel. The Tuareg are in some measure all poets, but the women are most famous among them. They make verses impromptu or recite the traditional poems of their race which are so old that their origin has been forgotten. One hears of women famous throughout the Sahara as the greatest poets of their time.

Their way of life is attractive. These famous ladies hold what is called a “diffa,” which is a reception or “salon.” In the evening in front of their fires under an African night they play their one-stringed “amzad” or mandoline and recite their verses. Men from all over the country come to listen or take part. They seem to live and love and think in much the same manner as in Europe those of us do who retain our natural feelings. Only perhaps there are fewer *grandes dames* in Europe now than in the Sahara.

Poetry, music and dancing are all to a great extent branches of a single art in so far as they all depend on rhythm and seek to express the emotions. In Air the syncopated music of the negro has had more influence than in the north, so the “amzad” is less common. Their other instruments are drums, but the lilt of their dance is rather different from that of the south. Their improvised drums are most ingenious. There is the hemispherical calabash floating in a bowl of milk, the note of which varies according to the depth to which the gourd is sunk, and the millet mortar with a wet skin stretched over the mouth by two parallel poles weighed down with large stones lying across their ends. The other various drums of the Southland are also known and used by those who can afford them. The dances of the Tuareg men are done to a quick step on a syncopated beat. The most effective one is a sword dance by a single man running up to the drum and executing a series of rapid steps, with the sword held by both hands at arms’ length above the head. I have never seen any women dancing among the Air Tuareg and it is said not to be their practice. This may be so, for even among the men dancing is relatively uncommon and has probably been borrowed from the south. It seems hardly to be consistent with their grave and dignified demeanour, of which poetry is the more natural counterpart.

---

[216] Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 82 and 176.

[217] Called Assingerma on the Cortier map. Teghazar is the diminutive of Ighazar, and means a small river or torrent.

[218] Also spelt Reshwa. Von Bary calls the cone Teginjir, which is inaccurate.

[219] Which is also called Tellia, as Barth

refers to it.

[220]Richardson, *op. cit.*, Vol. II. p. 71.

[221]Naturally many more of the “B” houses than of the “A” class still have the roof on them.

[222]Cf. Chap. XI.

[223]The evidence for these movements is in Chap. XI.

[224]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 86.

[225]Jean throughout regards the Kel Owi as very ancient inhabitants of Air, but if due allowance is made for (as I think) this error and his traditions are not taken to refer to an earlier period than the one with which this group is associated, they are still valuable, from the comparative point of view.

[226]Fossil trees exist in the sandstone hills of Eghalgawen and T’in Wana, a few miles away.

[227]Or “rigm” or “rigem” in the singular.

[228]Bates, *op. cit.*, App. I.

[229]Gautier, *op. cit.*, p. 86.

[230]Desplagnes: *Le plateau Central Nigérien.*

[231]Bates, *op. cit.*, App. I., Figs. 90, 93 and 94.

[232]According to the classification of Pomel and Flamand. Cf. Frobenius: *Hadshra Maktuba*, and Flamand, *Les Pierres Ecrites*.

[233]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*

[234]Hanoteau, *Grammaire de la Langue Tamachek*, Algiers, 1896.

[235]Masquerey, *Dictionnaire et Grammaire Touaregs* (Dialect des Taitoq).

[236]As, for instance, by Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 88, following Halévy.

[237] De Foucauld, *Dictionnaire Touareg-Français*, 2 Vols., Alger.

[238] Hence the difficulty surrounding the writing of Ghat, or Rat or Rhat. I have used “gh” through this volume, but the French usually use “r.”

[239] See especially MM. Haardt and Dubreuil’s account of the Citroën Motor Expedition across the Sahara.

[240] In R. Bazin’s life of Père de Foucauld.

CHAPTER IX

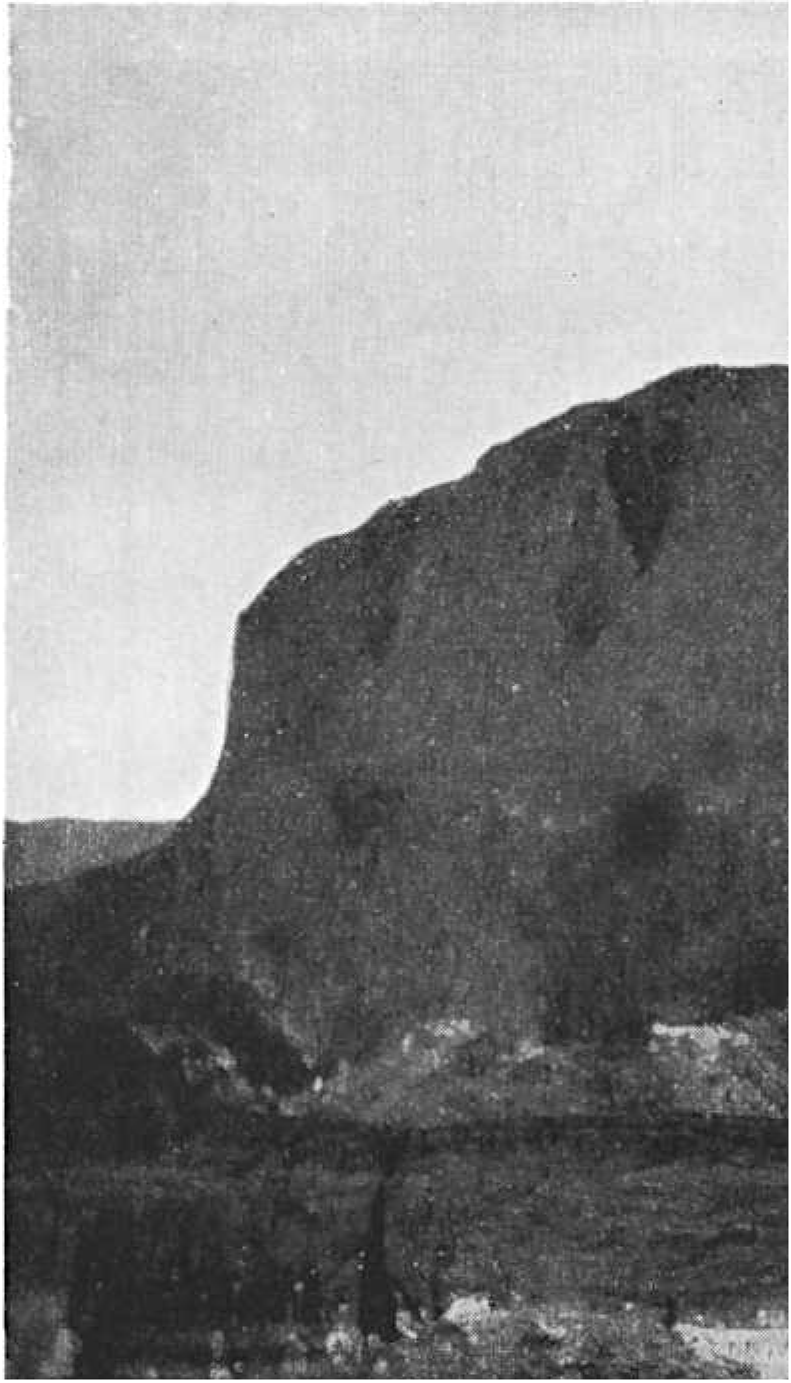
RELIGION AND BELIEFS

NOMINALLY at least all the Tuareg of Air are now Moslems with the possible exception of some of the Imghad of the Ikazkazan, who were described to me as Kufara (heathens). Nevertheless, even to-day the Tuareg are not good Moslems, and though, as a general rule, they say their prayers with regularity, they are remiss in such matters as ablutions. These they never perform except with sand or dust, which the Prophet enjoined were only to be resorted to on journeys or where water was scarce.

As was explained at the beginning of this volume, the word “Tuareg” is not used by the people themselves. It is used in the first place by the Arabs, in a somewhat derogatory sense. Barth makes no doubt about the etymology of the word Tuareg, or, as he spells it, Tawarek. “. . . if the reader inquires who gave them the other name (*i.e.* Tuareg), I answer in full confidence, the Arabs; and the reason why they called them so was probably from their having left or abandoned their religion, from the word ترك (as in), ‘tereku dinihum’; for from other evidence which I have collected elsewhere it seems clear that a great part of the Berbers of the desert were once Christians . . . and that they afterwards changed their religion. . . .”[241] The name is written either with a ك or a ق, but according to the learned traveller more often with the former letter. The form “Terga” or “Targa” would, however, if the word is identical radically with “Tuareg,” point to ق being correct in a country where this letter so often becomes a hard ج in the local Arabic. The singular form of “Tuareg” is “Tarki” or “Tarqi,” with both forms of plural, توارك and تاركيون. Duveyrier[242] and nearly all other authorities agree in accepting this etymology, though some have suggested that it meant “The People of the Sand.”[243] Others add, as an alternative explanation for the ترك derivation, that it was not so much Christianity from which they fell away but Islam after their conversion, and in support of this their laxity in ritual is quoted. Duveyrier says that they were the “Abandoned of God” on account of the delay in their conversion to Islam and the numerous apostasies which occurred, or else because of their evil and violent habits of life. There is no doubt of the reproach attaching to the word, but the etymology is unsatisfactory. In its original usage it seems to have referred rather to a section of the Muleththemin than to the whole race[244]: if this observation is correct the religious flavour attaching to the word is misleading, and it becomes simply a proper name belonging to a section analogous to that of the Sanhaja and Hawara.

The Tuareg of Air observe the usual religious feasts, but their fasting during Ramadhan, which they call Salla Shawal, like their ablutions, is usually excused on the grounds that they are travelling. On the first day of Ramadhan it is customary to visit the graves of ancestors and friends. The feast of Salla Laja or Laya is held on the tenth day of the moon of Zu'lhajja;[245] it is known in Turkey and Egypt as Bairam. On this occasion sheep are slaughtered and the people feast for three days. The feast of Bianu on the 20th of Muharrem is a sort of Saturnalia, and very similar to certain festivities described as occurring in Ashanti. The feast lasts for a day and a half and is marked by scenes of joy and happiness, for it commemorates God's forgiveness of humanity after the Flood. There is much dancing and love-making and laughter, and the old people, the children and the unmarried persons of the villages and camps are sent out of the settlements while the revelries are in progress. The feasts of the Birthday of the Prophet and of the Beginning of the Year are also celebrated. It is customary when a journey is successfully completed to give a sheep to be sacrificed for the poor, and when there is much sickness among men or camels the same habit obtains. When three of our camels had died in rapid succession at Auderas we were urged to make sacrifice, and did so with three sheep.

PLATE 35



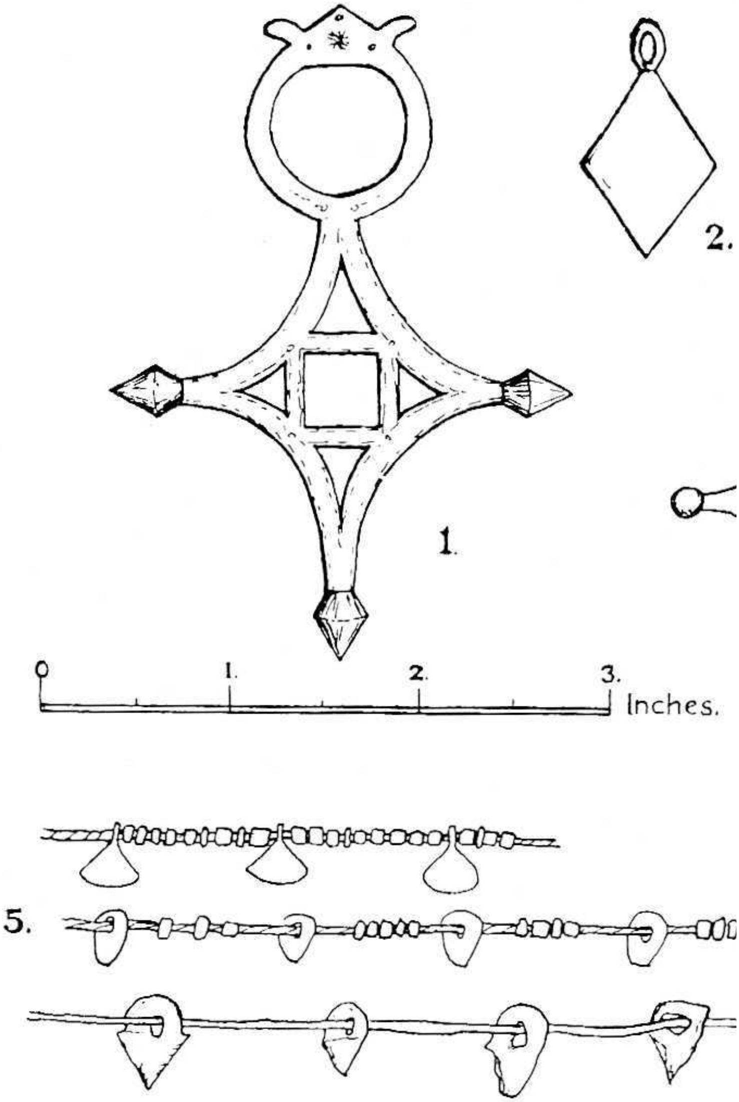
I regret that I was never sufficiently fluent in Temajegh to learn much of the superstitions of the Tuareg of Air. Such information can only be obtained after prolonged residence among a people, and superficial conclusions are worse than useless. There is no doubt that underlying all their Islamic practices they hold fundamental beliefs dating from their earlier religious practices, regarding which only very few indications are available. The existence of certain apparently Christian survivals led Duveyrier and other authorities to assert that the Tuareg were Christians before they were converted to Islam, and I am prepared to accept this view in spite of the denials which have been expressed by so eminent a writer as Bates. De Foucauld, I understand, was also doubtful of their having been Christians, for among the earlier beliefs which he found to be retained by the Tuareg of Ahaggar he detected the remains of a polytheistic rather than a monotheistic system. Bates has laboriously collected all the references to religious beliefs among the Eastern Libyans, and any reader interested in the subject cannot do better than refer to his work, for even as far as Air is concerned I can add nothing thereto.[246]

There are certain incontrovertible facts which demonstrate the influence, at least, of Christianity among the People of the Veil. Much has been written of their use of the cross in ornament, nor can its so frequent occurrence be entirely fortuitous. I am aware that the cross is a simple and effective form of decoration which any primitive people is likely, unless formally prohibited, to have used; but I find it hard to believe that the Tuareg, who, after all, are not so very primitive in their culture, however much of it they may have lost, had no other inducement than a lack of imagination to drag in at every turn this symbol which their religion expressly forbids them to use. Their cross-hilted sword, which has been likened to a Crusader’s, may be a chance example of the use of a design which is as convenient as it is simple, but the tenacity with which they cling to the form, and only to this form, is none the less curious. The cross in T’ifinagh script for the letter “Iet” (T) is doubtless a pure accident occasioned by the rectilinear character of the alphabet. But in that case the absence of the equally convenient diagonal or St. Andrew’s cross is strange. In other instances the appearance of the cross can be even less lightly dismissed. The traditional form of ornamentation on the Tuareg shield is purely and simply the Latin cross rising out of what in design, apparently, is a traditional representation of glory or light, depicted as a radiating mass. Bates argues that the occurrence of a drawing of a shield with a cruciform design thereon upon a rock in Tibesti is an argument against the view which I have adopted, and that the use of this symbol is probably due to a former practice of sun worship which he finds widespread in Libya. But when it is realised how much the Tuareg of Air, to consider only one group, raided in that direction, and how natural it would be for them to commemorate a success by drawing their shield and cross, which they regard as characteristic of themselves, on a rock, his explanation seems rather lame. In the curved top of the iron camel head-piece of Air I am inclined to see another survival of the cross, such as also is probably the square top of their spoons. The pommel of their camel saddle, a design which is always strictly maintained, is another convincing example, especially if the whole equipment is compared with the Tebu sort. In construction the Tuareg and Tebu saddles are very similar, though the cantle of the latter is generally low. The pommel of the Tebu saddle takes the form of a short upright member without any crosspiece or cruciform tendency; it rarely rises much above the level of the rider’s legs. It may be said, on the contrary, that the cross pommel of the Tuareg saddle is the most prominent part of their whole gear. It is of no practical value whatsoever, for the grip of the rider’s legs never reaches as high as the projecting arms of the cross-top, and it is extremely inconvenient for rapid mounting or dismounting in their flowing robes. The cross is also extensively used in ornamenting the leather-work of the saddle, and it plays a considerable part in the traditional metal-work of the more expensive quality.

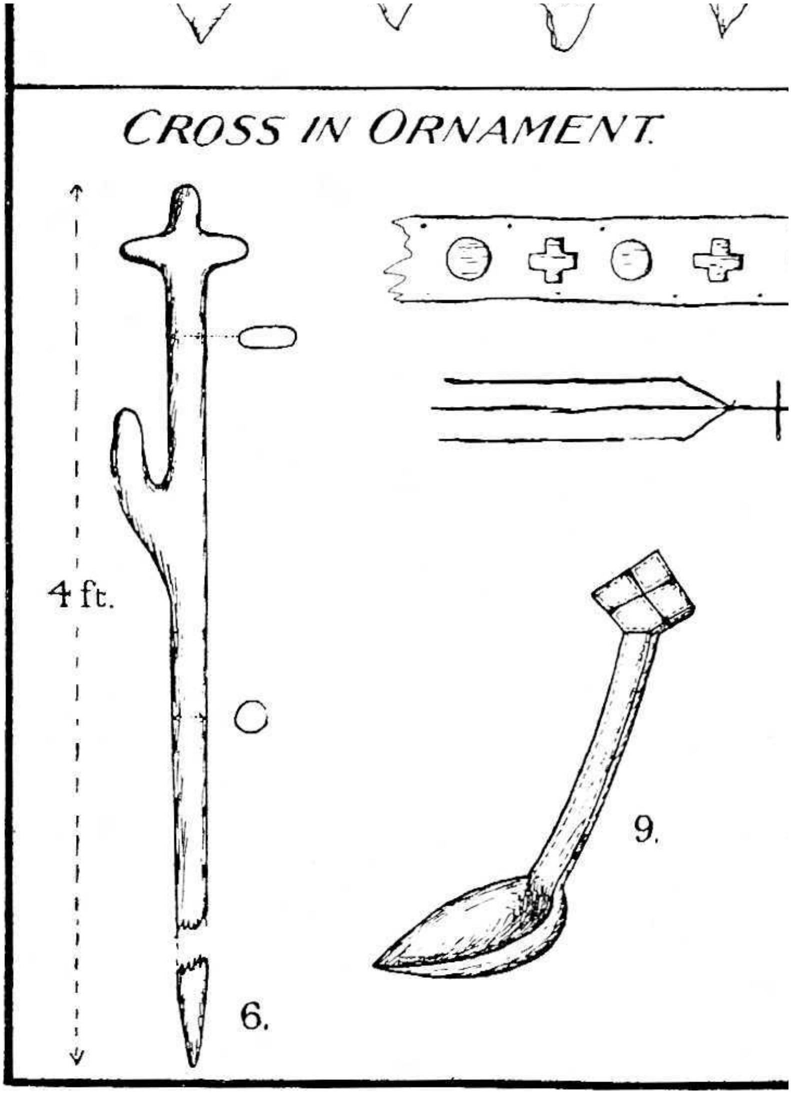
PLATE 36

ORNAMENT.

ORNAME


2.
1.
0
1.
2.
3.
Inches.
5.

CROSS IN ORNAMENT.


CROSS IN ORNAMENT.
4 ft.
6.
9.

1. "Agades Cross," ornate form.
2, 3 and 4. "Agades Crosses," debased forms from Damergu.
5. Necklaces.
6. Bridle Stand.
7. Ornamental strip around door at Agades made of tin plate.
8. Finial to border on riding saddles.
9. Wooden spoon.
10. Iron head-piece of camel-bridle.

In the course of my wanderings I saw two examples of sticks which are planted in the ground when camp is pitched; they have a crook on one side and are surmounted by a small cross of the same shape as the one on the camel saddle. On these sticks are hung the bridles and ropes when the camels are unsaddled. They are planted outside a man's tent, and sometimes indicate his high position or prosperity.

At Agades I saw a house door ornamented with a border of tin plate in which was cut the cross and ball design shown in Plate 36. A similar example of the cross in design is in the characteristic Agades cross which will be described later.

In addition to this evidence of the use of the cross, certain words in Temajegh seem to be so closely associated with Christianity as to require more explanation than the suggestion that they were borrowed from the north in the course of contact with the Romans or other Mediterranean influence. The commonest of these words are given in the following list:[247]

Word in Temajegh.	*Meaning.*	*Suggested derivation.*
"Mesi"	God.	Messiah.
With "Mesina," "Mesinak."	My God, Thy God.	
"Amanai."	God.	Adonai (suggested by Duveyrier).[248]
"Amerkid."	Religious merit.	From the Latin: merces, mercedis.
"Abekkad."	Sin.	„ „ „ peccatum.
"Tafaski."	Feast day.	„ „ „ Pasca, or from some later form of the word meaning Easter.

“Andjelous,” or “Angelous.”	Angel.	From the Latin: Angelus.
“Aghora,” or “Arora.”	Dawn.	„ „ „ Aurora.

In Air, God is referred to either as Mesi or as Ialla, which, of course, comes from Allah. But there seems to be a slight difference in the use of the two words, for when Ahodu and others talked of praying they spoke of Ialla, but when he said to me that they were aware there was only one God, who was mine as well as theirs, Mesi was used.

The cumulative effect of all this evidence is to my thinking too great for Bates’ view that the occurrence of the cross among the Tuareg is merely due to the survival of certain practices connected with the worship of the sun.

The Tuareg believe in Heaven and in Hell and in the Devil, but the latter seems to be a somewhat vague personage in their cosmos. Much more present are the good and evil spirits with which their world, as that of all Moslems, is peopled. Belief in these spirits among the Tuareg, however, is probably older than Islam, for they also assert the existence of angels who are indistinguishable from those of various Christian Faiths. Unfortunately the angels are less active in Air than the many other sorts of spirits who haunt the country. Among the latter are the Jinns or Elijinen,[249] as they call them, which are ghosts living in certain places or the spirits which attack people and send them mad. Certain countrysides are known to be haunted by the sounds of drumming, and curious things happen to people who visit these parts after dark. The spirits have to be fed, and bowls of porridge and water are left out for them at night; they are invariably found empty next morning. Occasionally the spirits make merry: then they can be heard to play the drum and dance and sing. Elijinen speak Temajegh and sometimes Arabic: people have spoken with them. The spirits are rarely harmful, though they occasionally play practical jokes like deceiving travellers or frightening sheep or goats. From time to time, however, they do torture unfortunate people who displease them.

The most powerful spirits in Air are identified with the mountains just north of Iferuan, called Ihrsan, opposite which are the mountains of Adesnu. In the olden time they fought against one another, the one armed with a spear and the other with a sword. In the equal combat Adesnu was transfixed and remains split to this day, while the crest of Ihrsan was battered with the sword and retains a serrated poll. They do not fight any more, but they often talk to one another. Aggata in Central Air is also the home of a spirit population, and so is Tebehic in the south.

Spirits are part of the every-day life of the universe. No one doubts their existence. They may be found anywhere, even in the open desert, where their drums are often heard. Evidence of such noises is so circumstantial; although I have never experienced them myself, I cannot fail to believe that they are heard. Some physical explanation on the lines suggested by the late Lord Curzon in an essay must certainly be accepted.[250]

The spirits which obsess men and women are more serious. I was able to observe a case at Auderas, where Atagoom’s sister became possessed—an affliction to which she had been liable for a long time at irregular intervals. Her fits lasted from one to seven days. She used to lie crouched and huddled all day, sometimes in uncomfortable postures, but not apparently suffering from muscular contraction or fits or spasms. At night she used to wander about oblivious of her surroundings, waking up the children or treading on the goats. Then she would seize a sword and wave it about, thinking she was a man and dancing like a man. It was said that if she could only get some sleep, the spirit would go away, so I provided a sleeping draught which her relations joyfully promised to administer. But they failed in their endeavours because the spirit, of course, knew what the medicine was and made the patient refuse to take it! The treatment for these possessions is both kind and sensible. Atagoom's relations sat around her trying to attract her attention, calling on her by name, and saying familiar things to her. All the while they beat a drum to distract the spirit's attention, and she was constantly called or given things to hold or shown a child whom she knew. As soon as the glassy stare leaves the patient's eye, and the attention can be caught, even for a moment, a cure is certain. Persons afflicted in this way are usually women; it will happen to them at the time they first become aware of men, which is not necessarily when they first marry, but this rule also has many exceptions. Atagoom's small brother, aged about twelve years, was shortly afterwards afflicted in the same way, but his access only lasted one day.

The difficulty of exorcising spirits, at which the Holy Men of Ghat, for instance, are said to be very proficient, is, as Ali explained, that most of the people in Air who can read the Quran do not understand it sufficiently well to do any good. Of course it was useless, he added, to make charms unintelligently against the "jenun." In Air there was only one man who is really proficient. El Mintaka, the scribe of Auderas, the man from Ghat, was said to know the method, but it was not his speciality and he had not been very successful.

The consensus of opinion is that, unlike many of the spirits at Ghat, where they take the form of objects like pumpkins rolling down the road in front of people who happen to be walking about at night, those in Air do not assume visible shape. The spirit which attacks women, nevertheless, is stated to have been seen by some people and to have the aspect of a dragon; it is called “Tanghot.” Ghosts, more especially the ones who live near tombs and deserted villages, are called “Allelthrap.”

A famous legend in Air is that of the column of raiders which by the mercy of Allah was swallowed up suddenly as a result of the prayers of the Holy Man Bayazid. They were on the point of capturing Agades when the ground opened before them, and in proof thereof the Hole of Bayazid is shown to this day. The famous event lives on in memory because at that place the water, which we have already seen is naturally somewhat saline and foul in the immediate vicinity of the city, is said to have been poisoned by the corpses of the band. There is another story, too vague to record, of a legendary hero or religious leader called Awa whose tomb in the Talak area is an object of devotion. The rumour may repay investigation, for the tomb was mentioned to me in connection with the religious practices of the Air Tuareg before they became Moslems.

Divination is resorted to by means of the Quran, and also by playing that curious game resembling draughts which is so widespread all over the world. In Air the game takes the form of a “board” of thirty-six holes[251] marked in the sand. Each player has thirteen counters made of date stones, or bits of wood, or pebbles, or camel droppings. The object of the game is to surround a pawn belonging to one's adversary, somewhat on the principle of "Noughts and Crosses." The game is called "Alkarhat" and when a Holy Man presides, the winner of three successive games carries the alternative submitted for divine decision. Another form of divination is resorted to by women who desire to obtain news of their absent husbands or lovers; they sleep on certain well-known tombs, and thus are favoured with a vision of their desire. The women of Ghadames and of the Azger Tuareg do the same. The practice appears to be identical with that described by Herodotus as current among the Nasamonians. It is also reported by Mela of the people of Augila.[252]

The consequence of these beliefs in spirits is that amulets are much in demand. They are especially in request to ward off the direct influence of particular evils, which are, of course, more especially potent when the local Holy Men have not been sufficiently regaled with presents. There is no man in Air who does not wear an amulet—usually a verse of the Quran in a leather envelope—somewhere on his person. The more modest may confine themselves to a little leather pouch tied in the white rag which is worn around the head to keep the veil in place. On the other hand, Atagoom, whose wealth permitted him the luxury, had little leather pouches sewn on to every part of his clothing in addition to some twenty-five strung on a cord round his neck. The manufacture of these amulets is the principal source of revenue to the Holy Men of Air. Besides verses written out on paper or skin other objects are also used. Lion claws are very efficacious, and in some cases fragments of bone of certain animals are good.

I saw one bag containing the head of a hawk, and another filled with pieces of paper covered with magic squares. These leather amulet pouches are the principal ornament worn by men, with the exception of the "talhakim," a most interesting object, the distribution of which in Africa still remains to be ascertained.

The "talhakim" is an ornament shaped like a triangle surmounted by a ring with three little bosses on its circumference. The material used for making these objects is red agate or white soap-stone or turquoise blue glass. They are so prized in the Sahara and Sudan that cheaper varieties of red and white china or glass were made in Austria before the Great War for trade purposes. The stone "talhakim" are not made in Air. They come from the north. I have it on the authority of Ali that they are not made at Ghat or in the Fezzan either, I have, however, still to learn where they actually are made. The stone "talhakim" are beautifully cut and invariably of the same design. The upper part of the triangle is sometimes slightly thicker than the point, and in all cases is divided from the ring part by a ridge and one or two parallel lines with the addition, in some cases, of little indentations. I can neither find nor suggest any explanation of the significance of the design. It may be the prototype of the Agades cross, but I do not think it likely. The bosses on the ring are essential to the design, and somewhat similar, therefore, are agate rings which I used to see worn in the same way as ornaments strung on leather cords around the neck; they seemed too small to be worn on the finger. Most of them had on one side three little bosses analogous to those on the upper portion of the "talhakim." These rings also came to Air from the north.

The flat tablet or plate of stone or wood hung around the neck, which is so widespread throughout the East, occurs in Air, but is not common. The finest example I saw was worn by a man at Towar; it was made of white soap-stone without any inscription on either surface, but was very thin and finely cut.

The women but not men wear necklaces of beads, or beads and small stone ornaments, resembling small "talhakim." It has been suggested that these little objects were similar to those which are known, as far afield as Syria, to have been derived from stone arrow-heads conventionalised as trinkets after they had ceased to be used for weapons. In Air, however, I am convinced the necklace ornaments are intended as small "talhakim," and I am loth to believe that the latter are conventionalised arrow-heads both on account of the difficulty presented by their large size and also on account of the essential upper ring portion, which points to a different origin. Circular bangles and bracelets with an opening between two knobs such as are worn in the north are affected by the Tuareg women; they are made of brass and copper and in some cases of silver. The workmanship of the latter, considering that they are made by the local blacksmith with his ordinary tools, is remarkably good. On these bracelets the knobs are surprisingly accurate cubes with the eight corners hammered flat, forming a figure having six square and eight triangular facets.

Of all the Air ornaments the so-called Agades cross is the most interesting. The lower part is shaped like the cross on the pommel of the camel saddle; its three points terminate in balls or cones. The fourth or upper arm of the cross fits on to a very large ring similar to that on the "talhakim," and curiously enough also provided with three excrescences, though in this case all near one another at the top of the circle. An elaborate form worn by Ahodu's wife had a pierced centre, but this was not generally a part of the design. A conventionalised form was seen among the Fulani and Kanuri of Damergu, where in one case the shape had been so lost that it had become a simple lozenge suspended from a small ring. In all the examples which I saw in Air the large ring of the ornament was obviously, as in the "talhakim," an essential part of the whole; all the rings also had the three protuberances on the circumference. The cross is worn by men and women alike; it is referred to as the Ornament of the Nobles. They regard it as characteristic of themselves. The stone "talhakim" is worn in the Sudan, but the Agades cross is only known in Damergu, where it has been borrowed as a result of contact with the Tuareg, and in a debased form. In Air it seems as characteristic of the race as the face veil, and like the latter it is never put off, as are the amulet pouches and garments when heavy work necessitates stripping.

PLATE 37

ABOVE: FLAT SILVER ORNAMENTS, “TALHAKIM” OF RED STONE, BLUE

BELOW: UNFINISHED AND FINISHED ARM RINGS, SILVER “AGADES CRO

The origin of both “talhakim” and cross must remain matters of conjecture. The former may or may not be, but the latter certainly is, peculiar to the People of the Veil; its occurrence is yet another example of the deep-rooted habit of mind which inculcates the use of the cross among the race. The ideal explanation, in view of the common characteristics of the ring and three excrescences thereon, would be that the “talhakim” and cross had an identical origin. But the cross suggests association with Christianity, while the large ring points rather to some derivation from the Egyptian Ankh: the latter in my own opinion is more probable.

Two other adornments there are in Air, both restricted to men: a flat plaque and stone arm rings. The former is a flat rectangular piece of tin or silver, usually 2½ to 3 inches long by 1 inch broad, with some slight embossed design on the surface. It is often worn on the head, tied by two little thongs or threads to the band of stuff which is used to secure the veil around the forehead. The ornament may simply be a metal form of amulet pouch, but it certainly bears a striking resemblance to a fibula, which in the course of time for the sake of easier manufacture is turned out without a pin. The plaque is also worn on the shoulder, like certain classical brooches were on the Roman togæ, from which the white robes of North Africa are said to be descended. [253]

No man among the Tuareg will be seen who does not wear one or more arm rings, usually above the elbow and upon either or both arms. The rings are of two main types, a cylindrical ring some ¾ to 1 inch deep by ⅛ to ¼ inch thick, and of the circumference of a man’s forearm, with two or three ridges on the outer surface, and a flat ring some ¼ inch thick, of the same inner circumference, and ¾ to 1 inch broad. The second type is the most important and appears to be the traditional sort. Deep significance is to be attached to the custom of wearing these rings, and there are differences attributed to the numbers and position of the rings on the arms. But whilst I was well aware of the importance of these usages, I was unable to ascertain their precise interpretation. Only it is clear that boys do not wear the rings, that a ring is worn when the sword is girt on, that in the first place only one ring is worn, and that once a ring has been put on it is not again put off. The rings of all types should be made of stone. In Air a soft argillaceous stone of a greenish-grey hue found in the eastern hills is used. The rings are cut by hand without a lathe from a lump of stone about one inch thick. The rough ring is smoothed and fined down with rasps and files and finally cleaned with sand and water. The traditional flat rings tend to taper from the inner to the outer circumference. When the cutting and shaping of the rings have been finished, they are dipped in fat and then baked, to give the slightly porous stone a deep black colour and a polished surface. The flat rings seem to be very important, for they are passed on from father to son. They are often mended with riveted brass plates if they happen to have been broken, and sometimes bear inscriptions, for the most part only names, in T’ifinagh. Of late, rings appear to have been made of a hard baked clay which is also dipped in fat, but they break too readily.

Elaborate and fanciful explanations have been suggested for the practice, which has a sacred or at least mystic association. One author, who shall be nameless, has suggested that the rings were worn—

and presumably he saw a Tuareg with many rings on both arms—to enable a man to crush his enemy's skull when they closed in battle. I myself cannot offer any explanation worthy of much consideration. I must, however, note that such rings, especially when worn, as some always are, above the elbow, and also at the wrist, afford a valuable protection to the vulnerable arm muscles against sword-cuts. Nevertheless, if such was the reason for their first use they have become traditional with the lapse of time.

The last of these matters to which I propose to allude is the use of the Veil, a practice which has certainly assumed a ritual form. No self-respecting Tuareg of noble or servile caste will allow himself to be seen even by his most intimate friends without a veil over his face. The habit has no analogy in the practice of the Arabian Arabs, who sometimes cover their faces with the ends of their head-cloths to protect the mouth and face against the sun and sand. This is a hygienic device[254]; the Tuareg veil is more mysterious. Not the least of the difficulties connected with the veil is, that it is not mentioned by classical authors in referring to people in North Africa who seem to be the ancestors of the present Tuareg and otherwise to correspond to descriptions of the latter. It is only with the advent of the Arabic writers that these same people are first referred to by the name of Muleththemin, the Veiled People.

The veil or "Tagilmus" is a long strip of indigo cloth woven and dyed in the Sudan. The best quality is made of six narrow strips about one inch wide sewn together, edge to edge. The material and the open stitching leave plenty of room for the air to pass through, and even a considerable degree of transparency. The veil is put on in the following wise: about one-half of the length is folded over three times into a band only 2½ inches wide. The part where the full breadth begins is placed over the forehead low enough to cover the nose; the narrow band is to the right, the broad part to the left. The latter is then passed round the back of the head and looped up under the narrow part, which is wound around the head on top of the broad portion so as to hold the latter in place. The broad part over the nose is pulled up into a pleat along the forehead and forms the hood over the eyes, being called "temeder." There remains a long loop of the dependent broad portion held by the narrow fastening band: it hangs loosely from over the right ear, behind which it is passed, over to the left ear, behind which the end is brought and passed, under the narrow fastening band running round the head. The lower part of the veil thus falls below the wearer's chin in a loop, both ends being under the narrow band which holds them in place. The centre of the strip is taken and placed on the bridge of the nose, and all the slack is pulled in from the two points over the ears. The lower part of the veil, called "imawal," should now hang from the bridge of the nose over the mouth and chin without touching them; the upper edge from the nose to the lobes of the ears ought to be nearly horizontal. Thus worn, the veil leaves a slit about ½ to 1 inch wide in front of the eyes, which, with a small part of the nose, are all that one can ever see of a Tuareg's face.

In this veil the men live and sleep. They lift the "imawal" up to eat but in doing so hold their hand before the mouth. When the veil requires re-fixing, a man will disappear behind a bush to conceal his features even from his own family. These rigorous prescriptions are to some extent less strictly observed in the south among the younger generation, but they belong to the pride of race of the Tuareg. Even when the French induced some Tuareg to visit Paris, they declined to allow their photographs to be taken unveiled. They declared that they had no Moslem prejudices on the subject but firmly refused to entertain the idea.

What is the explanation of this curious habit? Every unlikely theory has been advanced, from that of the desire of raiders to conceal their faces in order to escape recognition, to the one which suggests that the Tuareg were the Amazons of the classics, and that the habits adopted by men and women respectively in such a society had become confused. Of this order of hypotheses the simplest one is that which explains the veil as a purely hygienic accessory designed to protect the wearer against the blinding glare and the sand of the desert: from the first use of the veil for this purpose the habit gradually became so innate as to acquire a ritual significance.

But none of these theories are really tenable: the Tuareg recognise each other, and foreigners can do the same in a short time, as easily in the veil as a man of another race without the veil. The Tuareg are not the Amazons of the classics, at least in the form in which popular beliefs have conceived the latter; nor is there, as a matter of fact, any reason to suppose that the Amazons, either male or female, veiled themselves. There is no logic in only the men veiling their faces and the women going unveiled if the veil were really intended for hygienic purposes; still less is any explanation of this nature reasonable for the use of the veil at night or in the rainy season. Yet almost all Tuareg, unless they have become denationalised, would as soon walk unveiled as an English man would walk down Bond Street with his trousers falling down. No other race in the world possesses this peculiar habit, though some among the population of the Fezzan and the Sudan in contact with them have adopted it. The habit is essentially characteristic of the Tuareg. It is as typical of them as the cross-hilted sword, the cross-pommelled saddle, the status of their women, and their T'ifinagh script.

On attaining the age of puberty, Tuareg youths in Air put on the large trousers which all Moslems should wear, and soon afterwards they begin to carry a sword and wear an arm ring. The first event may take place when they reach sixteen or seventeen; the others, two or three years later. As soon as they have put on the dress of a man they are inscribed in the register of the Holy Man of their village or tribe and they commence their individual existence. The veil, however, is sometimes not donned until the mature age of twenty-five years; in no case is it worn until several years have elapsed after the sword is girt on. The ceremony of putting on the veil for the first time is accompanied by much rejoicing in the family and feasting and dancing.

Two aspects of this habit strike one. In the first place the ceremonial significance to which I have already alluded is very apparent, and in the second place the comparatively late age at which the veil first begins to be worn is curious in an Eastern people, where physical development takes place early in life. A parallel may perhaps be noticed in the late date at which marriages take place in Air. I questioned Ahodu closely about these practices connected with the veil, but obtained no satisfactory information: he had nothing to say on the subject except that a man was not a proper man until he had put on the veil. And there, for the moment, one must leave the matter.

The veil will be found wherever the Tuareg live, and only when the riddle of their origin is solved will an explanation probably be forthcoming. Equally obscure is the absence of any reference to the veil among them until the time of the Arab authors. But up to the present no reasonable theory has been advanced.

Mention has been made on several occasions of the Holy Men of Air. As is natural among superstitious people, they have always been a powerful part of the community. In mitigation, it must be said that they have probably had a hard fight to keep the Tuareg in the way of Islam at all. Where Europeans have been concerned their influence has been uncompromisingly hostile. It was certainly the Inisilman, as they are called in Temajegh, of T'intaghoda who tried to have Barth and his companions killed on more than one occasion. The attack on the Foureau-Lamy Mission at Iferuan was also due to them. Their counsel to fall on the French expedition a second time would have prevailed at Agades had it not been for the advice of Ahodu and the common-sense of the Sultan, who replied to their promptings that if the attack failed he would have to face the consequences alone, while they, in the name of God and the Faith, saved their own skins.

With an effete monarch and lazy Añastafidet at Agades, the most important men in Air to-day are Inisilman like Haj Musa of Agellal, Haj Saleh of the Kel Aggata at Agades, Agajida of the Kel Takrizat,

’Umbellu of T’imia, and Abd el Rahman of the Ikazkazan. Their influence is not exerted through sectarian organisations nor has any “tariqa” like that of the Senussi taken root in Air. The Tuareg have repeatedly come under the influence of the Senussiya, especially during the late war, but in Air at least they never became affiliated to the sect. They have continued to regard its tenets as heretical and its policy as selfish.

A certain number of the Air tribes such as the Igdalen, Kel Takrizat, Isherifan, etc., are reputed to be holy. The Igdalen are said not to carry or resort to arms, but use only pens and prayer. It is difficult to ascertain the exact nature of the distinction which they possess over other noble tribes, but the same differentiation is known among other sections of the People of the Veil. They cannot and do not claim descent from the Prophet, nor are their lives any holier or in the main different from those of their fellows. The Kel T’intaghoda who are Inisilman are reputed even in Air to be great scoundrels. The Kel Takrizat are not less warlike than other tribes. Their *raison d’être* must be sought in the shadowy past to which all problems surrounding the early religion of the Tuareg are still relegated. On this subject too little information is at present available.

The people of Air belong to the Maliki persuasion of Islam, as a result of the teaching of a great leader who came amongst them in the early sixteenth century. His name was Muhammad ben Abd el Kerim el Maghili, surnamed El Baghdadi, and he was the Apostle of Islam in the Central Sudan. El Maghili belonged to Tilemsan and was born either at that place or in Tuat, where he was brought up. He was a contemporary of El Soyuti (A.D. 1445-1505), the Egyptian, whose encyclopædic works were destined to perpetuate Moslem learning of the fifteenth century. El Maghili was a man of bold and enterprising character. By his uncompromising fanaticism he stirred up massacres of the Jews in Tuat, which he eventually left in order to convert the Sudan. He preached in Katsina and in Kano, as well as in Air.[255] "Living in the time when the great Songhai empire began to decline from that pitch of power which it had reached under the energetic sway of Sunni Ali and Muhammad el Haj Askia, and stung by the injustice of Askia Ismail, who refused to punish the murderers of his son, he (El Maghili) turned his eyes on the country where successful resistance had first been made against the all-absorbing power of the Asaki, and turned his steps towards Katsina." On his way thither he passed through Air, where he preached and gave to those Tuareg who were already Moslems a way of salvation, and to the others the first beginnings of their present Faith. He founded a mosque at Abattul near Auderas, and one of his sons is said to have been buried there; the tomb at least is described as his. A short distance away on the road north from Auderas he knelt to pray in the Erarar n'Dendemu at the point known as Taghist, and the place was marked by a roughly rectangular enclosure of stones with a semi-circular bay in the eastern side near a small tree marking the Qibla. Travellers always stay there to make their prayers by the road. The place is remembered and far-famed as the "Makam el Sheikh ben Abd el Kerim," but others call it the "Msid Sidi el Baghdadi," the name by which he is usually known in Air, where men who have lived long in the East often earn this surname. His stay in Air was not entirely peaceable, for he was eventually driven out by these lax Moslems on account of his uncompromising attitude. It is reported traditionally that he was attacked by a party of Aulimmiden in Western Air, but was not apparently killed, for thereafter he again preached in Katsina. He eventually heard that one of his sons had been murdered in Tuat, probably by the Jews, for motives of revenge, and he set out for the north once more, but died before reaching the end of his journey. It is probably to this period that the attack in the west on his person must be referred. His death occurred between A.D. 1530 and 1540. El Maghili left behind him the greatest name of any religious teacher in Air and in the Central Sudan. Twenty volumes of his works on law and theology, in addition to a correspondence in verse and prose with El Soyuti,[256] have survived in various places.

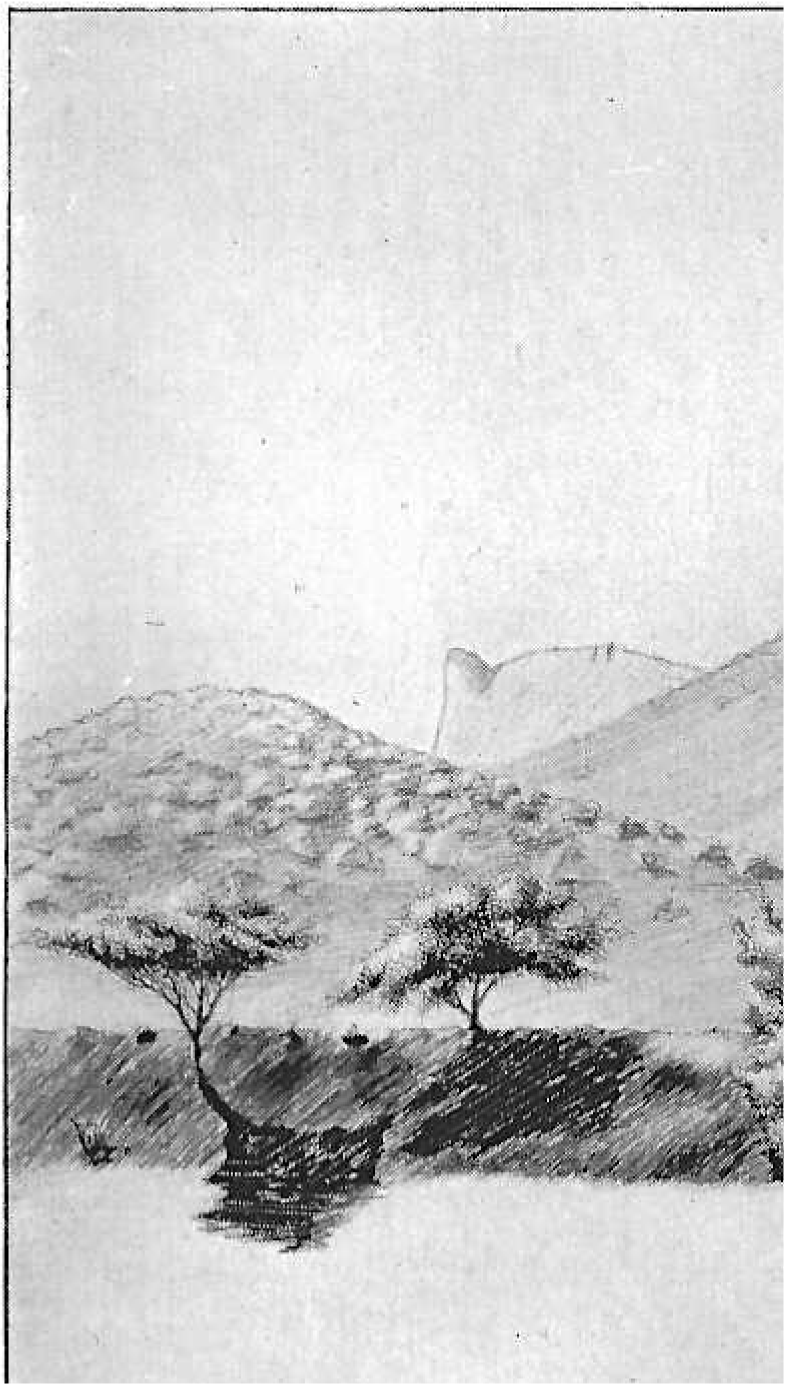
Near the “Makam el Sheikh ben Abd el Kerim,” which is only one of many similar prayer enclosures in Air, are some mounds of loose stones. On every important road such enclosures and mounds may be seen. The simplest form of praying-place is a semi-circular line of stones; the larger places have a rectangular plan like the mosques. Whenever a standing camp is set up, a place of prayer is cleared and marked, and once made these hallowed areas are not disturbed. The mounds of stones by the roadside mark spots where some holy man has stopped to pray or where some equally important but long since forgotten incident has befallen. But although oblivion may have overtaken the event, passing caravans continue to commemorate the place; each man picks up a stone and throws it on the heap. The habit is good, for it clears the paths of loose stones. I acquired much respect by observing the custom scrupulously myself. I made my men do the same, and so assisted in perpetuating a highly commendable and utilitarian practice. Thanks to the many prayers which El Baghdadi must have said all over the neighbourhood, the paths over the Erarar n'Dendemu have been cleared of loose stones. The heaping of stones serves the additional purpose of marking tracks in a difficult country. Where rocks abound or the exact way through a defile is hard to find, it has also become the habit to indicate the way by placing different coloured stones in little heaps on the guiding rocks. It is a superstition that if the traveller does not either add to a mound or help to mark a path, some evil will befall him by the way.

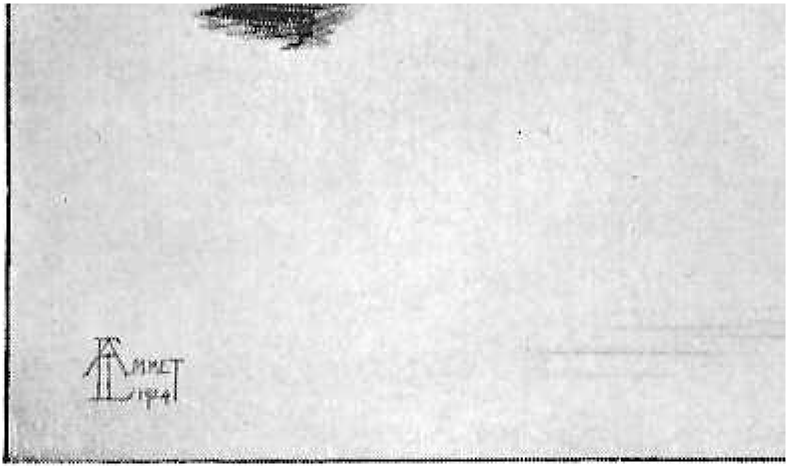
In spite of the proselytising of El Baghdadi and the Holy Men of Air, much of the older Faith remained. They were unable to eradicate the use of the cross. The people are also given at times to using camel bells despite the injunctions of the Prophet, who denounced it as an object associated with Christianity. It is also possible to see in the status of women the practice of monogamy, the ownership of property by women, and the treatment of the wife as her husband's equal, survivals of a state of society which must in many respects have been regarded by El Baghdadi as heretical and tending towards Christian ideals.

Is there after all any difficulty in accepting the view that the Tuareg were Christians before Islam in the Near East became victorious over all that schismatic and heterogeneous Christianity of the Dark Ages which did so little credit to the religion which we profess? There was a time when the Bishoprics of North Africa were numbered by the score. What was more natural than that Christianity should have spread into the interior? When the Arabs first came into Africa, we are told by Ibn Khaldun and El Bekri that they found in Tunisia and Algeria a majority of the population apparently Christian. Certain “Berber” tribes, however, were Jews, while the Muleththemin, in part, were heathens. The profession of Judaism by people including the inhabitants of the Aures hills, who had Kahena the Queen as their leader in the eighth century A.D., means no more than that they professed some form of monotheism which is not inconsistent with Aryan Christianity. But in any case Christianity was quite sufficiently widespread to have accounted for the survival of certain beliefs among the People of the Veil. Even so remote a part of Africa as Bornu was known to have been subjected to the influence of Coptic Christianity from the Nile Valley, and we have Bello’s testimony that the Gober chiefs were Copts. [257] Why, then, should not the Tuareg have been Christians too?

Neither to Islam nor to Christianity, however, can be attributed what is susceptible only of explanation as a survival of totemism. The Northern Tuareg[258] believe that “they must abstain from eating birds, fish and lizards, on the score that these animals are their mothers’ brothers. This reason at once suggests that these taboos are both totemic and matriarchal in their origin”; but while the facts have been alluded to by many authors, the possibility that the taboos may be of recent and therefore of Sudanese, origin has not been sufficiently taken into account.[259] As against their southern origin—for birds and fishes are recognised as totemic animals, in Nigeria, for instance—it may be pointed out that no proscription against these animals obtains in Air. Instead, however, another taboo is strongly indicated in the belief which the Tuareg of the latter country hold, that the harmless and vegetarian jerboa is second only in uncleanliness to the pig. Any food or grain which the jerboa has touched must be destroyed, but rats and mice are not abhorred, and the large rat or bandicoot of the Southland is even eaten. Bates cites examples of the ceremonial eating of dogs among the Eastern Libyans, and considers that this may also have been a taboo animal, but these rites are not found in Air, where the eating of dogs, pigs, horses, donkeys or mules in any circumstance is regarded as infamous. Incidentally the prohibition regarding pigs is probably very old, for Herodotus states that none of the Libyans in North Africa bred swine in his day, and the women of Barca abstained from eating pork, as well as in certain cases cow’s flesh, on ritualistic grounds.[260]

PLATE 38





I have a distinct impression of an animistic view of nature among the Tuareg in Air, but I am unable to base it on any tangible evidence. Herodotus tells us that the Libyans sacrificed to the sun and moon,[261] and Ibn Khaldun[262] certainly states that the early Berbers generally worshipped the sun. Bates deduces that the Eastern Libyans revered the sun, and connects their rites with bull worship and the Egyptian deity Amon. The only surviving Libyan name for the solar deity is preserved by Corippus as Gurzil.[263] A trace of sun worship survives in Air perhaps in association with the Kel Owi tribes. When the sun is veiled by white cloud in the early morning and the temperature is low, it is customary to say that “it is as cold as the mother of the Kel Owi,” or “the mother of the Kel Owi is cold.” I asked for an explanation of the remark, and was told that the sun was the mother of the Kel Owi, and that when the early morning air was cold the saying was used, for the Kel Owi are known to be ungenerous and mean.

The weather superstitions of the Tuareg are numerous. The climate on certain mornings of the year is heavy and still, with a thick cirro-cumulus cloud in the sky; when this occurs it is held to presage some evil event. A north-west wind, with the thick haze which so often accompanies it, indicates the advent of raiders from the north, probably because in the past some famous raids have occurred in this weather. Similarly a haze without wind, or a light north-east breeze and a damp mist, are warnings of Tebu raids. The fall of a thunderbolt is a very evil omen, as also is the rare form of atmospheric phenomenon to which the general name of “Tufakoret” is given. It consists of a slight prismatic halo around the sun in the clear morning sky when there is no evident sign of rain. The phenomenon is probably due to the refraction of low sunlight in semicondensed water vapour derived from heavy dew. A sunset behind a deep bank of cloud causing a vivid or lurid effect but obscuring the disc of the sun is also called “Tufakoret” and is equally a bad sign. A morning rainbow “Tufakoret” was seen in Air shortly before the late European war broke out. An ordinary rainbow in wet weather is a good omen.

The two most noticeable virtues among the Tuareg, that of patience and of a sense of honour, have not come to them from Islam. They are attributable to something older. Their patience is not that of quietism or of fatalism. It is rather the faculty of being content to seek in the morrow what has been denied in the present. They take the long view of life and are not querulous; they are of the optimistic school of thought. Theirs has seemed to me the patience of the philosopher and not the sulky resignation of a believer in pre-ordained things.

Their ethical standards of right and wrong, while differing profoundly from our own, and in no way to be commended or condemned in our shallow European way, seem to come from some older philosophy, some source less obvious than their present religion. Not only have they standards which the Quran does not establish or even approve, but they hold certain codes of conduct for which there can be no legislation. When right and wrong, or good and evil, are not obviously in question, and a Tuareg will still say that a man does not do a thing because it is dishonourable and an action such as no Imajegh would commit, it must mean that his forefathers did learn in an ancient school to seek some goal which is no reward in the present material life.

Such development is only found in societies, whether Christian, Moslem or otherwise, which have for long been evolving under the guidance of a few men who have learnt much and taught much. Yet the feet of the Tuareg are not now kept in this way; their conduct is unconscious. They are no community of philosophers seeking by choice to live in primitive conditions for the betterment of their souls. They hold what they have as an inheritance of grace from bygone generations. In mind, as in custom, they are very old. Only a slight glow of the past glory remains to gild the meanness of their perpetual struggle and the eternal hardship of existence. It is doubtful whether they could still be caught and moulded afresh. There is too little left of the now threadbare stuff; it just survives in the clean air of the desert; it would fall to pieces in the atmosphere of more luxurious circumstance. And then, nothing would remain but lying tongues and thieving hands unredeemed by any saving grace.

---

[241] *Op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 227-8.

[242] *Op. cit.*, p. 317.

[243]From "Reg" or "Areg," an Arabic geographical term for a certain type of sandy desert.

[244]*Vide infra*, Chap. XI.

[245]Not, I think, Zu'lqada, as Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 224, suggests. It is properly the greater Bairam, though sometimes known as the Lesser. Sale: *Koran Prelim. Dis.*, § VII.

[246]Bates, *op. cit.*, Chap. VIII.

[247]Cf. Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 414. Cortier: *D'une rive à l'autre. . . .*, p. 283. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. V. p. 570.

[248]Perhaps a connection with "Amana," pardon, etc., may be suggested.

[249]From the Arabic "el jenun."

[250]Curzon: *Tales of Travel*, p. 261. "The Singing Sands."

[251]Jean says forty: cf. *op. cit.*, p. 215.

[252]Herodotus, IV. 1723. Mela, i. 8. Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 415. Ben Hazera: *Six mois chez les Touareg du Ahaggar*, p. 63.

[253]Worn by Arabs and Berbers but not, normally, by Tuareg.

[254]The illustration of the Persian in Maspero's *Histoire Ancienne*, Chap. XIII, is an example of the use of the head-cloth in early times as a protection in the Arabian manner.

[255]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 386-7; Vol. II. pp. 74 and 76; Vol. IV. p. 606.

[256]C. Huart: *Arabic Literature*, pp. 383-4.

[257]*Vide infra*, Chap. XII.

[258]Cf. especially Ibn Khaldun *ed. cit.*, I. 199-209.

[259]Bates, *op. cit.*, pp. 176-7.

[260] Herodotus, II. 18 and 47, and IV. 186.

[261] *Ibid.*, IV. 188.

[262] Ibn Khaldun, IV. p. 89.

[263] Corippus, Johannis, IV., *passim.*

CHAPTER X

NORTHERN AIR AND THE KEL OWI

When I returned to Auderas from Tabello I found the valley had dried up very much. The hamlets were already in great part deserted. The people had moved out of the settlements with their flocks in search of better pasture than could be found on the parched trees and straw of the little valleys. Ahodu, temporarily relieved of his authority pending an adjudication in Agades on a dispute regarding the possession of certain date palms, was living about two miles down the valley with a part of our camels and his own goats and sheep. I was now anxious to stay as short a time as possible in this part of the country, since I wanted to see the north during the time which remained before I was due to return to England. Ahodu himself was unable to come with me, but he provided as guide an Imajegh called Sidi from his own Kel Tadek people at Auderas. With a few camels, my servant and two other men I set forth once more on November 3rd by the now familiar road to the Assada valley. Camping there on the second day out, I met a large caravan of Kel T’imia bound for Damergu via Agades. They were ostensibly trading in dates but were in reality destined for the Southland to undertake transport work in Nigeria during the winter months.

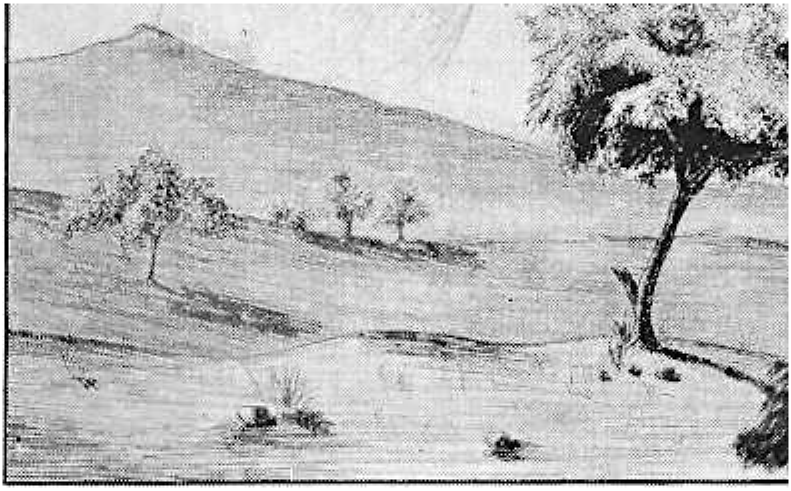
The weather was very pleasant, but in the open country the temporary watering-places were fast disappearing. The maximum day temperatures varied between 90° and 95° F. in the shade; the nights were already fresh with temperatures as low as 42° F.

On the following day after leaving the Assada camp I did a thirty-mile march along the valley, past the site of Aureran well with a few ruined stone houses both there and on the way there, and then up a side valley under Mount Arwa Mellen. At the mouth of the Tegidda valley my track branched off from the road which I had followed earlier in the year with Buchanan to T'imia. I proceeded north into the Anu Maqaran basin over the low pass to which both Barth and Foureau refer. From the col a long sweep of grassy plain ran gently down to the great valley of Central Air. It is here called T'imilen after the mountains which lie on the north bank of the section higher up, where it is named Abarakan. The T'imilen mountains are a continuation of the small Agalak massif which was just visible to the north; its south-west face lying on my right was very imposing with steep and rugged sides. Straight in front of the pass, beyond the valley, a gap appeared between the broken mass of the Agalak and a small, bold mountain called Aggata on the left hand. The gap, wherein were framed the distant mountains of Northern Air, proved to be a basin containing the Agalak and Aggata tributaries of the main T'imilen valley. I camped within an hour of the pass, a few hundred yards from the north bank of the main bed at the deep well of Aggata, not far from the mountain which is also called by that name.

When the Bila and Bagezan massifs appear on the southern horizon, one may be said to have entered Northern Air. While the north-eastern part is more properly the country of the Kel Owi tribes, the whole area north of the central massifs, including the western plain and the towns of Agellal, Sidawet and Zilalet, was largely under their influence. This part of Air is a rugged plateau crossed by wide valleys and broken by only relatively small mountain groups. The most distinctive feature is the number of little peaks which rise abruptly into sharp points and ridges. But though small they are no mere conical hillocks, for they are crowned with the pinnacles and towers usually associated with the Dolomites. T'iriken, for instance, on the way to Assode, has a triple crest rising out of a crown, like the fangs of a tooth. T'imuru is a saddle-backed ridge with turrets along the crest like the spikes on a scaly reptilian back. Asnagho, near Agellal, is shaped like an axe; the one profile is sharp as a blade set on edge, the other flat and long. Most beautiful of all are Arwa and Aggata, soaring out of the plain like dream castles, with battlements and keeps and curtain walls perched high above the cliffs and screes of the lower glacis. The landscape is rather less coloured than in the centre or south, for until the edge of the northern mountains of Air is reached there are hardly any big trees or green vegetation in the valleys. But the same red and black of the rocks against a blue sky and straw-coloured ground prevail.

Aggata well proved copious but somewhat stagnant. Agalak well is also deep and similar. It is the country of deep wells, and they are ascribed to the first Tuareg, the Itesan. They are anything up to 100 feet or more deep and 10 to 12 feet broad. The sides are carefully dry-walled with rough basalt boulders. The well mouths are slightly raised above the level of the ground and surrounded by great logs of wood, scored with rope-marks. They are undoubtedly the work of highly-skilled diggers and may be pre-Tuareg. Many of them require cleaning out, but none of them seems to have fallen in.

PLATE 39



I slept quite quietly at Aggata and was disappointed at not hearing the Drums of the Spirits which haunt the mountain. The next day I again marched some thirty miles, around Aggata and T’imuru peaks, where there is an old deep well, now, alas! silted up, and reached Assode, once the most considerable town in Air after Agades. The plain was flat and the going good, even over the scattered rock outcrop. Mirages were showing all the time. The mount of T’in Awak, north of the point I was making for, shone in the dancing air like a chalk hill standing in a blue lake. There was no shade and it was hot. We were all tired and disappointed by the elusive valley which continually crept away beyond another ridge, so when Assode was finally reached we were very glad. The Agoras, or “The Valley” by which the town lies, is not inspiring; and the site is marked by no prominent feature. The position, however, is otherwise interesting. The Agoras rises in the Agalak-T’imia massif and joins the basin of Northern Air not far north of Assode; the low hills on the north bank of the Agoras surround the town like the rim of a saucer. The position is not artificially fortified, but could readily have been defended, were it not that the only well lies some hundreds of yards distant from the houses in the bed of the valley.

Assode is said by Jean[264] to have been built by the Kel Owi for the first Añastafidet, but is certainly older than that. It very possibly dates from the first immigration of Tuareg. The reputed date of its foundation in A.D. 900 is therefore far more probable than that which Jean's statement implies. Nor is there any reason to follow Barth[265] in setting it down to be of recent origin simply because it is not mentioned by Arabic authors. The superficial extension of the place is considerable, but the settlement belongs to various periods, and not all the 1000 ruined houses were probably ever inhabited at the same time. Although it is completely abandoned to-day, the population, even in Barth's time, had become scanty, for he heard that only eighty houses were occupied, despite the fact that it was then, as in former and also more recent times, the official place of residence of the Añastafidet.[266]

On a small rise in the middle of the little basin is the mosque, the largest building in Air.[267] The minaret fell many years ago, but the mosque is still well preserved in spite of the rain which, since the evacuation of 1918, has gradually been breaking down the roof. The saucer in which the town lies warrants the construction of a minaret to serve, like the one at Agades, as a watch-tower. The general plan of the building may be gathered from Plate 32. The roof is low, as in all the Air mosques. The various outhouses and separate portions were used as khans and as schools. It once boasted a large library, the rotting remains of which I collected. I made up a whole camel load of these manuscripts[268] and took them to Iferuan, where I placed them in charge of the local alim, who turned out to be El Mintaka from Auderas. The books in part proved to be the remains of the private library of El Haj Suliman of Agellal, who possessed over 1000 volumes; he lived in the last century and belonged to the Qadria sect.

North of the mosque was the quarter where the Añastafidet used to live. The houses seemed to be mainly of the “A type.” The dwellings further south were more numerous, and included examples of all types and periods. The houses for the most part were surrounded by low compound walls and lay close together along narrow streets and lanes. No particular details are worth recording except the presence in many of the houses of grain pits, some of which had been used for concealing belongings and might repay investigation.[269]

The most interesting feature of Assode, considering its size, was the absence of all traces of garden or date cultivation. The town was obviously inhabited only by camel-owners and their domestic slaves. It was a trading depot and a metropolis, but not a productive centre, for even the pasture in the neighbourhood is limited. The selection of the place as the residence of the Añastafidet must have been due to its convenience as a centre for the tribes of the Confederation of Kel Owi. It also suited the conditions of their trade, and therefore probably that of their predecessors in the area, the first Tuareg to enter Air. As a strategic position it was admirably located, well within the borders of the plateau, and consequently not liable to be easily raided from without; tactically, also, it was defensible. It is interesting to note that of the thirty to forty wars, most of which were in Air and Tegama, mentioned in the Agades Chronicle, only two are recorded at Assode, whereas Agades was repeatedly involved. Assode was, to my mind, unquestionably the first real capital of the country, before Agades or any town in Tegama assumed an important rôle.

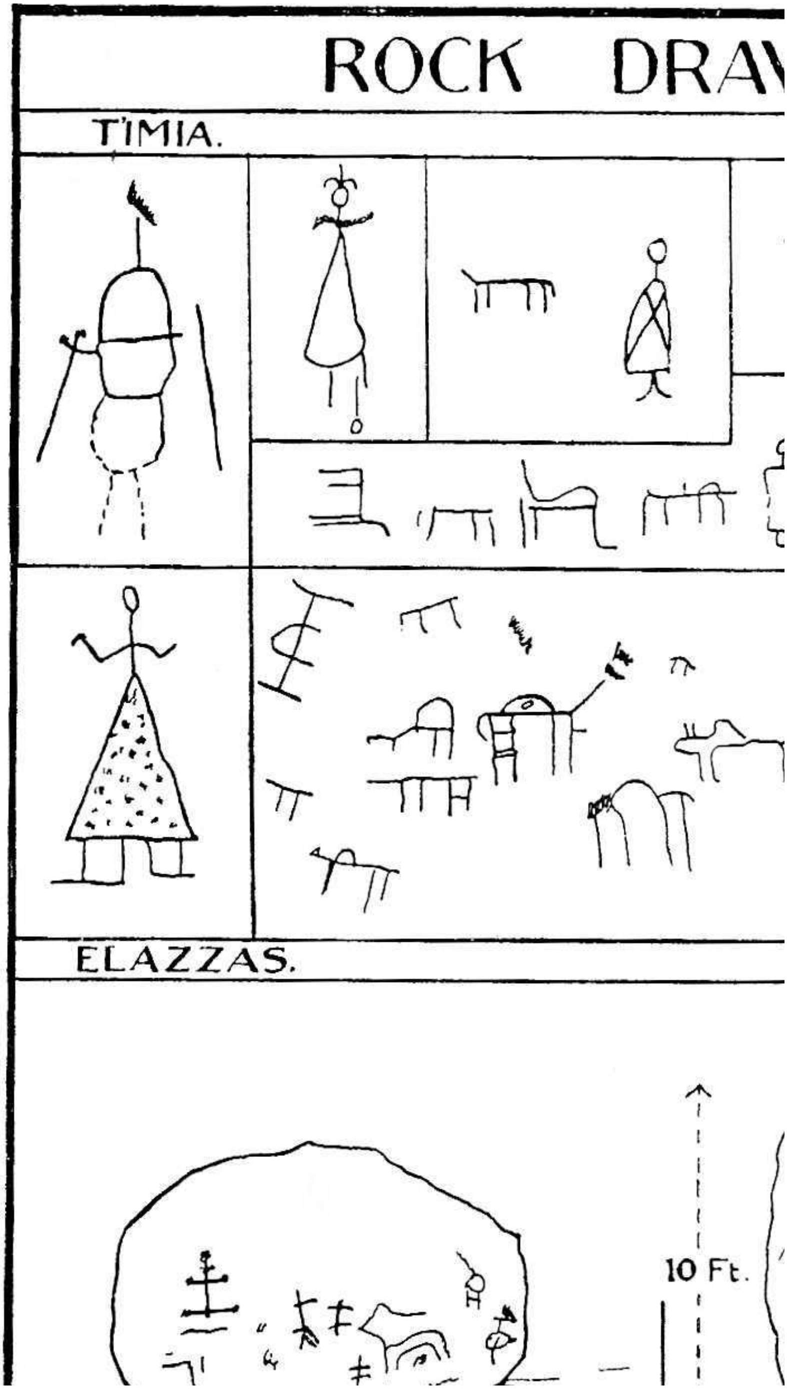
The great Kel Owi tribes in modern times are the Kel Azañieres, the Kel Tafidet and the Ikazkazan. The major part of the confederation lived in North and North-eastern Air; the Ikazkazan alone were in the west with sections ranging as far afield as Damergu and Elakkos. A little research makes it clear that both the Kel Azañieres and the Kel Tafidet are “Kel name” sections of older “I name” tribes; in the course of time they became so powerful and numerous that their parent stems were obscured. Of the latter three main stocks can still be traced, in addition to the Ikazkazan, certain unattached Imghad tribes, and several settled communities. The three parent tribes bear the names of Imaslagha, Igermaden, and Imasrodang.

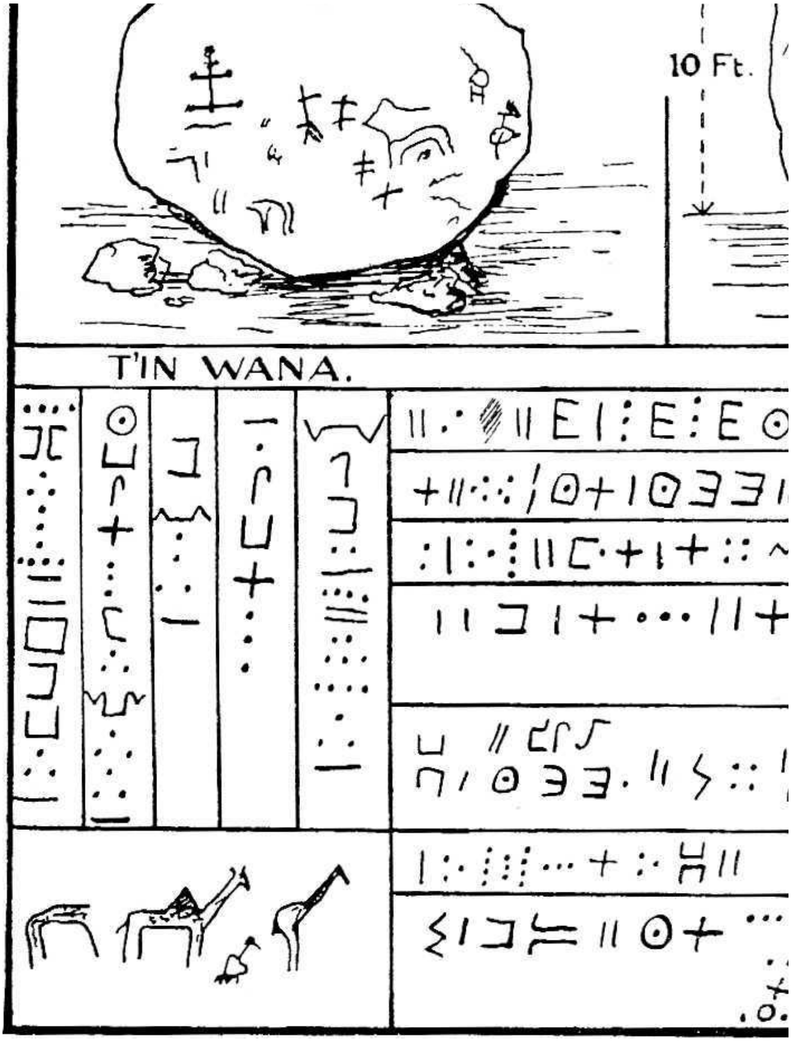
The Imaslagha include the important Kel Azañieres tribes of the Azañieres mountains in the extreme north-west of Air, as well as the Kel Assarara of the north-eastern plain. When the Kel Owi entered Air, this stock occupied the area of the Immikitan and Imezegzil tribes of earlier Tuareg known as the People of the King.[270] It contains several ancient “I name” sections which might also be considered as separate stocks, were it not that on the one hand they never split up into “Kel name” tribes associated with definite localities, and, on the other, that they continued to be traditionally connected with the parent Imaslagha stems until to-day. These “I tribes” are the Izeyyakan, who are also said to be People of the King and may in fact have been a part of the latter division absorbed by the Kel Owi, the Imarsutan, and the now almost extinct Igururan, represented by one surviving section, the Kel Fares, who take their name from Fares water and pasture in the far north of North-eastern Air on the edge of the desert. If the Izeyyakan were originally People of the King, their absorption would afford a precedent for a similar process which can be observed in progress among the Immikitan who have fallen under the political influence of the Imaslagha stock of tribes. The Imarsutan are said to have come from an unidentified place called Arsu, which is presumed not to be in Air. In popular parlance all these tribes have collectively come to be known as the Kel Azañieres, but, although of the same Imaslagha stock, the Kel Assarara are usually not included under this head. The Kel Assarara with the subdivision, Kel Agwau and Kel Igululof, were the people of Annur, the paramount chief of Air in Barth's day. Their villages are along the great valley of North-eastern Air, for which the Tuareg have no one name. They call the valley after the various villages on its banks, and these in turn are named from the neighbouring tributaries. It is into this basin that the Assode Agoras flows. The Kel Assarara fall into a somewhat separate category from the Kel Azañieres because Annur had made them into a powerful people, his own position being in reality far greater than either that of the Amenokal or the Añastafidet. It was due to him that his tribe acquired independent status in genealogical systems. Barth gives a good picture of the chief, and it is worth reproducing as the impression of a traveller who had no reason to be prejudiced in favour of the Air Tuareg, having at that time recently been attacked and nearly massacred by them.[271] “We saw the old chief on the day following our arrival. He received us in a straightforward and kindly manner, observing very simply that even if, as Christians, we had come to his country stained with guilt, the many dangers and difficulties we had gone through would have sufficed to wash us clean, and that we had nothing to fear but the climate and the thieves. The presents we spread out before him he received graciously, but without saying a single word. Of hospitality he showed no sign. All this was characteristic. We soon received further explanations. Some days afterwards he sent us the simple and unmistakable message that if we wished to proceed to the Sudan at our own risk, he would place no obstacle in our way; but if we wanted him to go with us and protect us, we ought to pay him a considerable sum. In stating these plain terms he made use of a very expressive simile saying that as the ‘leffa’ (or snake) killed everything she touched, so his word, when it had once escaped his lips, had terminated the matter in question—there was nothing more to be said. . . . Having observed Annur’s dealings to the very last, and having arrived under his protection safely at Katsena, I must pronounce him a straightforward and trustworthy man, who stated his terms plainly and dryly, but stuck to them with scrupulosity (*sic*); and as he did not treat us, neither did he ask anything from us, nor allowed his people to do so. I shall never forgive him for his niggardliness in not offering me so much as a drink of ‘fura’ or ‘ghussub water’ when I visited him, in the heat of the day, on his little estate near Tasawa, but I cannot withhold from him my esteem both as a great politician in his curious little empire, and as a man remarkable for singleness of word and purpose.”

PLATE 40

ROCK DRAWINGS.

ROCK DRA


ROCK DRA
T'IMIA.
ELAZZAS.
10 Ft.


10 Ft.
T'IN WANA.

Annur was killed in 1856 by raiders from Bilma, which he had frequently attacked. As another example of a similar type of chief, I will copy the entry made in my diary when Ahodu and Sidi described to me Annur's successor, Belkho of Ajiru, chief of the Igermaden during the last years of the nineteenth century. "He was the last independent ruler of Air. He was small and rather hunched, but with authority unquestioned from Ghat to the Sudan. His raids were swift, well planned and executed in a manner which betrayed imagination. He had a great reputation for generosity, combined with personal magnetism of such a remarkable nature that his power was believed to be derived from communing with the spirits. ‘We used,’ said Sidi, ‘to see him sitting near the fire at night when he was travelling or raiding, crouched with his back turned on his companions, saying no word, but looking into the darkness with the firelight flickering on his small form, casting shadows in the distance, where his friends among the spirits sat and conferred with him!’”

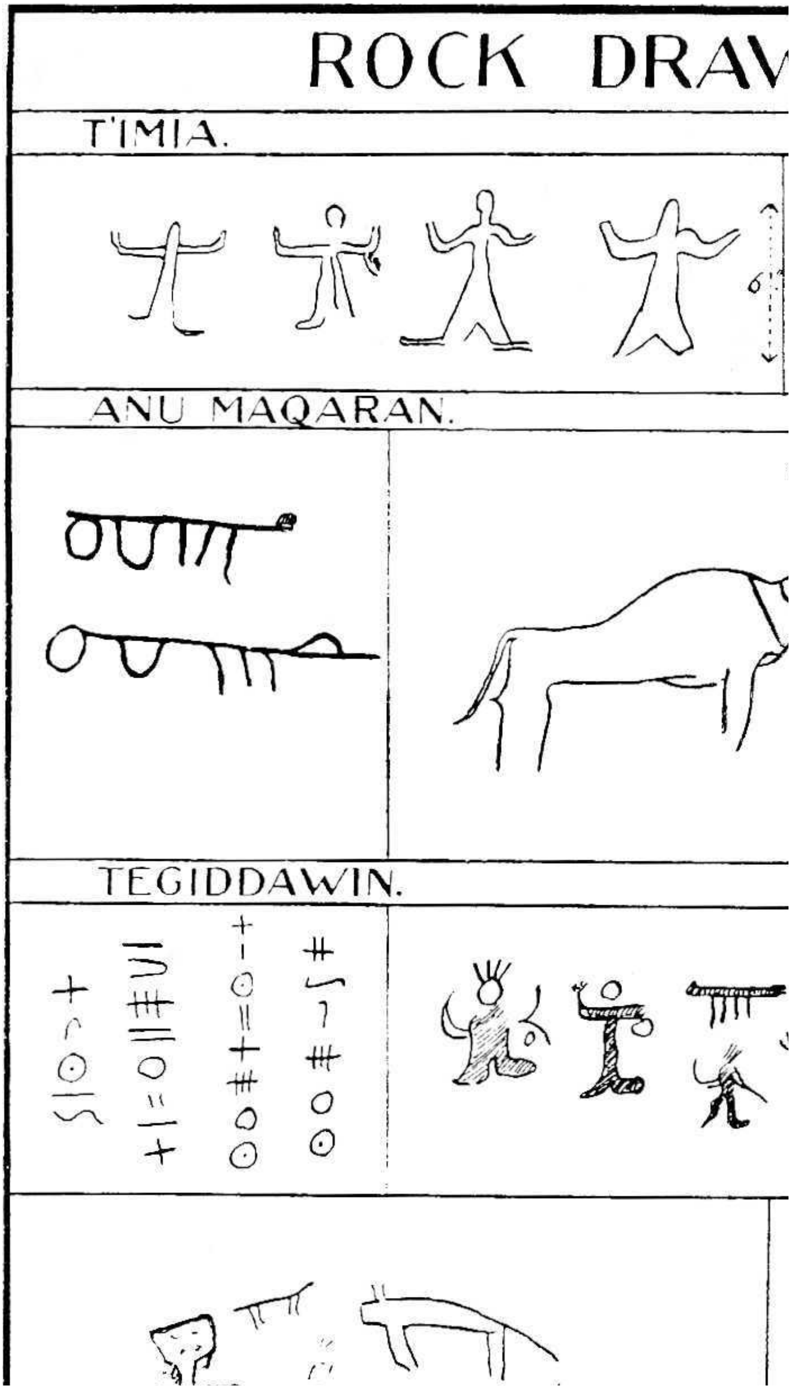
Belkho’s people, the Igermaden, are the parent stock of the Kel Tafidet, who not only became the most distinguished tribe in the Confederation, but also gave their name to the administrative ruler of the Kel Owi and the Confederation generally. They inherited the Tafidet mountains in the easternmost parts of Air and include an old “I name” tribe, the Igademawen. The name Igermaden seems to associate them with Jerma or Garama in the Fezzan, but I am aware of no particular reasons for supposing that they came to Air from there, though it may once have been theirs in the remote past. There are, incidentally, numerous names of places in Air containing the root ‘Germa’ in their composition.

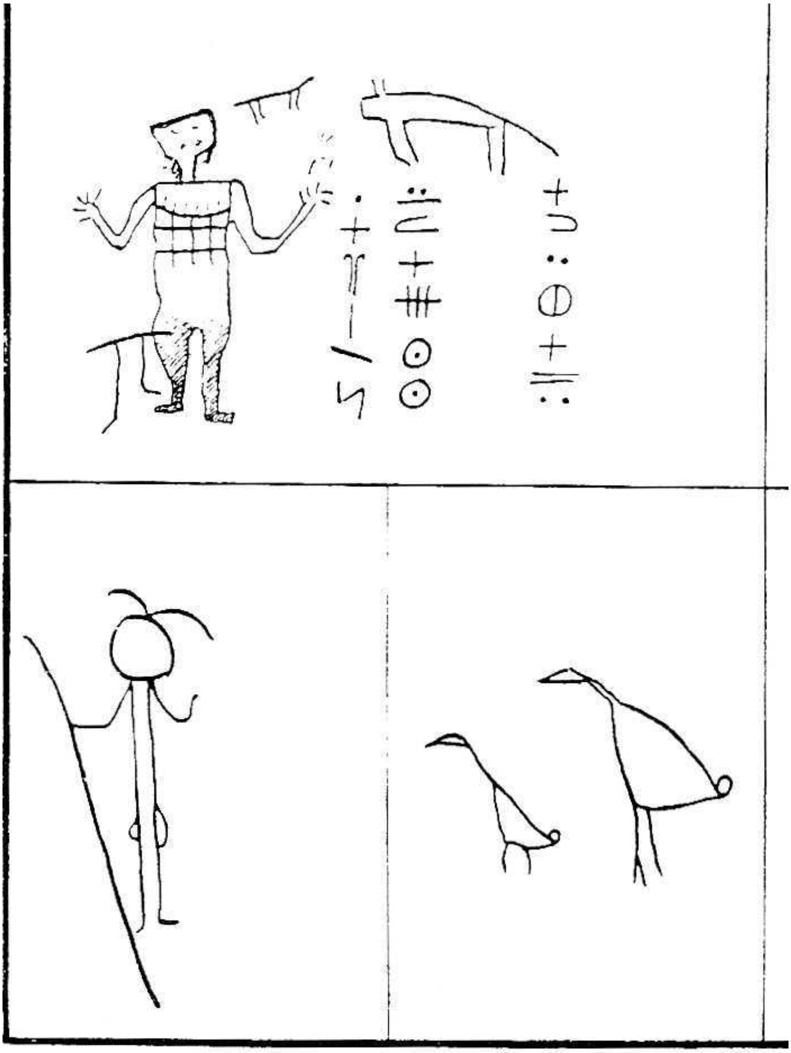
The third group of the Kel Owi, the Imasrodang, occupied the Ighazar valley and villages, whence they drove the Kel Ferwan. Certain small nuclei of People of the King, however, remained in this area, as we have seen also occurred elsewhere. The Imasrodang deserve no particular comment except that a section, the Kel T’intaghoda, is reputed to be "holy." There is no justification in their conduct for the description. They are the lords of the servile people of Tamgak, as well as of the so-called "Wild Men of Air."

I never succeeded in seeing these curious people. Their origin is a deep mystery. Buchanan on his first journey ran across a party of them in Northern Air, but they come down very seldom from Tamgak and betray the utmost nervousness of any strangers. The Tuareg call them Immedideran and admit that they are noble, though not of their own race. They emphatically deny that these people are negroid. They are said to speak a language which the Tuareg do not understand. When they meet any Tuareg they are reputed, probably quite untruly, to hold their noses as if to indicate that they smelled a bad or at any rate a curious smell. According to Sidi, who has seen them, they live in Tamgak in a very primitive state, wearing hardly any clothes except a few rags or skins. They nevertheless all affect the Veil, but although they possess many sheep and goats, the camel seems strange and unfamiliar to them when they come down to the valleys to sell their animals. They live neither in houses nor in huts nor in tents, but in very low shelters made of three uprights of stone or wood, with a fire in front and a roof of skins or grass. The Tuareg know nothing of their origin, but say that they were there before the Veiled People came. They are apparently as fair as the Tuareg themselves, and not negroid in type, but who they are it is not possible even to surmise, unless they are the Leucæthiopians of the classics.

PLATE 41

ROCK DRAWINGS.


ROCK DRAV
T'IMIA.
ANU MAQARAN.
TEGIDDAWIN.



The Ikazkazan group are the junior partners of the Kel Owi, but probably the most numerous group in the Confederation of the Children of Tafidet. They range as far south as Elakkos, which sometimes makes one wonder if they are perhaps a non-Kel Owi tribe which threw in its lot with these people when they entered Air. Their many tribes are grouped into two main divisions, the Kel Tamat (the People of the Acacia) in the north, and the Kel Ulli (the People of the Goats) in the south, both of which appellations are in the nature of distinctive nicknames to distinguish the two geographical units. The names may have a totemic significance, in which case the Kel Tagei (the People of the Dûm Palm) and Kel Intirza (the People of the Asclepias) could be cited as other examples of the practice. There is no particular reason for calling the People of the Goats by this name, since they own as many camels as do the other Tuareg and are not in any way the only tribe to keep goats. Their occupation of Elakkos is reputed, probably rightly, to be fairly recent. The most important tribe of the northern section is the Kel Gharus (the People of the Deep Well) in Talak—with their dependent Imghad, the Ahaggaren.

Such, briefly, is the Kel Owi tribal system. From Assode I determined to examine their country in the great north-eastern basin of Air contained between the mountain groups of Afis, Taghmeurt, Azañieres and Tafidet. Somewhere in this area clearly was the village and valley of T’intellust where Annur lived and where Barth’s expedition made its head-quarters in Air. The name does not figure on the French maps, and since such indications as I had received from native sources seemed to be confused, I was determined to find it for myself.

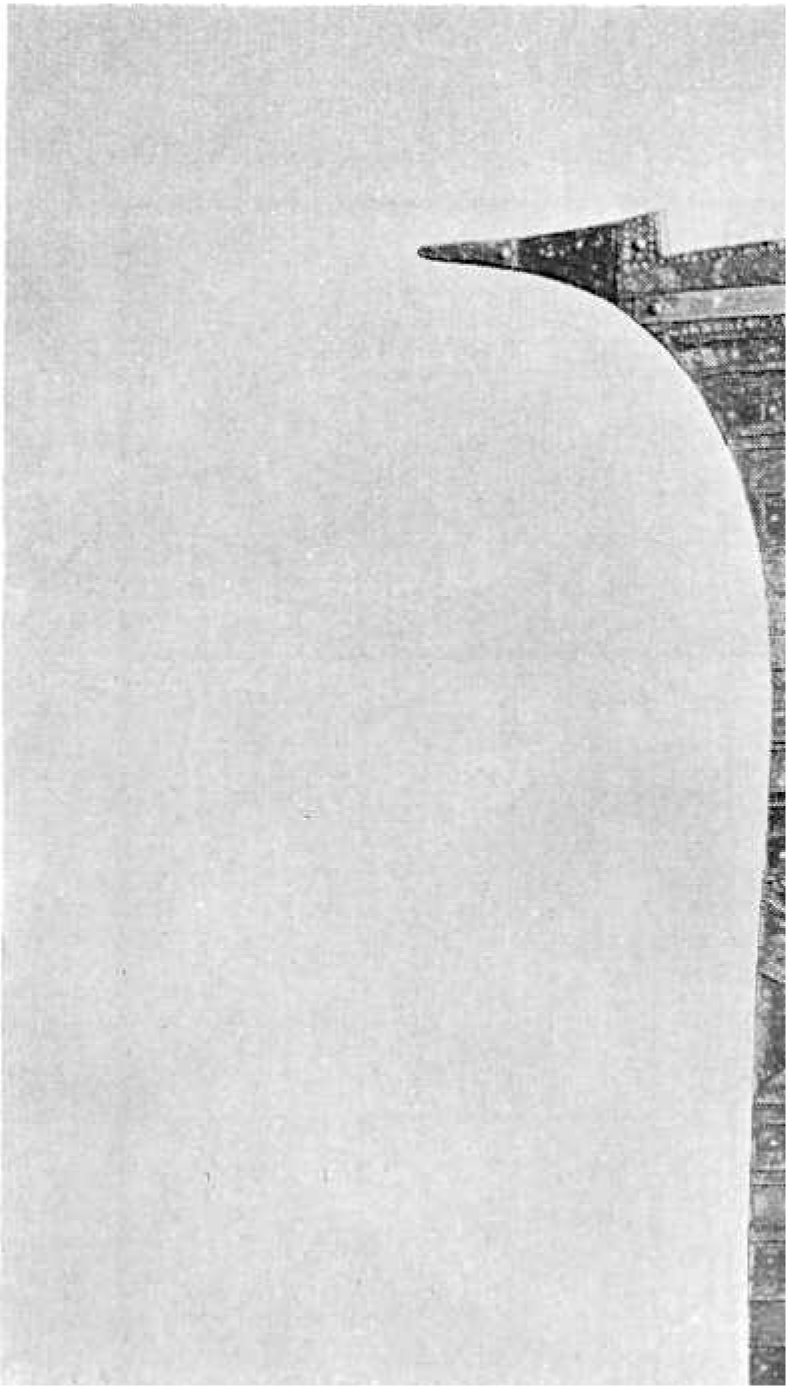
The country east of Assode was a broken plain, out of which only one small massif emerged, the Gundai[272] hills, standing isolated and compact against the background of the eastern mountains. Between Gundai and T’imia the country is drained by the Unankara valley, which is crossed by the trans-Saharan caravan road on its way from the Ighazar to

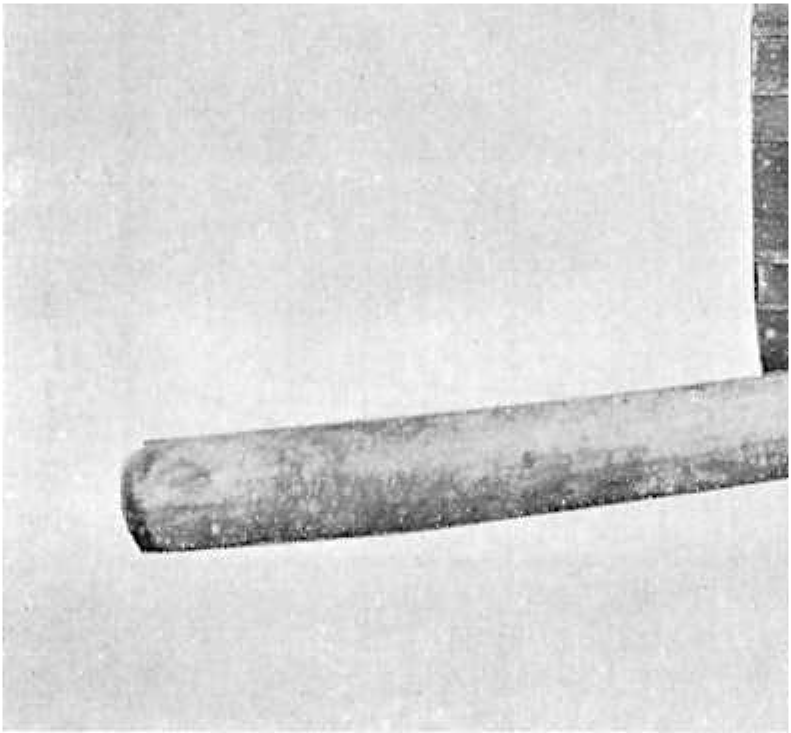
Mount Mari. The watering-point of Unankara lies below Gundai opposite the Talat Mellen hills: from there a branch off the Tarei tan Kel Owi runs up to T'imia village by a very difficult road along a watercourse which is the upper part of the Assode Agoras. Whenever in the south-eastern plain I crossed the main Kel Owi road and plotted the point on a map compiled from my compass traverse, I was impressed by the directness and straightness of its course across country. From Mount Mari southward the line was almost due north and south; at that point a change of direction takes place, and a line drawn somewhat west of north from Mount Mari to Unankara and produced, would, as the road does, pass within a short distance of Assatartar and enter the Ighazar between T'intaghoda and Iferuan. The upper part of the great caravan road in Air is as straight as the southern section across the Azawagh and Damergu. Great age alone can account for the directness of the road and the worn tracks on the rocky ground. Its conquest and tenure by the Kel Owi is only an episode in the history of one of the oldest roads in the world.

Leaving three men with my baggage at Assode to take care of themselves, Sidi and I on two camels set out to look for T'intellust, which he had often visited in his younger days. I passed one or two small settlements of stone houses, including Assadoragan, near Assode, and T'in Wansa, and reached Igululof after crossing or ascending a number of small valleys which flowed from Gundai into the Agoras. Igululof is a largish village with a date grove and the remains of some gardens; the houses were nearly all of the "B type" and were still filled with the household effects of the inhabitants who had evacuated the country in 1918. Apart from the usual collections of skins for water and grain, mortars, saddle-stone querns and pottery, the frequent occurrence of beds and furniture deserves mention as indicating the prosperity of the communities in the past. One also saw here, as elsewhere in these northern villages, swinging doors hewn out of one piece of wood set in stone sockets. The trees from which they were cut must certainly have been four feet in diameter, a few such were still to be seen in all the larger valleys. In one house I remarked a wooden bridle stand with a broadening top like the capital of a column surmounted by four wooden horns, on which were hung looped bridle ropes and halters. There were examples of low kidney-shaped or rectangular seats standing not four inches from the ground cut out of blocks of wood: they were used by the women when preparing food, and constituted the nearest approach to a chair in a country where it is the universal custom to sit on mats on the ground. Many of the houses had long rectangular racks of palm ribs up to 10 ft. × 5 ft. × 1 ft. deep slung from the roof, with the household effects, which they were intended to contain, still in their places. The niches were filled with the pots and skins and trinkets of the former owners. The spectacle of desolation produced by these pathetic human remains made one sympathise profoundly with the unfortunate people who had had no time even to save their few worldly goods.

By far the most important household implement appeared to be the double luggage rest which was conspicuous in all the houses. It consists of a pair of U-shaped wooden crutches on a short round pole, which is planted in the ground. The upper or U-part of these rests, in the ordinary variety, has plain flat surfaces some four inches broad by a half-inch thick. The elaborate variety has a broader front member which spreads gradually from some four inches at the base, where it joins the round pole or leg, to a breadth of twelve to fifteen inches. The tops of these members are flat or stepped down in the centre, so as to make the corners appear like wide projecting horns. Their front surfaces were very elaborately ornamented with brass ribs and silver, lead or zinc studs. The brass was nailed on or hammered into the surface of the wood as an inlay. Brass sheet fretted in patterns with green leather or red stuff behind it covered the larger spaces. The designs were geometrical and somewhat analogous to the ornamentation on the camel saddles, but rather more varied. The workmanship was excellent and displayed the most finished craft in Air. These rests were traditionally used in pairs on the march to keep valuable merchandise and baggage out of the wet. Their great weight—as they measure up to 5 ft. high and 2 ft. 6 in. between tops of the arms, and are always cut in one piece from a log of hard wood—in practice rendered it impossible to use them much on the road, and they have consequently become articles of household furniture. So far as I know, both the shape of the objects themselves and the designs which ornament them are traditional and peculiar to the Tuareg.

PLATE 42





In view of their having been so recently inhabited and being at the same time so similar to the older “A type” houses, these houses were very interesting, as they showed the mode of life of the earlier Tuareg. Within, the floors were neatly sprinkled with sand or small quartz gravel; two rings of stones containing coarser pebbles marked the places where personal ablutions were performed or where rubbish was collected. A group of large stones represented the hearth. The absence of windows and the lower roofs and doors make the more recent houses seem rather dark, but otherwise they are quite pleasant dwellings. The older houses must have been most comfortable. Their cleanliness, as early travellers remarked, depended on the owners:

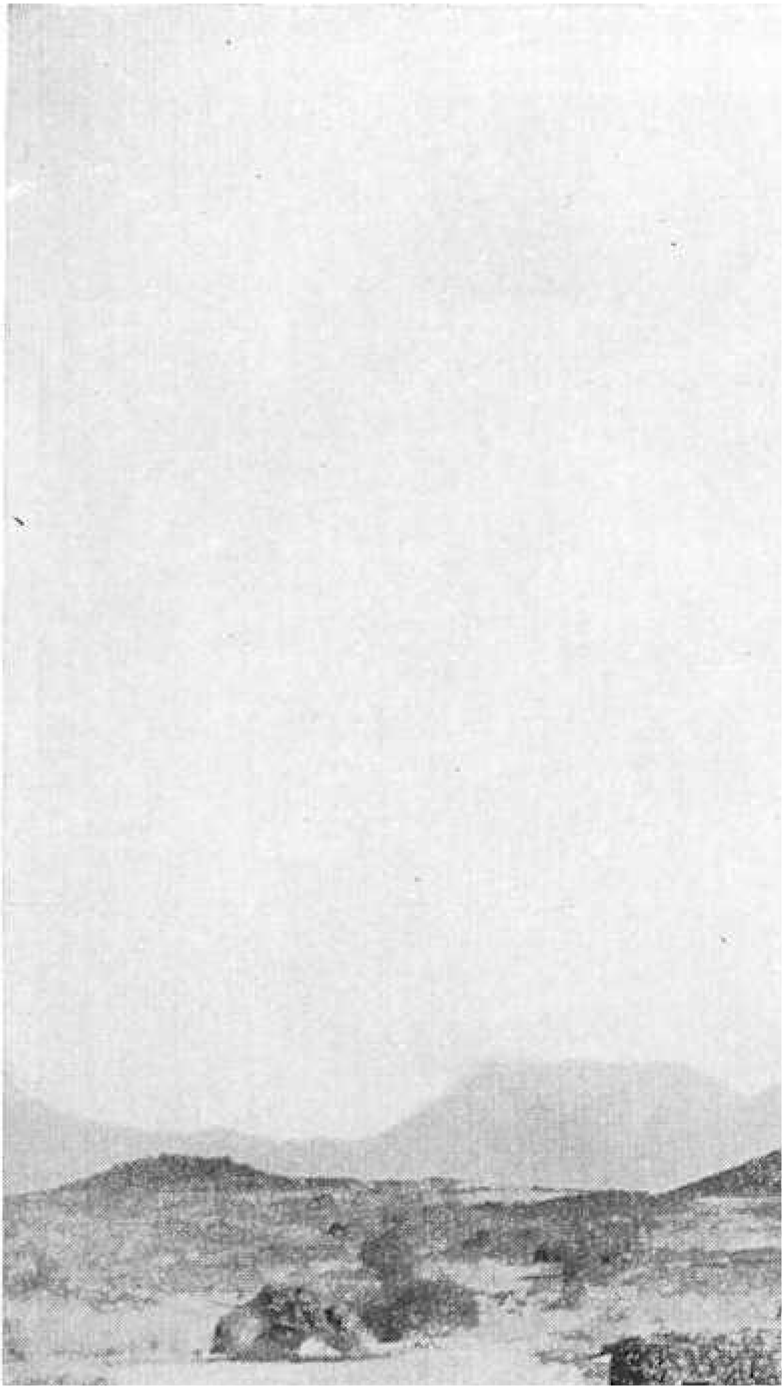
judging by the state of their present-day huts they were very well kept.

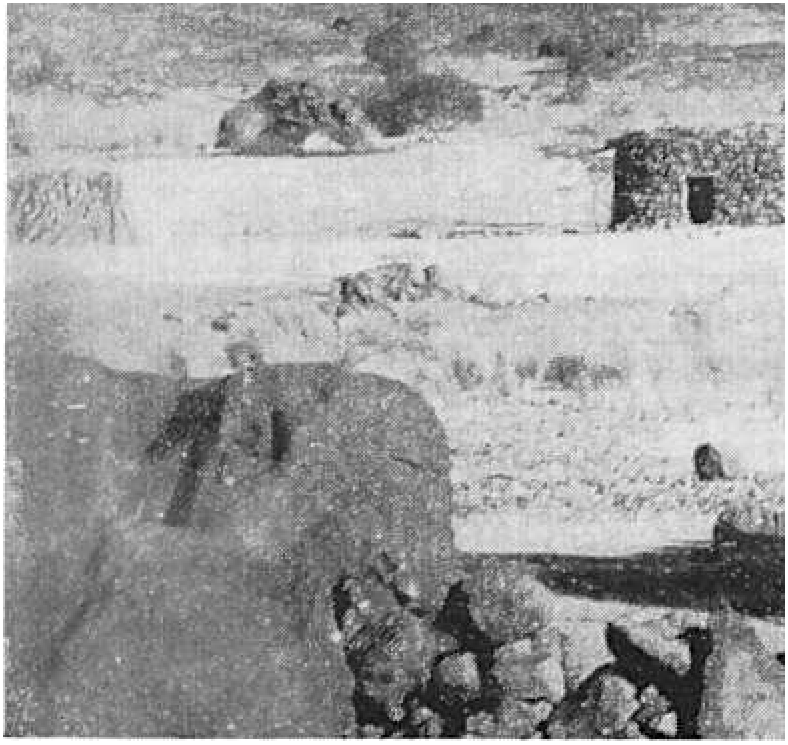
Crossing to the north of the broad Igululof valley, Sidi and I entered a very rough plateau covered with large ochreous and brown boulders; it was intersected by numerous small valleys and gullies flowing north into the main basin. We climbed laboriously over a steep ravine and up a pass between two hillocks where there was a way down into the further valley of Anu Samed.[273] It was already late in the evening and the sun was setting on our left: in front the whole plain of the basin of North-eastern Air was spread out with a great green and white snake of a bed winding through it. In the distance along the horizon were the fantastic purple mountains which reach from Tamgak to Tafidet along the edge of the desert. We descended slowly in the dusk into the Anu Samed ravine, and lay down to sleep where this tributary enters the stream bed of the nameless basin. Night came on immediately. I made some cocoa, but we had to put out the fire as soon as possible, for this is the way by which raiding parties enter Air from the east. There is no permanent habitation nearer than T’imia or Iferuan, fifty miles away to the south and west respectively. The country was impressive and rather frightening.

Next morning I said I wanted to go to T’intellust. We set off up the main valley in an east to north-easterly direction; it was filled with big trees and had a series of small villages on either bank. After riding for some hours Sidi turned to me and asked me if I wanted to go to T’intellust village or to the House of the Christians. I supposed the latter was some old French Camel Corps camp, but expressed mild curiosity about it. I asked him why, particularly, it was so called. Sidi replied that in the olden days when his father was alive, he had told him that some Christians had come to the valley and had lived with the chief Annur. This interesting information decided me to make for the House of the Christians, which proved to be not so very far from T'intellust village itself, a settlement of "B type" stone houses with a few enclosures and brushwood huts. It lay on the north side of the great bed, which here was several hundred yards broad and contained many large trees between various flood channels. As we approached a group of large trees south of the village I saw some piles of brushwood. They turned out to be the ruins of two thatch huts. I dismounted, tethered the camels and again questioned Sidi, who repeated his story, adding that the Christians were three white men of whom he supposed I knew, for they had not been French. Because they were great men and friends of Annur their houses had neither been inhabited nor pulled down since they went away. Their dwellings had been left slowly to decay, but not before the place had been called after them, the House of the Christians.

Sidi had vouchsafed this information unsolicited; he had no idea of what I was coming to seek. There is no doubt that the ruined huts are the remains of the camp occupied by Barth and his companions in 1850. When they reached T'intellust after narrowly escaping massacre at T'intaghoda, they had camped on a low hill to the south of the village where Annur himself was living. Another attack, by robbers this time, took place there, and for greater safety they moved their camp rather nearer to his village. It was this second camp which I saw.

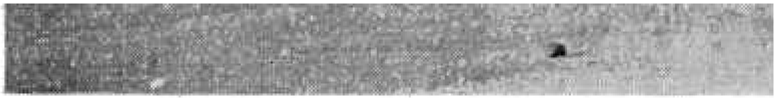
PLATE 43



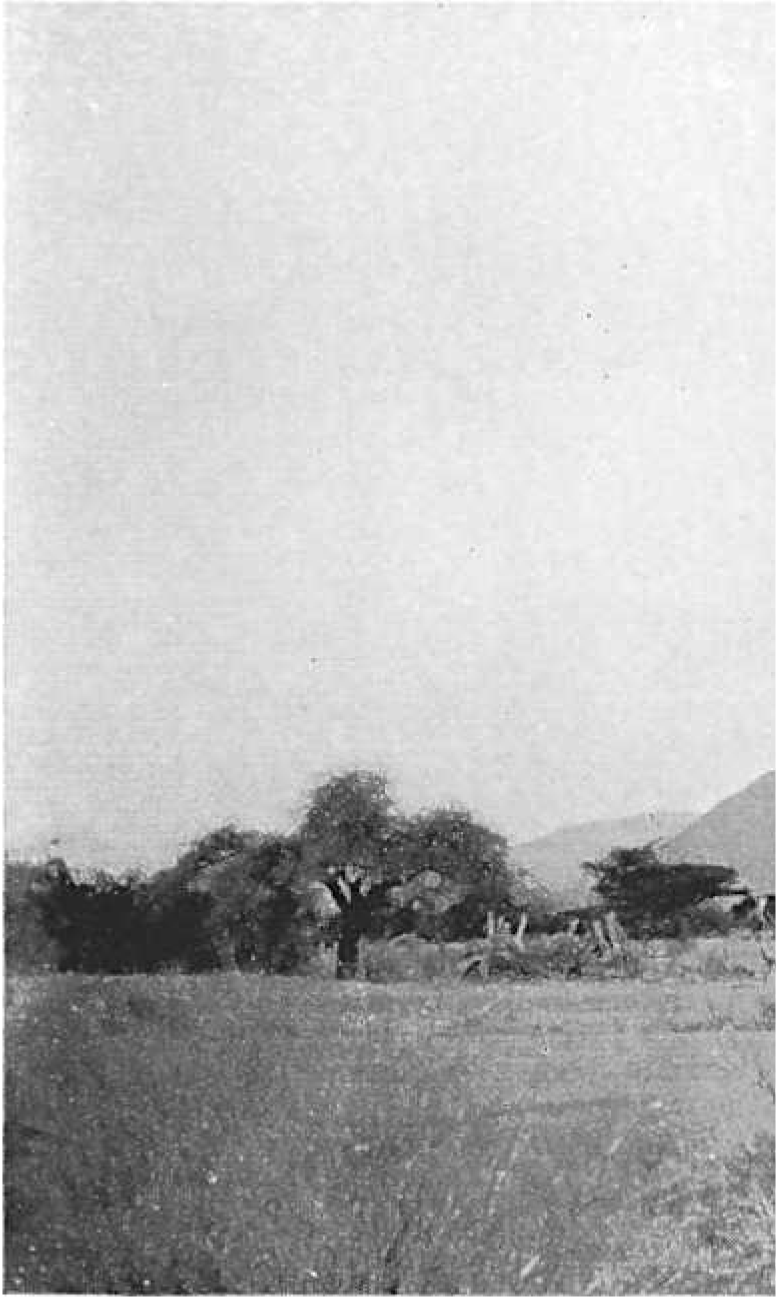


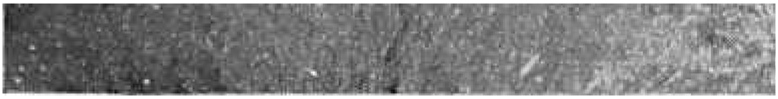
Little remains to-day of the falling huts. There was a small wooden drinking-trough and a semicircle of stones to mark the east, to which their servants knelt in prayer. Three-quarters of a century have passed and gone, but their camp has never been touched, “because they were the friends of Annur,” who had given them his word that they would be safe in Air. Barth’s speculation was fulfilled when he said: “This spot being once selected the tents were soon pitched, and in a short time there rose the little encampment of the English expedition. . . . Doubtless this said hill will ever remain memorable in the annals of the Asbenawa as the ‘English Hill,’ or the ‘Hill of the Christians.’”[274] And so it has come to pass. The site induced in me a justifiable glow of pride. Her Majesty’s Government had sent the first successful expedition to Air. A German, Heinrich Barth, assisted by another compatriot of his, had been Richardson’s companions. Their memory survives in the land as the white men who were not French and who did not come as conquerors but as the friends of Annur. In the light of history, the broad-mindedness of the statesman who selected a German to assist Richardson in his work on behalf of Her Majesty’s Government is only less worthy of praise than the loyalty with which Barth carried out his task when lesser men would have considered themselves free to return to Europe after accomplishing only a fraction of what he achieved.

PLATE 44



BAI





BAI

Neither T’intellust nor Oborassan, a little further up the valley, deserve any special mention. Annur had houses in both villages, though his official residence was in the latter. They are small settlements of a nomadic people, dependent upon camels and goats for sustenance, and lie near the point where the great valley receives the waters of Gundai by a large tributary from the south. The west side of the mountains of Tafidet also drain into the main basin, the upper part of which eventually turns north-east towards the Taghmeurt n’Afara hills. These mountains are the last barrier which divide the plateau of Air from the desert. The plain north of T’intellust and the right bank of the valley bed are low, rocky and devoid of vegetation. Along the western side of the plain runs the Agwau valley. Agwau village, marked by a white hillock, is the principal settlement of the Kel Agwau section of the Kel Assarara tribe in the Imaslagha group of the Kel Owi. It boasts a number of houses of the “B type,” a small mosque, a few “A type” dwellings and many large circles which were once hut enclosures.

Marching west from Oborassan and T’intellust towards Agwau, there were few landmarks of any note along the north side of the main valley. I gradually left the line of the main bed and skirted some low rocky ground, which reaches for some distance towards the north. Beyond Agwau I crossed a grassy plain in the direction of a big group of bare mountains, one side of which is called the Assarara and the other the Afis massif;[275] it is an isolated southern spur of the great Tamgak formation just visible behind it in the north-west. The Agwau torrent flows down between its eastern side and the plain of North-eastern Air. A road from the great nameless valley runs northwards up its course and eventually leaves the mountains for the desert by Fares and T'iwilmas watering-points.

The most important settlement of this north-eastern basin of Air is Assarara, a small town lying in a cranny between two boulder-strewn peaks which rise suddenly out of the gentle slope of the northern bank of the main valley. Here I spent a night after looting a number of ethnological specimens from deserted houses, mainly of the "B type." The dwellings were all well built and were still filled with abandoned household goods: several had stucco decorations derived from the older "A type" house decoration which has already been described. There were also a mosque and khan. Thence I returned to Assode by Assatartar village, crossing the Tarei tan Kel Owi as it emerges from the plateau south of the main valley by the little left bank ravine called Azañieres.[276]

By the next day I had again set forth towards the north, halting after the first march at Afis village, not far from Assarara, but on the other side of the Afis massif. There also I saw a number of stone houses and another mosque. The country in a sense was dangerous, because the neighbouring watering-point called Agaragar, has often proved to be the favourite camping-ground for raiders entering Air from the north. It happened while I was taking an astronomical observation during the night at about 1 a.m. that a sudden wind arose in the valley, and the camp woke up with a sense of foreboding. The air seemed filled with impending danger, of which the camels also became aware. Almost at once a camel was seen silhouetted on a ridge against the dark sky. Amadu, my servant, seized a rifle and quickly but silently woke up Sidi and the camel men. They said that a raid was upon us, and with difficulty I restrained them from firing indiscriminately into the night. We took up our positions behind the baggage in the black shadow of a tree under which we were camped. But the camel on the sky-line turned out to be one of my own beasts which had strayed, and calm was restored. We had received a visitation from the great god Pan.

On the following day we crossed the Agaragar valley and wound slowly up a defile towards the upper part of the Ighazar basin. We climbed to a pass over a spur of the Tamgak mountains. The rocks all round were covered with drawings and inscriptions, for the way was very old. It was the road of the Northern Air salt caravan which went to Bilma from Iferuan by Faodet, Agwau, Taghmeurt n’Afara and the pool of Agamgam on the edge of the desert in the far north-eastern corner of the mountains. From Agamgam the caravan used to march by an easier route than the southern track which is now followed to Ashegur well, north of Fashi and from that place to Bilma.

From the pass the road fell steeply to Faodet in an amphitheatre of great hills, a picturesque place, and important on account of a good, deep well. Although the houses were few the site proved interesting by reason of the existence of rectangular grass huts constructed at great labour to preserve the traditional type of the Tuareg house. They provided an excellent example of the tenacity of custom, for the material of which they had been built was totally unsuited to their shape or plan.

The upper waters of the Ighazar basin collect in three valleys which unite between T’intaghoda and Seliufet. On the way down the valley from Faodet, the village and palm grove of Iberkom were passed, whence a fine valley runs up into the heart of Tamgak and provides some degree of communication between T’iwilmas or Fares on the desert, and the villages in the Ighazar. Further on we come to Tanutmolet village, remarkable for a modern elaboration of the “B type” house displayed in the strictly rectangular but many-roomed dwelling shown in Plate 27. T’intaghoda is interesting as possessing an early mosque and several fine “A” and “B type” houses covered with a stucco of red earth. Most of the houses had been built on two low hills standing in the bottom of the valley. There are no gardens near them nor any palm grove. The importance of the merchants and holy men who used to live there had made of T’intaghoda the capital of Northern Air. A little further on begins the palm grove of Seliufet, and from there date palms and gardens continue all the way to Iferuan, with a chain of almost contiguous settlements on both sides of the valley bed.

At Iferuan the French established a small fort in 1921 near the site where the Foureau-Lamy expedition had camped and had been attacked some twenty years before. The fort is valueless except for the moral support it may offer to induce the local Tuareg to return to their old villages from the south. The Senegalese soldiers of the garrison are not mounted and would be powerless to do anything in the event of a raid. By the end of 1922 some families, but only a few compared with the numbers who lived there before the war, had returned to their homes.

Iferuan was a very delightful place. The peak of Tamgak stands pointing like a finger to heaven on the edge of the massif. The gardens and the groves of palm trees, some of which, alas! have died through lack of attention during the years of neglect since 1917, give the area a distinctly fertile aspect. It is impossible to say how many palm trees there are in the Ighazar, but they must run into many thousands. There are said to be 4250 at Iferuan alone. This number exceeds the next largest single group at In Gall west of Agades, where there are some 4000 trees, and the former are only a part of the total in the Ighazar.

The date palm is a comparatively late arrival in Air, where it was introduced from the north. The trees are a cross of the Medina and Fezzan varieties. As elsewhere in North Africa, each tree is an immovable asset like a house, and often does not belong to the same man as the ground on which it is grown.

At the foot of the palms were numerous gardens growing vegetables and grain. The fort had a wonderful kitchen garden with all sorts of melons, gourds and welcome European green food. The French officer in command of the post used to declare that Iferuan was the Switzerland of the Sahara, and the cool climate seemed to justify his praise. The Tuareg buildings had nothing remarkable about them with the exception of the large mosque of Tefgun not far away, and the khan or caravanserai built on the Arab plan. The Sudanese habit of making large clay amphoræ and baking them *in situ*, for the storage of wheat and millet grown in the gardens, has been adopted in Iferuan, and to my knowledge not elsewhere in Air.

Although the open desert on the way to Ghat is not reached much before In Azawa, several days further north, now, as in the past, Iferuan is the last permanently inhabited point in Northern Air. Between these points the mountain mass of Fadé has first to be crossed; it contains several watering-points and some pastures, and huts were occasionally built at a pool called Zelim, but they had no permanence. The mountains and the watering-places have long since been abandoned by their old owners, the Ifadeyen and Kel Fadé and now belong to the Ikazkazan and Kel Tadek tribes.

At Iferuan several important roads meet. The road from Air to Tuat and to Ghat, which is the main north and south caravan track across the Central Sahara, and the Haj road from Timbuctoo to Cairo, all three have a stage in common from Iferuan to In Azawa. The Haj road used to leave the Niger at Gao and enter Air at In Gall, whence it skirted the western edge of the plateau and then turned into the mountains to Iferuan: after passing In Azawa and Ghat it ran through Murzuk, Aujila and Siwa to Cairo. From Iferuan there are also several roads to the west, while the northern of the two alternative eastern roads across the desert to Kawar equally started from there, running, as already stated, by way of Taghmeurt n’Afara, Agamgam and Ashegur.

In seeking to identify Air with the Agisymba Regio of the Roman geographers, Duveyrier presumed that the Fezzanian Garamantes were in the habit of visiting the plateau in ox-drawn chariots or wagons. If they had, in fact, done so, it is logical to suppose the road they used would have come to Iferuan or one of the Ighazar villages. Indeed he states that he heard rumours of a direct road from

Murzuk or Garama to Air, a “Garamantian way” which passed through a place called Anai, where there were rock drawings similar to those found in Algeria and Tripolitania. This Anai was south-west of Murzuk and must not be mistaken for the better known Anai of Kawar, which is north of Bilma on the Murzuk-Chad road.

I was at particular pains to inquire into the existence of this road from all the most prominent guides and personages in Air whom I could find. It would have been peculiarly interesting to establish its existence, for Duveyrier says, “*La voie, avec ses anciennes ornières*, est encore assez caractérisée pour que les Tebou, mes informateurs, qui en arrivaient, n’aient laissé dans mon esprit aucun doute à ce sujet.”[277] Other writers, presumably on his authority, have added that where this road crossed the sand, stone flags were laid for the wheels to pass over. Duveyrier’s informers stated that the petroglyphs at Anai represented ox-drawn vehicles, and that the road also passed by way of Telizzarhen, where Barth discovered the famous rock drawings depicting men with animal heads.[278] While the broad valley at T’intellust would afford easy passage for a wheeled vehicle, there is no way to the south for any but pack transport. There are no signs of any road for vehicles ever having existed either east or west of the Bagezan massif. The great Kel Owi road is only fit for pack animals; and although many parallel tracks are visible in the open country there are numerous defiles where a single path only a few inches broad occurs. I am convinced that wheeled transport could never have been used anywhere in Central or Southern Air. But, it may be asked, could chariots have arrived even as far as T’intellust or Iferuan? There are only three ways into the plateau from the north-east that are at all suitable even for loaded camels. They are (*a*) through the Fadé mountains to Iferuan, (*b*) by Fares water and the Agwau valley to the great north-east basin, and by Taghmeurt n'Afara to T'intellust. The first two are not practicable for wheeled traffic, and on hearsay evidence the third one is equally out of the question. I do not, therefore, think that wheeled transport could ever even have entered Air from the north or north-east, though wagons might, of course, have come as far as the borders of the mountains to points such as Fares or Agamgam, provided the surface of the desert were hard enough. This cannot be determined until Anai and the country between it and Air have been visited.

If any direct road between these areas ever existed, it is very unlikely to have run straight from Anai to T'intellust, as Duveyrier's map shows. In my inquiries I heard in all of only four roads across the Eastern Desert: (*a*) the southernmost from Damagarim by Termit;[279] (*b*) the direct road to Fashi and Bilma from Southern Air, starting at Tabello; (*c*) the old Kel Owi Taghalam road from Agamgam to Ashegur, whence one branch goes north to Jado oasis and the other south to Fashi; and (*d*) a northern road from Fadé to Jado direct. Guides like Efale, who know every part of the Eastern Desert, state that there is no road from Air direct to Murzuk which does not go either by way of Jado or by way of the usual caravan road between Kawar and the Fezzan. The northernmost road from Fadé to Jado runs through two places called Booz and Ghudet, where water is found a short way below the surface; Efale travelled this way in his youth. He told me that it was known to and used by Tebu raiders to-day. But there are no deep wells on this track to be filled up to prevent raiders passing down the old Garamantian way, as Duveyrier implies was done. From Jado it, of course, is possible to reach Murzuk either by Anai or by joining the usual Chad road via Tummo. The existence of this northern Anai is certainly substantiated, and Jado, a Tebu oasis with a palm grove, is known to exist. It is called by this name among the Arabs, but Agewas by the Tuareg of Air and Braun by the Tebu themselves. The place has been reconnoitred by certain French officers, one of whom, a commandant of the fort of Bilma, I had the good fortune to meet. He was aware of the story of a flagged road, but after visiting Jado several times found no trace of any such track and did not believe in its existence. That the Garamantes and, indeed, other inhabitants of the Fezzan at one period in history used chariots drawn by oxen is quite likely, but it is highly improbable that they ever ventured so far afield in them as Air.

The existence of a road between Air and the Fezzan may be admitted as possible, but only on condition that it is not made to run direct between these countries. South of Anai it would almost certainly pass through Jado, and thence may have reached the plateau either by Ghudet and Booz to a water-point called Temed[280] on the eastern edge of Fadé north of the Tamgak group, or else by Ashegur and Agamgam north-east of T’intellust. This is not the road of the Garamantes on Duveyrier’s map; and beyond this his story cannot be further substantiated. As against this line of argument it must be observed that Von Bary[281] during this stay in Air collected information which led him to believe that there was a road from Air to Jerma by way of Anai. It is implied that it went direct, but he was never able to learn any details and was probably influenced by

Duveyrier's statements. He heard that there were some traces visible, but found no evidence to confirm the report of flagstones, wheel-marks or sculpture along its course.

There is nevertheless one piece of evidence which militates in some measure against my belief that chariots never were seen in Air, and that is a rock drawing which I found in Air on a boulder in the Anu Maqaran valley just west of Mount Arwa. The drawing is reproduced in Plate 41. In the conventional manner adopted in these designs it represents oxen pulling four-wheeled vehicles. The identification of the ox is confirmed from the many other similar pictures of this animal on rocks in Air. The object behind it must apparently be a cart. The whiteness of the marks in the Anu Maqaran drawing appears to indicate that it is a comparatively recent production, although the colour and degree of patination of Saharan drawings are of course no real criteria, for weathering is notoriously uneven in its action. Near the drawing of the ox and chariot, but on a different boulder, was the magic square shown in the same figure. Both drawings were in a very sheltered place and seemed contemporary. The evidence of this picture of the chariot or wagon is too unreliable and slender to establish any theory, but it is certainly difficult to understand where the draughtsman obtained his idea except as a result of seeing chariots drawn by oxen, a condition which does not, I think, obtain in the Fezzan to-day. Wheeled vehicles have only been known in the Sudan since they were imported by Europeans during the last twenty years, and I am not aware that even those are ox-drawn. Furthermore, although the most puzzling point about the Anu Maqaran rock drawing is its apparent modernity, which is paradoxical in view of the disuse of wheeled vehicles in the Sahara, it is almost certainly older than this century. Yet the application of an ox to a cart is not likely to have been imagined by any Tuareg who had not seen an instance of it, and there seems to be no adequate reason for him to reproduce his knowledge on a rock in Air even if chance had taken him so far afield as the Mediterranean littoral, where he might have seen the equipage, unless it had in some way become associated with Air.

The identification of Air with the Agisymba Regio of the Romans has been accepted by many authorities other than Duveyrier. It raises the whole problem of the Roman penetration of the Sahara. They are known to have administered the Fezzan, and it is even pretended that they reached the Niger, but evidence on this point is more scanty. Doubtless as the exploration of the Central Sahara is carried out systematically further evidence of their penetration will come to light. I am, for instance, not aware that any remains have actually been found at Ghat, though the city, which was known to them as Rapsa, was almost certainly that place and was visited in 19 B.C. by Cornelius Balbus. The Roman remains discovered by Barth on the road from Mizda over the Hammada el Homra to Murzuk are better known. This route seems to have been opened about the time of the Emperor Vespasian, and to have rendered possible or at least easier the occupation of the Fezzan, which had, however, already been visited by military expeditions earlier than that reign. Pliny writes: “Ad Garamantes iter inexplicabile *adhuc* fuit. Proximo bello, quod cum Œensibus Romani gessere auspiciis Vespasiani Imperatoris, compendium viæ quatridui deprehensum est. Hoc iter vocatur ‘Præter caput saxæ.’” Evidently the road was called by the natives, even in those days, by the same name which it now possesses, for the Pass over the Red Rock Desert at 1568 feet above the sea is still known to the Arabs as “Bab Ras el Hammada.”[282] In about A.D. 100[283] Septimius Flaccus penetrated from the Fezzan into Æthiopia at the head of a Roman column; Julius Maternus marching from some point on the coast to Garama had joined forces with the Garamantes in order to proceed southward together against various Æthiopian bands. By this date, then, it is probable that an occupation of the Fezzan had been accomplished, for this alone would justify a further advance or punitive expeditions on such a scale against raiders from the south. Indeed, from the account given by Pliny[284] of Cornelius Balbus’ expedition of 19 B.C. to the Fezzan, it might be supposed that the occupation of Southern Tripolitania and the Central Sahara had taken place a century earlier. The identification of the cities conquered by Balbus has not been satisfactory except in the case of Cydamus, Cillaba or Cilliba, Tabudium,[285] Rapsa and Jerma, respectively Ghadames, Zuila,[286] Tabonie, Ghat and Garama; the last named being the capital of the Garamantes and of the whole Fezzan, a position which later passed on to other places and finally to Murzuk.

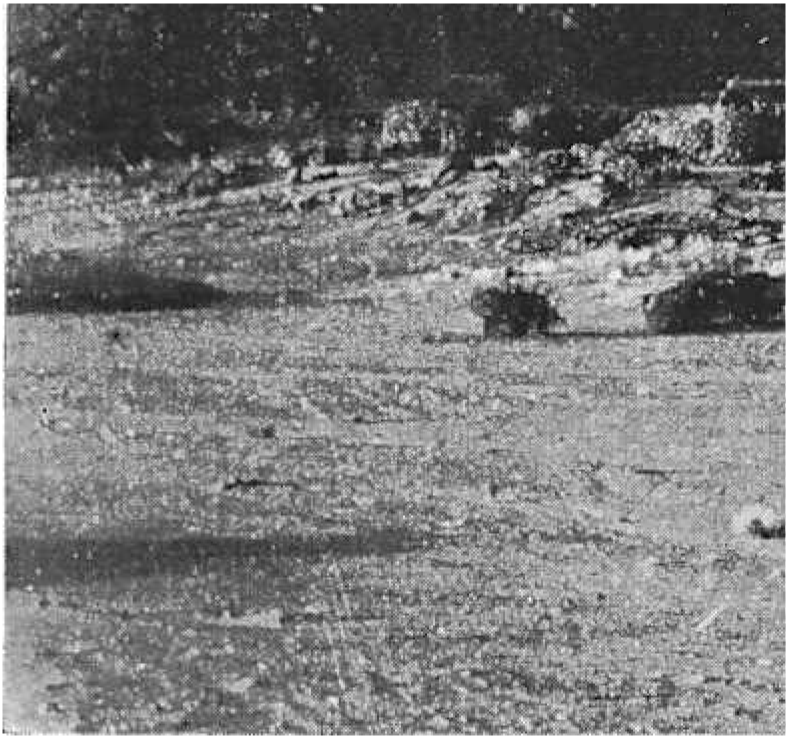
These operations of Septimius Flaccus and Julius Maternus have been held to concern Air. The latter, ἀπὸ Γαράμης ἅμα τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Γαραμαντίων ἐπερχομένῳ τοῖς Αἰθιόψιν ὁδεύσαντα τὰ πάντα πρὸς μεσημβρίαν μησὶ τέσσαρσι ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀγίσυμβα. . . .[287] It is important to try to identify the area, since it appears to be the most southerly point to which Roman geographical knowledge is recorded as having extended. Duveyrier, arguing, on what may in any case be a false premise, that because Pliny mentions no camels in Africa there were no camels, concludes with the fantastic statement that the Romans must have used wheeled transport on their expeditions, and that that is why the "Iter præter caput saxæ" played such an important part in their operations; but I have seen no evidence which might lead one to suppose that this route over the Hammada el Homra was fit for wheeled traffic. The Garamantes were said by Herodotus to have used wagons drawn by four horses.[288] From this Duveyrier concludes that at a later date oxen were substituted for horses, and that in virtue of a perfectly imaginary road from Murzuk by way of Anai Air must be the Agisymba Regio. He gives no convincing reason for the identification, but implies that by a process of elimination it must be so. The name Agisymba and Bagezan have been connected by displacing the terminal and initial syllables respectively of the two words, but undoubtedly it was not this so much as the existence of a Garamantian road which appealed to the learned author.

One of the principal objectives which I had in mind in visiting Air was to seek evidence of Roman penetration. In the course of their long historical knowledge and occupation of the Fezzan, it seemed natural for the Romans to have explored the Air road. But I found no remains, nor evidence whatsoever of their penetration, not even at points which had considerable strategic value. Some more fortunate traveller than myself may one day chance upon an inscription or a camp. Such a discovery in so vast and little known a land is quite conceivable, but up till now the weight of evidence is against the Romans ever having come to Air. There is a certain historical analogy in the fact that the Arabs never invaded the country either. Their influence on the Tuareg of Air was confined to an unenthusiastic conversion to Islam in comparatively recent times. On the other hand, the Arabs in the first century of the Hijra, like the Romans, seem to have descended the Chad road at least as far as Bilma, and again, Arab influence in Central Africa east of the lake is at least as strong as, and perhaps even greater than, the Western Arab-Moorish influence on the Upper Niger.

I am, however, much more inclined to regard Tibesti and not Air as the Agisymba Regio. We find the Arabs in the Fezzan evidently feeling the same necessity of expansion southwards along the Chad road as did the Romans. By 46 A.H. the Fezzan had already twice been conquered by the Arabs, first in 26 A.H., soon after the occupation of Egypt had been completed and the attention of Islam was turned to North Africa, and again when the inhabitants had cast off their servitude to the Arabs. Okba ibn Nafé was induced by this breach of faith[289] to leave his army, which was on its way to conquer Ifrikiya (Tunisia and Western Algeria), at Sert in the Great Syrtis, and to lead an expedition to reconquer the desert. He took Wadan and Jerma, near Murzuk, and the last strong places of the country, and asking what lay “beyond,” learnt of the “people of Hawar,”[290] who had a fortress on the edge of the desert at the top of an escarpment. It was said to be the capital of a country called Kawar, the name which is borne even to-day by the depression along which the main caravan road passes south through Bilma and other small villages, any one of which may have been their stronghold, which El Bekri[291] also calls Jawan. After a march of fifteen nights Okba came to this place and eventually captured it. At one moment his expedition nearly perished of thirst, but according to the story Okba's horse found water in the sand and saved the column, wherefore the place was called Ma el Fares, the "Water of the Horse." This point is now spelt Mafaras on the Murzuk-Kawar road in about Lat. 21° 15′ N.[292]

The Romans seem to have had much the same experience as the Arabs, though we can identify the movements of the latter with greater certainty. The expedition of Septimius Flaccus and Julius Maternus started from Garama. Now an expedition from the Fezzan proper to Negroland would normally have proceeded along the Chad road, which runs south, and not in the direction of Air, which lies south-west. Furthermore, we have already seen that there is no direct road from the Fezzan to Air save by making a detour via Jado and crossing the worst part of the desert. Had the Romans intended to use the Air road to Negroland they would assuredly have started from Rapsa (Ghat) and not from Garama; alternately had they started from Garama and proceeded by way of Ghat, it is likely to have been mentioned, nor would the enterprise have been so directly connected with the Garamantes. After marching south from Garama the expedition reached the Agisymba Regio. But if the Air mountains are neither south of Garama nor on a direct road from that place, both these conditions do apply to Tibesti. This country lies due south of the eastern Fezzan and there is a direct road from Garama by way of Tibesti to Negroland, though it is not so well known as the main Chad road. The latter trade road, however, and the Tibesti mountains seem to fit the description of the course taken by the expedition sufficiently well, and clearly better than the Air road and plateau. The Romans, we are told, marched for three months to the south; it may be objected that this would be an inordinately long time to take on a journey to Tibesti and that Air, being somewhat further away from Garama, is the more probable. But expeditions may take longer or shorter times to traverse any particular desert road according to the difficulties encountered, the fighting sustained and the pasturage available on the way for the transport animals, and I do not think that any conclusion can be drawn from the reported length of the march. A period of three to four months might as easily bring one expedition from the Fezzan to Tibesti or to Air as it would be insufficient for another under different conditions but on the same road to get more than half-way.

PLATE 45



If circumstantial evidence seems to point to Tibesti, there is also that of the place names given in the account. The Agisymba Regio contained the mountains of Bardetus, Mesche and Zipta. No similarity to these names can be found in Air, but in Tibesti the first may well be the area and massif round the village of Bardai, while Mesche may be a Latinised form of Miski, a valley and group south-west of Bardai. For Zipta I can offer no suggestion.

Like the Romans and the Arabs the modern Turks also penetrated Tibesti as a consequence of their occupation of the Fezzan in an attempt to stop the Tebu raiding. History is curiously consistent in that we have no evidence of the Arabs or the Turks having penetrated Air. The Romans, I assume, probably did not do so either.[293]

The Romans must have come into contact with the Tuareg in the Fezzan, where the latter, it might be assumed from Arab evidence alone, were early established if they did not actually constitute the majority of the original population. It is possible to trace in Roman records the names of certain well-known Tuareg tribes. The description which Corippus gives of the Ifuraces, the Ifoghas tribe of the Southern Tuareg, corresponds accurately with that of the present-day camel riders of the Sahara. In a description of an encounter with the Byzantine forces under John, the general himself cuts down a camel with his sword and the rider falls with the accoutrements and paraphernalia, which are those of a Tuareg on campaign or in battle to-day.[294] The activities of the Circumcelliones during the troubles described by Opatus[295] during the Donatist heresy in North Africa in the course of the fourth century A.D. remind one irresistibly of those of the Tuareg. These bands of marauders from the desert came into Southern Tunisia and Algeria on swift and remorseless errands of plunder for the greater glory of their heretical Faith. They lived in the barren hills of the outer waste and descended to burn churches, sack houses and carry off live-stock with such deadly efficiency and ease that the motive power of their organisation can only have come from a spirit which considers raiding a national sport. “When they were not resisted they usually contented themselves with plunder, but the slightest opposition provoked them to acts of violence and murder. . . . The spirit of the Circumcellians, armed with a huge and weighty club, as they were indifferently supplied with swords and spears, and waging war to the cry of ‘Praise be to God’ . . . was not always directed against their defenceless enemies, the peasants of the orthodox belief; they engaged and sometimes defeated the troops of the province, and in the bloody action of Bagai they attacked in the open field, but with unsuccessful valour, the advance guard of the Imperial cavalry.”[296]

So in later years the Tuareg of Ahaggar, disdaining any but *les armes blanches*, fell in ranks under the rifle fire of the French troops at Tit.

But it is curious that in none of these and other early descriptions of the Tuareg is any mention made of their outstanding characteristics, so obvious to the person who sees them for the first time—the Face Veil worn by the men. It seems very strange that none of the classical and post-classical authors should have recorded a feature which so distinguishes these people from other races. There is no reference to the Veil until we come to the first Arab authors, when the whole race is immediately described by this very peculiarity, as the Mulethţhemin, ملثّمين,the “Veiled Ones,” a second form plural past participle from the root لثم, which also forms the word *litham*, لثام, the Arabic name for the Veil itself. How it came about that the Arabs should be the first to record the use of the Veil is a problem to which I have been able to find no satisfactory solution.

---

[264] Cf. remarks in Chap. VIII regarding the dating of the mosques in Air.

[265] Barth did not himself, unfortunately, visit Assode. *Op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 376.

[266] There were sixty-nine inhabited houses in 1909, with 200 inhabitants, according to Chudeau. *Op. cit.*, Vol. II. p. 66.

[267] I could not trace any other of the seven

mosques referred to by Barth, nor is the great mosque decorated with columns as he says, unless the pierced walls supporting the roof can so be described. There is no “mimbar.”

[268]Some of them were quite old and had painted borders and coloured letters. The work was all, however, rather rough; no T’ifinagh writing was found. I had no facilities for examining the work in detail.

[269]People have stumbled upon small beehive grain pits in Air cut in the rock away from villages. In these no doubt the Tuareg who were hastily cleared out of Air in 1918 hid their small treasures. They will in many cases remain undiscovered perhaps for centuries and will prove the happiness of some later archæologist.

[270]The significance of the name “People of the King” will be explained in Chap. XII.

[271]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 360-1.

[272]Or Bundai; Barth has “Bunday.”

[273]The Cortier map is somewhat inaccurate hereabouts.

[274]“Asbenawa,” from “Asben,” the alternative name for Air in Southland, is the name which is there given to the Tuareg. Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 334.

[275]Wrongly called Tamgak on the Cortier map. The name Tamgak is only given to the larger group on the north of the Ighazar.

[276]Not in any way, of course, connected with the Azañieres mountains, which are many miles away.

[277]The italics are his. Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 458.

[278]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 197. That the road should have run from Telizzarhen to Anai

and then to Air is very doubtful, as this would have entailed a very devious route. What, doubtless, was meant was that it ran from Murzuk or Garama via Anai to Air.

[279]See Appendix III.

[280]Temed is a mountain north of Tamgak: there is a pool below the peak in a cave on which the prophet Elijah is reputed by the Tuareg to have lived.

[281]Von Bary’s diary, *op. cit.*, p. 192.

[282]“The Gate of the Head of the Desert.”

[283]Ptolemy (Marinus of Tyre), I. 8, sec. 4 seq.

[284]Pliny, *Nat. Hist.*, V. 5.

[285]Tabudium and Thuben are both mentioned, either of which might be the well of Tabonie on the Mizda Murzuk road.

[286]In the Fezzan: there are several places of this name elsewhere.

[287]Ptolemy, *loc. cit.*

[288]Herodotus, IV. 183.

[289]Narrative of Ibn Abd el Hakim in Slane’s translation of Ibn Khaldun, *op. cit.*, Appendix I to Book I.

[290]I think this name has nothing to do with Hawara but is derived from Kawar (see below).

[291]*El Bekri*, ed. Slane, 1859, p. 34. Cf. Jawan, جاوان or, حاوار = Hawar, or خاوار = Khawar? Kawar.

[292]El Noweiri tells the same story of a later expedition in Morocco led by Okba. If only for the fact that no place of this name can be found on the route of the latter expedition, the

attribution of the incident to the Kawar campaign is justified, though there are also other reasons for accepting this identification.

[293]See Schirmer's note on Von Bary's diary, *op. cit.*, p. 192.

[294]Corippus, Johannis, IV. 1065-83 *et passim.*

[295]De Schis. donatistarum, *passim.*

[296]Gibbon: *Decline and Fall*, Chap. XXI.

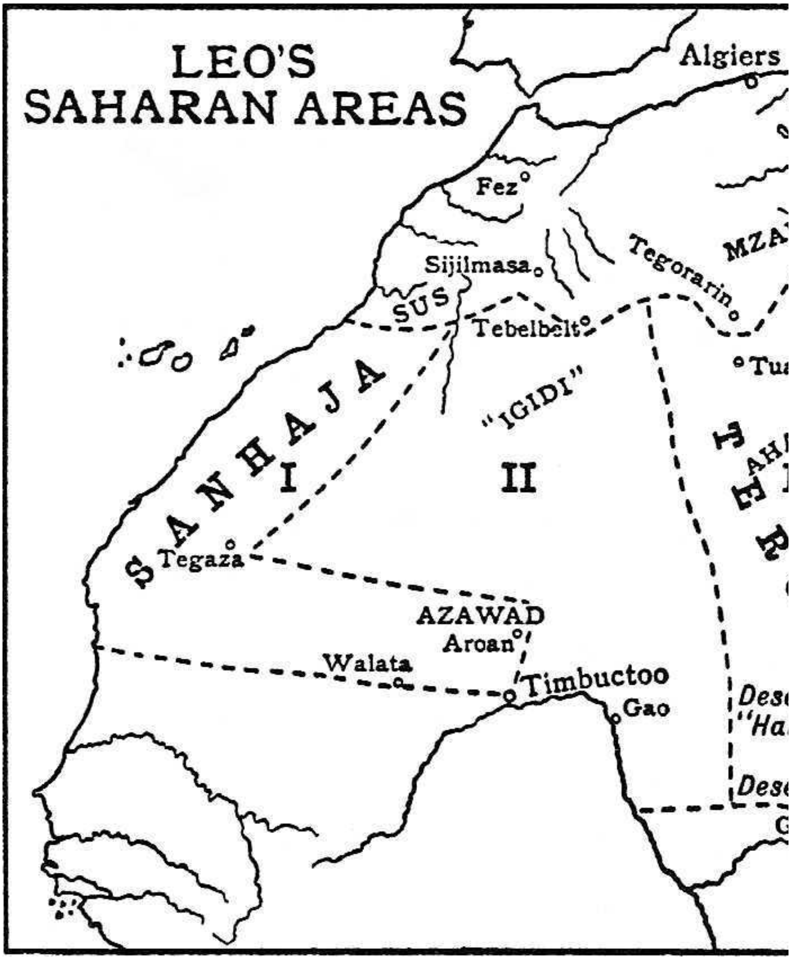
CHAPTER XI

THE ANCESTRY OF THE TUAREG OF AIR

AFTER the close of the classical period, the works of that great historian and philosopher, Abu Zeid Abd el Rahman ibn Khaldun, are our most fruitful source of information regarding North Africa. Himself a native of North Africa, whose inhabitants he esteemed inferior to none in the world, Ibn Khaldun compiled a monumental *History of the Berbers*, which has become a classic in the Arabic language. His lifetime, falling between A.D. 1332 and 1406, was still sufficiently early for him to have had experience of conditions and people before they had fallen so completely under the influence of the Arabs as we find them a century or two later. On the subject of the Tuareg, or Muleththemin as he calls them, the work is perhaps a little disappointing, for the author seems to have drawn his material from several sources; he is not wholly free from contradictions. To avoid, however, adding unduly to the complications attending a study of the divisions of the Tuareg in the Central Sahara, it will be preferable in the first instance to examine the account of another historian, Leo Africanus. Hassan ibn Muhammad el Wezaz el Fazi or el Gharnathi, to give him his full name, was also a North African, but born, probably in A.D. 1494 or 1495, at Granada. In the course of his life he became converted to Christianity, when he relinquished his original name. He travelled extensively in North Africa, and after living for some time in Rome, died at Tunis in 1552.[297]

According to Leo,[298] in the interior of Libya there was a people who wore the Litham or Veil. The nations of this people were called Lemtuna, Lemta, Jedala, Targa,[299] and Zenega; in other lists the names are given as Zenega or Sanhaja, Zanziga or Ganziga, Targa, Lemta and Jedala. While “Lemta” and “Lemtuna” have been regarded in some quarters as two forms of the same name, the groups are only ethnically connected, inasmuch as both were Muleththemin. In Leo’s descriptions of the deserts of Inner Libya the Lemta figure in the country between Air and the Tibesti mountains; the northern part of their area is almost identical with the present habitat of the Azger Tuareg. The Lemtuna, on the other hand, as we shall presently see, were a subdivision of the Sanhaja who lived much further west. The passage is a little obscure, but I find it difficult to agree with the interpretation put upon it by the learned editors of the Hakluyt Society in their reprint of Leo’s works.

LI
SAHAR


LEO'S SAHARAN AREAS
Algiers
Fez
MZA
Tegorarin
Sijilmasa
SUS
Tebelbelt
Tu
"IGIDI"
SANHAJA
I
II
AH
TER
Tegaza
AZAWAD
Aroan
Walata
Timbuctoo
Gao
Des
"Ha
Des
G

F. R. del.

Leo writes:[300] “Having described all the regions of Numidia, let us now proceed with the description of Libya, which is divided into five parts. . . .”

“The drie and forlorne desert of Zanhaga which bordereth the westward upon the Ocean Sea and extendeth eastward to the salt pits of Tegaza”[301] is clearly the Atlantic area, now called Mauretania by the French, between Southern Morocco and the Upper Niger and Senegal rivers. The Zanhaga are the Sanhaja, a famous part of the Muleththemin early in their recorded history, but now fallen into great decay.

The second area appears to be east of the first. The great steppe and desert area bounded by Southern Morocco and Southern Algeria in the north, and by the Niger country from Walata[302] to Gao[303] in the south, is divided into two and shared between the Sanhaja in the west, inhabiting his first area, and the Zanziga or Ganziga in the east, inhabiting his second area. The latter names are akin to the former and the people, if not identical, are probably related.

The third area was inhabited by the Targa. It commences from the desert steppe west of Air and extends eastwards towards the desert of Igidi.[304] Northward it borders on the Tuat, Gourara and Mzab countries, while in the south it terminates in the wilderness around Agades and Lower Air. The boundaries of this area are quite clear: they include the massifs of Air and Ahaggar and the deserts immediately east and west of the former.

The fourth and fifth areas we will come to later.

Leo is obviously attempting to describe the principal geographical divisions of the Sahara and the Veiled People inhabiting them. The boundaries of each area are given in terms of intervening deserts, or of countries inhabited by sedentaries or by other races which did not wear the Veil. His divisions, therefore, are not deserts but habitable steppe or other types of country bounded by deserts, or non-Tuareg districts.

Some confusion reigns in regard to the third area, the eastern limit of which is described as the Igidi desert. What is known as the Igidi desert to-day is a dune area south-west of Beni Abbes in South Western Algeria; but the position of this Igidi, lying as it does on the road from Morocco to Timbuctoo, cannot be the *eastern* boundary of the third area. This Igidi is, in fact, in the northern part of the second area, which is that of the Zanziga. Now this second area is said to contain a desert zone called "Gogdem," a name which cannot now be traced in that neighbourhood, though the well-defined Igidi south-west of Beni Abbes immediately jumps to the mind as a probable identification. The eastern boundary of the third area, which includes Air, or, as Leo calls it, "Hair," must lie between these mountains and those of Tibesti. This vast tract is in part true desert, with patches of white sand dunes, and in part desert steppe with scanty vegetation; it also contains a few oases. In it is one particular area of white dune desert crossed by the Chad road and containing a famous well called Agadem.[305] One of two hypotheses is possible: either the names "Igidi" and "Gogdem" in the paragraphs[306] dealing with the second and third areas respectively have become transposed in the text and Gogdem is to be identified with the Agadem dune desert, or else the whole phrase relating to the desert of Gogdem has been bodily misplaced at the end of the section dealing with the Zanziga area, instead of standing at the end of the succeeding paragraph on the Targa area, in which case Leo would be calling the Agadem dunes the Gogdem desert, within or near another Igidi[307] waste. Agadem is quite sufficiently important as a watering-point on a most difficult section of the Chad road to give its name to the area, nor is it hard to account for the corruption of the name into Gogdem[308]—such changes have occurred in many travellers' notes.[309] The first hypothesis is the most probable; it affords a simple explanation of an otherwise obscure passage and renders Leo's boundaries lucid.

The fourth of Leo's areas inhabited by the Lemta is described as extending from the desert east of Air *as far as* the country of the Berdeoa. This area seems to be that in which the Chad road and the wells to the east of it are found. It would include a part of the desert of Agadem, the Great Steppe north of Lake Chad, and oases like Jado and the Kawar depression.

The fifth and last area is that *of* the people of Berdeoa; it adjoins the Fezzan and Barca in the north, and in the south the wilderness north of Wadai, including presumably Tibesti and the Libyan desert west of the Nile Valley. It is said to extend eastward to the deserts of Aujila, though north-eastward would have been a more accurate definition.

Between the people of Berdeoa and the Nile Valley are the Egyptian oases inhabited by the Arabs and some "vile" black people.

Leo's description of the Sahara is far from being incorrect or confused; his information may be summarised as follows:[310]

Areas I and II.—South of Morocco and Western Algeria; north of the Niger and Senegal rivers; between the Atlantic littoral and the Ahaggar and Air massifs with their immediately adjacent deserts or steppes. Inhabitants: Sanhaja in the west and

Zanziga in the east.

Area III.—Air and Ahaggar, with their adjacent areas; south of Tuat, Gourara and Mzab, and north of Damergu. Inhabitants: Targa.

Area IV.—Desert and steppe between Air and Tibesti from Wargla and Ghadames in the north to the country of Kano and Nigeria generally in the south, including the country of Ghat and the Western Fezzan. Inhabitants: Lemta.

Area V.—The Libyan desert of Egypt, the Cyrenaican steppes and desert, a part of the Eastern Fezzan and Tibesti, Erdi and Kufra. Inhabitants: the people of Berdeoa with Arabs in the north-east and some blacks in the south-east.

In the fourth area the Lemta were in the country where the Azger now live, but the southern and the eastern sides have since been lost to the Tuareg. Kawar, whence the Tuareg of Air fetch salt, is under the domination of the latter, but, like the other habitable areas on the Chad road and in the Great Steppe, is now inhabited largely by Kanuri and Tebu. There is nothing improbable in the statement that the Lemta covered the whole of the fourth area. We have quite other definite and probably independent records of the Tuareg having lived in the Chad area and in Bornu, whence they were driven by the Kanuri, who are known to have conquered Kawar in fairly recent historical times.[311]

The people of Berdeoa are the only inhabitants of any of the five areas who were not Muleththemin. I have little doubt that they are the inhabitants of

Tibesti, where the town or village of Bardai is perhaps the most important of the permanently inhabited places. To-day they are Tebu, a name which seems to mean “The People of the Rock,”[312] with an incorrectly formed Arab version, Tibawi. The racial problem which they present can only be solved when they are better known. Keane[313] assumes that they are the descendants of the Garamantes, whose primeval home was perhaps in the Tibesti mountains. He notes the similarity of the names of their northern branch, the Teda, and a tribe called the Tedamansii, who seem, however, to have lived too far north to be connected with them.[314] The Southern Tebu or Daza section is certainly more negroid than the northern, and there are reasons for not accepting the view that the Garamantian civilisation was the product of a negroid people. Leo[315] records the discovery “of the region of Berdeoa,” which from the context is probably a misreading for *a* “region of the Berdeoa” in the Libyan desert of Egypt. The area is described as containing three castles and five or six villages. It is probably the Kufra archipelago of oases. The story of accidental discoveries of oases is also told of other places; Wau el Harir,[316] an oasis in the Eastern Fezzan, was reported to have been found by accident in 1860, and the Arab geographers relate similar stories of other points in the Libyan desert. The accounts of Kufra by Rohlfs and Hassanein Bey go to show that before it became a centre of the Senussi sect, with the consequent influx of Cyrenaican Arabs and Libyans, the population was Tebu. The identity of Berdeoa, which I think must be Bardai, was the subject of some controversy before circumstantial accounts of its existence were brought back by travellers in modern times. The name was for long assumed to be a misreading for Borku or Borgu, as D’Anville suggested. In Rennell’s map accompanying the account of Hornemann’s travels at the end of the eighteenth century the town (*sic*) of Bornu north of what is presumably meant to represent Lake Chad is a mislocation for Bornu province, while Bourgou in Lat. 26° N., Long. 22° E. is intended to represent Bardai in Tibesti, the Berdeoa of Leo. The “residue of the Libyan desert”[317] (*i.e.* other than that of the Tebu people of Berdeoa), namely, Augela (Aujila oasis) to the River of the Nile, we are told by Leo was inhabited by certaine Arabians and Africans called “Leuata,” a name which coincides with the Lebu or Rebu of Egyptian records. Idrisi places them in the same area as Leo, calling them Lebetae or Levata. The stock is referred to under the general name of Levata or Leuata by Ibn Khaldun in several connections. An ethnic rather than a tribal name seems to be involved, and this is natural if they are the descendants of the Lebu. Bates concludes that in the name of this people is the origin of the classical word “Libyan.”[318] The Leuata[319] assisted Hamid ibn Yesel, Lord of Tehert, in a war in Algeria against El Mansur, the third Fatimite Khalif. In A.D. 947-8, when El Mansur drove Hamid into Spain, the Levata were dispersed into the desert; some who escaped found refuge in the mountains between Sfax and Gabes, where they were still living in Ibn Khaldun’s day; others he places in the Great Syrtis and in the Siwa area. In Byzantine times they are shown in the Little Syrtis. El Masa’udi states that the Leuata survived in the Oases of Egypt. Their principal habitat is, in fact, not far from the country of the Lebu, who were in Cyrenaica according to Egyptian records. Both the Tehenu further east and the Lebu are known to have been subjected to pressure from the Meshwesh in the west, and some fusion between the two may well, therefore, have occurred. The ancestors of the Levata of Arab geographers and the modern Libyan inhabitants of Siwa and the northern oases of the Western Desert of Egypt are either the product of this fusion or the descendants of the Lebu alone. The Levata and Lebu seem to have this in common, that they are probably a non-Tuareg Libyan people immigrant from across the Mediterranean at the time of the invasions of Egypt by the Libyan and Sea People. In the course of history they were displaced and reduced; only in the north-east of the Libyan desert did they remain at all concentrated or homogeneous.

The Targa who inhabited the third area of Leo concern this volume most particularly, as their zone includes Air as well as Ahaggar. So long as the Tuareg were believed to be only a tribe they were identified with the Targa, but when the former term was discovered to have a wider or racial significance it was not clear, unless it was a proper name, why Leo used it of any one section of the Mulehthemin. The exact significance only appears when Ibn Khaldun’s narrative is considered.

In his History of the Berbers Ibn Khaldun attempted to make a comprehensive classification of the Libyans. After working out a comparatively simple system which emphasises both the obvious diversity as well as the superficial appearance of unity[320] of the population of North Africa, he proceeds to elaborate more complex schemes of classification which are difficult to reconcile with one another. He seems throughout to have derived his information from two or more sources which he was himself unable to co-ordinate.

Ibn Khaldun divides the Libyans into two families descended from the eponymous heroes, Branes and Madghis, a theory which recognises the difficulties involved by the assumption that they all belonged to a single stock. The division may be traced even to-day. In many Libyan villages the inhabitants are divided into two factions which, without being hostile, are conscious of being different. The factions are not found among the nomadic tribes, where opportunities for living in separate places are greater than in the sedentary districts, but their existence among the latter, however, is hardly otherwise explicable than by the assumption of separate racial origins. This view is suggested by Ibn Khaldun's classification, and also by the result of a detailed examination of the different constituent elements of the Libyan population. Among the Tuareg, whom I consider belong to a single stock, different from that of the various races which composed the other Libyans, these factions do not exist even in the villages where tribal organisation is in process of breaking down and people of different clans live together under one headman.

Out of deference to the patriarchal system of the Arabs—a habit of mind which pervades their life and often distorts their historical perception—Ibn Khaldun has given to the two Libyan families of Branes and Madghis a common ancestor called Mazigh. Both "Madghis" and "Mazigh" are probably derived from the common MZGh root found to be so widespread in North African names.[321] All three are almost certainly mythical personages. The selection of Mazigh as the common ancestor points to an attempt having been made, in accordance with patriarchal custom, to explain the one characteristic which is really common to all the Libyans including the Tuareg, namely, their language. While the MZGh root is not at all universally used as the root of a national appellation, its occurrence in various parts of North Africa might well allow one to talk of "Mazigh-speaking People," or, as we might more comprehensibly say, "Berber-speaking People." And so I would confine the use of both "Berber" and "Mazigh" to a linguistic signification, analogous to that of the word "Aryan," which simply denotes people, not necessarily of the same racial stock, speaking one of the Aryan group of languages.[322]

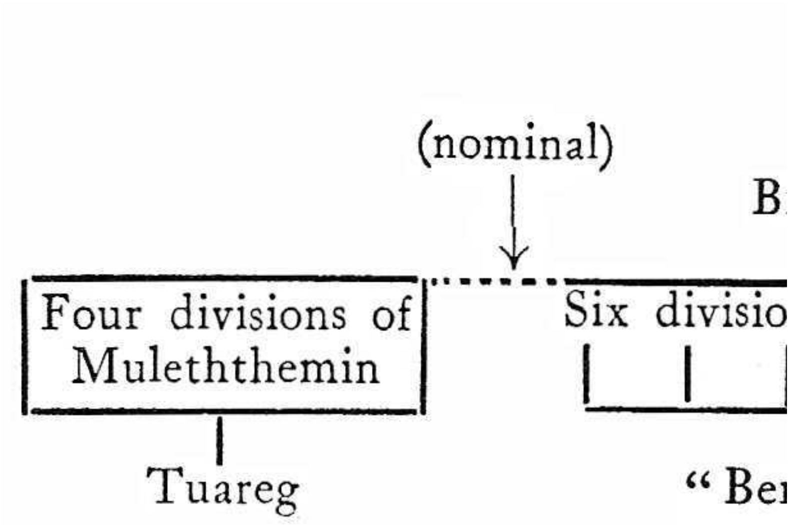
Ibn Khaldun places the home of most of the divisions of the Beranes and Madghis Libyans in Syria. They were, he says, the sons of Mazigh, the son of Canaan, the son of Ham, and consequently related to the Philistines and Gergesenes, who did not leave the east when their kinsmen came to Africa. All Moslems possess a form of snobbishness which is displayed in their attempt to establish some connection, direct or indirect, with an Arabian tribe related to the people of the Prophet Muhammad. In Morocco this feeling is so strong that it is common to find Libyan families free from all admixture with the Arab invaders, boasting ancestral trees descended from the Prophet. The Maghreb is full of pseudo-Ashraf; a term in the Moslem world which is properly reserved for the descendants of the Leader of Islam. The same occurs in Central Africa. Much of the legendary history of the Libyans relating to an eastern home may therefore be discounted as attempts on the part of Moslem historians to connect them with the lands and race of Islam. Nevertheless, even when all allowances have been made for this factor there remains to be explained a strong tradition of some connection between North Africa and the Arab countries. Not only is it commented upon in all the early histories, but it is to some extent still current to-day among the people. I am not convinced that it cannot be explained by the presence among the Libyans of one element which certainly did come from the East in the period preceding and during the invasions of Egypt, when the people of the Eastern Mediterranean co-operated with the Africans in their attacks on the Nile Valley. The undoubted occurrence of migrations within the historical period both from Syria and from the east coast of the Red Sea are alone sufficient, if the characteristic of Moslem snobbishness is taken into account, to account for such traditions regarding their home. It is unnecessary to attribute these stories to the original appearance of the Libyans proper in Africa even if their cradle is to be looked for in the East. This may be inherently probable, but must be placed at so remote a date as to ensure that traditions connected therewith were certainly by now forgotten.

Ibn Khaldun divides the families of Branes and Madghis respectively into ten and four divisions. Four of the ten Beranes people, the Lemta, Sanhaja, Ketama and Auriga, are called the Mulehthemin, or People of the Veil.[323] The descendants of Madghis, with whom we are not concerned, include the Louata or Levata. The hypothesis previously brought forward for their non-Tuareg origin gains support from the fact that in Ibn Khaldun's classification they are not placed in the same family as the People of the Veil.

We now come to Ibn Khaldun's views regarding the origin of the Mulehthemin. The four divisions of Lemta, Sanhaja, Ketama and Auriga, though in the

Beranes group, he regarded as of a different origin to the other six sections. The inconsistency of the patriarchal classification is apparent. He states that certain traditions which he is inclined to accept as true connect the Sanhaja and the Ketama with the Yemen.[324] They were Himyarite tribes which came from the east coast of the Red Sea to Africa under the leadership of Ifrikos, the hero who gave his name to Ifrikiya, which is now called Tunisia. In examining the organisation and history of the Aulimmiden Tuareg who live between the Air mountains and the Niger bend, Barth[325] found that they also claimed to be descended from Himyer. Now the Aulimmiden in name and history are a part of the Lemta who migrated from the area in North Africa where the rest of the section still lives under the name of Azger, and where we are first able to identify them from our records. What is true in this respect of a part is true of the whole, and three out of the four divisions of the Mulehthemin thus seem to be racially different from the other six Beranes divisions, the fourth section in question being the Auriga people, who are also called Hawara. The latter present one of the most difficult problems in the early history of North Africa. Suffice it here to state that in the course of the early Arab invasions many of them lost so much of their individuality that we must rely largely on Ibn Khaldun's classification of them among the four divisions of the Tuareg for their early identity.

There are then, according to Ibn Khaldun, two separate families of Libyans, and in one of these is a group apparently different racially from the remainder of the two families.



It is a complicated classification which attempts to establish some sort of unity among all the Libyans, and at the same time indicates without room for doubt that the learned historian felt he was dealing with a mixed population. His difficulties are clear. His statements support the view that the Tuareg are separate from the rest of the people called Libyans, who are themselves composed of at least two stocks, though more than this regarding the origin of the Tuareg I should not yet feel entitled to deduce from his account.

At a later stage, when the origins of the People of Air come to be examined, another reference will be found, in the writings of an authority in the Sudan, to the migration of a people from the east coast of the Red Sea into Africa. This Himyaritic invasion is so much insisted upon in various works that the presumption of a migration from that direction, with which the Tuareg were associated, is tempting, though it is not clear whether the

Sudanese authority was merely copying Ibn Khaldun's statements or whether he was working on independent information. I have mentioned the theory because it is one of the more usually accepted explanations of the origin of the Tuareg, but I do not think the problem can be so easily resolved. My own view is that the Tuareg are not Himyarites, but that the memory of an invasion from that quarter which undoubtedly did contribute to the population of Central Africa was adopted by their own traditional historians and accepted by Ibn Khaldun to establish a connection for the People of the Veil with the land of the Prophet. The migrations across the Red Sea are far more likely to have accounted for the early Semitic influence in Africa, especially in the Nilotic Sudan before the rise of Islam, and in Abyssinia, than for the origin of the Tuareg, who, I am convinced, were already in the continent at a far earlier date.

Ibn Khaldun now introduces a further classification which again emphasises the separateness or individuality of the Tuareg. He states that among the Beranes were certain divisions collectively known as the Children of Tiski. Among these were the Hawara, Heskura, Sanhaja, Lemta, and Gezula. The Hawara we know were the same as the Auriga; the Sanhaja and Lemta have already been mentioned. The Heskura and Gezula may therefore be subdivisions of the Ketama, and the Children of Tiski, therefore, probably a collective term for all the Muleththemin as a whole.

Ibn Khaldun's writings are voluminous and have a baffling tendency to jump about from subject to subject. Having given us these explanations, which though complicated are comprehensible, he suddenly brings in a host of new names, and proceeds to inform us that the Muleththemin are descended from the "Sanhaja of the second race" and to consist of the Jedala or Gedala, Lemtuna, Utzila, Targa, Zegawa and Lemta divisions. It is not within the scope of this work to examine all the Tuareg groups in Africa in detail. To investigate the Zanziga of Leo's second area or the Utzila or Jedala of Ibn Khaldun would only serve to complicate the issue which deals with the Tuareg of Air. But the Sanhaja, although they lived in the furthest west of the Sahara, played such an important part in the history of all the Tuareg that they must be briefly mentioned in passing.

At one period nearly all the People of the Veil were united in a sort of desert confederation under the dominion of the Sanhaja. The era terminated with the death of Ibn Ghania in about A.D. 1233, some 150 years before Ibn Khaldun wrote, even by which time, however, the inner parts of Africa had hardly recovered. The memory of the Sanhaja empire, which extended from the Senegal River to Fez and eastwards perhaps as far as Tibesti, survived in the additional classifications of Ibn Khaldun and in the stories about the Tuareg collected by his contemporaries. It is possible to suppose that the first ethnological systems he gives refer to the state of the Mulethhemin before or during the Sanhaja confederacy, but that when he gives the list of names of six divisions descended from the "second race of Sanhaja" he is referring to the People of the Veil after the death of Ibn Ghania. At that time the name of the dominant group in the confederation had been given by the other inhabitants of North Africa generally to all the Tuareg. In the process of disintegration of the empire several truly Sanhaja tribes were absorbed by other Tuareg groups. It is difficult to accept the alternative view that the

Sanhaja of the second race are a different people from the earlier Sanhaja, for such a conclusion would imply that the Muleththemin were made up of more than one racial stock, whereas their most obvious characteristic is unity of type and habit.

The Sanhaja division of Ibn Khaldun's first grouping are obviously the same as the people of Leo's first area on the western side of the great desert which extends between Beni Abbes and Timbuctoo. After their period of fame they came on evil days, and were reduced to the position of tributaries when they lost many of their Tuareg characteristics. Their remnants are the Mesufa and Lemtuna tribes. The relationship of the Sanhaja and Lemta noted by Barth either means nothing more than that they were both Muleththemin, or dates from their association with each other during the Sanhaja empire; for they were ever separate ethnic divisions of the People of the Veil.

Much trouble has been occasioned by the confusion of the names Lemta and Lemtuna. The apparent derivation of the latter from the former may also have been due to the association of the two main divisions: it is important only to emphasise that while the one is a subdivision of the Sanhaja now living in the north-west corner of the Sahara near Morocco, the other is a branch of the Tuareg race co-equal with the latter. It is in this confusion of names that the explanation is to be found of the statement so often heard and repeated by Barth, that the Lemta were the neighbours of the Moorish Walad Delim of Southern Morocco. The position of the Lemtuna makes this statement true of them, but not of the Lemta, whose home, both on the authority of Leo and on other evidence, was far removed from

Mauretania, and, to wit, in the Fezzan. The erroneous association of the Lemta with the Walad Delim is largely responsible for the wrong account of the migrations of various sections of the southern and south-eastern Tuareg given by Barth and his successors.[326]

But let us return to the people who were the ancestors of the Air Tuareg. The Hawara, according to Ibn Khaldun, El Bekri and El Masa'udi, inhabited Tripolitania, the deserts of Ifrikiya, and even parts of Barca. They lived, in part at least, side by side with the Lemta, Wearers of the Veil, who were "near," or "as far as" Gawgawa. It has been assumed that this Gawgawa was the Kaukau of Ibn Batutah's travels, and consequently Gao or Gaogao or Gogo or Gagho on the Niger. But it is more reasonably identified with Kuka on Lake Chad, and if this is so, the Lemta according to Ibn Khaldun extended precisely as far as the place referred to by Leo, in speaking of his fourth area.[327] It is clear that Ibn Khaldun meant "as far as" and not "near," for in referring to the Hawarid origin of a part of the Lemta people he says that they may be so recognised "by their name, which is an altered form of the word Hawara: for having changed the و (*w*) into a sort of *k* which is intermediary between the soft *g* and the hard *q*, they have formed "Haggar." The latter are, of course, the Ahaggaren, who then, as now, lived in mountains called by the same name a very long way from Kuka on Lake Chad; even so they were coterminous with the Lemta, a point which coincides with the evidence of Leo and others. Further indications of the extension of the Lemta as far as Lake Chad will be dealt with in the next chapter; they are confirmed both by the sequence of events in Air and by the occupation of Tademekka by the Aulimmiden-Lemta, culminating in A.D. 1640 when the former inhabitants of that area were driven towards the west.[328] All this would be incomprehensible if Gawgawa were identified with Gao on the Niger, or if Ibn Khaldun's "near" were not interpreted as "towards" or "as far as."

It may appear strange to find Ibn Khaldun referring to the Hawarid origin of the Lemta when they are repeatedly given elsewhere by him as separate and co-equal divisions of the Muleththemin. It is possible that originally "Hawara" or "Auriga" may have been the national name of all the Tuareg, and that on the analogy of what we know happens in the case of tribes which have split up, one group may have retained the name of the parent stock. But if this ever did take place it must have happened long before the Moslem invasion, by which time the Tuareg had already become established in the divisions which we know; such an occurrence would have no practical bearing on conditions prevailing to-day. It is therefore easier to assume that all he meant to convey was the existence of a certain rather close connection between the Hawara and Lemta. We know in fact that, though not identical, the two groups have interchanged tribes, some of each division being found in the other one. This connection would account for the suspicious etymology of the word "Haggar," which sounds uncommonly like an attempt on his part to prove philologically what is known traditionally to be the case.

The Hawara as we know them to-day are not all Tuareg or even Libyans, although they were included among the Beranes families under the name of Auriga, and were specifically numbered among the People of the Veil. They were described as an element of great importance among the pre-Arab Libyans and reckoned co-equal with the Sanhaja. Ibn Khaldun does, however, add that at the time of the Arab conquest of North Africa they had assimilated a number of other tribes of different stock, which probably explains the rapid “Arabisation” of a part of them. It was the non-Tuareg part which became readily proselytised and so passed under the influence of the new rulers of North Africa. The Hawara were much to the fore in the occupation of Spain and generally in the Arab doings of the Fatimite era. Some of them in common with other Libyans supported the Kharejite schism in Islam; yet another part which had become “Arabised” established itself under the name of the Beni Khattab in the Fezzan, with their capital at Zuila. But those of them who most retained their Tuareg characteristics represent the original stock. In referring to certain Libyans by the name of Hawara, Ibn Khaldun is obviously not speaking of Tuareg people; one may therefore conclude that he means the strangers whom they assimilated.[329] Consequently I prefer to use the name “Hawara” for the whole group, but when the section which preserves its Tuareg characteristics is indicated the name “Auriga” is more applicable.

It may be conceived that a people of such importance left some trace of their name among the Tuareg of to-day, in addition to the name “Haggar,” where Ibn Khaldun’s etymology seems suspicious. The name can be recognised in the form “Oraghen” or “Auraghen,” or in an older spelling “Iuraghen,” a tribe in the Azger group. The root also occurs in the name “Auraghiye” given to the Air dialect of the Tuareg language. These instances are valuable evidence.

Duveyrier[330] records of the Oraghen tribe that "according to tradition they originally came from the neighbourhood of Sokna.[331] Before establishing themselves where they are now located, the tribe inhabited in succession the Fezzan, the country of Ghat, and Ahawagh, a territory situate on the left bank of the Niger, east of Timbuctoo. It was in this locality that the tribe divided; one part, the one under review, returned to the environs of Ghat, the other more numerous part remained in the Ahawagh. . . ." The Ahawagh or Azawagh is some way east of Timbuctoo, it is, in point of fact, as Barth rightly points out, the area south of Air. He says:[332] "Their original abode was said to be at a place called Asawa (Azawagh)[333] to the south of Iralghawen (Eghalgawen) in Southern Air." While the exact sequence of movements thus recorded may not be accurate, the indications are of importance in considering the origin of the people of Air as they refer to a southward migration through Air and a partial return north. But whereas in the Azger country the Auraghen are a noble tribe, in the Southland they are a servile tribe of the Aulimmiden.[334] This fact is very significant and seems to provide an explanation of the ancestry of the Tademekkat and of some of the People of Air,[335] who are in part of Hawarid origin. The date of the expulsion of the Tademekkat people towards the west and north by the Aulimmiden prior and up to about A.D. 1640 coincides with the legend recorded by Duveyrier of a party of southern Auraghen who came to the assistance of their cousins among the Azger and helped to break the domination of the Imanen kings of the Azger. Those Auraghen who remained behind in the Tademekka country were eventually reduced to a state of vassalage and pushed westward during the general movement which took place in that direction.

But in spite of the occurrence of a tribe with this name among the Azger, it is not the latter group but the Ahaggaren who were originally Auriga, even as the Azger were in essence Lemta, notwithstanding the considerable exchange of tribes which has taken place between the two groups.

In another place I have had occasion to doubt whether the usually accepted derivation of the word “Tuareg” applied, as it now is, to all the People of the Veil was entirely satisfactory. The derivation seemed founded on the fallacy of “post hoc, ergo propter hoc.” The name Targa in Leo and Ibn Khaldun appears to be the same word as Tuareg, in a slightly modified form; but in these authors it is not used of all but only of a part of the Muleththemin. It is a proper name like Sanhaja, or Lemta, and the group which bears it is as important as the other main divisions. Now in one place Leo names the divisions of the Muleththemin as the Sanhaja, Zanziga, Targa, Lemta and Jadala; in another as the Sanhaja, Targa, Jedala, Lemta and Lemtuna, of which we can eliminate the last named as a subdivision of the Sanhaja. Elsewhere again he calls them the Sanhaja, Zanziga, Guenziga, Targa and Lemta. Further, in Ibn Khaldun we learn that the Sanhaja, Hawara, Lemta, Gezula and Heskura are in one group as the Children of Tiski, and again he divides the race into four divisions only, the Sanhaja, Auriga, Ketama and Lemta. Of these we can eliminate the Lemtuna as a part of the Sanhaja. Leo’s Zanziga and Guenziga are modifications of the latter name and were given to the Tuareg immediately east of them, probably during their desert confederation;

Ibn Khaldun's Heskura and Gezula seem to be two names for one division which possibly was the Ketama. Now if the remaining names are considered, it is noteworthy that in no one of the lists do the two names Targa and Hawara or Auriga occur. They are therefore quite likely to be different names for the same group. Furthermore, in Leo's third area the veiled inhabitants of the Air and Ahaggar mountains are both called Targa, and the latter and a large part of the former are known to be Hawara. The conclusion is that "Targa," so far from being merely a descriptive or abusive term, is another name for Hawara-Auriga. The fact that the dialect spoken in Air is called Auraghiye alone would justify Leo classifying the inhabitants both of Air as well as of Ahaggar under one term, namely, Targa, if, as is highly probable, the name is an alternative for Auriga or Hawara, or for at least a large part of them.

Having suggested this equivalent we must return to the question, already foreshadowed, namely, whether, from an examination of the present tribes of the Ahaggaren and Azger groups of Tuareg, any conclusion can be drawn showing that at one and the same time a connection between the two divisions and a separate ancestry existed. It is necessary to postulate for the moment, as has already been done, that the Azger were the old Lemta, for the evidence can only be considered in detail a little later. It might have seemed more rational to deal with it now, especially as their history is of greater importance to Air than that of the Ahaggaren, but for various reasons which will become apparent it will be found more convenient to examine the latter first.

In Air and in the south generally the two divisions are referred to collectively by the name of Ahaggaren. The reason is that the Azger are now so reduced in numbers that the world has tended to forget their name for that of their more powerful and prosperous western neighbours; the Ahaggaren on account of their trading and caravan traffic have also come more into contact with the outside world. The Azger, on the other hand, instead of becoming better known, as a result of the French penetration of the Sahara have migrated eastwards further and further away from Europeans into the recondite places of the Fezzan mountains, which they now only leave to raid Air or Kawar in company with rascals like the northern Tebu and the more irreconcilable Ahaggaren, who have refused to submit to French administration. Although in Air "Ahaggaren" has come to mean just Northern Tuareg, it has no strict ethnic signification.

Many travellers in the Ahaggar country have heard the tradition current among the population that the Ahaggaren are considered originally to have formed part of the Azger division. Duveyrier[336] records that the Ahaggaren and cognate Tuareg to the north-west are divided into fourteen principal noble tribes:

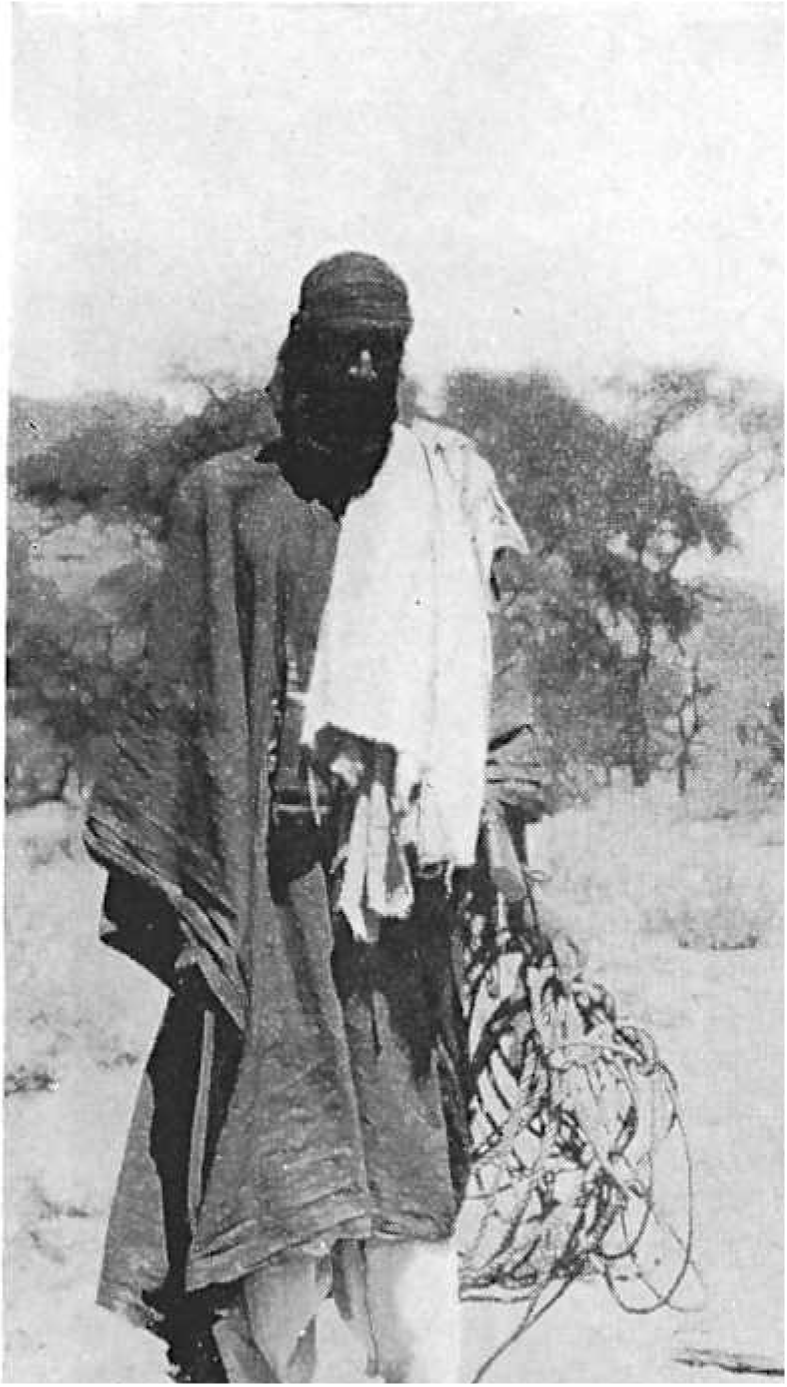
Tegehe[337] Mellen,
Tegehe n'es Sidi,
En Nitra,
Taitoq,
Tegehe n'Aggali,[338]
Inemba Kel Emoghi,
Inemba Kel Tahat,
Kel[339] Ghela,
Ireshshumen,

Kel Ahamellen,
Ibogelan,
Tegehe n’Essakkal,
Ikadeen,
Ikerremoïn.

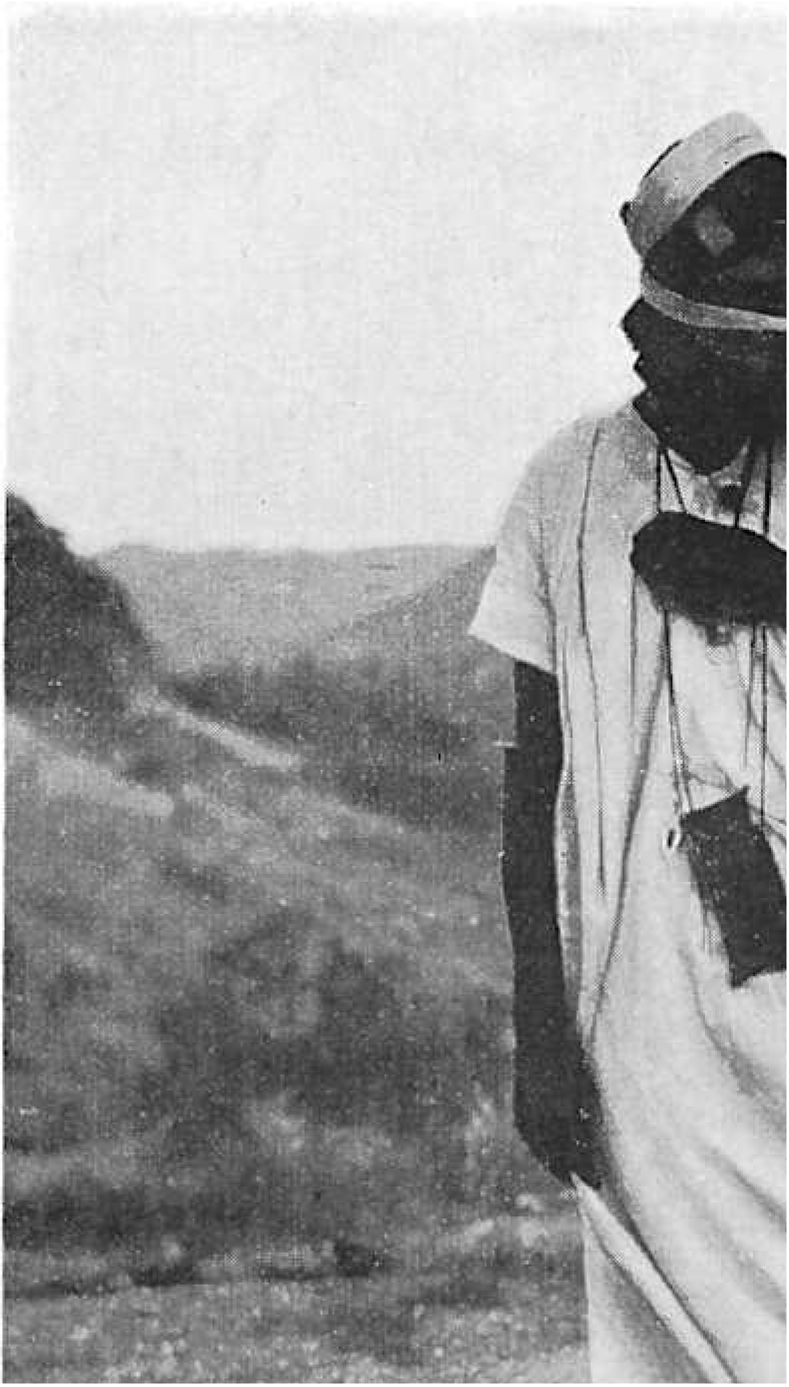
Bissuel,[340] however, declares that the Taitoq, Tegehe n’es Sidi and Ireshshumen form a separate group of people living in the Adrar Ahnet, who are sometimes called collectively the Taitoq, but should more correctly be described as the Ar’rerf Ahnet. The noble tribes of this confederation, the Taitoq proper and the Tegehe n’es Sidi, claim to be of independent origin and not related either to the Ahaggaren or the Azger. The Ireshshumen are said to be a mixed tribe composed of the descendants of Taitoq men, and women of their Imghad, the Kel Ahnet. There are also four Imghad tribes: the Kel Ahnet and Ikerremoin, who depend from the Taitoq, and the Tegehe n’Efis (probably n’Afis) and the Issokenaten, who depend from the Tegehe n’es Sidi. These Imghad live in Ahnet, but in 1888 were as far afield as the Talak plain west of Air.[341] The Ikerremoin of the Ahnet mountains—though probably of the same stock as the noble tribe of the same name in Ahaggar—are a distinct unit; they were probably a part of the latter until conquered in war by the Taitoq. The Tuareg nobles of Ahnet may be considered a separate branch of the race, possibly descended from the Ketama. They are neither Auriga nor Lemta and probably not Sanhaja either. The Taitoq tribes must therefore be omitted from Duveyrier’s record.

He states that a split occurred between the Azger and Ahaggaren. About fifty years before he was writing, or, in other words, about a century ago, the Kel Ahamellen, like other Tuareg tribes in the area, were under the rule of the Imanen kings of Azger. The latter rulers are described as of the same stock as the Auraghen and as “strangers” among the Azger. Such a description is logical if they were, as we may suppose, an Auriga stock living among the Lemta or Azger. The Kel Ahamellen were settled on the extreme west of the country held by the latter division, and according to the story became so numerous that they divided up into the sub-tribes whose names occur in this list, and so broke away from the allegiance of the Imanen kings. But if in Duveyrier’s day the Kel Ahamellen had only broken away from the Azger confederation as recently as fifty years previously, and were, as he also says, in a state of internal anarchy, it is out of the question for one clan to have increased sufficiently rapidly to form fourteen large noble sub-tribes covering an area reaching from Ghat to the Ahnet massif. The supposition is that the Kel Ahamellen did in fact break away from the Azger about then, for tradition is strong on this point, but that instead of being alone to form the new division they joined a group of other tribes already in existence, namely, the descendants of the original Auriga-Ahaggaren stock. It is immaterial whether the latter were also under the domination of the Azger Imanen kings a century or so before, though it may be remembered that this reigning clan was itself from Ahaggar.

PLATE 46



FUGDA (R.), CHIEF OF TIMIA



ATAGOOM

Kel Ahamellen, or the “White People,” is a descriptive and not a proper name, a circumstance which points to the view that such was not their original appellation. In the course of time the unit became divided into three tribes, the Kel Ahamellen proper, the Tegehe Aggali (dag Rali) and the Tegehe n’Esakkal. The “I name” of the original stock was lost, and so the group collectively bore the same label as the smaller Kel Ahamellen tribe. By the beginning of this century, when the French advance took place, the Ahaggaren were already organised under their own king Ahitagel. When their country was finally occupied, Musa Ag Mastan was reigning over them and contributed largely to the pacification. He continued as Amenokal of Ahaggar until his death in December 1916. Of the fourteen

Ahaggar tribes, therefore, the three Kel Ahamellen are closely related to each other, and appear to constitute the Azger nucleus among them. There may, of course, be other Azger among the remaining eleven Ahaggaren tribes who are the Auriga element, but no other information seems at the moment available. The traditional connection of these two Tuareg divisions is so strongly associated with the three Kel Ahamellen that it is they who must be regarded as the most recent and perhaps as the primary or principal offshoot of the Azger among the Ahaggar people.

The presence of the Kel Ahamellen in the west would account for the traditional common origin of the Ahaggaren and Azger. The warlike qualities of the latter would inevitably tempt a vain people even though of different stock to associate themselves with so famous a division. The fact that both Ahaggar and the Azger were at one time under the domination of the Azger Imanen kings would, moreover, have the same effect. That some explanation of the sort which I have given is correct seems to be clear from the two different forms in which the traditional connection is recorded. Ibn Khaldun postulated the Hawarid origin of the Lemta, and adduced as proof the etymology of the name "Haggar." Duveyrier, on the other hand, declared that his researches led him to believe that the Ahaggaren were originally Azger.[342]

The Azger, whom all are agreed to-day in regarding as a distinct group of Tuareg for all that they are connected with the Ahaggaren and the people of Air, range over the country between the eastern slopes of the Ahaggar mountains and Murzuk in the Fezzan. Whereas the Ahaggaren control the caravan roads between Algeria or Tuat and Ahaggar, and share with the Tuareg of Air the western tracks between their respective mountains, the Azger consider the roads from Ghat to the north and to the east as their own property. They share with the people of Air the main caravan track by way of Asiu or In Azawa to the latter country.

It is very difficult to say much of the present state of the Azger. Their movement away from contact with Europeans and their intractable characteristics have kept them from becoming known. This is all the more regrettable, since, owing to their association with the Fezzan, a knowledge of their history and peculiarities might throw light on the puzzling problem of the Garamantian and Tuareg civilisations. They seem also, in spite of their very reduced numbers, to be the purest of all the Tuareg. Duveyrier's[343] account of them is the best one which exists. They have always enjoyed a most remarkable reputation for courage and even foolhardiness. It is said that it takes two Azger to raid a village out of which twenty Ahaggaren would be chased.

The Azger count six noble tribes, the Imanen, Auraghen, Imettrilalen, Kel Ishaban, Ihadanaren, Imanghassaten. The last-named tribe is of Arab origin descended from a Bedawi stock of the Wadi el Shati in the Fezzan. Its members are the fighting troops of the Imanen and have come to be regarded as Noble Tuareg. Though the People of the Veil recognise nobility or servility of other races, I know of no other instance where a foreign stock has achieved complete recognition among these people as Imajegh or Noble. In all other cases foreign stocks, even of noble caste according to the standards of the

Tuareg, technically become servile when conquered or absorbed. In the case of the Imanghassaten, their assimilation to the nobility must have been due to the fact that they lived side by side with the Azger and were never conquered by them. In other instances of Arabs associated with Tuareg the racial distinction remains clear and is recognised. Among the Taitoq of Ahnet the Arab Mazil and Sokakna tribes supply the camels for the caravans crossing the desert to Timbuctoo, where the Arab Meshagra, who dress like the Tuareg, used to be associated with the veiled Kunta tribe until they were evicted by the Igdalen Tuareg from their homes and took refuge with the Aulimmiden.[344] But though associated with them, none of these three Arab tribes have ever been counted as Tuareg nobles.

Parallel to the Azger Kel Ahamellen among the Ahaggaren are the Auraghen and Imanen in the Azger group, for they belong to the Auriga family. Other Azger tribes may also have been Auriga, but there are no records on the subject.

Nearly all the Azger tribes have dependent servile tribes in addition to slaves, but there are two classes in the confederation described as neither noble nor servile but mixed in caste. These are the Kel T’inalkum[345] (the Tinylkum of Barth) and the Ilemtin tribes, and two tribes of Inisilman or Holy Men, the Ifoghas and the Ihehawen. These are accorded the privileges of nobles.[346]

The name of the “Ilemtin” is interesting. It is another form of “Aulimmiden,” the Tuareg who live in the steppe west of Air, and is, of course, identical with “Lemta.” Moreover, the Ilemtin are in the very area where Leo had placed the northern part of the Lemta division. With their kindred the Kel

T'inalkum, who also are neither noble nor servile, and perhaps with the Ihehawen, they represent the old parent stock of the Azger-Lemta. Their very antiquity, together with their tradition of nobility among the other tribes in the confederation, may be held to account by progressive deterioration for their curious caste. The Ifoghas and the Kel Ishaban are said to have been of the Kel el Suk or Tademekkat Tuareg: in the case of the former, at least, I do not think that this is so. They are a very widespread tribe in the Sahara, but indications will be given later showing that they too are probably Lemta. Their association with Tademekka is doubtless due to a part of them being found in a region to which they presumably migrated when the other Lemta people invaded Air from the south-east and also formed the Aulimmiden group.[347]

In late classical times the northern part of the Lemta area of Leo was occupied by the Garamantian kingdom and by the nomadic Ausuriani, Mazices and Ifuraces.[348] The Ausuriani and Mazices were people of considerable importance and behaved like true Tuareg, raiding in company with one another into Cyrenaica and Egypt. The Maxyes, Mazices, etc., people with names of the MZGh root, seem to be the Meshwesh of Egyptian records. They are probably some of the ancestors of the Tuareg, and may be assumed to have been related to the Ausuriani, with whom they were always associated. The latter, who are also called Austuriani, are described by Synesius as one of the native people of Libya, in contrast with other Libyans whom he knew to have arrived at a later date.[349] Bates[350] thinks that the Ausuriani may be the Arzuges of Orosius. Now the form of the name Arzuges, and more remotely that of Ausuriani or Austuriani, points to an identification with the

Azger. But that is not all. The position of the Ausuriani in late classical times agrees well with that given by Ammianus for the home of the Astacures, who are also mentioned by Ptolemy.[351] This name is intermediate between "Ausuriani" and "Arzuges," and again is similar to "Azger." Duveyrier[352] has come to the independent conclusion that these people under various but similar names must be identified with the Azger, who therefore for the last fourteen centuries appear to have occupied the same area in part that they do now. Their northern limit, it is true, has been driven south as a result of the Arab and other invasions of the Mediterranean littoral, and their southern territory has been lost to them, but in the main their zone has hardly changed.

One may, however, adduce further evidence. Among the Lemta-Azger are the Ifoghas, a tribe of Holy Men. There is little doubt that these people are the Ifuraces of Corippus and others, whose position east of the Ausuriani is only a little north of where their descendants still live.[353] Incidentally both the area in which they live and the area in which they were reported in classical times may be held to be well within the boundaries of Leo's Lemta zone. Last of all, there arises the question of the Ilaguantan or Laguatan of Corippus, who are not, I think, to be identified with the Levata or Louata, but are the people who gave the name to the country now called Elakkos, or Alagwas, or Elakwas, to the east of Damergu and south-east of Air, at the southern end of the Lemta area of Leo. In view of the course taken by the migration of the Lemta southwards there is nothing inherently improbable in the people, who in late classical times appear in the north, having migrated to a new habitat near the Sudan.

The migration of the Lemta is intimately connected with the history of the Tuareg of Air, and accounts for the position of the Aulimmiden west of the latter country. In commenting on the organisation of the south-western division of the Tuareg, Barth[354] says that the whole group is designated by the name of Awelimmid, Welimmid or Aulimmiden (as they are known in Air), from the dominating tribe whose supremacy is recognised in some form or other by the remainder, "and in that respect even (the Tademmekat or) Tademekkat are included among the Aulimmiden;[355] but the real stock of Aulimmiden is very small." He goes on to make the statement, which is obviously correct, and which my deductions absolutely confirm, that "the original group of the Aulimmiden (Ulmdn is the way the name is expressed in T'ifinagh) are identical with the Lemta," the name probably signifying literally "the Children of Lemta, or rather 'Limmid,' or the name may originally have been an adjective." As already stated, I do not agree with him that the Lemta, who became the Aulimmiden, descended from the Igidi in the north and drove out the Tademekkat, for I believe that the people in the north were the Lemtuna, living near the Walad Delim or Morocco, and that they were therefore a Sanhaja and not a Lemta tribe. If the Lemta had been in the area where Barth would have them, as opposed to where Leo placed them, it means that the latter's account is fundamentally wrong. Nor would there be any adequate explanation of several phenomena just now indicated such as the westward movements of the Tademekkat and the presence of the Ilemtin in the Azger country.

The vicissitudes of the Lemta and Auriga in the history of Air may be summarised as follows:—The

Azger represent the old Lemta stock in the northern part of the area which Leo allocated to them. They are identical with the Ausuriani, Asturiani, Arzuges or Astacuri, and included the Ifoghas (Ifuraces) and Elakkos people (Ilaguantan). The Mazices are probably also in the same Lemta-Azger group, but I can find only circumstantial evidence for this supposition. The southern end of the Lemta area, which reached the Sudan between Lake Chad and Damergu, was lost to the Tuareg under pressure from the east. They were driven out of Bornu, where we shall see the Central African histories placed them in the early days. This part, as well as the Kawar road down which they came from the north, and the steppe north of Chad, was cleared of Tuareg by the Kanuri and Tebu from the east. In Elakkos, the country named by the tribe which in classical times was in Tripolitania, is the boundary to-day between Tebu and Tuareg. Progressive ethnic pressure from the east drove the eastern boundary of the Tuareg westwards, but it also forced the Lemta to find room in the west for their expansion. Some of the latter, as we shall see, entered Air from the south; others went on to occupy Tademekka and drove the inhabitants westward. The Lemta movement was of long duration and directly involved the first invasion of Air by the Tuareg: it took place south and then west, not, as Barth and others would have it, south-eastwards from North-west Africa. Before these movements took place Ahaggar was held by a Hawara stock which later received an admixture of Azger by the Kel Ahamellen who had split off from the latter. Air, which had first been occupied by a group of Lemta from the south-east, was then invaded by another wave of Tuareg from the north. They were almost certainly a Hawarid stock. By the time Leo wrote Air was therefore in a large measure occupied by the same race and group as Ahaggar, and like the latter was therefore rightly described as held by the "Targa popolo."

[297]The works of Leo Africanus were published by the Hakluyt Society in three volumes in 1896.

[298]Leo, III. p. 820.

[299]The learned editor of the Hakluyt Society calls one of these nations the Tuareg. In my view all five nations were Tuareg, which term I have throughout used as equivalent to Mulethâ€themin. Of these five nations, one apparently had Targa as a proper name.

[300]Leo, III. p. 797.

[301]In the Western Sahara north of the road from Arguin to Wadan, and probably near Sabha Jail.

[302]North-west of Timbuctoo on the road to Wadan.

[303]Also spelt Gago, near the north-west corner of the great Niger Bend. I have called it Gao throughout, as in the ancient and uncertain spellings it was often confused with Kuka on Lake Chad.

[304]Leo, III. p. 799.

[305]About Lat. 17° N., not to be confused with the town of Agades in Air.

[306]Leo: on pages 798 and 799.

[307]"Igidi" is more a term for a type of desert country than a true proper name. There are other Igidis in North Africa.

[308]Compare also a name of similar type, the place called Siggedim, in about Lat. 20° on the road between Kawar and the Fezzan.

[309]Compare Barth’s corruption of the name Gamram in Damergu to Gumrek. Cf. Chap. II.

[310]The map on p. 331 gives a more accurate idea than the one in the first volume of the Hakluyt Society’s publication.

[311]*Vide infra*, Chap. XII.

[312]Cf. Kanem-bu = the people of Kanem.

[313]Keane: *Man, Past and Present* (new edition), p. 473.

[314]Ptolemy, IV., sec. 3, 6. An emendation making the word read “the people of Cidamus” (Ghadames) is more tempting. Cf. Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 63.

[315]Leo, *op. cit.*, III. 801.

[316]Minutilli, *Tripolitania*, p. 413, and in El Bekri *passim.*

[317]Leo, *loc. cit.*

[318]In Byzantine times B and V were often interchanged. Cf. Βάνδιλοι for Vandal, *apud* Justinian.

[319]Ibn Khaldun, Book I. p. 234.

[320]Unity, that is, in so far as all the non-Arab Libyans have been called Berbers and speak the same language.

[321]Cf. Appendix V.

[322]Cf. Boule: *Fossil Man*, p. 316.

[323]Ibn Khaldun, *op. cit.*, I. 273.

[324]Ibn Khaldun, *op. cit.*, I. 184 sq.

[325]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. V. p. 553.

[326]*Infra* in this chapter and in Chap. XII.

[327]*Vide supra.*

[328]This could only follow upon an invasion from the east or south-east, and not from the north or north-west, as Barth thought in consequence of his assumption that the Lemta were the Lemtuna near the Walad Delim. See Barth, *op. cit.* Vol. IV. p. 626.

[329]An instance of the assimilation of an Arab tribe by the Tuareg will be found on examining the Azger group (*infra* in this chapter).

[330]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 347.

[331]In the Fezzan.

[332]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 231.

[333]This Azawagh must not be confused with the Azawagh (Azawad) or Jauf, the belly of the desert north-west of Timbuctoo, though the two words are derived from the same root. *Supra*, Chap. II. See also Notes in Leo, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 198.

[334]Barth, Vol. V. p. 557.

[335]Namely, the Kel Geres. *Infra*, Chap. XII.

[336]*Op. cit.*, p. 330.

[337]“Tegehe” appears to mean “descendants” or “family” in the female line.

[338]“Ag Ali” = son of ’Ali. The *’ain* in Arabic when transliterated by the Tuareg becomes *gh*, and ’Ali, ’Osman, ’Adullah, etc., become Ghali, Ghosman, Ghabdullah, etc. The *gh* in Temajegh is so strongly *grasseyé* (as the French term the sound), as to be very nearly an R. It is consequently very often transliterated with this letter instead of *’ain*. The Ag ’Ali tribe is therefore very often referred to as the Dag Rali or Dag Ghali, the prefixed D being grammatical.

[339]Sometimes written Kel Rela (cf. note 3).

[340]Bissuel, *Les Touareg de l’Ouest*, Alger,

1888, p. 13 sq.

[341]Bissuel, *loc. cit.*

[342]Cf. diagram showing the migration of the Air Tuareg on page 388.

[343]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 330.

[344]See von Bary, *op. cit.*, pp. 181 and 190.

[345]A descriptive geographical name, and perhaps originally a branch of the Ilemtin.

[346]Schirmer perhaps rightly considers that the Ifoghas are less holy than Duveyrier imagined. They are as ready to fight as other tribes, and those in the south have not even the reputation of sanctity.

[347]See Chap. XII.

[348]Bates, *op. cit.*, Map X, etc.

[349]Cf. conclusions at the beginning of this chapter.

[350]*Op. cit.*, p. 68, note 7.

[351]Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 64.

[352]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 467.

[353]The presence of some Ifoghas west of Air will later be shown to be connected with the Tuareg migrations into Air.

[354]*Op. cit.*, Vol. IV. App. III. p. 552 sq.

[355]Doubtless because they were conquered by the Aulimmiden.

CHAPTER XII

THE HISTORY OF AIR

PART I

THE MIGRATIONS OF THE TUAREG TO AIR

THE history of Air is inextricably mixed up with the problems of Tuareg ethnology. It is best to treat the various questions which arise as a whole. Information for all the earlier events is scanty. As has already become apparent in previous chapters, much must be based on deduction, since no early written evidence of the Air people exists but that contained in their rock inscriptions. In later years the practice arose of keeping book records or tribal histories in Arabic; they were designed to establish the nobility of origin of the various clans, a subject of continual dispute among the Tuareg; but most of these precious books, which used to be kept in the mosques or houses of the learned men, were lost when the whole of Air north of the Central massifs was cleared by French Camel patrols after the 1917 rebellion.

For long the avowed policy of the French authorities was to remove the population of the mountains of Air lock, stock and barrel, and settle them in the lands of Damergu and the Sudan. The Tuareg, as may be imagined, took unkindly to living in the plains away from the mountains and desert to which they were used. They cannot be persuaded to settle on the land as agriculturists except after generations of contact with tillers of the soil, and even then they only adopt the new mode of life in a half-hearted fashion or as a result of intermarriage, and as a consequence lose their individuality. Besides embittering relations to an extent which may prove irremediable, the French policy was otherwise disastrous from a local point of view. After being driven out of their homes in the mountains, these people were not content to live in the half-way house of the Damergu plains or in Damagarim. Many of them moved out of French territory altogether into Nigeria, where they had no quarrel with the authorities and where existence was even easier than in the belt between the Sahara and the Sudan. As many as 30,000 Veiled People left Air; most of them settled in the Emirates of Kano and Katsina.

Depopulation in Air allowed the desert to encroach. Wells fell in, gardens went out of tillage, and the live-stock of the country, more especially the camel herds, were reduced to a fraction of what they had been. These factors in turn contributed to make it harder than ever to reopen the old caravan roads, after they had been closed during the Great War. From the economic standpoint the possibility of obtaining any return from the military occupation of this part of the Sahara became more than ever problematical. Finally, the cruel evacuation of Air, for which there was no administrative excuse save that of short-sighted expediency, made it infinitely more difficult to obtain information regarding the origin and habits of a people who are in any case probably doomed to disappear before the advance of civilisation. The records in their mosques were abandoned to be rained on and gradually destroyed. Tradition is being lost among a younger generation in a new environment. In 1922 the policy of the French was reversed and the population was being encouraged to return to their homes, but one is inclined to wonder whether it was not already too late.

In the course of my stay in Air I heard of two books on tribal lore and history. The one which appeared the most important had belonged to the family of Ahodu, chief of Auderas village, and had long been in the possession of his forefathers. In 1917, when the northern villages were cleared, the book was left in a hiding-place, but all my efforts and those of Ahodu to trace it were in vain. Later I heard of another similar work at Agades, but only after I had left the town. It is kept by a woman called Taburgula, and is quoted by the Kel Geres as their authority for the nobility, etc. of the tribes of the south.[356]

Certain extracts from a Chronicle of Air have been collected and translated by H. R. Palmer, Lieut.-Governor of Northern Nigeria. The information was contained in the notes of a Hausa scribe, who seems to have compiled them on the authority of a manuscript which is probably still extant in Air. The compilation is not necessarily accurate, but ranks as good material, and has already been referred to in previous chapters as the Agades Chronicle.[357]

Finally, there is the record of Sultan Bello, Emir of Sokoto, when Denham and Clapperton reached the Sudan in 1824. Bello was a great historian, and probably the most enlightened ruler in Africa of his day. He has left for us a history without which we should find it difficult to piece together the story of Air and the neighbouring countries.[358]

Such information as it was possible to obtain to supplement these authorities and Jean and Barth was derived from numerous conversations with the older men whom I met in Air. By repetition and sifting it acquired sufficient consistency probably to represent, somewhat approximately, the truth. Apart from an inadequate knowledge of the language, I encountered another great difficulty in research. The years 1917 and 1918 were so calamitous for the

Tuareg that circumstances obliged them to change many of their habits of life and scattered their traditions. There was always a danger of being misled by assuming that present practices represented historical customs, or that deductions made in 1922 were necessarily as accurate as if the observations had been made in 1850.

The early history of Air may be resolved into the answers to the three problems: When did the Tuareg reach Air? Where did they come from? And, whom did they meet on arrival? We shall deal with the last first, piecing together such scanty evidence as is at our disposal.

The existence at an early date in North Africa of negroid people much further north than their present limit of permanent habitation is generally admitted. It is logical to suppose that Air, which is an eminently habitable land, was therefore originally occupied by a negroid race. In support of this supposition there is the testimony of Muhammad el Bakeir,[359] son of Sultan Muhammad el Addal, to the effect that the Goberawa originally possessed Air, under the leadership of “Kipti” or Copts. Bello adds that the Goberawa were a free people and that they were the noblest of the Hausa-speaking races. It is not clear what the mention of Kipti can mean, except that the influence of the Egyptian Coptic church was spread as far afield as Air;[360] and this is possible, for traces of Christianity from the Nile Valley can probably be found in the Chad area. It may, on the other hand, merely mean that there was a North African element in the racial composition of the Goberawa; and this is certainly true, for the Hausa people are not pure Negroes. Gober was the most northern Hausa state, and later the home of Othman dan Fodio, the founder of the Fulani empire.[361] The Agades Chronicle states that the people of Daura, who are regarded as the purest of the Hausa, whatever this people or race may eventually be proved to be, first ruled in Air; but they grew weak and were conquered by the Kanuri, who in their turn gave place to the Goberawa.

Asben is the name by which Air is still known in the Southland, and the word is probably of the same root as “Abyssinia” and the Arabic “Habesh.” It may also perhaps be found in the name Agisymba Regio, but no significance need be attached to this, for the name seems to have been applied very widely in Africa to countries inhabited by negroid people.[362]

The exact ethnic origin of the first negroid inhabitants of Air or their order does not signify very much, once their racial character is established. Although at first sight the presence of negroids might seem to account for the peculiar aspect of the city of Agades, its true explanation, as we have seen, must be sought elsewhere.[363] The date of the foundation of Agades is considerably later than the displacement of the early inhabitants of Air by the advent of the first Tuareg.

In addition to the negroid people of Air, the first Tuareg are said by Bello to have found some Sanhaja in the country, by which term he presumably means some Western Muleththemin, who lived in the first or second of Leo’s zones. This is to some extent confirmed by Ibn Batutah’s accounts of the tribes which he encountered in these parts, but I have been unable to trace their descendants with any degree of certainty. Some of their descendants may probably be found in Azawagh and Damergu;[364] the Mesufa of Ibn Batutah are also quite likely to have been

Sanhaja. Another tribe of the same name and origin occurs in North-west Morocco.

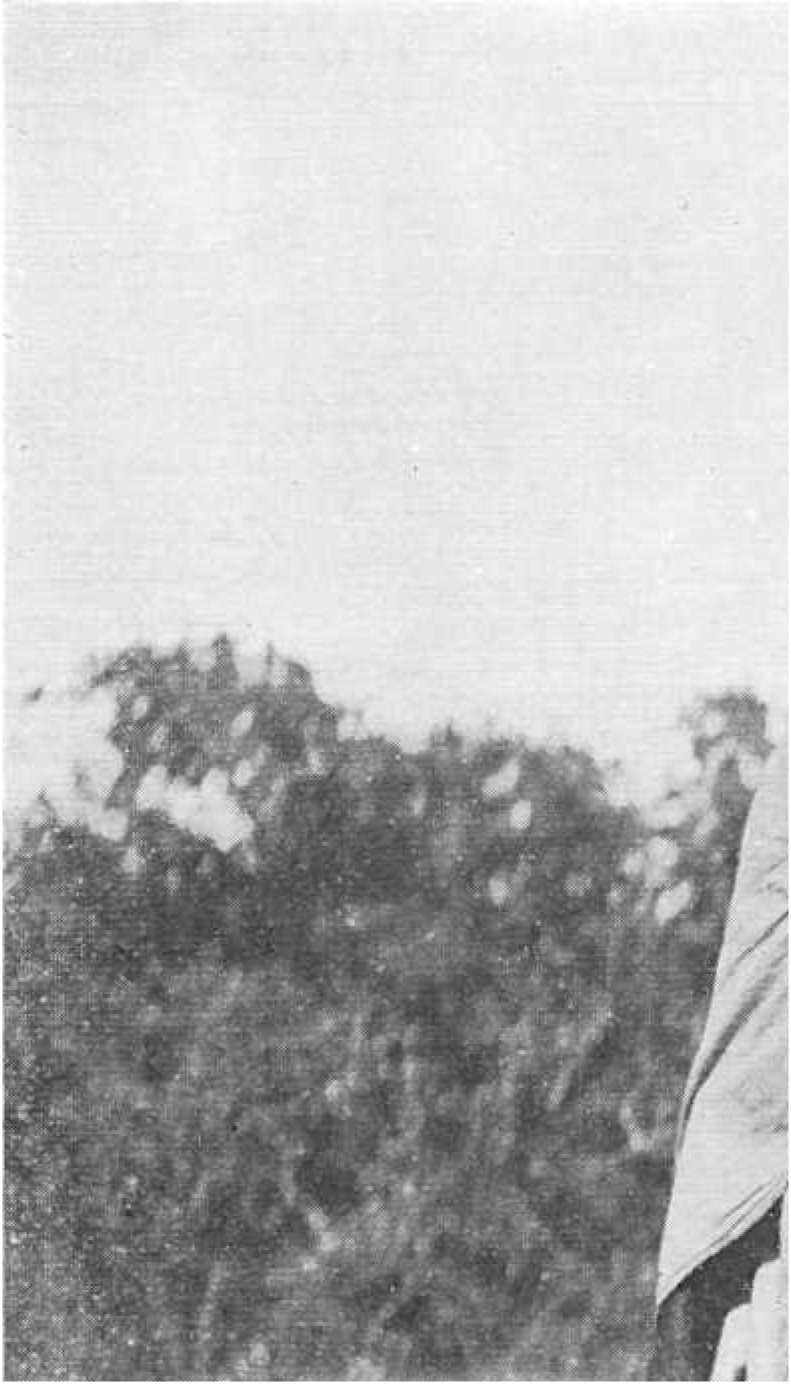
The Goberawa capital at this time was T’in Shaman, like the later Agades lying at the southern borders of the country, a site naturally likely to be selected by a people of equatorial origin with homes further south. T’in Shaman or Ansaman is stated by Barth to have been some twenty miles from Agades on the road to Auderas; but I conceive this may be a slip. I was only able to find the name applied in Air to the wells of T’in Shaman, which lie in the direction given, but scarcely two miles from the city, near the site of the present French fort. Although the name appears to be a Libyan form it does not follow that the town was of Tuareg origin or was inhabited by them in early Goberawa days. Record of it has come to us from Tuareg sources, referable to a period when Tuareg and Goberawa were living side by side in Air, but we do not know the Goberawa form of the name. These two folk were both in the area before the first Tuareg immigration, when Libyan influence was already strong in Air, and also after the first immigration, but before the second brought in a sufficient number of Tuareg to effect the expulsion of the Goberawa.[365] A certain degree of civilisation must have existed in Air even in these early days, for several learned men, inhabitants of T’in Shaman, are mentioned by the historians of Negroland.[366] That it was not a Tuareg town is further shown by the information recorded, that when Agades was eventually founded in the fifteenth century A.D., it was from Ir n’Allem and not from T’in Shaman: Ir n’Allem may be doubtfully identified with a site north of Agades well within the defending hills near Solom Solom.[367] Of greater interest perhaps is the close analogy between the names of T’in Shaman or

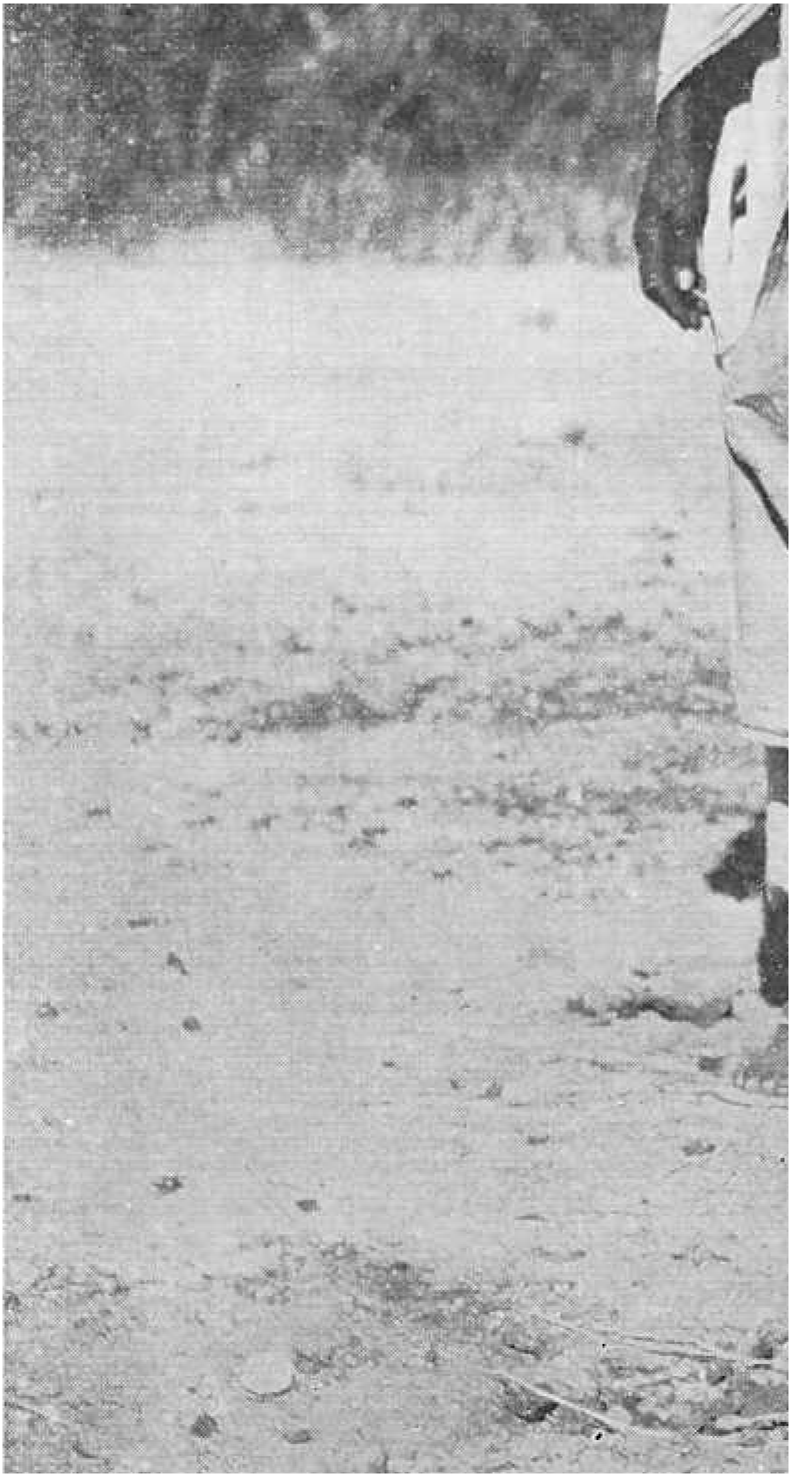
Ansaman and Nasamones, that great tribe of travellers on the Great Syrtis described by Herodotus. There is no doubt that with such caravaneers as we know lived in the north, the influence of the Tuareg in Air and the South generally must have been great for a long time before they settled there.

Into Air, inhabited by negroids and Sanhaja, came the modern Tuareg of Air. What happened to the Goberawa in the process of time as a consequence of this movement can easily be assumed. Whatever may have been the terms of a peaceful settlement, the negroid people were either driven back into Central Africa here as elsewhere, or they became the serfs[368] of the conquerors, and were incorporated into the race as Imghad tribes. The darker element among them must certainly in part be accounted for in this manner.

The modern Tuareg immigrants can broadly be divided into the three categories, of which the exact significance has already become apparent. They are the Kel Owi tribes who came into the country quite recently, the Kel Geres tribes and those septs collectively known as the People of the King. Of these, the Kel Geres, as well as a once separate but now associated tribe, the Itesan, are no longer in Air, but live in an area north of Sokoto, whither they migrated in comparatively recent times. It requires to be established whether the people who came to Air before the Kel Owi, all arrived at much the same time, or in different waves, when the respective movements took place, and who in each case were the immigrants.

PLATE 47





THE FIRST IMMIGRATION

Before attacking these problems, it will be necessary, because relevant to their solution, to consider the direction from which the invasion took place. Tuareg traditions without any exception ascribe a northern home to the race. They maintain that they reached Air from that direction in different waves at different times and by different routes. Ask any Tuareg of the older tribes about the history of his people and he will say, for instance: “My people, the Kel Tadek, have been in the country since the beginning of the world,” but he will add in the same breath: “But we are a people from the north, from far away, not like the niggers of the south.” They have a story to the effect that the Sultan of Stambul, seeing how North Africa was over-populated,[369] ordered the tribes which had taken refuge on the borders of the Libyan desert in the region of Aujila and the Eastern Fezzan to migrate and spread the true religion far afield. The Tuareg, with the Itesan leading, thereupon came into Air. Now, whatever else they were, the Libyans at the time of these early movements were, of course, not Moslems, nor is it likely that any Khalif or Emperor at Constantinople intervened in the way suggested. There is not even any reason to suppose that the migration occurred in the Moslem era, though we are not as yet concerned with dates. Such details as these are picturesque embellishments added in the course of time to popular tradition. I can agree that the Tuareg came *from* the north; but I am less than certain that they came *by* the north.

North of Air, about half-way between the wells of Asiu and the Valley of T'iyut, there is a small hill called Maket n'Ikelan, which means in Temajegh, "The Mecca (or shrine) of the Slaves."[370] This is said to have been the northernmost boundary of the old kingdom of Gober. At Maket n'Ikelan the custom was preserved among passing Tuareg caravans of allowing the slaves to make merry and dance and levy a small tribute from their masters. The hill was probably a pagan place of worship, but is important from the historical point of view, because tradition represents, somewhat erroneously as regards details, that there, "when the Kel Owi took possession of old Gober with its capital at T'in Shaman, a compromise was entered into between the Red conquerors and the Black natives, that the latter should not be destroyed and that the principal chief of the Kel Owi should be allowed to marry a black woman." The story is interesting, though there has evidently been a slight confusion of thought, because there was already a large Tuareg population in Air before the Kel Owi came comparatively late in history; and it is not they who were the first Tuareg in the plateau. The marriage of the red chief with a black slave woman may be an allusion, and perhaps a direct one, to the practice associated with the Sultan of Air.[371]

With the old frontier of Gober at Maket n'Ikelan one might from this story have supposed that the first Tuareg invaders met the original inhabitants of the country there and came to an agreement regarding an occupation of the northern mountains, whence they eventually overran the whole plateau. Although such a conclusion would seem to be borne out by such traditions as I have quoted of a descent from the north, the weight of evidence indicates the south-east as the direction from which the first Tuareg actually came. But this will be seen to be not incompatible with a northern home for the race. The view is only in conflict with the Maket n'Ikelan tradition if the latter is interpreted literally. The terms of the settlement of treaty need only be associated with a point in Northern Air, inasmuch as the site in question marked the frontier of the old kingdom of Gober, which the Tuareg eventually took over in its entirety from its ancient possessors. It need not be supposed that the Treaty was made *at* Maket n'Ikelan. I regard this old frontier point as merely symbolic of the event.

The testimony of Sultan Bello regarding the first migration of the People of the Veil is most helpful.[372] "Adjoining Bornu, on the south side, is the province of Air (*i.e.* on the south side of Air). It is inhabited by the Tuareg and by some remnants of the Sanhaja and the Sudanese. This province was formerly in the hands of the Sudanese inhabitants of Gober, but five tribes of the Tuareg, called Amakeetan, Tamkak, Sendal, Agdalar, and Ajaraneen, came out of Aowjal[373] and conquered it. They nominated a prince for themselves from the family of Ansatfen, but they quarrelled among themselves and dismissed him." Bello thereupon goes on to describe the Arabian origin of the Tuareg people.

I agree with Barth[374] that these five tribes probably did not come from Aujila oasis itself, but his remark that one of the five tribes was “the Aujila tribe” is surely a mistake. Bello distinctly speaks of the five tribes by name as having come *from* Aowjal. Aujila seems never to have been the name of a people. As far back as Herodotus[375] it is already a place name. As for Bello’s reference to the selection of a ruler from a slave family, it is probably an allusion to the practice we have already examined, [376] for Ansatfen, *i.e.* n’Sattafan, means “of the black ones,” from the word “sattaf” = “black.” The fact that according to the Agades Chronicle the ninth Sultan was called Muhammad Sottofé (the Black), who ruled from A.D. 1486-93, and is referred to in Sudanese records, in some measure confirms the accuracy of Bello’s history.

The story that the first Tuareg came from Aujila is nothing more than a reflection of their own tradition that they came from a far country in the north-east, where one of the most important and well-known points was this oasis, whence people had long been in the habit of trading as far afield as Kawar and even Gao. Aujila was a northern caravan terminus. The trade between Aujila and Kawar, as early as the twelfth century, is referred to by Idrisi, [377] and this reference is the more interesting as it indicates, though at a later period than that of the first Tuareg invasion of Air, a steady stream of traffic organised by the North-eastern Tuareg down the Chad road to Bornu and Kanem. This is most significant; it had probably been going on since the days perhaps of the Nasamonian merchant adventurers.

The Agades Chronicle, on the authority of the learned Ibn Assafarani, says that the first Tuareg who came to Air were the Kel Innek, under a ruler called the Agumbulum; and that other Tuareg followed them. Now, Kel Innek means literally “The People of the East”; it is primarily a generic or descriptive term, and not a tribal proper name. Ibn Assafarani wrote from Asben, where the eastern country always and necessarily means the area around Lake Chad. Bello further mentions that when the Kanuri entered Kanem they settled there as strangers under the government of the Amakeetan, one of the five tribes previously mentioned as the first to enter Air. He also refers to the latter by the general name of Kel Innek. Again, one of the two tribes in Elakkos, between Air and Lake Chad, are the Immikitan, while we know from Leo that the Lemta Tuareg occupied an area extending from the north-eastern Fezzan to Kuka on Lake Chad.[378] This evidence, therefore, leads one to the conclusion that the first Tuareg, or at any rate some of the first Tuareg, to enter Air were not migrants from the north, that is to say, from Ghat or Ahaggar, but from Kanem and from Bornu in the south-east, which parts are racially connected with the Fezzan and not with the former areas. In the course of these movements a group of Immikitan remained in Elakkos, which, we have seen on the quite distinct evidence of the Ilagwas, was in any case connected with the Lemta country of the north.

There exists to-day a sub-tribe of the Itesan bearing the name of Kel Innek. On the analogy of what occurred among the Kel Ahamellen, among the Ahaggaren, and in recent years in Air also among the Kel Tafidet, it is almost certain that we have an example here of a name originally applied to a sub-tribe and the whole group simultaneously but now used to differentiate a sub-tribe only. The Itesan of to-day, in spite of their connection with the Kel

Geres, were, as will be explained later on, among the original invaders of Air, a fact which might in any case have been deduced from the survival among them, and not among other confederations, of the name Kel Innek.

It appears unnecessary when such an easy interpretation of the available evidence is forthcoming, and above all when some of the names accurately recorded by Bello are still traceable in Air, to assume that they are erroneous. I cannot follow Barth at all when he is dealing with these early tribes. He seems to have created difficulties where they do not exist. It is not necessary to suppose that the five tribes came into Air to form an entrepôt for their trade between Negroland and Aujila or the north-east generally; the suggestion is so far-fetched that even Barth admitted that the whole affair was peculiar.[379]

If an invasion of Air from the south-east took place, what provoked it? In order to establish even an approximate date, which Jean puts at about A.D. 800, without, however, giving his reasons, a digression into the story of Bornu is necessary.

Bello, referring to the people east of Lake Chad, mentions an early invasion from the Yemen as far as Bornu. He calls the invaders “Barbars,”[380] which name, however, he seems later to transfer to the Tuareg, finally, however, reserving it for the Kanuri. Europeans nowadays, adding considerably to the confusion, have called the Libyans “Berbers” and the Kanuri “Beriberi.” The invasion from the Yemen is reported to have taken place under Himyer, but on the showing of El Masa’udi’s history, probably the most valuable for so mythical a period, Himyer has been confused with another hero, Ifrikos. There are other references to an invasion from Arabia across Africa in various authorities, including Ibn Khaldun. Whether the invaders were the Kanuri, as the name "Barbar" given to them by Bello seems to imply, or whether they displaced the Kanuri, causing the latter to move into Kanem and settle as strangers under the rule of the Immikitan, then resident in that region, or whether, in fine, the Kanuri are not a race but a congeries of people, it is both difficult and irrelevant here to determine. In the first case there are no difficulties about the application of the name Barbar to the Kanuri; in the second, the participation of the Kanuri in a movement connected with a people from Arabia might easily lead Bello to a confusion resulting in his identification of the Kanuri with, and his application of Barbar to, the latter. After the settlement of the Kanuri in Kanem and Bornu under the Tuareg, the name Barbar, originally that of the subject people, came to be applied to the inhabitants of the country as a whole, thus including the Tuareg. The persistence of the name is the more easily accounted for by the predominance later on of the people to whom it originally belonged, in spite of their situation in the beginning, for, as we shall see later, the Tuareg, their masters in the early days, were gradually displaced in Kanem and Bornu at a period which might coincide with their invasion of Air.

The history of Kanem and Bornu, at first under a single government, is recorded in a chronicle collected by Barth.[381] It is, of course, not entirely trustworthy, but the salient facts are reasonably correct. The first king of Kanem, Sef, doubtfully referred to about A.D. 850, founded a dynasty and reigned over Berbers,[382] Tebu, and people of Kanem. This dynasty, called Duguwa, after the name of the grandson of Sef, continued until the end of the reign of Abd el Jelil or Selma I, who was succeeded in 1086 by Hume, the first king of the Beni Hume dynasty. Hume was reputed to be the son of Selma I, and the change of name in the ruling dynasty is attributed to the fact that the former was the first Moslem ruler,[383] whereas his predecessors were not. The chronology is confirmed by El Bekri's statement,[384] written towards the end of the Beni Dugu dynasty, that Arki, the ante-penultimate king of the line in 1067, was a pagan. The dynastic change of name is even more important when the ethnic relation of the kings of the Beni Dugu and the Beni Hume are examined. During the period of the Beni Dugu, Bornu, according to Sultan Bello, was under the rule of the Tuareg. In the Chronicle two of the Duguwa kings are stated to have had mothers of the Temagheri tribe, while another was descended from a woman of the Beni Ghalgha bearing the Libyan name of Tumayu. The name Beni Ghalgha reminds one perhaps only fortuitously of the Kel Ghela,[385] while Temagheri may simply be a variant for Temajegh, which of course is the female form in the Air dialect of Imajegh, meaning a Tuareg noble, though I am told this etymology is unlikely. The importance of the women in the ancestry of these kings, as among all the Tuareg, is emphasised by the mention of their names. With the Beni Hume, on the other hand, the alliances seem to have been contracted, no longer with Tuareg women, but from Hume's successor, Dunama I, till the reign of Abd el Jelil or Selma II, with Tebu women. In any event there are good reasons to believe that the change in the name of the dynasty at the end of Selma I's reign in 1086 means more than a mere change in religion; it marks the passing of the power of the Tuareg in

Bornu.[386]

The year 1086 may therefore also mark approximately the first wave of the Tuareg migration into Air. The immigration was probably gradual, since tradition records no single event or cataclysm to account for the changes which took place, which have, on the contrary, to be deduced from stories like that of Maket n’Ikelan and the change in the name of a dynasty. But 1086 is probably the latest date of the migration into Air and it may have been earlier. The invaders were the five tribes already mentioned, together with or including others which it would be difficult to trace by name, though one of them was probably the Itesan. All the tribes concerned can be traced among the People of the King, most of them in Air, though the Igdalen are on the south-eastern fringe of the plateau. The Itesan, whose dominant position in Air involved them in the vicissitudes of the Kel Geres, shared in their expulsion from the mountains. But the others belong to the Amenokal, and none of them to that later personage, the Añastafidet.

The Beni Hume dynasty in Bornu may be regarded as a Tebu dynasty or a negroid dynasty with Tebu alliances. The Chronicle makes this line continue until its expulsion from Kanem by the Bulala, a negroid people from east of Lake Chad, early in the fourteenth century, and its final extinction with the Bulala conquest of Bornu itself in the fifteenth century. The Beni Hume line seems in reality to have terminated in 1177, when Abdallah, or Dala, came to the throne. His half-brother, Selma II, is described as the first black king of Bornu, his predecessors having been fair-skinned like the Arabs. It is this reign which really seems to mark the advent to power of the negroid Kanuri, to which Bello makes allusion, even if it is not to be looked for earlier with the rise of the Beni Hume themselves. Bello describes the occurrence in the following terms:[387] "They came to Kanem and settled there as strangers under the government of the Tawarek . . . but they soon rebelled against them and usurped the country." But I am nevertheless not disposed to consider the Beni Hume negroid Kanuri, so much as a Tebu or similar stock,[388] for, in the reign of Dunama II, the son of Selma II, we find, after a series of marriages with Tebu women, an apparently definite change of policy. No more Tebu women are recorded as the mothers of kings, and instead the great Dunama II, who ruled from 1221 to 1259, waged a war which lasted seven years, seven months and seven days against these people. As the result of this campaign he extended the jurisdiction of the empire of Kanem over the Fezzan, which remained within its borders for over a century.[389]

The fall of the Duguwa in Bornu at the end of the eleventh century was, then, the ultimate reason for the first Tuareg invasion of Air. We should thus have a fairly satisfactory date were it not probably to be regarded only as the latest limiting date, since the overthrow of the Tuareg dynasty probably only marked the culmination in Bornu of a steadily growing ethnic pressure from the east and north. An additional reason for assuming a late date for the invasion of Air is the detail recorded by Bello, that when the Kel Innek arrived they found some Sanhaja tribes already there. Now the true Sanhaja confederation was not brought into being until the beginning of the eleventh century, the most probable period for tribes of this division to have wandered as far afield as Air. It follows that the invasion of the

Kel Innek should be placed later than that or towards the end of the century.

There is scarcely any evidence regarding the earliest period at which it might have taken place. It may be possible to arrive at an estimate, when the results of further researches into the history of Bornu have been made public. It would be most interesting to learn, for instance, when the first Tuareg reached Bornu and Kanem. Is their presence there as a ruling caste to be ascribed to the very early days, or are they to be considered as having come in at a comparatively late epoch? It is difficult to reconcile their presence there in the earliest times with their failure to fuse to a greater extent with the local negroid population and their consequent retention of the individuality which they still possessed when they entered Air.

In the four centuries preceding A.D. 850, when the first Beni Dugu king ascended the throne, there are no recorded events in North Africa very likely to have caused extensive emigration of the Tuareg of the Fezzan to Equatoria, other than the Arab conquest; the only other invasion, that of Chosroes with the Persians in A.D. 616, does not seem to have had a far-reaching effect, or to have been accompanied by foreign immigration on a large scale. The first invasion of the Arabs in the seventh century was only small and at first did not cause widespread ethnic disturbances.[390] Okba invaded the Fezzan in A.H. 46 with only a small expeditionary force; the previous expedition of A.H. 26 was probably not larger. Arab pressure only began to become intense in the eighth century, when the conquest of Spain after Tariq’s exploits in A.D. 710 had become an accomplished fact. And then there followed another pause until the Hillalian invasion in the eleventh century took place.

On the other hand, the presence of Tuareg in the earliest days in the lands east of Lake Chad would find some justification in the position recorded of the Temahu in the southern part of the Libyan desert by Egyptian records. They might also explain the mysterious Blemmyes and the Men with Eyes in their Stomachs referred to by the classical authors.

On the whole I prefer not to speculate too much along these lines for fear of plunging into deep waters connected with the people of the upper Nile basin. I shall simply regard the Tuareg of Bornu as a part of the Lemta of the Fezzan, which we may assume from various sources they were. In consequence, however slender the evidence, it becomes difficult to avoid the conclusion that the Tuareg reached Bornu from the north along the Bilma road in the course of the Arab invasions of the eighth century. They remained as rulers of the country until they were driven from there also, in consequence of increasing Arab pressure in the Fezzan and in Equatoria itself, for in the middle of the eleventh century the Hillal and Soleim Arabs are found extending their conquests as far as Central Africa. Their fighting under Abu Zeid el Hillali against the Alamt (Lemta) Tuareg in the Fezzan is still remembered in the traditions of the Equatorial Arab tribes.

All we can say with any degree of certainty is that somewhere between the eighth and eleventh centuries the Lemta Tuareg eventually emigrated from the Chad countries. In due course the first five tribes reached Air, with Elakkos and Damergu behind them already occupied. But in Air they only peopled the whole land later on. Some of the Tuareg of this emigration never entered Air at all or stayed in Damergu, but moved still further west to form with other groups from the north the Tademekkat and Kel el Suk, as well as some of the communities of Tuareg on the Niger. Subsequent historical events isolated the Air tribes, and when other waves of Tuareg joined them, their original relationship with the western Tuareg and the Aulimmiden had been forgotten. The origin of the latter is to be explained in this wise, and not by supposing that they arrived from Mauretania, as Barth would have it.[391] The further westward movement of the Tuareg from Lake Chad is borne out by a reference in Ibn Khaldun's works to some Itesan[392] under the name of Beni Itisan among the Sanhaja.

Tradition represents that the oldest people in Air are those known to-day as the People of the King and the Itesan to whom the most evolved handiwork in the plateau, including the deep wells, is attributed. With the Itesan are associated all the older and more remarkable houses in Air. The form and construction of these buildings evidently had a great influence on the subsequent inhabitants, but as they are all found in an already evolved type, it is clear that the tradition and experience necessary for building them must have been brought from elsewhere. In accepting the view that these houses are the work of the Itesan and not of the later immigrants I can only follow the unanimous opinion of the natives to-day, who are, if anything, too prone to attribute anything remarkable to them. It may, of course, be discovered later that the Itesan had nothing to do with any of these works, and it is all the more curious that in their present habitat north of Sokoto they should have shown no similar architectural propensities. It is also strange that most of the “Kel names” among the Itesan are derived from places west of the Central massifs, while most of the large settlements containing the best so-called “Itesan” houses are on the east side. But the houses and wells in Air do not seem to be associated with the Kel Geres, with whom the Itesan now live, and there seems to be no doubt whatever in the minds of the natives that they are the works of the latter and not of other immigrants.

The architectural technique shows that the race was in process of cultural decay when it reached Air, and that under the influence of new environment the memory and tradition of this civilisation were lost with remarkable rapidity. The succession of events and the causes culminating in the migration of the Chad Tuareg are not inconsistent with such a decline of culture, but only a thorough investigation of the Fezzan will probably throw any light upon its derivation.

The popular view of the origin of these stone buildings bears out the separate identity of the Itesan and the Kel Geres. It is obvious that the two divisions must have entered Air at different times; and since the Itesan were therefore among the first invaders, the Kel Geres must have come in later. This traditional version is further consistent with facts already noticed, in that among the People of the King in Air and among the Itesan it is possible to trace the names of the first recorded tribes to enter Air, whereas their names do not occur among the Kel Geres. Apart from proving the separate origin of the Itesan and the Kel Geres, these facts leave little room for doubt that the Itesan formed part of the group that was the first to invade the plateau.

The names of the five tribes, mentioned by Bello in his history, were, as we have seen above, the Immikitan, the Igdalen, the Ijaranen, the Tamgak, and the Sendal. Of these the Immikitan are found with the Igdalen among the People of the King in Air to-day, while the Ijaranen survive among the Itesan tribes who now live in the south. The Sendal and the Tamgak are mentioned as late as 1850 in the Agades Chronicle, when there is no doubt that they were a people of the king, since they are referred to as the allies of the Sultan Abd el Qader in a war against the Kel Geres.

The first Tuareg lived in Air as a minority and as foreigners. It is possible they represented only a fraction of the Tuareg who were moving and that the greater part went on into the west. The Agades Chronicle, describing the advent of the Itesan, records that they ". . . . said to the Goberawa, 'We want a place in your town to settle.' The Goberawa refused at first to give them a place, but in the end agreed. The Itesan refused the place as a gift, but bought a house for 1000 dinars. Into this house they led their chief, and from there he ruled the Tuareg of the desert. War, however, soon ensued between the Goberawa, supported by the Abalkoran, and the Itesan. The result of this war was that the Goberawa went back into Hausaland, while the Abalkoran went west into the land of the Aulimmiden." The Abalkoran had just before in the Chronicle been described as a priestly caste associated with the Goberawa, but among the Air Tuareg the name Iberkoran or Abalkoran is the name of the Aulimmiden themselves. The record has suffered chronological compression, but clearly implies that the Goberawa were still in South Air at a time when the Aulimmiden had already reached their habitat west of the mountains. The latter is an event which some authorities consider fairly recent, but my view, already put forward elsewhere, is that the Aulimmiden are not a group of Hawara people who left the Fezzan some time between 1200 and 1300, as Ibn Khaldun suggests, nor yet people from Mauretania; I prefer to believe that they are Lemta who originally migrated to their present habitat from the Chad regions at much the same time as the first Tuareg invasion of Air took place.

The statement that the Abalkoran left Air to join the Aulimmiden tends to support the view that this Air invasion was only part of a general westerly movement.

THE SECOND IMMIGRATION

THE second wave of immigration was that of the Kel Geres. Jean believed that the Kel Geres were among the first arrivals because he wrongly assumed that they were identical with the Itesan. An examination of the names of the various groups[393] discloses the fact that whereas many Itesan tribes have “Kel names” derived from known localities in Central Air, for the most part in the Auderas neighbourhood, of the Kel Geres tribes only the Kel Garet, Kel Anigara and the Kel Agellal have names similarly derived.[394] Traditionally the Kel Geres reached Air by way of the north. They also are associated with the story of over-population in the Mediterranean lands. They arrived, according to Jean, in considerable numbers, and settled in the part of Air which is west of the road from Iferuan to Agades by way of Assode and Auderas.[395] East of this line in later days lived the Kel Owi, and presumably, at this early period, the original five tribes. The assumption is confirmed by certain evidence, for although the Itesan tribe names refer to an area lying across this line, the only territorial Kel Geres tribe names refer to an area west of it; the country, on the other hand, known to have been occupied by some of the first immigrants is, as would be expected, to the east. With the exception of the Igdalen, who moved in recent years, most of the older People of the King were also east of this line, before the Kel Owi scattered them.

The present Itesan-Kel Geres group in the Southland is said to number forty-seven tribes divided as follows:[396]

Itesan	6	tribes of the	Itesan.
Kel Geres	12	„ „	Tetmokarak.
	6	„ „	Kel Unnar.
	5	„ „	Kel Anigara.
	6	„ „	Kel Garet.
	12	„ „	Tadadawa and Kel Tatenei.

The principal tribal names of the Itesan which retain the more familiar place names of Air are the Kel Mafinet, Kel T’sidderak, Kel Dogam and Kel Bagezan or Maghzen, all of them derived from places in the neighbourhood of Auderas.[397] Among the Kel Geres the name of the Kel Garet records a habitat somewhat further north, the Kel Agellal of the Kel Unnar probably came from Agellal, and the Kel Anigara from an area still further north.

It is difficult to accept the view that the first Tuareg to enter Air arrived in the eighth century, even if it is only for the reason that the surviving "Itesan" houses could not for so long a time have remained in the state of preservation in which some of them are now found. I am personally not disposed to regard the first immigration as having taken place much before the latest date previously suggested as a limit, namely, the end of the eleventh century.

The invasion of the first tribes left the mountains with a mixed population of Tuareg and Goberawa; the disappearance of the latter as a separate race was only accomplished when the second or Kel Geres invasion took place. The Kel Geres so added to the Tuareg population in Air that henceforward the country must be regarded as essentially Tuareg, and this probably accounts for the tradition that the Kel Geres conquered the country, and as they came in both from the north and by the north, it doubtless gave rise to legends such as that of Maket n'Ikelan.

Failing more definite evidence than we now possess, I regard the Kel Geres movement as a part of a Hawara-Auriga emigration from the north to which Ibn Khaldun alludes. This does not exclude the possibility of some nuclei of Hawara having gone west of Air to join either the Aulimmiden or the Tademekkat or both groups. In fact, such a course of events would explain the distant affinity with, yet independence of, the Aulimmiden which is insisted upon by many authorities. We know that by the time Leo was writing he regarded both Ahaggar and Air as inhabited by Targa, while the Fezzan and the Chad road were inhabited by Lemta. The Ahaggaren I have previously tried to show were, in the main, Hawara. Now the advent in Air of a large mass from this division under the name of Kel Geres would warrant his grouping of both plateaux under one ethnic heading. The Hawara movement from the Western Fezzan and between Ghat and Ahaggar may be placed in the twelfth century, and therefore not so very far removed from the first immigration into Air from the south-east. It can also be accounted for by similar causes, namely, the growing pressure of the Arabs, perhaps as a sequel to the Hillalian invasion.

Following the two initial migrations, it may be assumed that small nuclei of Tuareg continued to reach Air. These would to-day be represented by such of the People of the King as are not to be connected with either the first five tribes or with the Kel Geres.

THE THIRD IMMIGRATION

The third wave was that of the Kel Owi. On Barth and Hornemann's authority they arrived in modern times, while according to Jean they arrived in the ninth century. Barth's researches, which in all cases are more reliable than those of Jean, who appears usually to have accepted native dates without hesitation, led him to believe that the Kel Owi entered, in fact conquered Air, about A.D. 1740. They are not mentioned by Leo or any other writers before the time of Hornemann (A.D. 1800), who obtained such good information about them that his commentator, Major Rennell, also assumed their arrival to be recent.[398] By the end of the nineteenth century the Kel Owi had already achieved such fame that of all Tuareg known to him, Hornemann only mentions them. He adds in his account that Gober was at this time tributary to Air, a detail consistent with other records. Barth's very late date[399] for the arrival of the Kel Owi nevertheless presents certain difficulties. It is clear on the one hand that it could not have been the Kel Owi who made the arrangement of Maket n'Ikelan, and that it must therefore have been the Kel Geres or their predecessors, but it is further difficult to see how a people could have entered Air in such numbers as to become the preponderant group within barely one hundred years and to have evicted the firmly rooted Kel Geres tribes so soon. That the Kel Owi should have appropriated the historical credit for the settlement of Maket n'Ikelan is easy to understand, for it was they who held the trade route to the north out of the country, but the early expulsion of the Kel Geres indicates a numerical superiority which, unfortunately, native tradition does not bear out.

It is noteworthy that no Kel Owi tribe is represented in the election of the king, which supports the view that they had not yet reached Air when the local system of government from Agades was devised.

“The vulgar account of the origin of the Kel Owi from the female slave of a Tinylcum who came to Asben where she gave birth to a boy who was the progenitor of the Kel Owi . . . is obviously nothing but a popular tale. . . .”[400]

The story collected by Jean, which purports to explain the two categories of tribes in Air to-day, the Kel Owi confederation and the People of the King, is not more authentic.[401] He tells how, after the arrival of the Sultan in Air, the Kel Geres kept away from his presence, while the Kel Owi ingratiated themselves and secured their own administration under the Añastafidet. The Sultan, however, wishing to create his own tribal group, divided the Kel Owi amongst themselves, and this is the origin of the

People of the Añastafidet and the People of the King. In their efforts to ingratiate themselves, the Kel Owi of Bagezan which, as we have seen, was Itesan country at the time, sent as a present to the Sultan a woman named T'iugas with her six daughters of the Imanen tribe of the north; these women had been sent from the north to cement good relations between Air and Azger.[402] The six sisters nominated the eldest as their speaker and the Sultan gave her authority over the rest. She was followed by the next two sisters, and these three are the mothers of the three senior tribes of the Kel Owi, namely, the Kel Owi proper, the Kel Tafidet and the Kel Azañieres.[403] The other three women refused to accept the leadership of the eldest sister and placed themselves under the authority of the Sultan direct; and they were the mothers of the Kel Tadek, Imezegzil and Kel Zilalet.[404] The details of the story are obviously a Kel Owi invention. They are designed to establish nobility and equality of ancestry with the older and more respected tribes. The legend, however, probably also contains certain indications of truth, notably in the allusion to the Imanen women from the north, since there does exist an affinity between that tribe and the Itesan, though it must, of course, be understood that the Kel Bagezan of the story were an Itesan sub-tribe, and not the later Kel Bagezan of the Kel Owi group. With these conditions the story becomes intelligible as a legendary or traditional account. It is not meant to be taken as literally true, and is not even a very widely accepted version of the origin of the present social structure in Air, but it is amusing, for it shows how on this as on every other occasion the Kel Owi have attempted to claim antiquity of descent equal to that of the tribes they found on their arrival.

Two other traditions which I collected are best summarised by quoting the following extract from my diary, written while at T'imia, a Kel Owi village in the Bagezan mountains. One of the big men in the village was the "'alim" 'Umbellu, a fine figure of a man, old and bald but still powerful and vigorous, with the heavy noble features of a Roman emperor. He used to be the keeper of the old mosque, and is said to be one of the most learned men in the country. I had examined the ruined sanctuary, in which he had not set foot since it was desecrated by the French troops after the Kaossen revolt, and found some fragments of holy books, which I restored to 'Umbellu in the present mosque at T'imia, a shelter of reeds and matting. From him I received the same sort of confused account which others besides myself had heard. ". . . He says that the Kel Owi are not pure Tuareg, but that some Arabs *or* (*sic*) Tuareg of the north came down to Northern Air and mixed with the local population, which stock became the Kel Owi Confederation; but whether these people came as raiders or settlers he could not say. He was, however, quite clear that they had come from the Arab country.[405] Then in almost the same breath he told me that the Kel Owi are descended from a woman who came from the north and lived in Tamgak, where she mated with one of the local inhabitants and became the mother of all these tribes. He added that she was a Moslem at a time when the Kel Ferwan (a non-Kel Owi tribe, or People of the King, then living in Iferuan) were heathen, but whether Christians or pagan he could not say."

The second story is analogous to that which Barth heard.

Generally speaking traditions give the two separate versions, which are rather puzzling. If the account of the woman who settled in Tamgak is taken as a legendary record of the indigenous growth of the Kel Owi tribes, it must be supposed that their forefathers were in Air for much more than two hundred years, and Jean’s date would consequently not be out of the question. Against this must be set the other version, that they arrived quite recently, a view which is supported unanimously by all the other Tuareg. It was, we have seen, confirmed by Barth’s researches and deduced by Rennell from information collected by Hornemann. The compact organisation and the definite division which exists between them and the other tribes in Air would also point to their having a separate origin and being comparatively recent arrivals; they are still organised in an administrative system which has not yet had time to break down and merge into the régime of the other tribes. Furthermore, no mention is made of the Kel Owi by any of the earlier authors, which, if negative evidence, is nevertheless significant in the works of an authority like Leo, especially as, apart from the ethnic distinction which might have been overlooked, the dual government of the King and the Añastafidet is too remarkable a feature to have escaped his discernment. The balance of testimony is therefore in favour of attributing a fairly recent date to their arrival, though perhaps not so late as Barth would have us believe. I myself make no doubt that they were late arrivals: I only differ with the learned traveller in a small matter of the exact date.

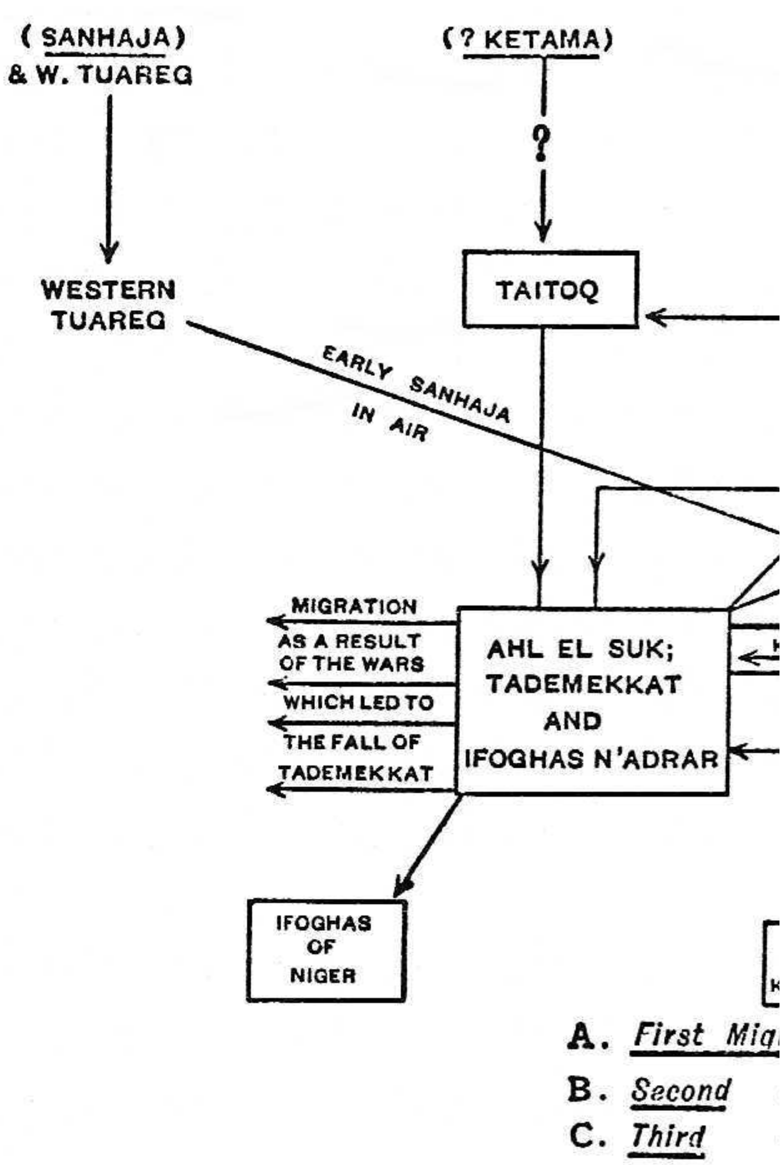
But what impelled them to migrate it is difficult to say. Barth thought that they could be traced to an earlier habitat in the north-west, and that the nobler portion of them once belonged to the Auraghen tribe, whence their dialect was called Auraghiye. I have no evidence on this point except that of Ahodu, who gave me to understand that the language of the Kel Owi was not different from that of any other Tuareg tribe in the plateau, and he added that he had not heard the name Auraghiye employed to describe it, though he knew that it was applied to the dialect spoken in Ahaggar. Barth’s testimony, otherwise, is acceptable.

Jean is of the impression that they are essentially of the same race as the Kel Geres, who were probably Hawara. If this deduction is true, three possibilities require to be considered. The Kel Owi may have been an Auraghen tribe living to the north or north-east of Air among the Azger; or, they may have been among the older Auraghen people, to use this term in its wider sense, namely, of the Auriga-Hawara, represented by the Ahaggaren, to whom, of course, the Azger Auraghen of to-day belong; or, lastly, they may be descended from the Auraghen of the west, from the Tademekkat country. The last is the soundest view in the present state of our knowledge, though the second is also quite probable.

The Tademekkat people, we know, were driven from their homes in A.D. 1640 by the Aulimmiden. While some of them were driven out to the west, some at least found their way back into the Azger country.[406] It is no less probable that others may have gone to Air by a roundabout route. In that case Barth’s date for the arrival of the Kel Owi in Air seems to be at least fifty years too late. During the last half of the sixteenth and the seventeenth centuries they would have been finding their way into Northern Air in small groups. This is not inconsistent with the appearance at Agades of an

Amenokal with a Kel Owi mother, if the admittedly tentative date of 1629 given in the Agades Chronicle is placed a decade or so later.

I am inclined to regard the arrival of the Kel Owi in Air as having taken place in the latter half of the seventeenth century. According to the Agades Chronicle they were already fighting the Kel Geres at Abattul, west of the Central massif, in 1728, some time before Barth’s date; and this obviously implies an earlier arrival in the north of the plateau, for their entry must have taken place from that direction and not from the south. But a recent date, taken in conjunction with the dominant position which the Kel Owi occupied and their separate political organisation, further implies that they came in considerable numbers, a conclusion which is at variance with one set of native traditions. They could not otherwise in two hundred years have achieved so much as they did by the beginning of the century.


(SANHAJA) & W. TUAREG
(? KETAMA)
?
WESTERN TUAREG
TAITOQ
EARLY SANHAJA IN AIR
MIGRATION AS A RESULT OF THE WARS WHICH LED TO THE FALL OF TADEMEKKAT
AHL EL SUK; TADEMEKKAT AND IFOGHAS N'ADRAR
IFOGHAS OF NIGER
A. First Mig
B. Second
C. Third

We know that their coming was followed by an economic disturbance of far-reaching importance. They first occupied North-eastern and Northern Air;

the later phase of their penetration is recorded in the statement that the Kel Owi and the Kel Geres lived side by side, west and east of the Iferuan-Auderas-Agades road. The eastern plains of Air, according to Ahodu of Auderas and ’Umbellu of T’imia, had by this time been evacuated by the Itesan and the early settlers, but the invasion of the Kel Owi must have led also to the expulsion of the early settlers from the northern marches. The removal of the Kel Ferwan from the Iferuan area, and of the Kel Tadek from their territories north of Tamgak to the west and the south, probably took place in this period. The Kel Owi movement, though accompanied by frequent disturbances, was gradual. At T’imia, where the original inhabitants, according to ’Umbellu, were Kel Geres, they were only displaced in the time of his own grandparents by a mixed band of settlers from various Kel Owi tribes then living in the Ighazar in Northern Air. ’Umbellu is a man of about sixty now, so this event may have been one hundred years ago, at a time, in fact, when we should still expect the southward movement of the Kel Owi to be in progress.

More recently still the south-eastern part of the country was distributed among certain of their clans. The large Itesan settlements like those near Tabello had already been abandoned and were never again permanently inhabited; some dwellings were built later by the Kel Owi, but never on so large a scale as in the previous epoch. The extant houses and ruins are mostly of the first period; a few only show a transitional phase to the later Kel Owi type. Sometimes a compact block of contiguous buildings is to be found, possessing the character of a fortified settlement. It would seem that this defensible type of habitation had been evolved during the period after the Itesan were known to have been driven out by Tebu raiding and before the Kel Owi arrived. These dwellings betray certain features alien to the Tuareg, which may be explained by supposing that they were used by the serfs of the Itesan when their lords had retreated west of the Bagezan massif.

With the occupation of the eastern part of Air by the Kel Owi, the ancient caravan road which has run from time immemorial by T'intaghoda, Unankara, Mari, Beughqot and Tergulawen fell into their hands. It is the easiest road across the Air plateau, and perhaps for this reason, but more probably because they always had propensities of this sort, they developed such commercial ability that they rapidly made for themselves a dominant place in all trade and transport enterprises between Ghat and the Sudan. But although their efficiency in organisation gave them the control of the road, they certainly did not create it. But they did create a monopoly which deprived the Kel Geres of their legitimate profit.

The hostilities which soon broke out between the Kel Owi and the Kel Geres could lead to only one of two possible solutions, the expulsion or extermination of one of the rivals. Such economic problems are, of course, not always realised at the time when they are most urgently felt, and the current record of events to which they give rise is therefore often slightly distorted. Here, however, even the popular version shows that the real cause of the disturbances was an economic one. The Kel Owi began by appropriating the half of a country in which they were new-comers. They proceeded to demand the serfs and slaves whom the Kel Geres had possessed since their subjugation of the negroid peoples of Air. This impossible demand gave rise to considerable strife and was referred for arbitration to the reigning Sultan of Agades. The Hausa elements were supported by the Kel Owi for political reasons and as far as possible abandoned their former masters. The Sultan seems to have maintained the neutrality for which he stood, and even to have prevented the tribes which owed allegiance to him directly and belonged to neither party from taking sides in the dispute.[407] He was nevertheless unsuccessful, and after years of desultory fighting the Kel Geres abandoned Air for Adar and Gober to the west of Damergu and to the north of Sokoto. They retained their rights in the election of the Amenokal, to whom they continued to owe nominal allegiance through their chiefs, and were allowed to continue to use certain Air place-names in their tribal nomenclature. In the last century they repeatedly interfered in choice of the Sultan, and they still consider themselves to this day a part of the Air Tuareg, although their hostility against the Kel Owi never died. They evacuated the country with all the slaves and serfs whom they succeeded in retaining. It is possible that a few of the older non-Kel Owi tribes of Air and Damergu went with them.

If Barth’s date for the arrival of the Kel Owi were accepted, this migration should have occurred in the end of the eighteenth century. But as a matter of fact the movement took place earlier. Jean states that an arrangement for the evacuation was reached in the reign of the Sultan Almoubari or El Mubarak, who ruled thirty-four years, from A.D. 1653 to 1687. If the agreement was made at the end of his reign, the date for the immigration of the Kel Owi in accordance with previous information falls in the neighbourhood of 1640, to which epoch the reign of Sultan Muhammad Attafriya, who was deposed two years after his accession by the Itesan, can be assigned. The Kel Geres did not, however, leave the country directly the arrangement was made, and in the meanwhile continued the struggle. In 1728 the Kel Owi and the Itesan were still fighting in Air, the latter being defeated at Abattul, near Auderas. Halfway through this century the Itesan were fighting in the Southland and attacked Katsina in company with the Zamfarawa. It is at this time that the Kel Geres seem to have obtained a footing in the lands of Adar and Sokoto, though the Itesan still refused to settle there. In 1759 there is recorded a war between the Kel Geres and the Kel Tegama at the cliffs of Tiggedi, in which the latter were defeated. This war was followed by another in 1761 between the Kel Geres and the Aulimmiden, where, however, the former suffered. In the same year the Kel Owi and the Kel Geres fought each other at Agades. In this period the Amenokal Muhammad Hammad, who had come to the throne in 1735, changed places twice with Muhammad Guma, according as the Kel Owi or the Kel Geres faction prevailed. The former, restored to the throne in 1763, undertook an expedition with the men of Air against the King of Gober, and was severely defeated in 1767. In order to avenge the defeat, a truce between the warring Tuareg was finally concluded after a century of fighting. The combined men of Air then marched on, and defeated Dan Gudde and cut off his head. This event may be held to mark the final settlement of the Itesan and Kel Geres in the Southland. Their success accounts for Hornemann's report that at the end of the nineteenth century the Tuareg were masters of Gober. Internecine hostilities continued, but henceforth the Itesan and the Kel Geres are no longer described as fighting the Kel Owi but the men of Air, as in 1780 and again in 1788, when they made their nominee, Muhammad Dani, Sultan at Agades. In 1835 the Amenokal, Guma, was captured in Damergu by the Kel Geres after a massacre of the Kel Owi. It was only in about 1860 that hostilities, which were in full progress in Barth's day, finally ceased.

Why, it may be asked, did the Itesan and not all the rest of the pre-Kel Geres people of Air leave in consequence of the Kel Owi invasion? The question is not easy to answer, but the surmise is that, as the largest and most important group, they became most involved in the struggle. With their departure and that of the Kel Geres the remaining people became leaderless: having no confederation of their own they clustered around the person of the Sultan, and so came to be known as the People of the King. Yet, on account of their ancestry and nobility, the Kel Owi sought to attack them and arrogate to themselves the principal rôles in history, like the story of the peace of Maket n'Ikelan and that of the Imanen women. These claims are consistent with the characteristic which is felt to-day in relations with them—the arrogance of the parvenu. The ascendancy of the noble Itesan has continued in the Southland as it existed in Air. They lead the Kel Geres division, with whom fate had made them throw in their lot. They remain primarily responsible for the choice of the Sultan even to-day.

Enough—too much perhaps—has been said of the three migrations of the Tuareg people into Air. It would be tedious to continue on that narrow subject. The complexity of the tribal organisation of the Air Tuareg has also been made patent in the earlier attempts to discover their social life. It is unfortunately impossible, even if space were available, to allocate the various clans of whose existence report has reached us to the larger groups or waves of immigration which have been examined. Lists of the tribes which have survived are given in Appendix II to this work: they have been arranged in such system as was feasible, using the information collected by Barth, and Jean, and by myself. But the classification is unsatisfactory, since there is, in many instances, but little evidence. The organisation of the Kel Owi is, of course, the easiest to ascertain and it was briefly outlined in Chapter X, but the People of the King are really more interesting both because they were the earliest arrivals and because of their association with the Itesan culture of the old houses and deep wells. Among the People of the King the most valuable anthropological data are to be collected. They brought such civilisation as Nigeria possessed in the Middle Ages from the Mediterranean, having absorbed and forgotten much of it on the way and since those epochs.

IDENTIFICATION OF EXTANT TRIBES

Before passing on to a brief summary of Central African history as a frame into which to fit the Air migrations, I would like to leave on record for some future student to use such conclusions as I have been able to reach regarding the descendants of the first invaders of Air recorded by Sultan Bello.

The geographical areas of the Kel Owi and People of the King respectively had almost ceased to be distinguishable even before the 1917 revolution added to the prevailing confusion. In so far as it is at all possible to lay down broad definitions, Central and West-central Air belonged to the People of the King, Northern, North-eastern and Eastern Air to the Kel Owi, or People of the Añastafidet, and Southern Air, or, as it is more properly called, Tegama, to the servile tribes. The Talak plain was diversely populated.

The first immigrants, the Immikitan, Sendal, Tamgak, Igdalen, Ijaranen and probably Itesan, have for the most part survived in some distinguishable form in or around Air. The survivors are all, of course, as is to be expected, People of the King. The only exceptions are certain nuclei which are known to have been absorbed by the Añastafidet and his people.

In addition to the survivors in Air there are some Igdalen north of Tahua, while others are Imghad of the Tarat Mellet[408] tribe of the Ifoghas of the west. These Imghad may have been a part of the Air group of Igdalen captured in war, or may represent a westward emigration of a part of the stock which came on evil days in Damergu. Generally, I regard the presence of these Igdalen in the west as confirming Bello’s account of their early arrival in the Air area from the east; it may also be taken to substantiate my view that the first wave of Tuareg to the El Suk country came from the south-east and not from the north.[409]

How far can the tribes which are known to exist to-day or whose names have been recorded by modern travellers be associated with these groups of early immigrants? A critical examination[410] of the tribes reveals at least six main tribal groups of the People of the King in Air itself, that is to say, six groups in which the respective tribes either acknowledge themselves to be, or can be shown to possess, certain affinities pointing to a descent from single stocks; but not all of these can with certainty be identified with Bello's named clans. These six extant groups are the Kel Ferwan, Kel Tadek, Immikitan, Imezegzil, Imaqoaran and Ifadeyen.

Two of them, in some ways the most important, have no proper names of their own at all: both the Kel Ferwan and Kel Tadek are named after places, respectively Iferuan in the Ighazar of Northern Air, and the Tadek valley. Neither of these groups, which have the reputation of great antiquity and nobility, can be affiliated to any of the other four groups; they are indubitably separate clans which in the course of ages have lost their old "I names." Returning to the five old tribes of Bello we nevertheless find certain points of contact between records and actual conditions, as well as certain differences:

Bello's tribes.		*Modern groups.*
Immikitan	=	Immikitan. Imezegzil.
Igdalen	=	Igdalen.
Ijaranen	=	Ijanarnen (of the Itesan).
Sendal	=	?
Tamgak	=	?
?	=	Kel Ferwan.
?	=	Kel Tadek.
?	=	Imaqoaran.
?	=	Ifadeyen.
(Itesan)	=	Itesan.

In discussing tribal origins in Air and comparing my results with those of Jean, I found the greatest difficulty in sorting out the tribes of the Immikitan and Imezegzil groups: so much so that I am inclined to think that both clans represent the old Immikitan stock which split into two main branches some time ago. The widespread use of the name Immikitan for Tuareg makes it possible that the original stock of the People of the King was Immikitan in the first instance; in that event, on the analogy of other Tuareg tribes, when one clan grew unmanageable in size, new groups were formed, only one of which retained the original nomenclature as a proper or individual name—a process which no doubt occurred before any migration out of the Chad area took place. But that is too far back to consider.

Leaving the Ifadeyen out of account for the moment we are left with the Kel Ferwan, the Kel Tadek and the Imaqoaran to compete for the right of descent from the Tamgak and Sendal. A remote ancestry is indicated by their undoubted nobility and antiquity. The original home of the Kel Tadek in a valley flowing out of Tamgak and the association of the Tamgak tribe with the Tamgak massif suggest that these groups may be identified, in which case the Sendal might be the ancestors of the Kel Ferwan. Nevertheless there is also a possibility that the descendants of the Sendal are the old tribes of Damergu. That the descendants of the Sendal are to be sought for south of, rather than in Air proper, is further indicated by the record of a war between the People of Air against the Sendal in Elakkos as late as 1727.[411] The Kel Ferwan, would, thus, be descended from the Damergu-Elakkos Tuareg directly, and from the Sendal therefore only indirectly, if their origin indeed is to be sought in this early wave of immigration at all.

The selection of the Sultan of Agades being in the hands of the tribes who traditionally sent the deputation to Constantinople after the arrival of the Kel Geres in Air, and the object of the mission being to settle a dispute as to who should be king, it would be natural to find all the contestant groups represented on the delegation. The Kel Owi would, of course, not figure among them, for they had not at that time reached Air. Now the names of tribes charged with sending the delegation is given by Jean, and I accept his version because all the information which I procured on the subject was very contradictory; and the list is most interesting. It is given as: the Itesan and the Dzianara of the modern Itesan-Kel Geres group, and the Izagaran, Ifadalen, Imaqoaran and Immikitan of the other Tuareg. The Itesan we know about; the Dzianara were a noble part of the Kel Geres but are now extinct: it is natural that both these should be represented. The Izagaran and Ifadalen survive as names of noble Damergu tribes, while the Immikitan and Imaqoaran represent the older clans of Air proper, all four, of course, owing allegiance to the King. From their “I names” these tribes all seem to be old; we have no reason from any other evidence to believe that any recent arrivals are represented in the list. The very choice of representatives from each of three groups may consequently be taken to indicate that these tribes were regarded as the oldest or most important units in each division. It is tempting, therefore, to suppose that the Izagaran and Ifadalen are the descendants of one of the tribes in the first wave of Tuareg which came from the south-east, and therefore perhaps of Bello’s Sendal.

Another version of the method adopted to select the first Amenokal is recorded in the Agades

Chronicle, which states that the persons responsible for the task were the Agoalla[412] T'Sidderak, Agoalla Mafinet and Agoalla Kel Tagei. The story relates how the Agumbulum, the title of the ruler of the first Tuareg to enter Air, namely the Kel Innek, desired to settle the differences which had arisen in regard to the government, but was unable to find anyone to send to Stambul until an old woman called Tagirit offered to send her grandsons, who were the chieftains in question. The story emphasises what will have been noticed on the subject of the origin of the Kel Owi, namely, that the tribes of Air generally claim a woman either as ancestress or as a prominent head. The first two names are those of certain Itesan sub-tribes who, from residence in these mountain areas, which still bear the same names in Central Air, had adopted geographical Kel names, and conserve them to this day in their modern habitats in the Southland. The Kel Tagei is another subdivision of the Itesan, and, though a servile tribe of this name exists in the Imarsutan section of the Kel Owi, it is probably a portion of the former enslaved during the later civil wars of Air.[413]

This alternative story is not necessarily contradictory to the first version of the deputation to Stambul, even though it does not allow the remaining tribes of the People of the King to have a share in the election. Since, however, the Itesan were certainly the dominant tribe in Air until the arrival of the Kel Owi, the omission is comprehensible; it is a statement of a part for the whole. If it has any significance it tends to support the view that the Itesan were, in fact, a tribe of the Kel Innek from the Chad lands, as I have supposed, and not a part of the Kel Geres group.

The Imaqoaran and Kel Ferwan, however, remain a difficult problem. The latter are in many ways peculiar and seem to differ in many ways so much from their other friends in the division of the People of the King, that although I have no direct evidence on the subject, I half suspect them of having come to Air from some other part than the south-east and at a later period than the first wave. Certain it is that they specialised in raiding westward, where they obtained their numerous dependent Imghad. Furthermore, in Cortier's account of the history of the Ifoghas n'Adghar there are stories of the formation of this western group of Tuareg tending to show that while a part of the division probably came from the north, the bulk of the immigration was from the east. He says that after the Kel el Suk reached the southern parts of the Sahara, they divided into two groups. The two groups fought, and one section, which had apparently settled in Air, was victorious, whereupon a part migrated into the Adghar, where the other section had already established itself and had founded the town of Tademekka. In the fighting, which continued, there seems to have been considerable movement between the two mountain groups; the Kel Ferwan portion of the People of the King in Air may therefore be more nearly related to the western group than to the other Air folk.

The Ifadeyen are associated with Fadé, which is the northernmost part of the Air plateau. To-day they are very friendly with the Kel Tadek, and some people have even suggested that they were of the same stock. There is, however, another tribe, the Kel Fadé, the similarity of whose name suggests, quite erroneously, an identification. The Ifadeyen are known to be a very old tribe, while the Kel Fadé are known to have been formed at about the time of the arrival of the Kel Owi in Air and to have lived in the Fadé mountains, whence the Ifadeyen were already moving south. Barth speaks of the Kel Fadé as a collection of brigands and vagabonds, and implies that they were mainly outlaws of mixed parentage. A part of them is certainly Kel Owi and composed of those elements which went on living in the northern mountains when the main body entered Air, while another part is almost certainly Ifadeyen; as a whole they remained outside the Kel Owi Confederation as People of the King. Until about thirty years ago the Kel Fadé used to maintain that the Ifadeyen were their serfs; after many disputes the matter was referred to the paramount chief of the Kel Owi, who, after consulting various authorities, decided that the Ifadeyen were noble and free. Their chief, Matali, nevertheless preferred to evacuate the northern mountains completely in favour of the Kel Fadé in order to avoid further friction, and since then, a full generation ago, they have been gradually moving south to the Azawagh, where they pasture in the winter, withdrawing to Damergu in the dry season. Their original history might have been easier to ascertain had it not been for the fact that despite its “I form” their name is a placename, though it is possible that they gave their name to Fadé and did not take it from their habitat. The presence of the Ifadeyen in an area west and north of country which we know the Kel Tadek held, and their association with the latter, render it likely that we are, in fact, dealing with one and the same stock, namely, the descendants of the Tamgak.

The Ifadeyen are renowned all over Air for their pure nomadism, and above all for the fact that they are almost the last of the Tuareg in the Southern

Sahara to retain the current use of the T’ifingh script with a knowledge of reading and writing it. This learning, as is usual among Imajeghan tribes, reposes with the women-folk, one of whose principal functions is to educate the children; it is consistent with their supposed origin as one of the oldest and purest of all the tribes in Air.

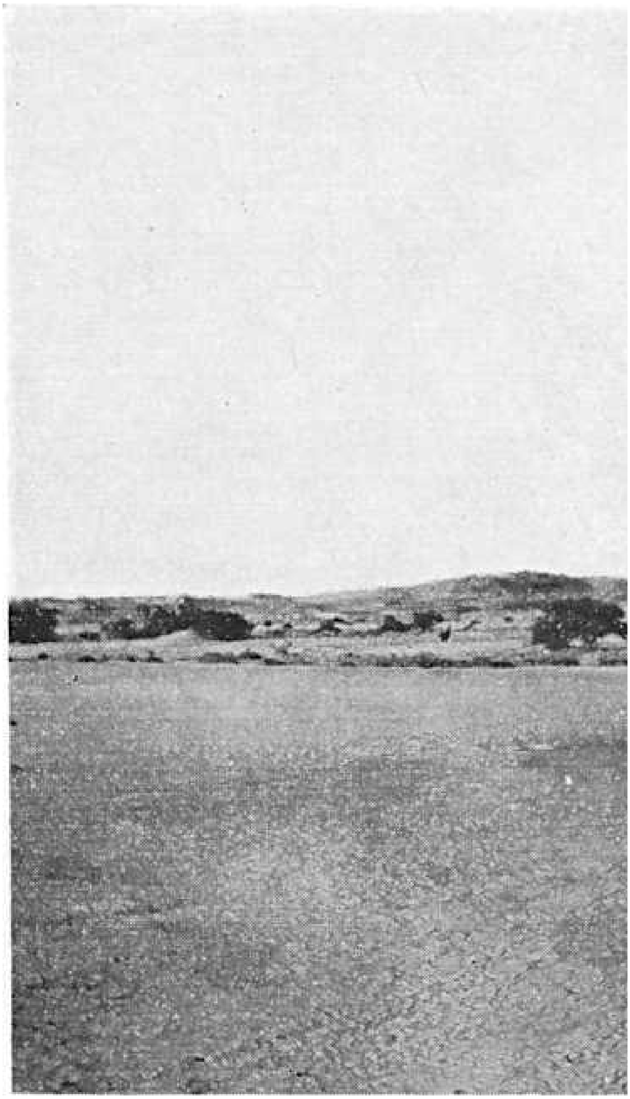
As a result of the foregoing argument the following suggestions for the main tribes of the People of the King hitherto mentioned can be made:

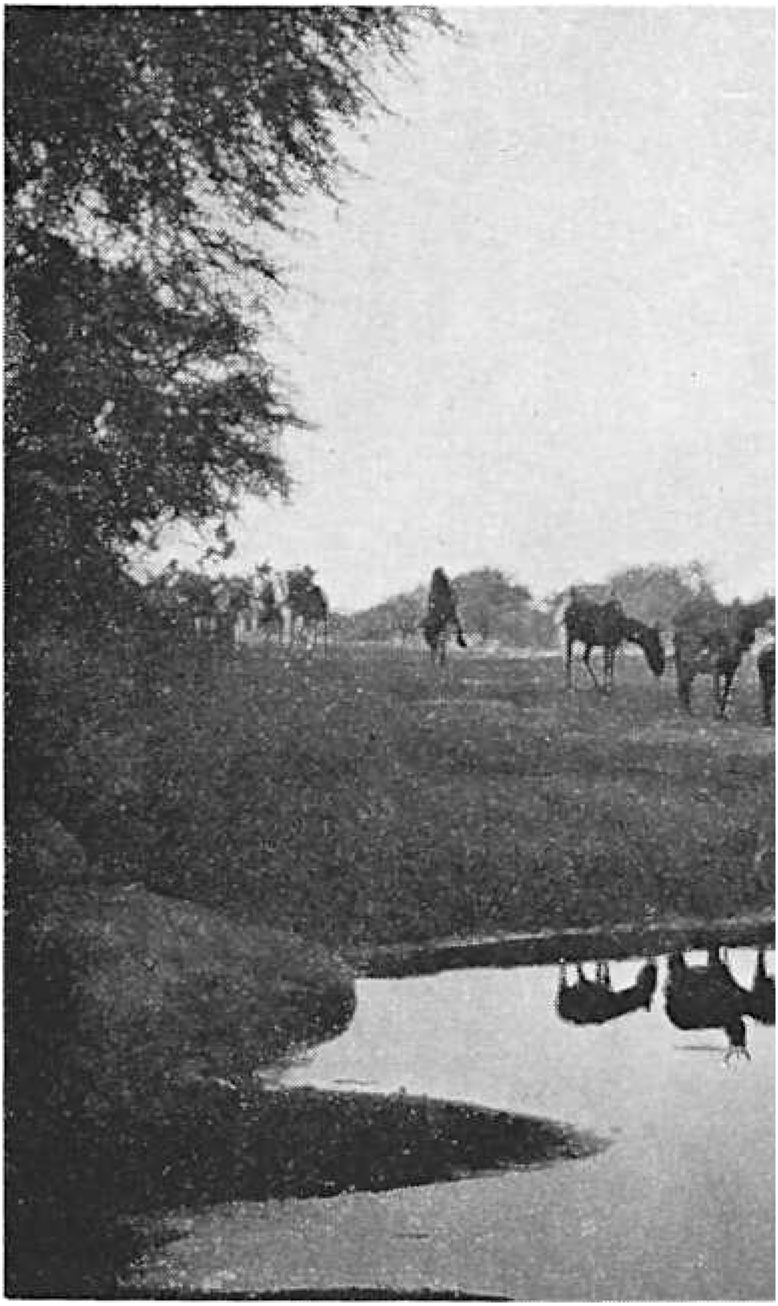
Tribes of the King (*Division I*).[414]

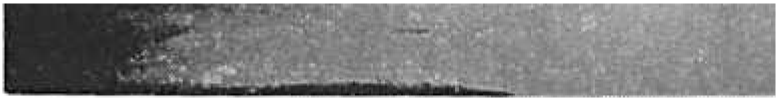
Bello’s five tribes generically called *Kel Innek*, originally from the Fezzan, where the *Imanen* are also found.	Immikitan	Immikitan, Imezegzil.
	Igdalen	Igdalen (Damergu: Division IV).
	Tamgak	Represented by the Kel Tadek and ? Ifadeyen.
	Ijaranen (Itesan)	Representing the Itesan, which includes: Ijaranen, *Kel Innek*, *Kel Manen (Imanen)*.
	Sendal	Represented by the Damergu and Elakkos Tuareg, who include: Izagaran, Ifadalen.
	?	Imaqoaran.

?Western Tuareg	Kel Ferwan.
Mixed	Kel Fadé.

PLATE 48







[356] Letter to the author from G. W. Webster, Resident at Sokoto, dated 20/6/1923.

[357] *Journal of the African Society*, No. XXXVI. Vol. IX. July 1910. Further references in this chapter will be omitted.

[358] Denham and Clapperton: *Account of the First Expedition* (Murray), 1826. Vol. II. p. 38 seq.; App. XII.

[359] As reported by Bello, Denham and Clapperton, *loc. cit.*

[360] It is to these doubtless that Jean is referring when he speaks of Egyptian influence in Air. Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 86.

[361] Cf. Leo, *op. cit.*, Vol. III. p. 828.

[362] Cf. also Asbytæ and Esbet with references in Bates, *op. cit.*, passim. The root is probably, if a generalisation is at all permitted, applicable to the earliest negroid, or Grimaldi race survivors, in North Africa.

[363] *Vide supra*, Chap. III.

[364] Cf. *supra*, Chap. II.

[365] Cf. *infra*.

[366] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 337.

[367] *Vide supra*, Chap. IV.

[368] But not necessarily the slaves.

[369] As was the case, for instance, in the days of the Eighth and Ninth Dynasties of Egypt.

[370] "Akel" (plu. *ikelan*) primarily means "negro," and from that "a slave."

[371] *Vide supra*, Chap. III.

[372]Denham and Clapperton, *loc. cit.*

[373]*I.e.* Aujila.

[374]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 460.

[375]Herodotus, IV. 172.

[376]In Chap. III.

[377]Idrisi: ed. Jaubert, Vol. I. p. 238.

[378]Cf. Chap. X.

[379]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 460.

[380]To adopt Clapperton's spelling.

[381]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. IV. App. IX and Vol. II.

[382]*I.e.* Libyans, and not, at this period or in this context, Kanuri.

[383]According to Maqrizi *apud* Barth, Vol. II. pp. 635 and 265.

[384]El Bekri, *op. cit.*, p. 456.

[385]A tribe of the Ahaggaren.

[386]In a communication to the author, Mr. H. R. Palmer, Resident in Bornu, writes: "After hearing probably all the extant tradition on the subject of the early rulers of Kanem, my belief is that the so-called Dugawa were Tuareg of some kind, and that the appellation Beri-beri applied originally to them and not to the Teda element which later on preponderated and gave the resulting Kanemi empire its language, *i.e.* Kanuri."

[387]Denham and Clapperton, *op. cit.*, Vol. II. p. 396.

[388]Though the Tebu are probably themselves a Kanuri stock, a distinction may be drawn between them and the more negroid Kanuri of Bornu and the Chad lands.

[389]See Abul Fida (French ed.), pp. 127-8 and 245; El Idrisi (ed. Jaubert), p. 288. At the time of El Maqrizi the empire of Kanem extended from Zella (Sella), south of the Great Syrtis, to Gogo (Gao) on the Niger. El Maqrizi lived from 1365 to 1442: Abul Fida died in 1331 writing his history, which was finished down to the year A.D. 1329.

[390]Other than a wholesale emigration of Franks and Byzantines to Europe.

[391]Cf. Chap. XI. *supra*.

[392]See Appendix II. and elsewhere in this chapter, also Ibn Khaldun, *op. cit.*, Vol. II. p. 3.

[393]In Appendix II.

[394]Consider the proportion of such names in the Itesan group, and in the forty-six Kel Geres tribes, respectively. Cf. Appendix II.

[395]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 86.

[396]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 113, and Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 356, also Appendix II. to this volume.

[397]Cf. Appendix II. Tribes having the same place names now in Air are not related to these clans; their history is independently established.

[398]Hornemann's *Journal*, French ed. p. 102 seq.

[399]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 339.

[400]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 343. The Tinylcum (T'inalkum) is an Azger Imghad tribe: cf. Chap. XI.

[401]Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 90-1.

[402]Jean calls them Ahaggaren, but only because all the northern Tuareg are in Air called Ahaggaren irrespective of whether they come from the Azger, Ahaggar or Ahnet divisions. In addition to these Imanen among the Azger and

Itesan, there are also some on the Niger who are probably the product of the same early migrations which took the five tribes, including the Itesan, into Air.

[403]Compare the grouping in Appendix II. and the comments in Chap X.

[404]See Appendix II. All these three tribes are People of the King, though the Kel Zilalet are rather mixed, being sedentaries.

[405]This in Air means the west or north-west. The reference may be to the Hawara, regarding whom this type of confusion has always obtained: cf. Arab-Tuareg elements in Hawara group, *vide* Chap. XI.

[406]Cf. Chap. XI. with reference to Duveyrier's information.

[407]Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 92-3.

[408]Meaning "The White Goat." Perhaps a survival of Totemism.

[409]*Vide supra*, Chap. XI.

[410]See Appendix II. Division I. for details of People of the King in Air, and Division IV. for the Damergu Tuareg.

[411]Agades Chronicle.

[412]*I.e.* chief of a tribal group.

[413]The Imarsutan Kel Tagei may also have merely fortuitously acquired this name, which only means the People of the Dûm Palm, and is therefore not very individual.

[414]In Appendix II.

CHAPTER XIII

THE HISTORY OF AIR (*continued*)

PART II

THE VICISSITUDES OF THE TUAREG IN AIR

AS a division of Tuareg the people of Air cannot be said to have achieved great deeds in the history of the world as did the Sanhaja; but as a part of the race they can justly claim to share in its glory. That they brought culture and the amenities of civilisation from the Mediterranean to Central Africa has been mentioned several times. This progress in the past was responsible for the prosperity of Nigeria to-day.

The People of Air are a small and insignificant group of human beings considered by themselves alone. It may only be when that characteristic of the Englishman displays itself and he seeks to extol the virtues, charm and history of some obscure race, that such a people assumes, in his eyes at least, an importance which to the rest of the world may seem unjustified. There is probably no race so vile, so dull or so unimpressive but that some Briton will arise as its defender, and aver that if properly treated it is the salt of the earth. I am not unconscious of the dangers of this frame of mind, but being acutely aware of the mentality, I trust that this characteristic will not have led me over-much to conceal the unpleasant or unfavourable.

A chapter which attempts to deal summarily with the history of the Air Tuareg[415] set in its appropriate frame of Central African history must inevitably seem in some measure a justification for the trouble taken to piece together an obscure and complex collection of facts relating to the country and its people. But the darkness surrounding the arguments contained in the preceding account of the migrations of the Air tribes has seemed so impenetrable that instead of closing the book at this point, I have felt moved to give the reader some rather less indigestible matter with which to conclude.

To obviate the accusation of attaching unwarrantable importance to the People of Air, it may be well to state that the population of the country is small. It was never very large. Perhaps 50,000 to 60,000 souls, including the Kel Geres and the other clans in the Southland, would have been a conservative estimate in 1904. At that time Jean, numbering only the People of Air and some of the Tuareg of Elakkos and Damergu, arrived at a tentative figure of 25-27,000 inhabitants, but he was certainly misled by his local informants into thinking that the tribes were smaller than they really were. Nor did he take all the septs of Air and the Southland into account. His estimate included somewhat over 8000 People of the King, rather more than 8500 People of the Añastafidet, 4-5000 Irawellan, 2000 slaves and 2500-3000 mixed sedentaries in Agades and In Gall.[416] At the time of the prosperity of Agades the population of these countries, not including detached sedentaries and other groups lying far afield, may have attained a maximum of 100,000.

It is impossible to estimate the total numbers of Tuareg in North Africa with any accuracy. It would be interesting to make a serious study of the numbers and general state even of those in French territories.

The internecine struggles of the Air Tuareg are hardly interesting, and have only been mentioned where relevant to the origin and movements of the three immigrations. The wars between the different divisions, like the Ahaggaren and the Azger, are not really more valuable in a general survey. But even to summarise the principal events in Air in the broad outlines is easier than to describe in a few words the events which took place in the Central Sahara and the Central Sudan during the 1000 years of history which have elapsed since first, in my view at least, the Tuareg reached these mountains from their more ancient northern home.

In early times the Tuareg were already in North Africa. They can be distinguished probably as early as the Fifth, and certainly as early as the Twelfth, Dynasty in Egypt. We can follow much of what they were doing and trace where they were living in Roman times, but it is less easy to discern the groups which composed the immigrant waves of humanity into Air until about the time when the first of them came to the south, and even then the picture is obscure.

When Air was first invaded by the Tuareg it was called Asben and was part of the kingdom of Gober, a country of negroid people who lived both in the mountains and to the south. But before the first invasion took place there was already Libyan influence in the country, both due to the northern trade which had gone on since the earliest times conceivable, and also on account of the Sanhaja Tuareg, whose power and glory had extended thus far eastwards.

The first invasion consisted of tribes who had formed part of a mass of Tuareg of the Lemta division originally from, and now still settled in, the Fezzan and Ghat areas. These people had descended the Kawar road to Lake Chad. They had occupied

Bornu, perhaps in the early ninth century A.D., or even before. The Goberawa of Air or Asben seem to have received a slight admixture of Libyan blood derived from the northerners who travelled down the caravan road to the Sudan; the people of Bornu were more purely negroid, and more so than their northern neighbours and probably kinsfolk, the Tebu of Tibesti. The Tuareg who were settled in Bornu were subjected to pressure from the east and north, at the hands of the Kanuri from east of Lake Chad, and of the Arabs. In due course, after being kings of Bornu for many generations the Tuareg began to move westwards. Some of them reached Air, leaving settlers, or having previously settled the regions of Elakkos and Damergu. The date of this movement cannot be fixed with any accuracy; it is probably not as early at the eighth century, but is certainly anterior to the great Kanuri expansion of the thirteenth century. An early date is suggested by Barth and accepted by Jean, probably merely on account of the incidence of the first Arab invasion of North Africa, though as a matter of fact the forces of Islam for the sixty years which elapsed after the conquest of Egypt were not really sufficiently numerous to occasion great ethnic movements. The six centuries between A.D. 700 and A.D. 1300 are very obscure; but if any reason must be assigned for the first invasion of Air by the Bornu Tuareg, it was probably due to the Hillalian invasion of Africa. For this and other reasons it may, therefore, be placed in the eleventh century.

With the opening of the Muhammadan era we find a kingdom at Ghana in Western Negroland with a ruling family of “white people” and the Libyan dynasty of Za Alayamin (Za el Yemani) installed at Kukia.[417] Gao, on the Niger, was already an important commercial centre at the southern end of the trade road from Algeria. In A.D. 837 we read of the death of Tilutan, a Tuareg of the Lemtuna,[418] who was very powerful in the Sahara; he was succeeded by Ilettan, who died in 900; the latter was followed by T'in Yerutan as lord of the Western Sahara. He was established at Audaghost,[419] an outpost of the Sanhaja, who appear at this time to have dominated Western Negroland, including even the great city of Ghana,[420] and to have carried on active intercourse between the Southland and Sijilmasa in Morocco. This and the succeeding century are notable for the influence of the Libyan tribes, in the first instance through the Libyan kings of Audaghost, and later, at the beginning of the eleventh century, by the desert confederation which Abu Abdallah, called Naresht, the son of Tifaut, had brought into being. It was at this time that the preacher and reformer, Abdallah ibn Yasin, arose and collected in the Sahara his band of Holy Men called the "Merabtin," who were destined to play such a large rôle in the history of the world under the name of Almoravid in Morocco and in Spain. Throughout the latter part of the eleventh century and in the whole of the twelfth, the really important element in all the Western Sahara and Sudan was the Sanhaja division of the Tuareg of the west, and though nothing is heard of the effects of their rule on Air, they must nevertheless have been considerable. The Mesufa branch of the Sanhaja were, according to Ibn Batutah, established in Gober, south of Air; the influence of the Sanhaja in Air itself as well as in Damergu is also recorded. West of Air was the city of Tademekka, nine days northwards from Gao. We also hear of the Libyan towns of Tirekka, between the Tademekka and Walata, and Tautek six days beyond

Tirekka; all these appear to have sprung up under the Sanhaja dominion as commercial centres in the same way as the later city of Timbuctoo. Agades, at this time, had not yet been founded.

At the beginning of the thirteenth or end of the twelfth century the second invasion of Air took place. Until now the Tuareg immigrants had lived side by side with the Goberawa despite the assistance which the former must have derived from the Sanhaja influence in the land. The new invaders were the Kel Geres, and their advent led to the expulsion or absorption of the negroid people. Together with the former inhabitants and under the leadership of the dominant Itesan tribe, the Tuareg consolidated their independence in Air. This might never have been achieved had it not been for the Sanhaja empire in the west; there is no doubt that the success of the latter contributed directly to the Bornu and Air movements.

By the time Ibn Batutah made his journey through Negroland in A.D. 1353, Tekadda, some days south of the mountains, as well as Air itself were wholly Tuareg.

Between Gao and Tekadda he had journeyed through the land of the "Bardamah, a nomad Berber tribe,"[421] whose tents and dietary are described in a manner which makes it clear that we are dealing with typical nomadic Tuareg. The Bardamah women, incidentally, are said to have been very beautiful and to have been endowed with that particular fatness which so struck Barth. At Tekadda the Sultan was a "Berber" (Libyan) called Izar.[422] There was also another prince of the same race called "the Tekerkeri," though further on Ibn Batutah refers to him somewhat differently, saying, "We arrived in

Kahir, which is part of the domains of the Sultan Kerkeri.” From this Barth deduces that the name of the ruler’s kingdom, which included Air but apparently not Tekadda, was “Kerker,” but we have seen that the chief minister of the Sultan of the Tuareg is called the Kokoi Geregeri, and it is to this title that I think Ibn Batutah is referring. Nevertheless, as a branch of the Aulimmiden in the west is also called Takarkari, this may signify that the plateau was at this period under the influence of those western Tuareg who have in history often exerted a preponderating part in the history of Southern Air.

The expansion of Bornu under Dunama II in the thirteenth century had, in the course of the conquest of the Fezzan, brought about the occupation of Kawar and other points on the Murzuk-Chad road. This could not but have had a serious effect on the economics of Air on account of the Bilma salt trade, and there is a tradition of a war with Bornu in about A.D. 1300. Raiding on a large scale across the desert no doubt also took place. By the middle of the fourteenth century, however, the greatness of Bornu had commenced to decline; the reigning dynasty was suffering severely at the hands of the “Sô people,” who were the original pagan inhabitants of the country. They had succeeded in defeating and killing four successive Kanuri rulers, and only twenty years after Ibn Batutah’s journey there were sown in the reign of Daud the germs of that internal strife which led to the complete expulsion of the Bornu dynasty from Kanem and continuous warfare between these two countries.

In the west, on the other hand, the power of the empire of Melle was still, if not quite at its height, at least unmenaced by any serious rival. With the death of Ibn Ghania in A.D. 1233 the Sanhaja Confederation had come to an end. There then arose on the Upper Niger a leader called Mari Jatah I. After making himself master of two of the greatest negroid peoples of the west, he was succeeded by Mansa Musa, the founder of the empire of Melle. Mansa Musa, or, as he was also called, Mansa Kunkur Musa, after adding to his dominions all the famous countries of Western Sudan, turned eastwards and conquered Gao, on the Middle Niger. He also subjected Timbuctoo, which had been founded about the year A.D. 1000 by the Tuareg of the Idenan and Immedideren tribes during the Sanhaja period, but its conquest only served to increase its prosperity as a trading centre. It was visited and inhabited by merchants from all over North Africa.

It is interesting, in considering the history of Melle, to observe an attempt which was made at this early period, in a country so long considered by Europeans as savage and barbarous, to solve a problem of government on more rational lines than has ever been tried in modern Europe. A dual system of administration was organised to deal with races foreign to the authority of the central government. There was a national and a territorial bureaucracy: the feature of the government was that Melle was divided territorially into two provinces, or vice-royalties, concurrently with which there were three separate ethnic or national administrations. It almost goes without saying that the military administration was kept strictly apart from the civil.

With the death of Mansa Musa and the succession of his son Mansa Magha, in 1331, the fabric of the empire began to fall in pieces.

Timbuctoo had been successfully attacked in 1329 by the King of Mosi, who expelled the Melle garrison. A little later the prince, Ali Killun, son of Za Yasebi, of the original Songhai dynasty of Gao, escaped with his brother from the court of Mansa Magha, where they had been living as political prisoners in the guise of pages. They acquired some measure of independence and, though again subjected by the succeeding king of Melle, Mansa Suleiman, in about 1336 commenced to lay the foundations of the later Songhai empire on the Middle Niger. Mansa Suleiman recaptured Timbuctoo, which at this time, inhabited by the Mesufa, had begun to take the place of the older Tuareg centre, Tademekka, further east. The Mesufa, whom we last saw south of Air, were doubtless being pushed back west again by the pressure of the Aulimmiden and migrants from the East.

In 1373 the Vizier of Melle, another Mari Jatah, usurped the power from the grandson of Mansa Magha and reconquered Tekadda, but it was the last flicker of life in the old empire. The opening years of the fourteenth century saw a succession of weak kings and powerful governors who were not strong enough to resist the incursions of the Tuareg from the desert. Timbuctoo was conquered in 1433 from the Mesufa by some other Tuareg, probably from the west or north-west, under Akil (Ag Malwal), who declined to abandon his nomadic life and installed as governor Muhammad Nasr el Senhaji from Shingit in Mauretania. The Tuareg at this time were everywhere victorious but destructive. They never succeeded in consolidating their power into an empire. In this era of their ascendancy Agades was founded in about the year 1460, just as Sunni Ali, the son of Sunni Muhammad Dau, ascended the throne of Gao and changed the whole political map of North Africa by prostrating the small surviving kingdom of Melle and finally setting up in its place the Songhai empire.

The incessant bickering and local feuds had driven the Tuareg of Air to come to some arrangement by which, nominally at least, they could consolidate themselves against the powers of the Sudan. They had agreed to have a Sultan, and he was installed, and not long afterwards the Amenokalate was set up in Agades, at a most eventful period in Central African history. The empire of Songhai on the Niger seemed invincible. By 1468 Timbuctoo had been overwhelmed and the governor driven out; Akil, the Tuareg, was forced to flee westwards. The city was plundered and the occupation of Western Negroland commenced. In the meanwhile the Portuguese had planted the factory of Elmina on the Guinea coast, and Alfonso V was succeeded by João II, who sent an embassy to Sunni Ali.

Sunni Ali met his death by drowning in 1492, and was followed by his son Abu Bakr Dau, and at a short interval by Muhammad ben Abu Bakr, called Muhammad Askia, the greatest of all the kings of the Sudan, and one of the greatest monarchs in the world of the fifteenth century. He appears to have ruled with great wisdom, depending on careful administration rather than on force to maintain his prestige. In addition to Melle itself and Jenne, which had already fallen, Ghana and Mosi in the far west were added to Songhai. After a pilgrimage of great pomp across Africa and through Egypt, Haj Muhammad Askia turned his attentions to the east. Katsina was occupied in 1513 as well as the whole of Gober and the rest of Hausaland. It was inevitable, to stop the Tuareg raiding down in the settled country, that Air should be added to his dominion as well.

In 1515 Askia marched against Al Adalet, or Adil, one of the twin co-Sultans of Agades, and drove out the Tuareg tribes living in the town,[423] replacing them with his own Songhai people, a colonisation from which the city has not recovered to this day. He remained in occupation a year, and was called the “Cursed.” The conquest is unfortunately not mentioned by Leo,[424] who only refers to the expedition against Kano and Katsina; and this is all the more unpardonable, for he had accompanied his uncle on an official visit to Askia himself. Leo clearly regards Agades at the time he was writing as a negro settlement. According to traditions current in the city, numbers of Tuareg were massacred by Askia’s men, but however many Songhai may have been planted there, and however many Tuareg expelled, there is no doubt that considerable numbers remained behind to mix with the southerners and form the present Emagadesi people. The town must have been in a very flourishing state at that time: “the greatest part of the citizens are forren merchants” who paid “. . . large custom to the king . . . on their merchandise out of other places.” But apart from the yearly tribute of 150,000 ducats due to the King of Gao, the conquest of Air does not seem to have affected the independence of the Tuareg, as no mention is made of a Songhai governor, while the King of Agades, already within a few years of the time of Leo’s journey, is reported to have kept a military force of his own.

The contemporaries of Askia in Kanem and Bornu were Ali, the son of another Dunama, and later, Ali’s son, Idris, both kings of such renown that their country appears on European maps as early as 1489. Not to be outdone by the Songhai kings, whose emissaries had reached Portugal, Idris sent an embassy to Tripoli in 1512. Under the son of Idris, Muhammad, who ruled from 1526 to 1545, the kingdom of Bornu reached the summit of its greatness. This remarkable century in Central Africa deserves examination in greater detail, but lack of space makes it impossible.

Agades was perhaps at the height of its prosperity before and immediately after the conquest of Muhammad Askia. The scale of life in which Air shared is shown by the description of Muhammad Askia's pilgrimage in 1495. He was accompanied by 1000 men on foot and 500 on horseback, and in the course of which he spent 300,100 mithkal of gold. The prosperity of Agades continued until the commencement of the nineteenth century, but in a form far different from what it must have been in the sixteenth century, when it served as an advanced trading-post or entrepôt for Gao, at that time the centre of the gold trade of the Sudan and probably the most flourishing commercial city in Central Africa. The gradual desertion of Agades, almost complete by 1790, when the bulk of the population migrated to Katsina, Tasawa, Maradi and Kano, commenced in 1591, at which date Gao, the parent city from the commercial point of view, had fallen to be a province of the Moroccan empire.

The heritage of Muhammad Askia was beyond the power of his successors to maintain. Intestine wars and intrigues broke down the authority of the central government. Revolts took place in Melle, and the covetous eyes of Mulai Ahmed, the Sultan of Morocco, in 1549, were turned towards Negroland.

He demanded the cession of the Tegaza salt-mines, and though this insult was avenged by an army of 2000 Tuareg invading Morocco in 1586, Tegaza was captured by the Moors soon afterwards and the deposits of Taodenit, north of Timbuctoo, were opened instead. The final blow fell three years later, when Gao was entered by Basha Jodar, the eunuch-general of Mulai Hamed, with a Moroccan army. The final struggles of Ishak Askia in 1591 were unavailing. Henceforth Moroccan governors reigned over the Western Sudan with garrisons in Jenne, Timbuctoo, Gao and elsewhere. In 1603 Mulai Hamed el Mansur of Morocco died, with the whole of Western Africa under his rule.

Power in the west thus passed once more from the negroid to the northern people, but traditions of empire persisted in the centre. In 1571 there came to the throne of Bornu, Idris Ansami, known more usually from the place of his burial as Idris Alawoma. His mother seems from her name—’Aisha-Kel Eghrarmar—to have been a Tuareg; she had the reputation of great beauty. After consolidating his empire to the east, Idris conquered Hausaland as far west as and including Kano, where he must have come into contact with the Songhai empire, just then in process of passing under the rule of Morocco. So Idris Alawoma[425] turned his attention to the north-west, and undertook three expeditions against the Tuareg, the last one of which was against Air itself, the first two presumably being against more southern tribes. The chronicle of Idris’ expeditions is not clear enough to identify the exact areas of his operations. The first one was described as a raid, and the second, an expedition against a tribe. The operations against Air started from Atrebisa and passed Ghamarama, doubtfully identified with Gamram in Northern

Damergu, after which a host of Tuareg was overtaken in the open desert between the town, Tadsa, and Air, and many were slaughtered. Idris returned to Munio by way of Zibduwa and Susubaki. At an earlier date than these expeditions his vizier had fought a battle with the Tuareg, who had come with a numerous host of Tildhin (?)[426] and others to attack him at Aghalwen, which is Eghalgawen in Southern Air, on the road to the Southland.

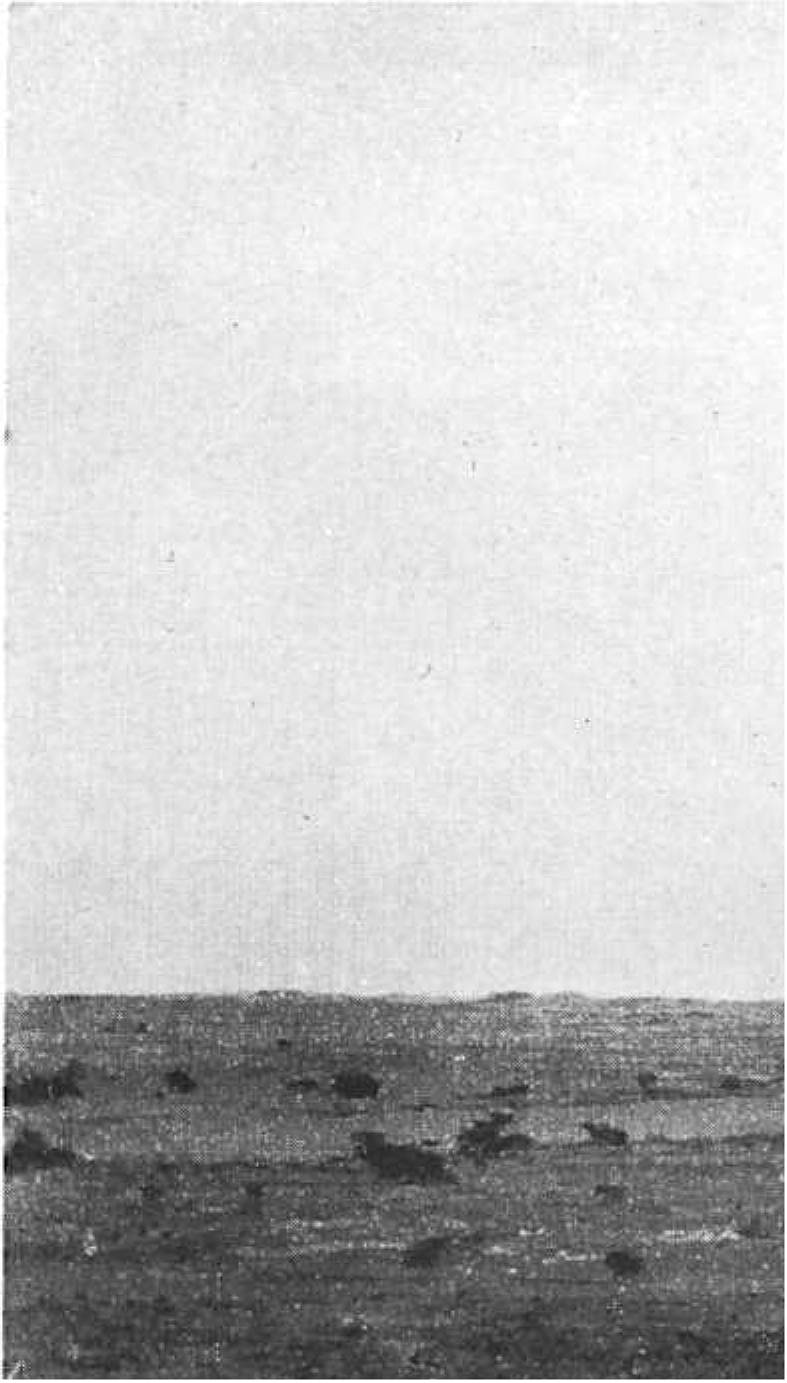
Having broken the power of the Air Tuareg, Idris Alawoma ordered the Kel Yiti, or Kel Wati, who were living in his dominions, to raid north and north-west in order to keep the tribes in a properly chastened frame of mind, until they were obliged to sue for peace and acknowledge their allegiance to the kingdom of Bornu. Barth thinks the Kel Wati are to be identified with the Kel Eti, or Jokto, a mixed Tebu and Tuareg people in the parts near Lake Chad. This is probably the period of raids in South-eastern Air, previously referred to, which obliged the Itesan to abandon their eastern settlements and move west into the heart of the mountains. The supposition is borne out by the record of Idris' expedition against the Tebu of Dirki and Agram, or Fashi, which was followed by a long stay at Bilma and the opening up of relations with the north. All these events fall into the first twelve years of Idris Alawoma's reign: of the last twenty-one we know little.

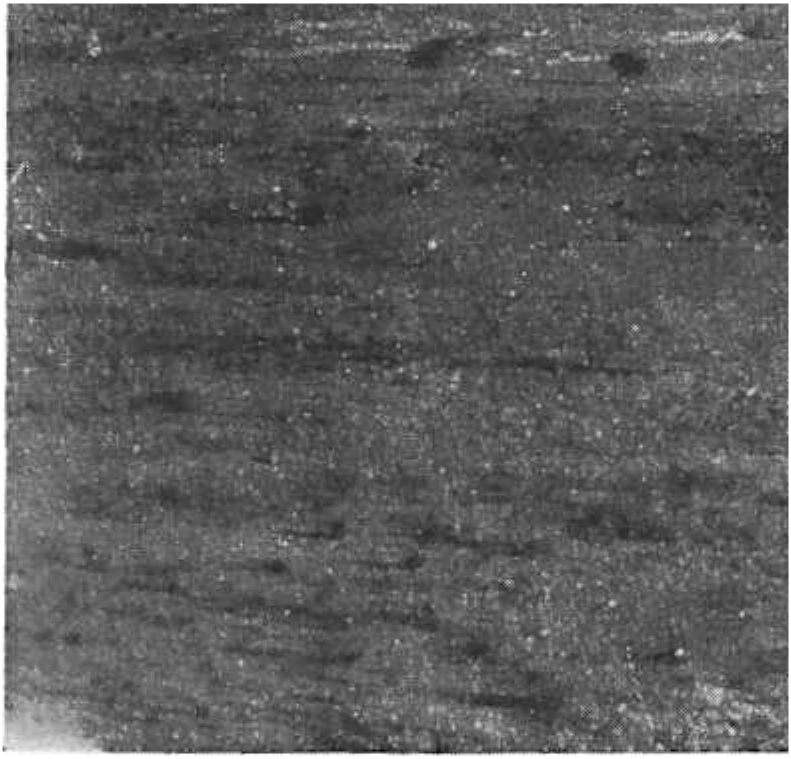
In 1601 at Agades, Muhammad ben Mubarak ibn el Guddala, or Ghodala, deposed the Amenokal Yussif ben el Haj Ahmed ibn el Haj Abeshan, and reigned in his stead for four months. Yussif recaptured the power and ben Mubarak fled to Katsina and Kano, but returning to Air entered Agades with a body of men from Bornu. He went on to Assode, and then retired within a short time to Gamram in Damergu. Yussif in the meanwhile had collected men in the Southland of Kebbi and returned to the charge. Ben Mubarak again fled to Bornu, but was later captured, and died in prison. This period of hostility between Air and Bornu led Idris Alawoma's grandson Ali ben el Haj Omar ben Idris to wage several wars against the Sultan of Agades, though he was once himself besieged in his own capital by the Tuareg and their allies. To the wars in this reign, lasting from 1645 to 1684 or 1685, belong the events which Jean has recorded incorrectly as occurring in 1300,[427] in the reign of the eighth Sultan before Lamini.[428] The latter is, of course, the famous Muhammad el Amin el Kanemi of Denham and Clapperton's expedition, who was, in fact, the eighth Sultan before Ali ben Idris.

Tradition in Air and the Agades Chronicle at this point agree tolerably well with the Bornu Chronicle. The Bornu king laid siege to Agades, where Muhammad Mubaraki (1653-87) was reigning, and defeated the Tuareg, who, after a number of engagements in the Telwa valley, retired to the fastness of Bagezan. Their resources enabled them to hold out for three years against the Bornuwi forces, who were starving in the lowlands. The war of 1685 is called in the Agades Chronicle the War of Famine. The people of Bornu eventually withdrew eastwards over the desert, hotly pursued by the Tuareg all the way to the well of Ashegur, north of Fashi, which, as will be remembered, had previously been occupied by Idris Alawoma. Deserted by their Sultan, the Bornuwi were surprised, and left 300-400 prisoners in the hands of the Tuareg, who, from now on to the present day, have exercised a paramount influence over these oases, where they developed the salt trade with the Sudan[429] through Air. The gold trade of Songhai, at one time so important in Agades that it had its own standard weight for the metal, which long after its disappearance continued to regulate the circulating medium of exchange, was replaced by the salt traffic as an asset of much value.[430]

The campaigns of Idris Alawoma and of Ali repeated the effects of the earlier Kanuri pressure on the west. Evidence of the tendency of the southern Tuareg to move west has been noticed on several occasions. The effect of the Bornu campaigns was to exert pressure on the Aulimmiden, which culminated in their attacks on the Tademekkat people and eventually in the Kel Owi immigration into Air. The sequence of events in Air has already been related; the successes of the Aulimmiden contributed directly and indirectly to the decline of Agades as a commercial centre. By 1770 they had captured Gao. Under Kawa, in 1780, they established a dominion over the north bank of the Niger at Ausa; these were doubtless some factors which influenced the Kel Geres in their decision to abandon Air as a result of the arrival of the Kel Owi. The westward move of the Aulimmiden before the Kanuri of Bornu, who were suffering from the reaction which follows greatness, had left an area correspondingly free for the Kel Geres to occupy. The middle of the century had been taken up in desultory fighting between Air and the south. The next notable event had been in 1761—an attack on Kano by the Kel Owi and the defeat of the Kel Geres by the Aulimmiden in the same year. The inroads of the Fulani into Hausaland had commenced, but as yet Othman dan Fodio had not established himself in Sokoto, or the ruling families of Fulani in all the large towns of the Central Sudan.

PLATE 49





The protection of the salt trade led to continual struggles between Air and Bornu. An expedition by the Sultan of Agades, in about 1760,[431] to Kuka on Lake Chad is probably part of the war of Bilma in 1759 referred to in the Agades Chronicle as having been made by Muhammad Guma, the son of Mubarak. The Sultan was accompanied by the Kel Ferwan, and returned with a war indemnity of 2000 head of cattle and a promise that trade would not be subjected to interference.

The occupation of part of Damergu by the Kel Owi Tuareg is of course recent, though it had been seized by the earlier immigrants at the same time as Air, with this difference, that the negroid inhabitants were never driven out or absorbed as in the mountains. The Kel Owi interference and immigration took the form of successful raiding or warfare to keep open the caravan road into the south. The fate of Damergu in all this long period of history was to be squeezed between the Tuareg on two sides and the Sudan empires on the other two.[432]

The modern period commences with the passage through Air of the Foureau-Lamy Mission. Beyond what has already been said, it is impossible to discuss this phase, as it is still too recent, but the French version is contained in Lieut. Jean's admirable review of French colonial policy in the *Territoires du Niger*.

---

[415] Some notes on the early history and the origins of the Tuareg race will be found in a paper by the author in the Journal of the R.G.S. for Jan. 1926.

[416] Jean: *op. cit.*, Chap. XIII; and Chudeau: *Le Sahara Soudanais*, p. 72.

[417] Fifteen days east of Ghana in the Upper Niger country. Not to be confused with Kuka on Lake Chad, or with Gao (Gago) on the Middle Niger. Kukia is called Kugha in el Bekri and Cochia by Ca' da Mosto (Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. IV., pp. 583-4).

[418] As we have seen, a section of the Sanhaja, and nothing to do with the Lemta.

[419] Audaghost was for long confused by European geographers with Agades, or, as soon as the first news of Air was received, with Auderas. Audaghost was in Mauretania between Tegaza and Walata.

[420] South-west of Walata and west of Timbuctoo: for all these places see Map I in Vol. I.

of the Hakluyt Soc., edition of Leo Africanus.

[421]Ibn Batutah, French ed., IV. p. 437.

[422]Variant, Iraz, French ed., IV. pp. 442, 445.

[423]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. IV. p. 603; Vol. I. p. 461.

[424]Leo, *op. cit.*, Vol. III. pp. 829 seq. and 846.

[425]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. II. p. 653.

[426]The word may be a corruption of Kindin, the Kanuri name for the Tuareg.

[427]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 115.

[428]Who did not die 400 years, but barely 100 years, ago, in 1835.

[429]Jean is, of course, quite unjustified in dragging in the Kel Owi. His information, owing to the fact that the Kel Owi had always favoured the French expansion both during the Foureau-Lamy expedition and when Jean occupied Air, seems to be derived largely from this source, which is as prejudiced as the accounts given by all parvenus in the world when discussing history in which they have not been, but would have liked to have been, involved. A parallel unjustified assumption of historical responsibility is found in the Maket n'Ikelan story.

[430]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 467.

[431]Jean, *op. cit.*, p. 121.

[432]I cannot agree with Jean that the first occupation of Damergu, Elakkos and Damagarim by the earlier Tuareg is at all recent (*op. cit.*, pp. 121-2). Some of the events he records are recent, but not the earlier movements of the tribes.

CHAPTER XIV

VALEDICTORY

HERE my account of the Air Tuareg must close. No one can be better aware than myself of the shortcomings and discrepancies of my story. The task would have been easier had a general survey of an unprejudiced character of the history and ethnology of North Africa existed. Where my account has wandered from the field of the Tuareg of Air, it has had to build both a general and a particular foundation for itself, and I am conscious that the result is not as satisfactory as it should be. The subjects of script and of language have scarcely been touched upon at all; they are too large and specialised matters for this volume. If ever there should come a period of leisure for me, they might be made the subject of a separate study.

I cannot conceal the pleasure that writing this account has afforded me in the course of my researches, by making the scenes which I enjoyed in Air live again before my eyes. Had the time available both in Africa and since my return been commensurate with my interest in the subject, the result would have been better. Intended originally as a book of travel, it has in places become complicated, obscure and overladen with some of the fruits of inquiry in a vast field, namely, the origin and nature of all the peoples of North Africa. I shall feel amply rewarded if another student will allow his curiosity to be sufficiently stimulated to continue the work.

As the writer of a book of travel I must complete the tale of the journey. I came to an end of my wanderings where I had begun them, in Northern

Nigeria. My two friends and I had started from there on 27th April, 1922; I returned there alone on the 29th December of the same year. After my tour in Northern Air it became apparent that the time at my disposal must prove too short to achieve the object of crossing the Sahara to the Mediterranean with my companions. At Iferuan I regretfully decided to return home by way of Nigeria. At the commencement of December I turned south and marched to Agellal, a large village of stone houses under a singularly beautiful mountain. From there I went to Tefis to see the mosque, and camped at Anu Wisheran, which means "The Old Well." There were small deserted settlements at both places. After another camp at Garet I descended into the basin of Central Air, over a barren slope intersected by numerous north and south rivulets between bare stony ridges. I halted in the Anu Maqaran valley near the boulder on which I discovered the chariot drawing. The site of my camp had been purely adventitious, but that obscure rock may well prove to be the most important observation of my whole journey. On the following day, Bila was reached at the spur of the Azamkoran mountains, and then we passed by the sugar-loaf hill of Sampfotchi into the Arwa Mellen and familiar Assada valleys. After a long march from the Tamenzaret wells I came again to Auderas, where I rejoined my companions, but only for a day or two, to sort our belongings and part company, I to return south, they to go on north and after many tedious delays to reach Algiers. The pleasant people of Auderas came to say good-bye. My companions walked a mile or so along my road, over the valley and hill, till we reached the plain sloping down to Taruaji. There they turned back. With me were only Sidi my guide, Amadu my servant, and one camel boy. Sidi had not been to Nigeria for many years and I was anxious for him to see modern Kano. We travelled fast, stopping only one day on the way in order to try to save a camel which had caught pneumonia during the bitterly cold nights in Azawagh. We went by Inwatza, the pool of Tizraet near Turayet, Akaraq, Eghalgawen, Milen, Hannekar and Tanut, and then straight into Nigeria without going to Zinder. On 29th December, the thirty-third day after leaving Iferuan, I reached Kano again after a journey of some 550 miles in twenty-nine marches. Even the Tuareg admitted that it was fast travelling. The camels arrived very fit indeed and were sold. A fortnight later I was embarking at Lagos for England.

PLATE 50

My guide, Sidi, was astonished at the prosperity and development of Kano. I gave him some small presents and a few things to take back to Ahodu of Auderas. He left Kano before I did, as he had found a caravan returning north and did not want to miss the opportunity of travelling with friends. He came to see me in the morning of the day he was due to leave, and we walked round the European quarter of Kano together. I happened to be with a French officer at the time. We met Sidi waiting where I had told him to be, under a certain tree in front of a well-known merchant’s store in the European town of Kano. Sidi got up and greeted me. His hand and mine brushed over one another’s, the fingers being withdrawn with a closing snap. I gave him the usual greeting: “Ma’-tt-uli,” and he replied very solemnly, “El Kheir ’Ras”; which mean, “How do you fare?” and “Naught but good.” When Tuareg meet these hand-clasps and greetings continue to punctuate their conversation for a long time. They are varied with the question, “Iselan?” meaning, “What news?” to which the right answer is, “Kalá, kalá,” “No, no!” since for them any news must be bad news. Then, as I have said, Sidi and I and the Frenchman walked together; the latter looked wonderingly at the demeanour of my friend, whom he did not know. At last it was time for Sidi to join the camels of his caravan. Their number had been increased by one camel which I had given to him. He turned to say good-bye, but did not speak at all. He took my hand and held it with both of his, and then bowed his forehead till his veil touched my fingers. I gave him the thanks of the Lord in Arabic, and he murmured something incomprehensible. My French friend looked on curiously. And then Sidi without glancing at him turned quickly and walked away like a Prince of the Earth striding over the land. He walked erect and swiftly till I lost him to sight. He never turned his head again.

He was in many ways rather a ruffian, but, like his folk, patient, long-suffering and unforgiving. He was a true specimen of the Tuareg race.

These people never become angry or speak loud: I have rarely seen them excited, but they have an indomitable spirit and for that reason will perhaps survive. They say, “Kiss the hand you cannot cut off,” and again, “The path, though it be winding, and the King, though he be old.” So they may have patience after all to wait for the fulfilment of their fate and not throw themselves fruitlessly again on rifles or machine-guns. I remember sitting at Gamram one evening on the ruins of the walls of the town where once their rulers lived as wardens of the marches of the desert on that great Saharan road. In my diary I wrote:

“Last night I sat on the old walls looking west towards the yellow sunset under a blue-black cloud of rain hanging low in the sky. A man had lit a fire which smoked very much, and the west wind was carrying the smoke away over the wall in a horizontal streak between me and the sunset. They have gone, the Tuareg, from history like that streak of smoke. Even the Almoravids are only a name. I wonder why. They have fought with a losing hand so long. They were driven down from the north by the Arabs and by Europe, and harried by everyone. They have also harried others well. Finally, the French have come and have occupied their country. For long it was thought that the Tuareg would be untamable. They fought well and hard. The fire of old remained. In Air it broke again into flame in 1917 with Kaossen’s revolt, but in the end the force of European arms prevailed. The French killed many and punished the people of Air very hardly, too hardly as some of their own officers think, in dealing with a people which is already so small and tending to die out. But though calm and peaceful to-day like the smoke carried away from the fire by the walls of Gamram, the point of flame remains. I could see the heart of the fire from which the smoke was coming. I wonder if the flame will burst forth again. You have fought well, you people. You would not bow your necks, so they have been broken, but perhaps your day may come again. It grew dark on the walls of Gamram and the sunset of rain faded away; the fire continued to burn, but my thoughts turned elsewhere, to my journey, to my riding camel (wondering whether it would survive: I gave it some millet that night as extra fodder), to England, and to what I should have to eat there. I had an omelette which I made myself, and some fresh milk for supper that evening. Thence my thoughts turned to other things as well. . . .”

And here it is better that I close. It is on the knees of the gods how they achieve their destiny. I hope that the gods will be good to them.

They were my very good friends, and I was very pleased to live with them, for they were very agreeable. Perhaps we shall meet again and travel together once more. And so their proverb, which has seemed to me very true, will be fulfilled for them and for me. They say that:

“LIVING PEOPLE OFTEN MEET.”

APPENDIX I

A LIST OF THE ASTRONOMICALLY DETERMINED POINTS IN AIR

THE positions given in the following table have been collected from the record of the proceedings of the Foureau-Lamy Mission, from the list given on the second sheet of the “Carte de l’Air” prepared by the Mission Cortier and others on a scale of 1/500,000, and from the observations by the author. Two positions given in Lieut. Jean’s *Les Touareg du Sud-Est* are also included. The French longitudes have been converted into longitudes east of Greenwich by the addition 2° 20′ 14″.

The author’s observations were carried out with a three-inch transit theodolite by Cary and Porter, and were in all cases stellar sights. The latitudes were in all cases determined from pairs of north and south circum-meridian stars, or from altitudes of Polaris and one south star. The longitudes were determined by calculations based on local mean time derived from pairs of east and west stars, and chronometric differences from points which had previously been determined by French travellers. Where the author’s longitudes for points previously determined by French observers are also given, they are the result of chronometric differences from other points previously or successively visited. The author, however, has not used his own longitudes for determining intermediate points when French observations were available, and his co-ordinates in these instances are only reproduced for purposes of comparison.

The data for the Foureau-Lamy observations are described in the record of the proceedings of the expedition. The source of the positions given on the Cortier map is not stated. The data for Colonel Tilho’s positions are in the record of the delimitation of the northern boundary of Nigeria. The author’s computations are in the records of the Royal Geographical Society in London, where are also the original route reports and prismatic compass traverses made throughout the journey.

Where possible the author’s chronometric differences were checked by opening and closing a series of observations on points previously fixed by French observers. In one unfortunate case, however, the author’s watches stopped as a result of his camels going astray and the series was consequently broken.

His watches again stopped at Auderas, where, however, he stayed a sufficient length of time to re-rate them. At this place a number of local mean time observations were taken over a long period.

The author's longitude observations were carried out as follows:

Series A	opened at Fanisau camp near Kano from a position supplied by the Survey school—closed at Tessawa— Dan Kaba (unreliable), intermediate position.
Series B	opened at Tessawa—*not* closed: Urufan-Gangara-Tanut, intermediate positions.
Series C	*not* opened—closed at T'in Wana: Termit—Teskar-Guliski, intermediate positions.
Series D	opened at T'in Wana—closed at Auderas.
Series E	opened at Auderas—watches rated—closed at Auderas.
Series F	opened at Auderas—closed at Auderas: Abarakan-Teginjir-Telia-Teloas, intermediate positions.
Series G	opened at Auderas—closed at Auderas: Aggata-Assode-Afis-Iferuan, intermediate positions.

The author's meteorological record, which was kept for nine months, has not been reproduced. It consists of daily maximum and minimum, actual (twice daily), and wet and dry bulb temperatures; aneroid readings; wind and rainfall, and sunset and sunrise notes. It is at any student's disposal to consult.

The following abbreviations are used in the ensuing table:

F—Foureau; Ch—Chambrun (see Record of Foureau-Lamy expedition); R—Rodd; T—Tilho; C—Cortier’s Map of Air; J—Jean’s *Touareg du Sud-Est.*

Place.	Area.	Latitude, north.	Longitude (east of Greenwich).	Authority.
		° ′ ″	° ′ ″	
DAN KABA[433]	Nigeria	13-12-40	7-44-30	R
TESSAWA	Tessawa	13-45-20·5	7-59-12·6	T
		13-45-50	7-59-15	R
URUFAN	Tessawa	14-04-50	8-06-25	R
GANGARA	Damergu	14-36-30	8-27-32	F
		14-36-42	—	Ch
		14-36-50	8-25-40	R
TANUT[434]	Damergu	14-58-20	8-47-50	R
GULISKI	Damergu	15-00-50	9-06-20	R
TESHKAR	Elakkos	15-07-40	10-35-10	R
TERMIT	Eastern Desert	16-04-10	11-04-50	R
ABELLAMA	Tegama-Azawagh	16-16-32	7-47-19	C
MARANDET	Tegama-Azawagh	16-22-20	7-24-14	C
AIN IRHAYEN	Tegama-Azawagh	16-26-40	7-55-22	C
TABZAGUR	Tegama-Azawagh	16-36-57	7-08-17	C
TIN WANA (T’in-Nouana)	S. Air	16-42-32	8-25-19	C
		16-42-55	8-25-15	R
IN GALL	S.W. Air	16-47-08	6-54-15	C
TEBEHIC	S. Air	16-47-32	8-21-14	C
EGHALGAWEN	S. Air	16-48-21	8-31-19	C
AGADES (Post)	S. Air	16-59-19	7-57-15	C
„ (T’in Shaman[435])	S. Air	16-59-02	(8-24-18)	J
TIN DAWIN	S. Air	17-00-07	8-26-19	C
TIN TABORAQ	S. Air	17-01-50	8-08-19	C

Tagidda N’Adrar	W. Air	17-04-13	7-22-21	C
Anu Areran	W. Air	17-15-27	7-43-20	C
Fagoshia	W. Air	17-16-01	6-57-17	C
Tafadek	S. Air	17-23-32	7-55-19	C
Tagidda N’T’isemt	W. Air	17-25-38	6-34-33	C
Tinien	S. Air	17-26-54	8-09-02	F
		17-26-24	—	Ch
Idikel	W. Air	17-29-42	7-37-23	C
Teloas-Tabello	E. Air	17-34-40	8-49-30	R
Egeruen	S.W. Air	17-35-15	7-54-22	C
Auderas[436]	C. Air	17-37-50	8-19-00	R
		17-38-00	8-18-14	F
		17-37-48	8-19-30	(C)
Telia	E. Air	17-47-30	8-49-20	R
In Kakkan	W. Air	17-49-22	7-48-23	C
In Abbagarit	Western Desert	17-53-47	5-59-15	C
Tamet Tedderet	Western Desert	17-54-04	6-36-18	C
Anu N’Ageruf	W. Air	17-54-46	7-24-22	C
Aureran	C. Air	17-56-54	8-23-17	F
		17-56-42	—	Ch
Teginjir	C. Air	17-59-20	—	R
Abarakan	C. Air	18-03-30	8-39-20	R
Aggata	C. Air	18-09-00	8-26-40	R
Ufa Atikin	W. Air	18-09-26	7-12-21	C
In Allaram	Western Desert	18-16-12	6-15-19	C
Tamadalt Tan Ataram	W. Air	18-16-23	7-49-18	C
Afasto	W. Air	18-17-08	7-17-22	C
Zilalet	W. Air	18-23-19	7-51-21	C
Assode	C. Air	18-27-00	8-26-50	R
Sidawet	C. Air	18-30-54	8-02-20	C
Afis	N. Air	18-37-30	8-35-40	R

AGELLAL	N. Air	18-43-02	8-07-17	C
		18-43-00	8-10-02	F
		18-43-00	8-07-14	Ch
FAODET	N. Air	18-47-20	8-34-50	R
IFERUAN[437]	N. Air	19-04-10	8-22-45	R
		19-04-28	8-22-22	C
		19-04-18	8-24-32	F
		19-04-12	8-21-20	Ch
		19-04-03	8-24-24	J
ZURIKA	N. Air	19-14-35	7-50-15	C
URAREN	Western Desert	19-31-44	7-08-17	C
IN GEZZAM	Western Desert	19-33-10	5-44-20	C

HEIGHTS ABOVE SEA LEVEL.[438]

IFERUAN	681	metres	(F)
	673	„	(C)
URAREN	485	„	(C)
SIDAWET	554	„	(C)
AGELLAL	613	„	(C)
	604	„	(F)
AUDERAS	798	„	(F)
AGADES (T'in Shaman)	500	„	(F)
IN GEZZAM	374	„	(C)
ZILALET	557	„	(C)

NOTE.—The exact positions of the observations in the same localities are not identical in the case of all observers, which accounts for some of the apparent discrepancies.

---

[433] The Dankaba observation is of somewhat doubtful accuracy.

[434] The Tanut longitude depends on only one stellar observation for L.M.T.

[435]Jean’s longitude for T’in Shaman, which is the site of the French post and therefore also of the rest-house where the Cortier observation was taken, differs so materially from the latter that it cannot be accepted. It is described (like the position he gives for Iferuan) as “d’après F. Foureau,” but I can find no record in the account of the proceedings of the Foureau-Lamy Mission to justify this statement.

[436]My camp at Auderas was situated about 400 yards east of the camp site which the Foureau-Lamy Mission occupied and where, therefore, Foureau’s observation was probably made. This difference accounts for the discrepancy in our longitudes. The Cortier map shows an astronomically fixed point at Auderas which, when measured on the copy in my possession, gives these co-ordinates, but they are not recorded in the table on the second sheet of the map, as are the other positions in Air. Foureau’s latitude is based upon five observations, one of which is appreciably smaller than the other four; if this result is omitted from the average, the latitude becomes even higher than it is given in the table.

[437]Foureau’s latitude for Iferuan is based upon five observations, one of which is appreciably higher than the other four; if this result is omitted the average practically coincides with my observation, which was taken on the identical spot.

[438]The altitudes obtained by me from boiling-point observations and aneroid readings are not given; they are numerous but have not been fully worked out.

APPENDIX II

THE TRIBAL ORGANISATION OF THE TUAREG OF AIR

DIVISION I. The People of the King.

DIVISION II. The Itesan and Kel Geres.

DIVISION III. The Kel Owi.

DIVISION IV. The Tuareg of Damergu.

DIVISION V. Unidentified tribes, generic names, etc.

The work of Barth and Jean has been incorporated in these tables; further reference to these authors is therefore omitted. Alternative name forms from these and other sources are given in brackets below the spelling which has been adopted to conform as far as possible with the rules of the Royal Geographical Society’s Committee on names.

(N) and (S) respectively signify “noble” and “servile” tribes.

In many cases no territorial identification is given, as tribes have changed their areas very greatly since 1917-18, nor have they settled down permanently to occupy other ranges since then. When Northern Air was cleared by the French patrols, the tribes were moved south, and for the most part they are therefore now in the neighbourhood of Agades, or in the Azawagh or even further south. But they are arranged in a disorderly fashion and are always moving from place to place; any attempt to give their present areas would be fruitless, since they will probably prove to be only temporary. The process of returning north had already commenced in 1922 and has presumably continued since then. Such locations as are given in the tables refer to periods prior to 1917 unless the contrary is stated.

The left-hand column gives the name of the original tribal stock so far as it has been possible to trace one. The next column gives the names of the tribes and sub-tribes formed by the original group. It is often impossible to state for certain whether large tribes are still to be described as such, or whether they have become independent tribes with subsidiary clans. Thus the whole classification must be considered approximate. It is designed to carry one stage further the system commenced by Barth, and continued by Jean. Where these two authorities are stated to have made mistakes or to have been inaccurate, the brevity of such phrases, occasioned as it has been by the use of a tabular form of arrangement, does not denote more than an expression of different opinion. It is intended to convey no disparagement, but merely to obviate circumlocution. The remarks in the right-hand column are intended to be read in conjunction with the relevant parts of the text of this book to which they are supplementary.

DIVISION I. THE PEOPLE OF THE KING.

Group.	Tribes and sub-tribes.	Notes.
1.		

Kel FERWAN.	Kel FERWAN (N.).		From its present name the group was originally in Iferuan (Ighazar) valley, whence probably expelled to W. and S. by Kel Owi. Original name unknown. Possibly not originally of same stock as others in division, and perhaps immigrant from W. Tribes ranged over S.W. Air, N.W. Damergu, and W. Tegama, but since 1917 nearly all the nobles have settled in Katsina, leaving Imghad in old areas. Great raiders westward. About 4320 souls according to Jean.
	IRAWATTAN (N.).		At T’intabisgi (S. Talak plain). The only “I name” tribe recorded in the group.
	Kel AZEL (N.).		At T’intabisgi.

Kel TADELE.		Large tribe now partially independent of Kel Ferwan group. Described by Jean as servile and by others as noble; explanation being probably that both castes occur as sub-tribes. Apparently originally an Ahaggar tribe which with its Imghad came to Air; if this was due to conquest by an Air tribe, the confusion of status is comprehensible.
	Kel TADELE (N.).	Talak-Zurika area. They own Zelim and Tuaghet pools in Fadé, a part of which is also theirs. Their chief is Rabidin.
	TEHAMMAM (S.).	
IMUZURAK (S.).		W. Tegama and S.W. Air. Some nobles of this name in Damergu are wrongly described by Jean as Imghad of the Ikazkazan. The Imghad Imuzurak were probably captured from the noble sept.
IMUZURAN (S.).		At T'intabisgi. The name is abusive, meaning "Donkey droppings." Reputed very fair skinned.

IBERDIANEN (S.) (Berdianen)	At Araten.
JEKARKAREN (S.).	At Araten.
IGEDEYENAN (S.). (Gedeyenan) (Iguendianna)	At Azel.
ISAKARKARAN (S.). (Zakarkaran)	At T'intabisgi. Both names are wrongly given by Jean as separate units.
IDELEYEN (S.).	At T'intabisgi.
IKAWKAN (S.).	Do.
EGHBAREN (S.).	Do.
	The last eight servile tribes represent nuclei captured in the W. They are of Tuareg, Arab and Moroccan origin, but have been assimilated to the People of the Veil.

	IFOGHAS (S.).	Tafadek area. Said by Jean to be Imghad of the Kel Ferwan and to have come from the Kel Antassar stock (unidentified) S. of Timbuctoo. They came to Air about 1860 and settled under the Amenokal; they were allowed to retain noble privileges. Their inclusion in the Kel Ferwan group indicates that the latter may be of W. origin.
	(IFADEYEN) (?).	Believed to be noble. Included by Jean among the Kel Ferwan Imghad, but for a more probable attribution see Div. I. Group 6.
2.		

(Kel TADEK).			No original name is traceable, but that of “Tamgak” is suggested. They were named from the Tidik (or Tadek) valley N. of Tamgak and the Ighazar. One of the oldest tribes in Air. They possessed the country from Agalenge to Tezirzak in Fadé and N. Air. They had the Kel Fares to E. and Kel Tamat to W., and covered area from Temed to just N. of Ighazar. Now scattered all over Air. Their chief is Ahodu of Auderas.
	Kel TADEK (N.).		Tadek valley and Gissat. Now scattered and in small numbers. Their original name is unknown.
	Kel UMUZUT (N.).		Agades area, and Damergu. Practically separate from the other tribes in the division.
	(Kalenuzuk)		
	Kel TEFGUN (N.).		At Tefgun mosque, Ighazar. A small personal tribe of Ahodu’s own family; keepers of the mosque for at least five generations.

Kel AGHIMMAT (?).	Probably a sub-tribe of the Kel Tadek.
(Kelghimmat)	
Kel TAKERMUS (N.).	
Kel GARET.	Garet plain, C. Air. Not to be confused with the Kel Garet of the Kel Geres. From a place S. of Agellal pronounced “Anigara.”
Kel GARET (N.).	
Kel ANIOGARA (?).	
Kel ANU WISHERAN.	
Kel ANUWISHERAN (N.).	At Anu Wisheran, C. Air. Very nomadic and ancient; now in Tegama.
Kel EZELU (N.).	Ezelu valley, S. of above.
Kel GARET (S.).	A fortuitous collection of Imghad in the Garet valley. The existence of two Kel Garet may be compared with the two Kel Garet in Div. II. Group 5, with whom there may be some connection.
Kel IZIRZA (N.).	
IZUMZUMATEN (N.).	
Kel GIGA (S.).	At Agejir, S. Bagezan. Probably assimilated to the Ittegen.
ITTEGEN (S.).	Large Imghad section of the

	(Etteguen)	
	Kel AGGATA (? N.).	Have recently joined the Kel Tadek (Groups 3 and 4).
3 and 4.		

IMMIKITAN and IMEZEGZIL.

The alternative attribution of many tribes to these two groups makes it difficult to distinguish them apart. The reason for the confusion is that both groups occur in areas predominantly Kel Owi, where they form isolated islands of extraneous people dependent upon the Añastafidet. Both groups were probably in occupation of N.E. Air when Kel Owi arrived; latter proved unable to eliminate them completely, and the remnants consequently fell under their influence and were thus variously described as belonging to one or other division. The two groups perhaps represent a single stock with the IMMIKITAN predominant, but in later times certainly acquired, as here shown, co-equal status. Immikitan are known to have been among first Tuareg in Air.

IMMIKITAN.

(Amakeetan)

IMMIKITAN (N.).		Also called ELMIKI. Originally, after immigration, in N. Central Air. Now isolated nuclei of this division live among people of Div. II. There are also Immikitan in Div. IV. Jean has rightly not accepted popular account that they are Kel Owi owing to recent association.
Kel TEGIR (N.). (Kel Teguer)		At Tegir near Assatartar.
Kel ASSATARTAR (N.).		A geographical synonym for the above.
Kel AGGATA.		
Kel AGGATA (N.).		Aggata area. This tribe did not move south after the 1917 episode, and thus became affiliated to Kel Tadek. Their chief is El Haj Saleh at Agades.
Kel TADENAK (N.).		Placed by Barth at Tadenak, E. of Agellal, and later by Jean at Intayet on Anu Maqaran valley.
(IKARADAN) (S.).		Placed by Jean at Aggata, but the word means Tebu in Air Temajegh; the nucleus almost certainly consists of Tebu living near their masters and not a separate tribe.

	Kel MAWEN (?).	Placed by Jean at N'Ouajour, which is probably In Wadjud near Taruaji. No information.
	(Kel Maouen)	
	(Kel Assarara)	Wrongly placed by Jean in this group either on account of confusion with Kel Assatartar or perhaps because Kel Assarara inhabited Assarara area as Immikitan before the arrival of the Kel Owi (see above). The only Kel Assarara to-day in existence are Kel Owi (*q. v.*).
IMEZEGZIL.		Originally N. of the Immikitan in the Agwau-Afis-Faodet area before arrival of Kel Owi. Jean thinks only two tribes can be assigned to this group, the Kel Faodet and Kel Tagunar, but others seem to belong. The group is surrounded by Kel Owi, who are especially strong in the originally most important area of the tribe, namely Agwau. They are now all in the Agades area.

(IMEZEGZIL) (N.).		No independent Imezegzil survive, but its existence is remembered in the Agwau area. Remnants are probably represented by the Kel Afis.
Kel Afis.		
(Kel Afess)		
Kel Afis (N.).		At Afis, N. Air. They are called the “big men,” the Imezegzil. In the wider geographical term, Kel Afis includes some Kel Owi living in the village. Jean rightly calls Kel Afis a separate tribe which probably represents the oldest part surviving to the Imezegzil.
AZANIERKEN (S.).		Imghad of the above, but living further W. at Tanutmolet in Ighazar. Their “I name” indicates antiquity, and the fact that the Kel Afis possessed such an old tribe indicates that the latter were the parent stock of group.
Kel TANUTMOLET (S.).		

	IZARZA.	A group of serfs living among Kel Owi at this village, whose population has come to be called Kel Tanutmolet, which is also used as a variant for the Azanierken. I have a note that these Kel Tanutmolet serfs are also called Izarza, which may be a corrupt form for Azanierken. They are now only two or three families.
	Kel FAODET (N.).	At Faodet in the upper Ighazar.
	Kel TAGUNAR (?).	At Tagunet in the upper Ighazar.
5. IMAQOARAN.		Originally in W. Central Air. Although belonging to a category of the People of the King, they were never much under his authority.
	IMAQOARAN (N.).	In the Agellal area. Very small, only five families are said to survive. See Kel Wadigi.
	(Immakkorhan)	

(Kel AGELLAL)	Are probably in great part Imaqoaran, especially when Kel Agellal is used in a general or geographical sense (cf. Kel Agellal, Div. III. Group 4).
Kel WADIGI.	
Kel WADIGI (N,).	In Wadigi valley, E. of Agellal. Small unimportant group of recent origin, consisting of Kel Agellal Imaqoaran, Kel Agellal Ikazkazan, and people from Ighazar.
Kel TEfis (N.).	At Tefis.
Kel AREITUN (S.).	Imghad of above in Areitun village, W. of Anu Wisheran (not the Areitun N. of Agellal).
Kel SIDAWET (N. and S.).	At Sidawet village. A sedentary group of mixed parentage and doubtful origin. Also ascribed to Izeyyakan, but on account of the established origin of the Kel Agellal Imaqoaran and Kel Zilalet, whose villages are in same area as Sidawet, they are all probably of the same parentage.
(Kel Sadaouet)	

	Kel Zilalet (N. and S.).	Zilalet village. Wrongly described as an independent tribe by Jean.
6.		Both the last are mixed village groups of people of all castes.
Ifadeyen and Kel Fadé.		No more information is available than that given in the preceding chapters (see pp. 399 and 400).

Division II. The Itesan and Kel Geres.

Note: All these tribes are in the Southland, and their present areas are not, therefore, specified.

Group.	Tribes and sub-tribes.	Notes.
1.		
Itesan.		Probably one of the original tribes of the Kel Innek who invaded Air from the Chad direction. Being the preponderant tribe in Air, the Itesan were driven from the country by the Kel Owi when the latter arrived. Though now in the Southland, the Itesan still play a prominent rôle in electing the Amenokal of Air.
	(Kel) T’Sidderak.	Named from a group of hills N. of Auderas.
	Kel Tagei. (Kel Tagay)	“The People of the Dûm Palm,” possibly a totemic name or else derived from name of a valley so-called. There are many such in Air, in particular

(? also Tagayes)	
Kel BAGEZAN.	Originally inhabiting the mountains so called. Not to be confused with other later Kel Bagezan.
(Kel Maghzen- Kel Bagezan)	
Kel ALLAGHAN.	“The People of the Spears.”
(Alaren)	
(EMALLARHSEN).	Probably a misreading for “Im” or “In Allaghan” (where the prefix takes the place of “Kel”), and therefore identical with above.
(ITZIARRAME).	Probably a corrupt name, perhaps a mistake for the above.
(Kel) TELAMSE.	The second is probably the right form, and is derived from the name of a village and hills near Auderas.
(Kel T’ilimsawin)	
Kel MAFINET.	Named after a valley tributary to the Auderas valley.
Kel DUGA.	The second is probably the right form, and is derived from Mount Dogam, N. of Auderas.
(Kel Dogam).	

Kel UYE.	Kel Wadigi, from a valley E. of Agellal, has been suggested as a more correct version. In this case the tribe would more probably belong to the Kel Agellal of the Kel Unnar in Group 3, but the derivation is doubtful.
Kel MANEN.	Given by Barth as a tribe of the Itesan.
IMANEN.	With the two following tribes they seem to represent the oldest stock of people who invaded Air from the E. These Imanen are obviously of the same stock as the Imanen of the Azger Lemta division of Tuareg in the N.
Kel INNEK.	Are given by Barth as a part of the Itesan. While the name may have survived as a tribal name, it is more properly applicable to all the people who came from the E. when Air was invaded. The existence of such a tribe name among the Itesan, whose original name it may have been, is, however, proof of the accuracy of Bello’s statement.
IJANARNEN.	This tribe is given by Bello as one of those who originally invaded Air from the E. The occurrence of such a tribe in the Itesan group, according to Barth, substantiates the supposition made above and in the body of the book.

	(Ijaranen)	
2. TETMOKARAK.		
	TETMOKARAK. (Tedmukkeren)	
	Kel TEGHZEREN.	Kel Teghzeren may be a corruption of “Kel Intirzawen” derived from the name of the Asclepias Gigantica. The Kel Teghzeren appear to be the principal tribe of the Tetmokarak, and are possibly the parent group.
	Kel AZAR.	Perhaps derived from a place of that name in the upper Anu Maqaran valley, C. Air.
	(Kel) UNGWA. (Oung Oua) (Kel Ungwar)	The origin of the name is doubtful, for “ungwa” seems in Kanuri to mean “village.” The name may be a form of Kel Unnar (see below), another Kel Geres group.
	TASHEL. (Taschell) (Tashil)	
	ISHERIFAN.	Of which the Isherifan in Damergu were probably a part.
	Kel ATAN.	
	TEGAMA.	See also the People of Tegama in the Damergu group. The two septs are probably of the same stock; they are more fully discussed in the body of the book.
	KERFEITEI.	The second version is perhaps more correct.

	(? Kel Feitei)	
	(Kel) IGHELAF.	From a group of wells in E. Damergu.
	(Ighlab)	
	ESCHERHA.	
	INARDAF	
	ZERUMINI.	
3. Kel UNNAR.		The Kel Ungwa may be the same people, but there is no information.
	Kel UNNAR.	
	TARENKAT.	
	ALWALITAN.	A patronymic, from the common personal name among the Tuareg, Al Wali.
	GURFAUTAN.	Probably also a patronymic.
	Kel AGELLAL.	From Agellal in C. Air, and not to be confused with the present Kel Agellal (Div. I. Group 5).
	(Kel Aghellal)	
	Kel TAIAGAIA.	?, unless a corruption in the manuscripts of European authors of Kel Agellal.
4. Kel ANIGARA.		
	(Kel) ANIGARA.	There are two places called Anigara (Aniogara) near Agellal, and this group might be named from either of them. The present Kel Aniogara are a sub-tribe of the Kel Garet (in Div. I. Group 2).
	TAFARZAS.	No information.
	ZURBATAN.	Do.
	IZENAN.	Do.

	Tanzar.	Do.
5. Kel Garet.		Doubtless originally from the Garet Mts. and plain in C. Air, and not to be confused with the Kel Garet of Div. I., of whom, however, these people may have been a part which moved S. when the Itesan also went.
	Kel Garet.	The people originally inhabiting the plain of that name.
	Kel Garet N'Dutsi.	*I.e.* the "Kel Garet of the Mountain," who lived in the mountains in the same area.
	Aiawan.	No information.
	Tiakkar.	Do.
	Irkairawan.	Do.
Tadadawa, Kel Tamei.		These are grouped together, largely perhaps because not enough is known to separate their various tribes. Their tribes are given without comment, as there is little available on record.
	Tadadawa.	? the Tadara of Barth.
	Kel Tamel.	
	Kel Amarkos.	
	Kel Intadeini.	Probably from a place Intadeini on the Anu Maqaran, C. Air.
	Kel Ufugum.	
	Tegibbut. (Tgibbu)	
	Iburuban. (Iabrubat)	
	Toiyamama.	

	Irmakaraza.	Perhaps connected with the name Anu Maqaran.

Note.—Barth also gives the following unidentified names of Kel Geres tribes: *Kel n'Sattafan* (the Black People), which is also the name of the family of the Amenokal according to Bello: this tribe, if it is a tribe at all, may be attributed to the Itesan group; *Tilkatine*; *Taginna*; *Riaina*, and *Alhassan*.

The caste of these tribes is not specified, but all the principal units, at any rate, may be assumed noble. The tribes have simply been enumerated here for purposes of record and comparison. They are not adduced as ethnological material comparable with that provided by the lists of tribes in Divisions I. and III.

Division III. The People of the Añastafidet or Kel Owi

Group.	Tribes and sub-tribes.	Notes.
1. Imaslagha.		The Kel Azañieres, and therefore the Imaslagha, with the Izeyyakan and Igururan, are said to be the oldest of the Kel Owi division.
	Imaslagha.	
	Kel Azañieres.	
	Kel Azañieres (N.).	In the Azañieres mountains.

Kel Intirzawen (S.).	West of the southern Kel Nugguru in the Intirzawen and T'ilisdak valley, S. of Auderas.
Kel TAGHMEURT (N.).	In the Taghmeurt Mts. It has certain unspecified servile tribes.
(Tagmart)	
Kel ASSARARA.	In the Assarara and Agwau area, N.E. Air, at the places mentioned. Their chief in Barth's day was Annur, paramount chief of Air.
Kel Assarara (N.).	Along the great valley of N.E. Air.
Kel Agwau (N.).	
Kel Igululof (N.).	
Kel Oborassan (S.).	
Kel Anu Samed (S.).	
Kel T'intellust (S.).	
	The last is wrongly placed by Jean in Group 2 with the Kel Tafidet.
IGURURAN (Igururan) (N.).	Apparently now extinct in name.

Kel Fares (N.).		At Fares N. of Agwau; now near Agades. Their position is confirmed by Barth, but the place is called Tinteyyat. Their original name was probably Igururan, but since the extinction of the parent stock they rank as connected with the Imaslagha group. The “I name” Igururan may have been a group name in the first place.
Kel Zegedan.		Name recorded by Barth but not now traceable. May be connected with Kel Bagezan, whose position might be described as 1½ days from T’intellust.
Izeyyakan (N.).		By some described as People of the King, but placed by Jean, probably rightly, in this group. Formerly a noble portion of the inhabitants of Auderas.
Imarsutan (N.).		The same considerations as above apply. Wrongly placed at Auderas. Said to have come from unidentified place called Arsu.

	IMARSUTAN (N.).	A comparatively modern tribe said to have been formed from remnants of the old tribe.
	Kel TAGEI (S.). (Kel Teget)	Perhaps a totemic name, but readily derived from any place abounding in “dûm palms.” Perhaps but not necessarily a conquered part of Itesan Kel Tagei (cf. Div. II Group 1).
	(? Kel Tintagete)	
	Kel ERARAR.	Name means “People of the Plain,” and probably refers to plain N. of T’intellust, near which Barth also places them. Name may therefore be generic and applicable to various sections in group.
2. IGERMADEN.		The name is radically connected with Jerma or Garama in the Fezzan.
	IGERMADEN.	
	IGERMADEN (N.).	At Ajiru, E. of Bagezan. The people of Belkho, paramount chief of Air after Annur.

Kel AJIRU (N.).	Perhaps an alternative name for above, for the sedentary element among them.
Kel ASSATARTAR (N.).	The name of the inhabitants of Assatartar other than the Immikitan element there (see Div. I Groups 3 and 4).
(IMMIKITAN (N.)).	Of Assatartar; have become to be considered connected with Igermaden owing to propinquity and gradual absorption.
(Kel TAGERMAT (N.)).	Perhaps a confusion for Kel Taghmeurt in Group 1; placed by Barth at unidentified place, Azuraiden, E.N.E. of T'intellust, corresponding roughly with Taghmeurt mountains.
IGADEMAWEN.	Wrongly placed by Jean in Imaslagha group.
(Ikademawen)	
IGADEMAWEN (N.).	Afasas and Beughqot areas E. of Bagezan. The name suggests analogies to Kel Mawen of Immikitan in Div. I. Groups 3 and 4. Perhaps a part of group

	(Kel Mawen?)	
	Kel NABARO (?).	Nabaro villages near Tabello, E. of Bagezan.
	Kel TAFIDET (N.).	Also given, but wrongly I think, as an independent tribe in this group. Lived in the Tafidet Mts. with unspecified servile tribes.
	Kel Tafidet.	
	Kel Anfissac.	Anfissac well E. of T'imia massif.
	Kel INTIRZAWEN (S.).	A part of the same tribe which is also servile to Kel Azañieres in Group 1.
	Kel AGALAK (?).	Placed by Jean in this group. The name is well known but tribe was not identified by me.
		Jean also places some Ifadeyen, some Ikazkazan of Garazu in Damergu, and some people with generic name of Kel Ighazar in this group; but he is, I think, mistaken in doing so.
3. IMASRODANG.		In the Ighazar, whence they have acquired the generic name of Kel Ighazar. The

Kel IGHAZAR.		The headman of the group is Abdulkerim, now living at Azzal near Agades, but formerly settled at T’intaghoda.
	Kel T’INTAGHODA (N.).	At T’intaghoda. Reputed to be Holy Men.
	Kel TAMGAK or IMEDIDERAN.	Some serfs and some free wild men living in Tamgak, historically belonging to, but never subjected by, Kel T’intaghoda. Their status is undefined, for their inherent nobility is recognised.
	Kel ELAR (N.). Kel IBERKOM (N.). (Kel Abirkom) (Kel Aberkan)	All at various points in the Ighazar between Iferuan and Iberkom.
	Kel SELIUFET (N.).	
	Kel IFERUAN (N.).	Not to be confused with Kel Ferwan in Div. I.
	Kel TEDEKEL (?). (Kel Fedekel)	Now believed to be extinct. Originally also in Ighazar, but said to have become merged

	(Fedala)	
4. IKAZKAZAN.		The tribe as such of this name has disappeared in the various large groups into which it has become divided. It is considered the junior group of the Kel Owi Confederation, the others being called from their chief constituent parts the Kel Tafidet and Kel Azañieres. The use of these territorial names corresponds in the Ikazkazan to the use of the names of the big subgroups, the Kel Tamat, Kel Ulli, etc.
	Kel TAMAT.	A sub-group named from the Tamat acacia tree. It is the great northern sub-group of the Ikazkazan, corresponding with the Kel Ulli in the south. It would include all the northern Ikazkazan had some tribes not broken off to virtual independent status.

Kel TAMAT (N.).		In part near Agellal, where it has contributed to form Kel Agellal. Also at Ben Guten in W. Air. There is also a section in Damergu under the Kel Ulli grouping.
Kel TUBUZZAT (N.).		W. Air. In some respects almost independent.
Kel AGELLAL (N.).		Agellal village. The local tribe of this name is composed of Kel Tamat, or Kel Tubuzzat and of certain People of the King (see Div. I. Group 5).
(Kel Wadigi)		Formed of certain composite Kel Agellal and other People of the King (see Div. I. Group 5).
IBANDERAN (? S.)		Sakafat in W. Air, and also in S.W. Air.
Kel LAZARET. (Kel Azaret)		As above.
IGERZAWEN.		Do.
ALBURDATAN (S.).		At Auderas.
IFAGARWAL (? S.). (Afaguruel)		At Issakanan in S.W. Air.
ADAMBER.		At T'in Wafara, which is unidentified.
AZENATA.		No information.

Kel TAKRIZAT (N.).		At Takrizat in N. Air. Having unspecified servile tribes, including perhaps some of the above.
Kel TAGEI (N.).		Distinct from Kel Tagei (S.) in Group 1. Possibly, but not necessarily, connected with Itesan Kel Tagei (cf. Div. II. Group 1), W. Air.
Kel GHARUS.		
Kel GHARUS (N.).		Gharus valley, Lower Ighazar. Very nomadic and perhaps the largest tribe in Air.
AHAGGAREN (S.).		Talak plain. Serfs of Kel Gharus but, having had a noble origin in the north in Ahaggar, are considered quasi-noble in status.
Kel TATTUS.		Unidentified.
Kel ULLI.		Meaning the “People of the Goats.” Collective name for all the Ikazkazan in S. Air and Damergu.
Kel ULLI.		Tegama and Damergu.
IMUZURAK (S.).		Probably a part of older Imuzurak (N.) in Div. IV.

	(ISHERIFAN (N.)).	Holy Men. Gamram area (cf. Div. II. Group 2 and Division IV.).
	IFADALEN (N.).	Damergu.
	Kel TAMAT (N.).	Do. (Cf. above.)
		The Kel Ulli group, though nominally Ikazkazan and probably including other tribes than those given above, seem to have absorbed a number of early Tuareg in Damergu. Their presence in this group has led to the suspicion that the latter, instead of being absorbed by an extraneous group of Tuareg, namely, the Kel Owi, really represent the true Ikazkazan stock, which was not in truth a Kel Owi family or clan at all, but a mass of people who joined forces with the latter at an early period of their sojourn in Air.
5.		

Independent tribes.			Among the Kel Owi there are a number of independent tribes of servile status. Their existence is not paralleled in the other divisions. They owe allegiance, not to any particular noble tribe, but directly to the Añastafidet. They are consequently more emancipated than most Imghad, a phenomenon which confirms the greater cultural development of the Kel Owi.
	Kel NUGGURU (S.).		Divided into two parts. That of the north called the Toshit (part) N'Yussuf in the Assada valley is actually under Ahodu of Auderas. The southern part between Bagezan and Taruaji Mts. is under Khodi, who claims to be headman of Auderas.
	Kel Idakka.		A part of, or synonymous with, one of above.
	Kel Taferaut.		Do.
	Kel BAGEZAN (S.).		In Bagezan under Mineru or El Minir. A recent composite tribe, not to be
	Kel Bazezan.		

	Ittegen.	
	Kel TOWAR.	A sedentary group, principally of serfs, at Towar, S. Bagezan.
	Kel T'IMIA (N.).	Nobles of various, but all Kel Owi, tribal origins living at T'imia village under Fugda.
	Kel TARANET.	Unidentified.
	Kel TAFASAS.	Unidentified, unless the inhabitants of the villages along the Afasas valley, E. of Bagezan.

DIVISION IV. THE TUAREG OF DAMERGU

A. People of the King.

B. People of the Añastafidet.

Tribe and sub-tribe.	Notes.
A. People of the King.	The oldest tribes in Damergu, as might be expected, are all of the People of the King. They do not belong to any of the Air tribes of this category; like most of the latter, they probably represent the oldest stock of Tuareg in these regions.

	It has not been possible to identify the names of the stock or stocks to which the tribes belonged, so no larger grouping has been attempted.
IFOGHAS (N.).	The Ifoghas certainly represent a stock as well as a tribe, but it has not been ascertained whether among the Damergu Ifoghas several tribal divisions are recognised, nor whether the under-mentioned tribes were originally of the Ifoghas group. Though very poor and fallen on evil days, they are considered Holy Men, and would be more readily recognised as noble were their state of destitution less severe. They are the Ifuraces of the classics and have related groups in other parts of the Sahara.
Kel TAMIZGIDDA (N.). (Misgiddan) (? Mosgu)	Meaning the People of the Mosque, Holy Men. Farak area. (See further note below.)
ISHERIFAN (N.).	In Damergu since the earliest time. The name is equivalent to “Ashraf,” or Descendants of the Prophet. Gamram area. (See further note below.)
“MALLAMEI.”	A name given by Jean. It appears to be a Hausa equivalent of one of the above names, indicating that the tribe is holy.

	The last three names (probably only two names are really involved) are not really proper names. They are descriptive names connected with the attribution of sanctity to the men of these clans. In view of the well-known application of such a description to the Ifoghas wherever this tribe appears, it is quite justifiable to suppose that these clans, which incidentally are known to have inhabited Damergu from remote times, are really tribes of the Ifoghas stock.
IZAGARAN. (Izagharan) (? N).	In Damergu from earliest times.
IZARZARAN (? N.).	Name recorded by Jean.
IGDALEN (N.).	A stock known to have entered these parts with the very first Tuareg to arrive. Subdivisions of this stock are not known unless some of the other Damergu tribes and Air clans previously mentioned must so be classed.
	S. of Agades, W. Tegama and N. Damergu. Holy Men. Very fair. Said not to carry arms.
(Kel Tadek). Kel UMUZUT (N.).	A semi-independent tribe of the Kel Tadek stock (see Div. I. No. 2). N. Damergu.
IFADEYEN (N.).	Now live in Azawagh and Damergu (see Div. I. No. 6).
B. People of the Añastafidet.	

IKAZKAZAN.	Kel ULLI.	Including various unspecified sub-tribes (N.) and (S.).
	IFADALEN (S.).	Wrongly placed by Jean as an independent tribe in Damergu. They are Holy Men and probably were of the same stock as tribes in category A (above), but at one time were subjected by the Ikazkazan. The Isherifan are wrongly given by Jean as a People of the Añastafidet, probably on the grounds that they were at one time conquered by Belkho, chief of the Igermaden (see Div. III. No. 2). The Ikazkazan and Immikitan of Elakkos are specifically referred to at length in the text of the book.

DIVISION V

Various unlocated and unidentified tribes; generic tribal names; more important village groups of mixed origins owing to breakdown of tribal organisation under sedentary conditions.

Kel AGELLAL.	See Div. I. Group 5 and Div. III. Group 4. Originally an Imaqoaran area, but these, with Ikazkazan of various tribes and people from Ighazar, formed the present Kel Agellal. Principally noble, but also some Imghad. Agellal village.

Kel ZILALET.	See Div. I. Group 5. Zilalet village.
Kel SIDAWET.	Do. Sidawet village.
Kel AUDERAS.	Principally Kel Aggata (*q.v.* Div. I. Groups 2 and 4) and Kel NUGGURU (*q.v.* Div. III. Group 5). All Imghad except three or four families of Kel Aggata and Ahodu's own dependents from Kel Tadek who came when he was given the chieftainship of the village by the French at the time of the Foureau-Lamy expedition. Auderas village.
Kel T'IMIA.	All noble Kel Owi, but derived from many different tribes. Present inhabitants occupied village after the Kel T'imia of the Kel Geres went out. T'imia valley. See Div. III. Group 5.
Kel TOWAR.	Mixed Imghad of Kel Owi with one or two nobles from Kel Bagezan and Imasrodang. Towar village.

Kel AGADES.	Not a strict term: only used in a geographical sense. The real inhabitants of Agades are called Emagadezi (*vide* Chap. III). Songhai colony left in the sixteenth century, and people from all other tribes make up population, which is principally Imghad. Since 1917, when they lost their camels, many of the Tuareg from N. Air settled in Agades, or in the neighbourhood.
Kel IN GALL.	Population composed of Songhai, Igdalen and some Aulimmiden in addition to Kel Ferwan and Ikazkazan. There are probably some Ifoghas both here and also at the three Tagiddas. In Gall area.
IKARADAN.	The Temajegh name for the Tebu, of which there are probably several groups in Air captured on raids; notably one group, a part of the Kel Aggata.
IZERAN.	Given by Barth as a tribal name, but as the word (in the correct form, Izghan) means “Kanuri” in Temajegh, the same considerations apply as in the case of the Ikaradan. Many Kanuri groups are known to have been captured on raids.

Kel IGHAZAR.	A generic term for all the tribes living in the Ighazar. They are principally Imasrodang Kel Owi.
Kel AGHIL.	Given by Barth as Kel Aril. A generic term meaning the "People of the South," and applied especially to the Kel Geres.
Kel ATARAM.	Meaning the "People of the West," applied especially to the Tuareg and Moors of Timbuctoo, and the Aulimmiden and Tuareg of the Mountain, in the Western Desert.
Kel INNEK.	Given by Barth as a tribal name. But it means the "People of the East," and is similar to the above names.

Kel T’ISEMT.	(Kel Tecoum) Meaning the “People of the Salt.” According to Jean it is applied to a tribe in the Telwa valley, but appears to be in the nature of a nickname given to people who made the collecting of Agha a trade. It is given to the southern Kel Nugguru generally (*q.v.* Div. III. Group 5) and to the people of the Tagiddas and the Ifoghas of Damergu. The People of the Tagiddas in any case are probably of the Ifoghas, so that Kel T’isemt may have been the name of a large division of the latter on the analogy of the “Kel Ulli” division of the Ikazkazan.
IDEMKIUN.	Seems to be the tribal name of which Tademekka is the feminine form. According to Cortier (Appendix to *D’une Rive à l’Autre du Sahara*) this tribe survives in Air, but I have been unable to trace the name. They are probably a part of the Tuareg who settled in Air and further west during the very first migrations which took place.
Kel TALAK.	A generic name for all the tribes which roam about the Talak plain.

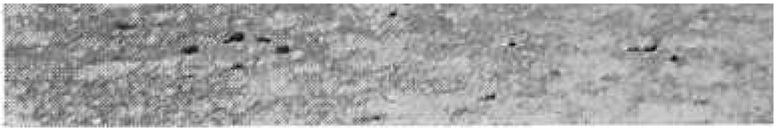
APPENDIX III

ELAKKOS AND TERMIT[439]

NORTH of Gure the hills terminate suddenly in a cliff, and the area called Elakkos begins to the north of them. It has an individuality of its very own. A maze of small, closed depressions, that become ponds and lakes after the rainy season, break up the plain into sharp unsystematic undulations, which appear originally to have been sand dunes. They have now become fixed with grass and scanty scrub, but in most cases retain their characteristic shape. Here and there, rising several hundred feet above the plain, are a number of flat-topped hills of red sandstone. They stand alone like islands off a rock-bound coast. The edges of the hills are sheer cliffs, but the lower parts are covered with fallen detritus, which has formed steep slopes above the plain, and the wind has washed the sand up against their sides.

The plain of Elakkos is like a sea floor from which the water has only recently run off. An irregular sand-strewn bottom has been left, churned up by immense waves that, in a succession of cyclonic storms, washed the sand up against the sides of the islands before retreating. When the blinding glare of midday has passed, deep blue shadows in the hills appear, and the country looks very beautiful. The great table-topped hills are blood-red and blue, in an expanse of yellow sea. Little villages are dotted about in the plain with a few trees and some deep green vegetation in the hollows.

[ADDITIONAL PLATE]



Lying between the desert and the Sudan, Elakkos has suffered greatly. It has been a field of battle where the Tuareg of Air, the Tebu from the north-east and the people of Bornu have met one another in order to do battle. Until the advent of the French it was considered the legitimate playground for the only international sport known in the desert, the gentle occupation of raid and counter-raid. The flat-topped hills, with scarcely a path worthy of the name to ascend the cliffs, were the citadels of the villages which nestle under their slopes. The huts in the villages are built of straw with conical roofs: neither mud buildings nor walled settlements exist. The inhabitants are Kanuri, sedentary Tuareg, and both nomadic and settled Tebu.

While the Tuareg and Tebu live side by side with the Kanuri, the first two are such uncompromising enemies that they never adventure themselves into each other’s territory. The dividing line between them in Elakkos is sharp and clearly defined; it runs just west of the village group of Bultum, which is the last permanent settlement on the caravan road from Damagarim to Kawar by the wells of Termit, where twice a year pass caravans to fetch salt in the east. They leave at the same seasons when the people of Air, whom they join at Fashi, also cross the desert.

The Tuareg of Elakkos to-day are sedentary, but their tribal names, Ikazkazan and Immikitan, belong to noble Air clans of confirmed nomadic habits. As in Damergu, they are the ruling class. Barth,[440] basing himself on hearsay information sixty years earlier than Jean, stated that they were akin to the Tegama people.[441] The Ikazkazan of Garazu in Elakkos, however, according to tradition, are late arrivals, certainly later than the Immikitan, who live rather further east. The latter seem to have come when the first Tuareg arrived from the east and installed themselves in Air. It is not clear which of the two tribal groups Barth proposed to classify as akin to the Tegama, but presumably he meant the Immikitan.

The Ikazkazan of Garazu are grouped by Jean[442] as a sub-tribe of the Kel Tafidet, probably the, if not actually the, principal tribe of the Kel Owi Confederation. While I had no opportunity during my only too short sojourn in Elakkos, in the course of a rapid march to Termit, to collect information on the ethnology of the Tuareg in this area, my experience in Air leads me to doubt the accuracy of Jean’s attribution. It is very improbable that a section of so important a tribe as the Ikazkazan could in any circumstances have come under the control of another tribe within the same Kel Owi Confederation, like the Kel Tafidet, least of all when it had moved so far afield as Elakkos.

Both from Barth’s description of the “Principality of Elakkos,” that “sequestered haunt of robbers and freebooters,” as well as from other indications, there seem to have been more People of the Veil in this area in former days than now. The decrease may be accounted for by a general movement westwards, as a consequence of the encroachments of the Kanuri from Bornu, who were themselves constantly being driven onwards by pressure from the east, by the advent in the Chad area of the Arab tribes from the north, and by raids of the Tebu from Tibesti.[443]

Barth records that Elakkos was celebrated among the hungry people of the desert on account of its grain. The same reputation and source of wealth continue to the present time. More millet is grown in a limited area on the sandy plains of this country than in almost any other part of the belt which marks the transition between the Desert and the Sown. But Elakkos is especially celebrated among the Tuareg all over North Africa for the shields which are used by the People of the Veil and are made in this country. The hide of the white oryx, which with much other game lives in the bush along the border of the desert, is used for their manufacture. Their reputation in Temajegh speech and poetry points to the country of Elakkos having long been essentially Tuareg, for the traditional shape and technique are not found among the neighbouring peoples.

The strong circumstantial evidence regarding the essentially Tuareg character of the country, is further borne out by a reference in Leo to the Lemta Tuareg. This people, we are told, extended over all that part of North Africa which lay immediately east of the Targa people, from the Fezzan as far as Kawkaw. The latter, for reasons which have been discussed, was not Gao or Gago on the Niger, but Kuka on Lake Chad.[444] But there is more than this, Elakkos is alternatively spelt Alakkos, Alakwas, and Ilagwas, which cannot be denied to bear a marked resemblance to the name of the Ilasgwas people of Corippus, who in Byzantine times were fighting in the Fezzan, or in other words in an area, according to Leo, occupied by the Lemta Tuareg. One would in any case have been inclined to accept the tradition that the early Tuareg in Elakkos were formerly more numerous than now, but in the light of this additional evidence I am satisfied that they are identical with the very Ilasgwas who came from the north, and therefore of the same stock as the Tuareg in the Fezzan. It follows that they were of the old Aulimmiden-Lemta stock and that they were a part of the latter group which entered the Chad area from the north and then moved westwards. I further believe that the Ilasgwas gave their name to Elakkos, where some of them stayed while the rest of the Lemta tribes went on, some of them into Air and some of them further west. The origin both of the Immikitan in Elakkos and in Air is due to this movement.

Elakkos is well supplied with water at all times of the year. Tropical summer rains fall in abundance, leaving pools in the depressions, to which most of the inhabitants of the villages migrate for the few weeks which elapse between sowing and reaping the millet, during and directly after the annual break of the weather. As the pools dry up, leaving a luxuriant Sudanese vegetation around the edges, recourse again becomes necessary to the numerous village wells. They are all of considerable depth, and surrounded by large spoil heaps, but the output is not very copious, or rather not sufficiently large to supply numerous thirsty camels in hot weather, when each animal may drink ten gallons or more. I travelled through Elakkos in June 1922 with a section of French Camel Corps, and we found watering a very tedious operation. The wells we used were 150 to 220 feet deep, and in order that the fastidious animals should drink copiously, the water had to be drawn at noon in a “shade temperature” ranging from 105° to 110° Fahr. in places where invariably there was no real shade to be seen.

After leaving the Bultum group of three Kanuri and Tebu hamlets, the road from Damagarim to Kawar crosses a low scarp and plunges into the belt of thick green bush which merges imperceptibly into small thorn scrub and divides the Southland from the desert. The vegetation in this zone ranges from small thorns to largish trees. It is part of the same belt of bush which surrounds Damergu, with this difference, that the latter immediately south of Air extends considerably further north and forms a salient of vegetation into the desert. The Elakkos bush is luxuriant even in the dry season, and abounds in game. If a few more wells were made available it would soon be thickly inhabited by pastoral tribes, now that immunity from the northern raiding parties has more or less been assured. It is a sanctuary for large herds of various species of gazelle, for the white oryx and addax antelope, as well as for numerous ostriches and some giraffes. There are excellent pastures for cattle, goats and camels, but although some of the Damergu Tuareg use the western part for their flocks and a few Tebu use the eastern side, there are few inhabitants in the country at any time of year. The surface of old fixed dunes is undulating, and in the occasional deep hollows are a few wells like those of Tasr[445] and Teshkar[446] on the Termit road, and Bullum Babá and others to the west. The wells belong to the Tebu, who visit them with their cattle in the summer. Immediately around them the vegetation has been eaten bare and the whitish downs under which they lie show up some distance away. The three wells at Tasr are twenty-seven feet deep; they are the last water before the Termit wells are reached, forty hours’ fast marching further on into the desert. The road, it is true, passes by Teshkar, but the output of the single well there, forty-five feet deep, is insufficient for more than a few animals at a time.

For more than ten hours’ marching N.N.E. of Teshkar, which is in Lat. 15° 07′ 40″ N., Long. 10° 35′ 10″E.,[447] the country gradually gets more barren, but the character of the bush is maintained by small trees and shrubs on a reddish ground. Then suddenly the track descends into a hollow between bare snow-white dunes. A succession of depressions between them is followed, the path crossing the intervening sand-hills diagonally to their general direction. The sand dunes themselves are loose and shifting, but the hollows curiously enough are permanent and contain small groups of vivid green acacias. When we first entered the dunes there was a thick white mist on all the land and the green trees and white sand looked very mysterious and beautiful in the early dawn. This belt of dunes marks the edge of the desert itself. The long, buff-coloured, whale-back dunes of the latter are covered with very scanty salt grass and scrub; they are typical of the Saharan steppe desert. The surface is fairly good; the form of the dunes is fixed, for the sand is heavy. The occasional small tree is a landmark for miles around. At one point we passed a depression with some larger acacias, but otherwise there were no recognisable marks to guide a caravan to Termit and the north-east.

The heat of the June weather obliged us to travel largely by night, and in the course of one march which commenced at 3 a.m. it soon became apparent that the guide had lost his way. He had mistaken a star to the west of the Southern Cross for the one to the east of Polaris, and was marching S.W. instead of N.N.E. We decided to halt until dawn, but not before many precious hours had been wasted and the prospect of reaching Termit on the third day after leaving Teshkar had completely vanished, the normal distance from there to the wells of Termit being twenty-eight hours' fast marching, or about thirty-five by caravan.

Under ordinary conditions the mountains of Termit are visible for some time before they are reached; in point of fact on our way south we saw the Centre Peak at a distance of no less than fourteen hours' marching. Approaching it, however, the intense heat and wind had obscured everything in a dense mist which limited the maximum visibility to under two miles. On this day in camp the thermometer registered 113·9° F. in the shade at 2 p.m. The heat usually appeared to last without appreciable change from 11 a.m. till 3 p.m. Owing to the misadventure of the previous night we were not very sure of our position, and dependent on seeing the mountains to find our next water, which we sorely needed as the supply was rather short. Then suddenly as evening came on the atmosphere cleared and an imposing chain of dark, jagged peaks, with no appreciable foot-hills, appeared suddenly in the east. The range faded out of sight to the north and south beneath the sand of the desert. An isolated group of blue mountains in a sea of yellow sand at evening is one of those unforgettable sights which reward the traveller in the desert. Their beauty is never equalled by any snowy peaks or waterfalls in a more favoured land.

After crossing a narrow belt of shifting sand we camped the next morning in a valley at the foot of the Centre Peak of Termit, near the famous well which is reputed to have been made by Divine agency. The water lies in Lat. 16° 04′ 10″ N., Long.

11° 04′ 50″ E.,[448] forty feet below ground. The bottom of the well has become vaulted owing to the continual collapse of the sides. In the course of a week’s stay another well was dug a few yards from the old one, in spite of the pessimism of the well-diggers, who considered it useless as well as very tiring to emulate the Almighty. But about forty feet down through the packed sand of the valley-bottom water filtering through a bed of loose gravel was duly reached. Some 1½ miles west in a continuation of the valley where it turns towards the north, is another group of several wells. They are almost surrounded by sand dunes, and have latterly in part become silted up. Some of them are likely to be covered entirely in a few years’ time by an encroaching dune. We cleared two of these wells, but they proved very saline in contrast with the excellent water of the main wells; nevertheless they were sufficiently good for camels.

Termit is within the area of the summer rains, which form a pool lasting for about two months to the north of the western group of wells. I marched seven miles north with some Tebu who were based on Termit for their hunting season without reaching anywhere near the end of the range. The vegetation got scantier and the loose sand of the outer desert had been washed higher and higher up the eastern sides of the hills, which here extended in a single chain of no great depth in a north-easterly direction. But I never reached the end of the chain.

The foot-hills around the main peak, where the laterite rock in places is in process of disintegration, carry a certain amount of vegetation, principally of the shrub known as “Abisgi” (*Capparis sodata*), together with several grasses and small acacias. We found many gazelle and antelope were pasturing there. Behind the rugged *contreforts* rises the steep wall of the main range to a height of over 2000 feet at the main peak, which appears to be about 2300 feet above the sea. To the east, behind the principal chain and some 300 feet higher than the valley where the wells are and surrounding desert, is a small plateau which extends for a distance of some four to five miles as far as a secondary and lower Eastern Chain which divides it from the desert beyond. This narrow plateau tapers away to the north, where the two chains join one another. It is well covered with small trees and scrub and contains several small groups of hillocks. The passes on to this plateau from the west run steeply up to its level; they are, in fact, the ravines formed by the water draining off the plain, which, when we looked down on it from the centre peak, appeared to be the playground of several enormous flocks of antelope and gazelle. The mountain sheep of Air was also found and shot here—the furthest south where this animal has yet been reported.

The rocky slopes of the range are incredibly rough. They are entirely covered with loose pebbles, stones and boulders of all sizes. In some places the black laterite rock has assumed the strangest shapes. At one point on the centre peak the entire slope was apparently covered with stone drain-pipes, whole and broken, including perfectly shaped specimens with ½ in. walls, 15 in. long and 5 in. to 2 in. in internal diameter. In addition to these, plates, bowls, cylinders, small balls and tiles of all shapes were to be seen.

Although capable of supporting the flocks of a limited number of people, there are no traces of inhabitants. Termit never seems to have been anything but a *point de passage*. It was for long a favourite haunt of Tebu raiders from the N.E. and E., for the road from the south branches here both to Fashi and to Bilma. There is also a track to the Chad country by Ido well, and one to Agadem on the Kawar-Chad road. There were traditions of a direct caravan road from Air to Lake Chad, which I was anxious to investigate, but the condition of my camels made it impossible. I am glad to say that connection between the Elakkos Camel Patrol and Air was successfully established in the course of the summer of 1922 by the unit I had accompanied to Termit, and thanks to the courtesy of my friend, its Commanding Officer, than whom I have never met a more perfect travelling companion, I was supplied with full details which I reproduce in his own words, translated into English:

“From Talras (an old well near T’igefen) we marched together (two sections of Camel Corps) to the north for about 80 km. There we were lucky enough in the middle of a truly desert area to chance on a patch of trees, perhaps some 700 to 800 in number, where we parted company. I marched east for thirty-seven hours and made the peak overhanging the walls of Termit with great accuracy. Lieut. X. (with the other section of Camel Corps), after marching thirty-six hours approximately north-west and following a valley bed, arrived at Eghalgawen (in South Air). I made him come back by Tanut. . . . When I return I shall have a well dug where we separated, and the Agades-Termit road will be possible for going direct to Chad, as I know there is a well between Termit and the lake.”

In improving the water supply at Termit we had accomplished our work. I was obliged to give up my idea of going straight to Air, and consequently returned with the Camel Corps to Teshkar, marching twenty-seven hours in three comfortable stages of seven, nine and eleven hours. There we parted company. I proceeded due west with four camels to rejoin my own caravan, marching to the wells of Bullum Babá (two wells forty feet deep), and thence through impenetrable bush without landmarks or visibility until I crossed the Diom-Talras track, along which I passed in a north-west direction. I had intended to water at T'igefen just south of Talras, but found the wells there as well as those at Fonfoni had been filled in. Like those of Adermellen and Tamatut, they were destroyed in 1917 during the revolt in Air to prevent raiding towards the south. Water was eventually obtained in shallow wells at Ighelaf, though a violent and drenching thunderstorm at T'igefen, the first one of the season, would have provided drinking water had I been really short; as it was, it merely made my men and myself very wet and cold and miserable during the ensuing night. I reached the first village of Damergu at Guliski on the fifth day from Teshkar.

[439]See also Plates 3 and 4.

[440]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 549-50.

[441]Cf. Chap. II. *supra*.

[442]Jean, *op. cit.*, pp. 102 and 109.

[443]Cf. Chaps. XII. and XIII.

[444]See map, page 331, and Chaps. XI. and XII.

[445]Also pronounced Tars. See map, facing page 36.

[446]Spelt Tashkeur on the French maps.

[447] See Appendix I.

[448] See Appendix I.

APPENDIX IV

IBN BATUTAH’S JOURNEY

Ibn Abdallah Muhammad, better known as Ibn Batutah, seems to have returned to the north by way of Air from a visit to the Sudan which he made after his better known travels in the East. He left Fez in A.D. 1351 for the countries of the Upper Niger by way of Sijilmasa[449] and Tegaza,[450] and returned to Morocco in 1354. His account[451] of Air and the neighbouring parts is brief but very well worth examining, as it raises several interesting historical points.

After visiting all the Western Sudan as far as Kawkaw (Gao or Gago or Gaogao) on the Niger he went to Bardama, where the inhabitants protect caravans and the women are chaste and beautiful, and “next arrived at Nakda, which is handsome and built of red stone.”[452] The variants of this name are spelt نَكْدَا, Nakda; ثُكْذَا, Thukdha; تَكْدَا, Tukda, and by the learned Kosegarten in his version تَكَدَّا, Takadda. The latter, with a somewhat corrupt text, reads: “*Takadda scorpiis abundat. Segetes ibi raræ. Scorpii morsu repentinum infantibus adferunt mortem, cui remedio occurritur nullo: viros tamen raro perimunt. Urbis incolæ sola mercatura versantur. Ægyptum adeunt, indique vestes pretiosas afferunt; de servorum et mancipiorum multudine inter se gloriunt.*” Lee’s translation, after describing the arrival at Tekadda, proceeds: “Its water runs over copper mines, which changes its colour and taste. The inhabitants are neither artisans nor merchants. The copper mine is without Nakda (Tekadda), and in this slaves are employed, who melt the ore and make it into bars. The merchants then take it to the infidel and other parts of the Sudan. The Sultan of Nakda is a Berber. I met him and was treated as his guest, and was also provided by him with the necessaries for my journey. I was often visited by the Commander of the Faithful in Nakda, who ordered me to wait on him, which I did, and then prepared for my journey. I then left this place in the month of Sha'aban in the year 54 (A.D. 1353), and travelled till I came to the territories of Hakar (هكَار), the inhabitants of which are a tribe of the Berbers, but a worthless people. I next came to Sijilmasa and thence to Fez." Kosegarten's version, however, differs somewhat, reading, ". . . and left Tekadda with a band of travellers making for Tuat. It is seventy stages from there, for which travellers take their provisions with them, as nothing is to be found on the road. We reached Kahor, which is the country of the Sultan of Kerker, with much pasture. Leaving there we journeyed for three days through a desert without inhabitants and lacking water; thence for fifteen days we journeyed through desert not lacking water but without inhabitants. Then we came to a place of two roads where the road that goes to Egypt leaves the road which leads to Tuat. Here is a well whose water flows over iron: if anyone washes clothes with these waters they become black. Thence after completing ten days we came to Dehkar[453] (دَهْكَار). Through these lands, where grasses are scarce, we made our way, reaching Buda, which is the largest of the towns of Tuat."

Such are the accounts given by the first intelligent traveller in Air, and they are all too brief. The two versions are not contradictory, but in a sense supplementary to one another, and are probably excerpts made by different persons from a longer original work. The discrepancy between “Tekadda” and “Nakda,” and between “Hakar” and “Dehkar” are not difficult to account for in Arabic script. The first in each case seems to be correct. Ibn Batutah says the people of Hakar wore the veil; and “Hakar” is of course Haggar or Ahaggar, the mountains by which it is necessary to pass on the way from Air to Tuat; the Tuareg in Arab eyes are all worthless, as their name implies.

“Kahor” is a variant for “Kahir,” used indiscriminately by Arab writers with “Ahir” for Air. Barth’s[454] explanation of the insertion of an “h” in “Ahir” (اهير), is interesting but unnecessary if, as is clear, it is derived from “Kahir” (كاهير). These variants seem all to be merely Arabic attempts to spell “Air,” which the Tuaregs write in their own script ⵔⵢⴰ (R Y A).

Tekadda has been assumed by Barth[455] and others to be one, or a group, of three localities, Tagidda n’Adrar, Tagidda n’Tagei, Tagidda n’T’isemt,[456] lying some 40, 50 and 100 miles respectively W. or W.N.W. of Agades.[457] But there are good reasons for not accepting this identification. In the first place, though salt deposits are worked at Tagidda n’T’isemt, there are no signs of copper mines at this point, or indeed anywhere in Air. In the second place, it is very unlikely that the ruler of a locality so close as any of the Tagiddas to the important communities in Air, in any one of which the Sultan of that country might have had his throne,[458] should have equalled the latter in importance; but Ibn Batutah’s Sultan of Tekadda seems to have been at least as important a personage as the Sultan of Air, whom he calls the Sultan of Kerker, Ruler of Kahor.

The problem presented by “Kerker” is not easy, but the existence of a district still called Gerigeri, some fifty miles east of the Air mountains, and about forty miles north of Tagidda n’T’isemt, inclines one to regard this Sultan, who was also ruler of Kahor, as one of the Aulimmiden chiefs who are known at various times to have dominated the mountains. If this view is correct the Sultan of Tekadda must certainly have had his being some way further south than the Tagiddas, since two rulers of such an importance as Ibn Batutah makes them out to be would certainly not have lived only forty miles apart.

Lastly, the traveller speaks of seventy stages between Tekadda and Tuat, which is in fact only forty-five stages from Agades,[459] and therefore the same or perhaps rather less from the Tagiddas, which are in the latitude or even somewhat north of the city. Now forty-five marching stages are equivalent to some sixty caravan days, including halts, while seventy stages correspond to about one hundred days’ journeying. As it is clear that he did not delay on the road, the disproportion between the normal time taken to travel from the Tagiddas to Tuat and the time he did take from Tekadda to Tuat makes it impossible not to look for Ibn Batutah’s point of departure at some considerable distance south of Agades.

An examination of the times assigned to the various stages of the journey makes it apparent that in the first part he actually marched rather faster than an ordinary commercial caravan. Considering the actual times he employed, we find that he took one month crossing Ahaggar to Tuat; the usual time for this section on the Agades In Salah road is twenty marching days, and Ibn Batutah probably took about that time, making thirty days with halts. We next find that it took ten days from Hakar (Ahaggar) to the place where the roads to Egypt and Tuat divided. This point is at the wells of In Azawa or Asiu, which are close together on the northern boundary of Air; the distance between them and Ahaggar is in fact ten days' marching. It is reasonable to assume that Ibn Batutah's point where the roads divide is, in fact, In Azawa or Asiu, and has therefore remained unchanged for over four centuries. South of these wells he had spent fifteen days in a country which was barren but had numerous watering-points—a good description of Air by a traveller who was used to the fertile and populous Sudan; the period of fifteen days corresponds accurately with the number of stages between In Azawa and Agades by any of the routes through Air.[460] As Agades was probably not founded at this date, Ibn Batutah in coming from the Niger would have no reason to travel as far as the site of the city and probably therefore kept west of the Central massifs and counted this stage from some point west of Agades like In Gall, though the exact locality is immaterial. South of this stage he crossed a desert where there is no water for three days: this is clearly the sterile tract separating Air from the Southland. The total of these times is fifty-eight days, even counting thirty days in Ahaggar instead of twenty; this, at a generous estimate, may be called sixty, from the northern edge of the Southland across Air and Ahaggar to Tuat, and this reckoning coincides with the usual forty-five caravan marching stages to which previous reference has been made. There are, therefore, still at least ten days to be accounted for, and they are referred to in the passage in which he simply states that he left Tekadda and marched for an indefinite time, making no mention of the number of days employed till he reached the domains of the Sultan of Kerker. I would be inclined to look for Tekadda not at any of the Tagiddas, which are rather north of the River of Agades and consequently north of the three days' desert travelling, but at some point in the direction of Gao, thirteen days' journey from the southernmost part of Air, or ten days from the northern fringe of the Southland below the desert belt. I have unfortunately no knowledge of the country west of Damergu to suggest an identification, but am convinced that no place in or just west of Air is intended by the description of Tekadda.

---

[449] Sijilmasa (Sigilmasiyah) was the capital of the Tafilelt area in Morocco south of the Atlas. Its ruins in the Wadi Ifli are now called Medinet el 'Amira.

[450] The salt mines of Tegaza were referred to in Chap. XII. They were abandoned in A.D. 1586, and those of Taodenit, where caravans still go from Timbuctoo to fetch salt for the Upper Niger, were opened instead. Vide Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. V. p. 612, and Map No. 14 (Western Sheet) in Vol. V.

[451] *Ibn Batutah*: by Lee in the Oriental Translations Fund, 1829, pp. 241-2, etc.

[452] *Scilicet*, red mud.

[453] Probably another version of Hakar (هَكَار).

[454] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 336.

[455] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. p. 335.

[456] Tagidda (Cortier, Map of Air—Teguidda) means a small hollow or basin where

water collects (De Foucauld, I. 276). The names of the three places therefore mean “Basin of the Mountain,” “Basin of the Dûm palm,” and “Basin of Salt.” Tagidda = basin, is not to be confused with Tiggedi = cliff (as the Cliff S. of Agades), from the root *egged*, “to jump.” De Foucauld, *op. cit.*, I. 273, and Motylinski, *Dictionnaire*, etc., 1908.

[457] Not three days south-west, as Barth says.

[458] Agades was probably not founded in Ibn Batutah’s day, or he would certainly have referred to it; there were, however, other large settlements in Air already in existence at this time, such as Assode (see Chap. XVII).

[459] Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I., App., and others; also my information.

[460] Cf. Chap. III.

APPENDIX V

ON THE ROOT “MZGh” IN VARIOUS LIBYAN NAMES

MANY authors have assumed that the word “Imajegh” was a generic or even a national name applicable to the whole of the Tuareg race, and perhaps even to most of the Libyans in North Africa. The “MZGh” root of this word, which properly denotes the noble caste of the Tuareg, does indeed appear in the classical names of many tribes or groups of people in North Africa. Among these may be cited the Meshwesh of early Egyptian records and the Macae of Greek historians, the latter being apparently a racial and not a tribal name. The root reappears in several such forms as Mazices, Maxitani, Mazaces, etc., all belonging to a people found principally in the Great Syrtis, in Southern Cyrenaica, and in Tripolitania, both on the coast and in the interior:[461] a more isolated group with radically the same name, the Maxyes, is placed by Herodotus as far west as Tunisia.[462]

In the Air dialect of the Temajegh language the name for the nobles of the Tuareg takes the form of “Imajeghan” with the singular “Imajegh.” In other dialects the word displays some variations including the forms Amazigh, Imazir, Imohagh, Imohaq, Imoshag, etc., according to the local pronunciation. The word is derived according to an informant of Duveyrier[463] from the verb “ahegh,” meaning “to raid” or, by extension of the meaning, “to be free,” or “independent.” De Foucauld, however, gives the form of the word as “Amahar,” a proper name having as its root ⁝⁞ (Gh H), like “Ahegh,” but not necessarily derived from the latter.[464]

As has already been noted, the name does not cover the totality of the race, for it does not include the servile clans, which, whatever their origin, are considered even by the nobles to belong, like themselves, to the Tuareg people. The word “Imajegh” is a caste and not a racial appellation.

I am doubtful if Sergi is justified in using a statement made by Père de Foucauld in 1888,[465] to the effect that the “Berbers” of North Africa generally, and those of the north-west in particular, who are known to the Arabs under various names, used the MZGh root as a name for themselves in such a manner as to indicate that it was a national appellation or the name of a racial stock of wide extension. It would be interesting to know how far de Foucauld, after a long period of residence as a hermit among the Tuareg of Ahaggar, modified the views he expressed in 1888. Subject to correction by any authority having had access to his notes, I take it he would rather have meant that the MZGh root was used in a quasi-national sense in a number of Berber dialects or by a number of Berber-speaking people when talking of themselves, but not in referring generally to the population of North Africa.

Stuhlmann[466] went so far as to talk of "Die Mazigh Völker," and stated that all the "Berbers" from Tripoli to Western Morocco call themselves Mazigh: this, however, is not the case. As Lenz, supporting the theory of a dual origin for the Libyans, points out, the "Berbers"[467] even of Morocco are divided into two families, to which he gives the names of Amazigh and Shellakh.[468]

Hanoteau, on the other hand, seeking at least a unity of language, says[469] that "plusieurs de ces peuples . . . ont oublié leur nom national. Mais partout où les populations berbères ont été à l'abri du contact et de l'influence arabe, elles ont conservé des noms appartenant à leur idiome," and he goes on to mention the various dialectical forms of the MZGh root which he has found in different localities. He concludes, "toutes ces dénominations ne sont en realité que des variantes de prononciation d'un même nom." This certainly is so, but that he is justified in assuming it to be a national name is more doubtful. He next tries to establish that the signification which "some people" have given to the word Imajegh and its derivatives is not substantiated, and that when a Tuareg wishes to refer to a noble or to a free man he calls them "ilelli" or "amunan" and not "imajeghan." This, however, is not correct. The first two words may indeed signify an abstract quality, but when the nobles are mentioned, "Imajegh" is invariably used. Hanoteau's statement is misleading. In addition to the use of the term "imajeghan" to denote the Tuareg nobles, with no reference to their characters or qualities, the Tuareg say "imajegh" to qualify any individual, as "imajegh" to denote someone of a certain class either in their own or in another race. They speak of the "Imajeghan n'Arab," meaning the upper class Arabs as opposed to the slaves and under-dogs of the Arab countries. They describe the British, I am glad to say, as Imajeghan, or the White Nobles, even in every-day conversation among themselves. It is always a class distinction, and not a compliment, an epithet of virtue or a national name. The dictionaries and grammars of Motylinski, de Foucauld,[470] Masquerey and even of Hanoteau himself on the Tuareg language bear out this point.

One of the principal reasons for using the foreign word "Tuareg" to describe this people is that they do not possess a national name. Barth,[471] who is a meticulous observer, makes this very clear: "as Amóshagh (in the plural form I'móshagh)[472] designates rather in the present state of Tawárek society the free and noble man in opposition to A'mghi (plural, Imghad), the whole of these free and degraded tribes together are better designated by the general term 'the Red People,' 'I'dinet n'sheggarnén,' for which there is still another form, viz. 'Tishorén.'" I myself did not hear these two terms used in Air, so prefer to adopt the circumlocution Kel Tagilmus, or People of the Veil, which is used and understood by all Tuareg.

Many of the Imghad, or servile people, are themselves of noble origin, but have become the serfs of other noble clans by conquest. It is clear that the former could not use as a national name what is primarily a caste name to which they had lost their right.

The confusion which has arisen around the word “imajegh” and hasty generalisations such as those of Stuhlmann are nevertheless easy to understand, for a superficial observer talking to nobles of the Tuareg race would so readily be impressed by the recurrence and common use of the term as to assume that it really had some national sense. But Sergi[473] in this connection is misleading in citing the authority of Barth when he writes, with a footnote referring to the great explorer and implying that he is quoting him almost textually, “il nome di questi Berberi è quello di Tuareg, plurale di Tarki o Targi. Ma, osserva lo stesso Barth, questo non è il loro nome nazionale. . . . Il vero nome che essi si danno è quel medesimo che già si dava ad alcune tribù del settentrionale d’Africa, conosciuto dai Greci e dai Romani, cioè di Mazi o Macii, Maxitani è dato loro anche dagli scrittori Arabi. Oggi si adopera la forma di Amosciarg al singolare. . . . Questo sembra essere applicato a tutte le frazioni della tribù mentre quel di Tuareg probabilmente deriva dagli Arabi.” Barth, we have seen, does not do so, and Sergi is making the same error as Stuhlmann. It is true that at one point, in discussing the use of the name “Tuareg,” Barth[474] goes so far as to say, “This (the MZGh root) is the native name by which the so-called Tawarek designate their whole nation, which is divided into several families,” but from the context and from the passage generally, as well as from the other passages already quoted, it is manifest that he was referring only to the noble part of the race and not to the Imghad as well, who, he had not then realised, as he later understood, are a part of the nation.[475] The context of the passage just quoted from Barth is one in which he is showing that the Tuareg are not a tribe, but a nation, as has already been pointed out: He corrects his predecessors, saying:[476] "This name (Terga, Targa, Tarki, etc.), which has been given to the Berber inhabitants of the desert, and which Hodgson *erroneously supposed to mean 'Tribe,'* is quite foreign to them. . . ." Richardson,[477] in a previous trip to the Central Sahara before travelling to Air and the Sudan with Barth, had already made the same point clear. It is therefore with no shadow of justification that Sergi[478] states: "Barth non fa distinzione alcuna delle popolazioni dando il nome etnico di Tuareg o Imosciarg, e le considera tutte come una grande tribù." He does nothing of the sort.

Bates[479] goes into the question of the MZGh names very fully. He thinks that it is evidence "of an ethnic substratum of 'autochthones' of a single race." He notes the obviously close connection between the MZGh root used by the Tuareg nobles and the names in the Atlas mountains on the one hand, and the root of the Mazices, Mazaces, Macae, etc., names whose affinity with the Meshwesh of the invasions of Egypt is also obvious on the other hand. He draws the inference that a racial rather than a tribal name is involved.[480]

Nevertheless, some explanation must be sought for the appearance of the root both in a Tuareg caste name in the names of certain Atlas tribes and in classical geographical lists of North African people. Much as one might be tempted, however, to believe with Barth in the existence of a substratum of a single race, there is no real justification for assuming that all the people using the root in one form or another were even closely related. Its adoption may well have become widespread among various peoples by the use of a common language. If in its primary sense it had implied nobility or freedom or some such attribute, it is more than likely that the innate snobbishness of one race in contact with, or at one time subjected to, another race using the root in this sense, would rapidly lead them to adopt it and misuse it as their own national appellation. I am not inclined to consider the use of this root as evidence for anything but community of language. With the mixed origins which we know the Libyans possessed, any other conclusion would be dangerous. It must be remembered that there is plenty of evidence to show that in spite of the diversity of races involved, they had by the time of the Arab conquest all come to speak a common language or a series of dialects linguistically of the same origin. It is only at an early period, when the use of a single language in North Africa was probably not widespread, that the common root in the "Meshwesh" and "Macae" names can be assumed as an indication of the affinity or identification of these peoples with the later Tuareg. And at that time the names are found in the centre of North Africa only and not in the west or even in Algeria. The same considerations apply to the "Temahu"[481] of Egyptian records. The feminine form of Imajegh or Amoshagh, etc., is, of course, Temajegh or Tamahek, etc., which is the name given to the language which the Tuareg speak, though were it not for the physical likeness of the Temahu in Egyptian paintings to the Tuareg the similarity of the names alone would probably be insufficient to draw a conclusion to which, however, nearly all evidence also points.

[461]Bates, *op. cit.*, Maps III to X.

[462]Herodotus, IV. 191.

[463]Duveyrier, *op. cit.*, p. 318.

[464]De Foucauld: *Dict. Touareg-Fraçais*, Alger, Vol. I. p. 451.

[465]De Foucauld: *Reconnaissance du Maroc*, Paris, 1888, p. 10 *seq.*

[466]F. Stuhlmann: *Die Mazighvölker*, Kolonial Institut, Band 27.

[467]*I.e.* Libyans.

[468]Lenz: *Timbuktu: Reise durch Marokko*, etc., Leipzig, 1884.

[469]Hanoteau: *Grammaire Kabyle*, p. ix.

[470]De Foucauld: *Dict.*, Vol. I. p. 452, *sub* "Amajer."

[471]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. V. App. III.

[472]Or in Air "Imajeghan."

[473]Sergi: *Africa*, etc., pp. 342-3.

[474]Barth, *op. cit.*, Vol. I. pp. 222-6.

[475]Where Barth is in apparent contradiction in Volume I with other statements, and especially in Volume V, on this question of the MZGh root as a national name, the explanation, I think, is that he did not apparently consider the Northern Imghad, of whom he was speaking in the first volume, as pertaining to the Tuareg nation. Later on, when this became clear, he corrected himself.

[476]*Loc. cit.*

[477]Richardson: *Travels in the Great Desert of Sahara*, Vol. II. p. 140.

[478]*Loc. cit.*

[479]Bates, *op. cit.*, p. 42 *seq.*

[480] *Ibid.*, p. 71.

[481] And therefore of the Tehenu.

APPENDIX VI

THE KINGS OF THE TUAREG OF AIR

THE following list of the kings of Agades was collected by Mr. H. R. Palmer, now Lieutenant-Governor of Northern Nigeria, in a record which has been referred to in the body of this work as the Agades Chronicle. The information was supplied by a learned Hausa scribe and is derived from Tuareg sources, probably in part MSS. The record ranks as "good oral testimony." It was published in an English translation prepared by Mr. Palmer and printed in the *Journal of the African Society*, Vol. IX. No. XXXVI., July 1910. I am indebted to Mr. H. R. Palmer and to Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Ltd., the publishers of the *Journal*, for permission to reproduce the information *in extenso*.

In the following pages little more is given than the bare list of kings with the dates, but much of the other information contained in the Chronicle has been incorporated in the text of the third, eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth chapters of this book. The spelling of some of the proper names in the list and in the text has been slightly modified to accord with the system of transliteration adopted.

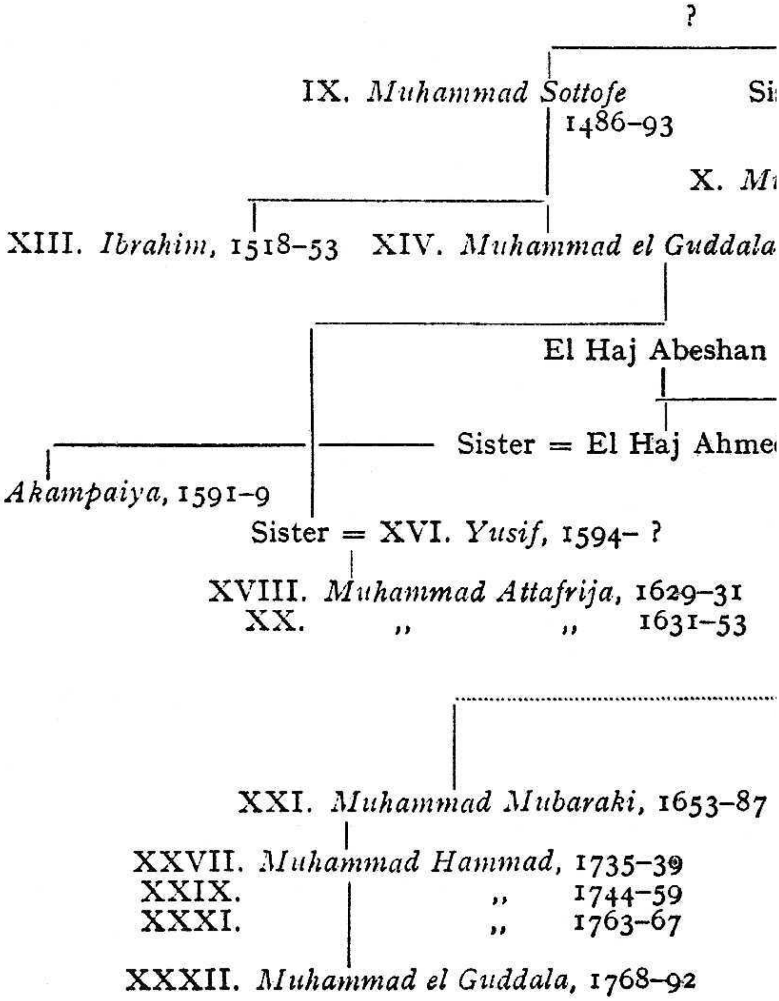
The genealogical table following the list of kings has been compiled from the information contained in the Chronicle.

	Date.	Name.	Period of reign.	Remarks.

	A.D.	A.H.			
I	1406	809	Yunis, son of Tahanazeta	20 yrs.	
II	1425	829	Akasani	6 „	Son of the sister of Yunis.
III	1429	833	El Haj Aliso	20 „	He was killed by his people.
IV	1449	853	Amati	?4 „	Brother of the above: he also was killed and the dynasty ended.
V	?	?	Ibn Takoha	4 yrs. 2 mths.	A new dynasty.
VI	1453	857	Ibrahim ben Hailas	9 yrs.	
VII			Yusif ben Gashta	16 „	Brother of the above.
VIII	1477	882	Muhammad the Great	10 „	
IX	1486	892	Muhammad Sottofe		Date confirmed approximately from Nigerian records. He was a contemporary of M. Rimfa of Kano, 1463-99, and Ibrahim of Katsina, 1493-6.
X	1493	899	Muhammad ben Abdurahman el Mekkaniyi	9 „	Son of sister of above: he was killed.
XI	1502	908	The twins Adil and Muhammad Hammat		Known as the children of Fatimallat. They reigned together. Their date is confirmed by the advent of Askia to Air in their reign in 1515.
XII	1516	922	Muhammad bin Talazar	2 yrs.	
XIII	1518	924	Ibrahim	24-5 yrs.	Son of M. Sottofe.

XIV	1553	961	Muhammad el Guddala	39-40 „	Brother of above (name also given as Ghodala and Alghoddala).
XV	1591	1000	Akampaiya	2½ „	
XVI	1594?	—	Yusif	8 & 28 yrs.	Son of sister of above.
XVII	1601?	—	Muhammad bin Mubaraki ibn el Guddala		Son of younger brother of Yusif's father, and presumably grandson of No. XIV; deposed Yusif and was shortly after himself deposed.
XVIII	1629?	—	Muhammad Attafrija	2 yrs.	Son of Yusif: his mother was daughter of No. XIV. Deposed.
XIX	1631?	—	Aukar ibn Talyat	1 mth.	Deposed.
XX	1631	—	Muhammad Attafriya	? 31 yrs.	For the second time.
XXI	1653	1064	Muhammad Mubaraki	34 „	? Son of father of above.
XXII	1687	1098	Muhammad Agabba	33-4 yrs.	
XXIII	1720	1132	Muhammad el Amin	9 mths.	
XXIV	1720	1133	El Wali	1 yr. 2 mths.	Brother of above.
XXV	1721	1134	El Mumuni Muhammad	9 mths.	
XXVI	1722?	—	Muhammad Agagesha		Son of No. XXII.
XXVII	1735	1147	Muhammad Hammad	5 yrs.	Son of No. XXI. Deposed.
XXVIII	1739	1152	Muhammad Guwa	4 yrs. 7 mths.	? Son or grandson of No. XVII.
XXIX	1744	1742	Muhammad Hammad		For the second time.
XXX	1759	—	Muhammad Guwa	4 yrs. 6 mths.	Do.
XXXI	1763	1176	Muhammad Hammad	5 yrs. 6 mths.	For the third time.

XXXII	1768	1181	Muhammad Guddala	25 yrs.	Son of above.
XXXIII	1797	—	Muhammad Dani	5 yrs. 7 mths.	Deposed in A.H. 1212.
Interregnum				7 yrs.	Government of chief learned men.
XXXIV	1797	1212	El Bekri [El Bakeri]	19-20 yrs.	Succeeded in 1797, but was not installed till later.
XXXV	1815	1231	Muhammad Gumma	5 yrs. 1 mth.	
XXXVI	1826	—	Ibrahim Waffa	7 yrs.	Deposed.
XXXVII	1835	—	Guma	7 „	Killed.
XXXVIII	18--	—	Abdul Qader	22-3 yrs.	Deposed in 1857.
XXXIX	1857	1274	Ahmed Rufaiyi	12 „	Twice deposed, finally in 1869.
XL	about 1869	1286	Sofo el Bekri	? 32 „	Four times deposed.
XLI	about 1900	1318	Osman Mikitan	4 yrs. 5 mths.	
XLII	1904	1322	Ibrahim Da Sugi	4 yrs.	Three times deposed.
XLIII	1908	1336	Tegama	11 „	Died in prison.
XLIV	1919		Omar	Reigning	


?
IX. Muhammad Sottofe
1486–93
Si
X. M
XIII. Ibrahim, 1518–53
XIV. Muhammad el Guddala
El Haj Abeshan
Sister = El Haj Ahme
Akampaiya, 1591–9
Sister = XVI. Yusif, 1594– ?
XVIII. Muhammad Attafrija, 1629–31
XX. ,, ,, 1631–53
XXI. Muhammad Mubaraki, 1653–87
XXVII. Muhammad Hammad, 1735–39
XXIX. ,, 1744–59
XXXI. ,, 1763–67
XXXII. Muhammad el Guddala, 1768–92

APPENDIX VII

SOME BIBLIOGRAPHICAL MATERIAL USED IN THIS BOOK

A GREAT student was showing a friend over his library, and it happened to the friend to ask the obvious question that has occurred to nearly everyone in the same circumstances. The learned man in reply remarked wearily, that neither had he read all the books which adorned his shelves, nor yet were those all the books which he had read. I would say much the same of the lists which are given below. Many as are the works mentioned, those dealing with Air in any detail are very few.

A fuller bibliography of the people and places in the Central Sahara generally will be found in Gsell's first volume of his *Histoire de l'Afrique du Nord* and in Oric Bates' *Eastern Libyans*.

MAPS

Carte de l'Air: Mission Cortier, Service Géographique des Colonies. Two sheets. 1912. 1/500,000. With a table of astronomical positions.

Territoires Militaires du Chad: Édition Meunier. 1921. 1/4,000,000.

Afrique Occidentale Française: Service Géographique des Colonies. Sheet 3. 1/2,000,000.

Carte du Sahara: Delingette and others, Société d'Éditions Géographiques, Maritimes et Coloniales. 1/4,000,000.

Afrique: Service Géographique de l'Armée. Sheet 19. 1896. 1/2,000,000 with neighbouring parts on other sheets.

Africa settentrionale (Edizione provvisoria). 1917. Ministero delle Colonie. 1/4,000,000.

A geological map and diagrammatic section of Air, in Chudeau's thesis (see Bibliography).

Map of Air and neighbouring parts, compiled from data collected by the author. *R.G.S. Journal*, Vol. LXII., August 2, 1923. 1/2,000,000.

Original sketch maps and topographical data in the works of Barth, Foureau-Lamy, Jean, Chudeau and

Buchanan enumerated in the Bibliography.

The Anglo-French frontier was delimited by the Mission Tilho. There are various sheets covering the frontier from Lake Chad to the Niger, on a scale of 1/500,000, but they do not extend far into Damergu.

General maps of the Sahara are not enumerated. They are many.

General Books about the Central Sahara

Duveyrier, H.: *Exploration du Sahara. (Les Touareg du Nord.)* Two volumes. Paris. 1864.

Duveyrier, H.: Biographical sketch by Manoir and Schirmer, 1905.

Carette: “Recherches sur l’Origine et les Migrations des principales tribus de l’Afrique septentrionale.” In *Exploration scientifique de l’Algérie*. Paris, 1853. Vol. III.

Schirmer, H.: *Le Sahara*. 1893.

Gautier, E. F.: *La Conquête du Sahara*. Paris, 1922.

Boissier, G.: *L’Afrique Romaine*. Paris, 1901.

Marmol-Caravajal: *History of Africa*. Three volumes. 1667.

Tissot, C. J.: *Géographie comparée de la province romaine de l’Afrique*. Two volumes and atlas. 1884-8.

Bates, O.: *The Eastern Libyans*. London: Macmillan, 1914.

Gsell, S.: *Histoire de l’Afrique du Nord*. In course of publication. Four volumes have appeared. Paris, 1921, etc.

Richardson, J.: *Travels in the Great Desert of Sahara*. London, 1847. Two volumes.

Minutilli, F.: *La Tripolitania*. Rome, 1912.

de Agostini, E.: *Le Popolazioni della Tripolitania*. Tripoli, 1917.

Denham and Clapperton: *Travels and Discoveries in Central Africa*. London: Murray, 1826. Two volumes.

Lyon, G. F.: *Travels in Northern Africa*. London: Murray, 1921.

Bazin, R.: *Life of Charles de Foucauld*. London, 1923.

Hornemann: *Travels in the Interior of Africa*. Commentary by Major Rennell. French edition. Dentu: Paris, 1803.
Rennell's miscellaneous works and addresses to the African Society, and his Commentary on Herodotus.
Largeau, V.: *Le Sahara*. Paris, 1877.
Desplagnes, L.: *Le Plateau Central Nigérien*. Paris, 1907.

LINGUISTIC AND GRAMMATICAL

The contributions of Halévy, Letourneux, Hanoteau, etc. in various periodicals.
Hanoteau, A.: *Grammaire de la Langue Tamachek*. Algiers, 1896.
Masquerey, E.: *Dictionnaire Français-Touareg*. Paris, 1898.
—— *Essai de Grammaire Touareg*. Paris, 1896.
de Foucauld, C.: *Dictionnaire abrégé Touareg-Français*. Two volumes. Algiers, 1918, etc.
—— *Notes pour servir à un Essai de Grammaire Touaregue*. Algiers, 1920.
Freeman, H. Stanhope: *A Grammatical Sketch of the Temahuq Language*. London: Harrison, 1862.

BOOKS DEALING WITH THE TUAREG AND THE ANTHROPOLOGY OF THE SAHARA GENERALLY

Ripley, W.: *The Races of Europe*. 1900.
Sergi, G.: *The Mediterranean Race*. London, 1901.
—— *Arii ed Italici*. 1898.
—— *Africa, La stirpe camitica*. Turin, 1897.
Keane, A. H.: *Man, Past and Present*. Cambridge, 1920.
Boule, M.: *Fossil Man*. Edinburgh, 1923.
Duveyrier, H.: *Les Touareg du Nord* (Volume I of the work already cited).
Cortier, M.: *D'une Rive à l'autre du Sahara*. Paris, 1908.
Bissuel: *Les Touareg de l'Ouest*.
Aymard, Capt.: *Les Touareg*. Paris, 1911.
Foureau, F.: *Mission chez les Touareg*. 1895.

—— *Une Mission au Tadamayt*. 1890.

King, H.: *A Search for the Masked Tawareks*. London, 1908.

Rinn, L.: *Origines Berbères*. 1889.

Schirmer, H.: *De nomine et genere populorum qui Berberi . . . dicuntur*. 1892.

Buchanan, A.: *Sahara*. Murray, 1926.

Stuhlmann, F.: *Die Mazighvölker*. Kolonial Institut. Band 27.

—— *Ein Ausflug im Aures*. Kolonial Institut. Band 10.

—— *Handwerk und Industrie in Ost-Afrika*. Kolonial Institut. Band 1.

Newberry, Percy: *Beni Hassan*. 1893.

Rosellini, I.: *I Monumenti dell' Egitto e della Nubia*. 1832-44.

Elliot Smith, G.: *The Ancient Egyptians*. 1923.

Maspero, G.: *L'Histoire ancienne des peuples de l'orient*. 1909.

Meyer, E.: *Geschichte des Altertums*.

Rodd, F.: A paper on the Origins of the Tuareg, *R.G.S. Journal*, Vol. LXVII. No. 1. Jan. 1926.

Classical and Arabic Authors

Pliny's *Natural History*. Various editions.

Strabo's *Geography*. Various editions.

Herodotus' *Geography*. Various editions.

Hanno's *Periplus* (London, 1797), and *Geographi Græci Minores* (Editio Mueller).

Sallustius: *De bello Jugurthino*. Various editions.

Ptolemy's *Geography* and *Marinus of Tyre*.

The Works of Diodorus Siculus.

Corippus: *Libri qui supersunt*. Berlin, 1879.

The Works of Aulus Gellius.

Silius Italicus: *Œuvres complètes*. 1850.

Leo Africanus: *History and Description of Africa*. Hakluyt Society. London, 1896. Three volumes.

Ibn Batutah’s *Travels*. Translation of Defrémery and Sanguinetti. Paris: Société Asiatique. 1893. Four volumes.

—— Lee’s edition in the Oriental Translations Fund, with references to Kosegarten’s edition, 1929.

Ibn Khaldun’s *History of the Berbers*. Translation by Slane. Algiers, 1852-4. Four books.

Abderrahman Ibn Abd el Hakim’s *History of the Conquest of Egypt*. In the above edition of Ibn Khaldun.

El Noweiri: Extracts in the above edition of Ibn Khaldun.

Abdallah abu Obeid Ibn Abd el Aziz el Bekri: *A Description of North Africa*. Edition Slane. Algiers, 1913.

—— Wüstenfels *Das Geographische Wörterbuch des Abu Obeid el Bekri*. 1876.

Abu el Hassan Ali Mas’udi: *The Meadows of Gold*. Oriental Translations Fund, 1841.

Sultan Bello’s History. See Denham and Clapperton’s journey.

WORKS DEALING MORE PARTICULARLY WITH AIR

Barth, H.: *Travels in Central Africa*. Five volumes. London, 1857. (For Air, see principally Vol. I. Historical and ethnological references to the Tuareg are contained in all the volumes.)

Jean, C.: *Les Touareg du Sud-Est; L’Air*. Paris, 1909.

Documents Scientifiques de la Mission Foureau-Lamy. Paris.

Buchanan, A.: *Out of the World North of Nigeria*. London: Murray, 1921.

Novitates Zoologicæ, the Journal of the Tring Museum, Vol. XXVIII. pp. 1-13, 75-77. 1921.

Rodd, F.: A paper (with map) on Air, *R.G.S. Journal*, Vol. LXIII. 2, August, 1923.

von Bary, E.: his Diary edited by Schirmer. Paris (Fischbacher), 1898.

Chudeau, R., and Gautier, E. F.: *Missions au Sahara et au Soudan*. Two volumes (especially Vol. II.). Paris, 1908.

Palmer, H. R.: “Some Asben Records.” (The Agades Chronicle), *Journal of the African Society*, No. XXXVI. Vol. IX., 1910.

INDEX

“A” names, tribal, 128

“A type” of Tuareg houses, 244-6, 247, 248, 249, 253, 255, 25 302, 316; ornamentation of, 246, 247, 248

“A’ada” (right of passage), 237

Abadarjan, Ridge of, 70, 71, 78

Abalkoran, the, 379

“Abandoned of God,” the, 274

Abarakan, 216, 217, 238, 241, 243, 299; position of, 425

Abattul, 213, 214, 388; Itesan defeated at, 391; mosque of, 21 291

Abattul, Mount, 156, 213

Abd el Jelil (Selma I), 372, 373

Abd el Qader, Sultan, 93, 99, 100, 108-9, 117, 379, 467

Abd el Rahman, 290

Abdallah, King of Bornu, 374

Abdallah, Abu, 405

Abdallah ibn Yasin, 405

Abderrahman Ibn Abd el Hakim, 468

Abdominal strain of camel riding, 180, 194

Abdulkerim, 122, 436

Abellama, 60, 69, 70, 75; position of, 424

Aberkan, Kel, 437

“Abesagh” acacia, 226

Abeshan, Sultan, 103

Abirkom, Kel, 437

“Abisgi” bush, 82, 449; leaf as condiment, 160

Ablutions, Tuareg remiss in, 273, 274
"Aborak" tree, 226; articles made from wood of, 229
Abscess, native treatment of, 82
Absen (Air), 17, 28
Absenawa (people of Air), 17
Abu Abdallah, 405
Abu Bakr Dau, 409
Abu Muhammad, 176
Abyssinia, Semitic influence in, 342
Acacia, People of the, 307, 437
Acacia trees, 58, 67, 86, 211, 226, 447, 449; eaten by camels,
  defence from insects, 121; thorns of, 165, 166, 199
Adalet, Al, Sultan of Agades, 409-10
Adamber, the, 437
Adar, Kel Geres move to, 390, 391
Adaudu, 242, 243
Addal, Muhammad el, Sultan, 363
Addax antelopes, 446
Aderbissinat, 69-70; fort, 70; well, 75
Adermellen well, 451
Adesnu, spirits of, 279
"Adghar," 18 *n.*[18], 254
Adghar n'Ifoghas, 18 *n.*[18], 209, 260, 399
Adil, Sultan, 409-10, 464
Adjeur, *see* Azger.
Adoral valley, 242
Adrar Ahnet, tribes of, 351
Adultery not common among Tuareg, 177
Adze, Tuareg, 229
Aerwan wan Tidrak, 156 *n.*[150]
Æthiopia; matriarchate in, 152 *n.*[144]; Romans in, 323
Afaguruel (Ifagarwal), the, 437
Afasas, 241, 250, 436; valley, 210 *n.*[200], 243, 439

Afasas-Tebernit groups, houses in, 248, 250, 251

Afasto, position of, 425

Afaza grass, 158, 160, 212

Afis, 315, 430; inscription on grave at, 260; position of, 425

Afis mountains, 308, 314, 315

Afis, Kel, 430

Africa, partition of, 20, 22, 25; problem of introduction of cam 206-8

Africa, North, *see* North Africa.

“Africa Minor,” 1

“Ag Ali” (son of Ali), 350 *n.*[338]

Ag Malwal, 408

Ag Mastan, 169, 353

Aga (salt), 125, 441

Agadem, 333-4, 450; road to, 32; well, 58

Agades, 19, 84, 298, 303, 405, 413, 426, 440; Air administere 115-16, 383; decline of, 411, 414; foundation of, 102, 364 409; population of, 113, 402; position of, 424, 425; prosp of, former, 411; quarters of, 91; races and languages of, 1 118; revolt of 1917 and, 84, 85, 86, 98, 189-90; sanitary s of, 91; site of, peculiar, 110, 112-16, 364; Songhai colonis of, 410, 440; Songhai element in people of, 117; Sudanese aspect, 87, 90

Amenokal of, *see* Amenokal; Añastafidet’s residence at, 100, 145; Barth’s journey to, 23; battle at, 392; blacksmit jewellers of, 229-30; earth from, daubed on women’s face exchange rates at, 221, 414; French occupation of, 27, 52; French post at, 86, 91, 118, 218; gaol of, 107; Hole of Bay at, 281; Holy Men of, 290; House of Kaossen at, 92-3; hou 87, 90, 91, 92, 246; King of, *see* Amenokal; Kings of, list o 463-5; leather-working at, 164, 165, 174, 227, 228; mark 91; merchants of, 410; minaret of, 87, 93-4, 302; measure 221; mithkal of, 221-2; Mosque, Great, of, 86, 87, 93-4, 2 258; pots made near, 160, 161; prostitution in, 177; sanda made in, 164, 165; Sultan of, *see* Amenokal; tribal history at, 362; weights of, 221-2; wells at, 90; wireless station at women of, 118

Agades Chronicle, the, 53, 93 *n.*[81], 100 *n.*[86], 102, 103, 303, 363, 369, 379, 387, 388, 396 *n.*[411], 414, 415; list of king Air compiled from, 463-5; on selection of first Amenokal,

Agades Cross, the, 44, 277, 283, 284

Agades, Kel, 117, 130, 440

Agades, River of, 33, 34, 69, 70, 71, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 83 119, 121, 123, 127, 183, 189, 258, 456; plain of, 79, 82-3

Agades-Tabello road, 85-6

Agades-Taberghit road, 62

Agades-Tanut road, 69-70

Agades-Termit road made practicable, 451

Agajida, 290

Agalak mountains, 216, 299, 301

Agalak well, 300

Agalak, Kel, 436

Agalenge, 428

Agamgam, 315, 318, 319, 320, 321; pool, 219

Agaragar, 239, 264, 315

Agate, ornaments made of, 282, 283

Agdalar, the, 368

Agejir, 239, 240, 241, 429; houses in, 248, 252; mosque of, 25

Agellal, 26, 290, 299, 302, 418, 431, 437, 440; houses in, 248, position of, 425

Agellal, Kel: of the Kel Unnar, 380, 381, 432, 433; Ikazkazan, Imaqoaran, 431; present, mixed, 440

Agerzan valley, 243

Agewas, 320

Aggata mountain, 33, 216, 299, 300; spirit drums of, 279, 300

Aggata well, 299, 300, 430; position of, 425

Aggata, Kel, 290, 429, 430, 440, 441

“Agha” (salt), 125, 441

Aghalwen, 412

“Aghelam,” 219

Aghelashem wells, 9

“Aghil” (measure of length), 222

Aghil, Kel, 441

Aghimmat, Kel, 429

Aghmat well, 66, 74

“Agilman” (pool) of Taghazit, 23

Agisymba Regio, attempt to identify with Air, 318, 322, 324, 3 derivation and application of name, 364

“Agoalla,” 147

Agoalla Kel Tagei, 397

Agoalla Mafinet, 397

Agoalla T’Sidderak, 397

Agoras, the, of Assode, 301, 304, 308, 309

Agram (Fashi), 413

Agriculture: in Air, 131-4, 135; despised by noble Tuareg, 127, 174, 360

Agumbulum, the, 369, 397

“Agwalla,” 147

Agwau, 262, 314, 315, 319, 430, 435; valley, 314

Agwau, Kel, 304, 314, 435

Ahaggar, 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 18, 334, forms of the name, 128

Amenokal of, 169, 352-3; camels of, 196; De Foucauld in, 11-1 Hawara occupy, 359; Ibn Batutah in, 453, 454, 455, 456; language of, 12, 387; mountains, 2, 3, 4, 6, 18, 332

Ahaggar, Kel, 17, 139; *see* Ahaggaren.

Ahaggaren (Imghad of Kel Gharus), 308, 438

Ahaggaren (Tuareg of Ahaggar), 109, 148, 209, 345, 350, 384 [402], 402; works on, 8-9, 20

Originally Auriga, 270, 348, 349, 352; Azger and, their and connection, 349-53; caravan roads controlled by, 353 dialect of, 270; French occupation resisted by, 10, 13, 328 352-3; polytheistic traces among, 275; as raiders, 182, 35 tribal divisions of, 350-51

Ahamellen, Kel, 351, 352, 353, 355, 359, 370

Ahawagh, 347

“Ahel” and “Kel,” 129

Ahir (Air), 454

Ahitagel, 352

Ahmadu, of the Kel Tagei, 197, 210, 211

Ahmadu ag Musa, 210

Ahmed Rufaiyi, Sultan, 99

Ahnet mountains, 17, 260, 351, 352, 354

Ahnet, Kel, 351, 354

Ahodu, chief of the Kel Tadek, 26-7, 127, 149, 154, 155, 161,
180, 181, 182, 215, 266, 269, 270, 278, 298, 305, 419, 42
438, 440; disputed headship of Auderas, 142-3; female de
exemplified in family of, 149, 150, 151; French assisted b
142, 290; on the Kel Owi, 149, 387, 389; on Queen Kahen
265; raiding reminiscences of, 191-3; his son, 150, 151, 1
sword, 233; tribal history in possession of family of, 361-2
the Veil, 289; his wife, 150, 161, 172, 284

Aiawan, the, 434

Ain Irhayen, position of, 424

Air, 5, 6, 18-19, 112, 115, 334; as a geographical term, 28; att
identification with Agisymba Regio, 318, 322, 324, 325; o
of name of, 28; original inhabitants of, 138, 363-4, 365-6;
penetrated by Romans, Arabs or Turks, 327

Air, accounts of, 18-19, 452-3, 456; agriculture in, 5, 131-4; A
conquest of, 409-10, 411; astronomically determined poin
422-5; Azger and, women sent to ensure friendship betwe
384; Bornu and, war between, 406-7, 412; boundaries of,
camels of, 195, 196-7; caste system of, 136, 137-8, *see* No
and serfs; civilisation of, pre-Tuareg, 365; climate of, 28, 1
cotton of, 132; Damergu economically part of, 47; disease
178, 179-80; dialect of, 270, 347, 349; distribution of, 39
drainage system of, 23, 28-31, 71, 76, 122-3, 183, 214-15
economics of, 133-4, 218-20; European penetration of, 8-1
19-27; evacuation of, 1918, 113, 121-2, 302, 309, 360-61,
exploration of, 23-4, 24-5, 27; fair tribes of, 162; fauna an
of, 27-8, 119, 120; French occupation and annexation of,
50, 52, 99, 114 *n.*[104], 361, 420; revolt against, *see below*

in, 1917; geology of, 27, 31, 33-5, 76, 78, 79, 183, 215, 2
241-2; Goberawa in, 364, 365-6, 379, 403; graves and ton
259-63; history of, 17, 360-416; Holy Men of, 290, 293; h
tribes of, 290-91, 306; houses and huts of, 89, 90, 244-55;
mortality high in, 178; Lemta invasion of, 356, 358, 359;
influence in, 403; lions in, 119, 120; live-stock of, 202, 20
361; mosques of, 255-8; mountains of, 2, 4, 5, 16, 23, 27,
156-7, 332, 334; negroid original inhabitants of, 363-4, 3
oases of, 32; population of, 402; raids from, 190-91; raids
113-14, 188, 189, 350; rains in, 79, 120-21, 123-4; revolt
1917, 39, 59, 60, 69, 70, 84-5, 86, 93, 98, 121-2, 127-8, 1
205, 302, 309, 420; roads of, 32, 37, 38, 353-4; rock draw
and inscriptions in, 207, 213, 216, 260, 263-5, 269, 271,
315, 318, 319, 321-2, 360; rocks of, 72, 76, 78, 126; Rom
campaigns near, 322, 323, 324, 325-6; Sanhaja in, 364, 3
368, 375, 405; scale of life in, former, 411; Senussiya in,
spirits of, 278-81; tribal names in, 128, 129; tribal warfar
101; Sultan of, *see* Amenokal.

Tuareg of, *see* Tuareg of Air; invasion of Air by, 359, 36
394, 395, 396, 397, 403, 404, 405-6; its date, 364, 371, 3
375, 381, 403, 404; their vicissitudes in, 401-16; Tuareg s
for name of, 454

Air, Central, 299, 418; belonged to People of the King, 394; ra
123; tribal names derived from, 378, 380, 398; view over,

Air, Eastern, Kel Owi in, 394

Air, North-eastern: houses of, 252, 254; unnamed valley of, 30

Air, Northern, 298-329; ancient monuments in, 263; evacuatio
1918, 309; houses of, 252, 309-11, 316; Kel Owi tribes of,
394; palm groves of, 317; roads traversing, 318-22; salt ca
route from, 315

Air, Southern: Goberawa in, 379; graves in, 263; servile tribes
394; *see* Tegama.

'Aisha-Kel Eghrarmar, 412

Ajaraneen, the, 368

Ajiru, 24, 129 *n.*[117], 146, 243, 305, 436

Ajiru, Kel, 436

Akaraq, 71, 77, 79, 82, 183, 189, 418; valley, 77-8, 258, 263

Akasani, Sultan, 102

"Akel," meaning of, 134 *n.*[123], 136, 367 *n.*[370]

Akil, 408, 409

Akir (Air), 28

Akri, 47

Akritan hills, 47

Alagwas, Alakkos, Alakwas (Elakkos), 357, 445

Alali, Bir, 51, 52, 92

Alamt (Lemta) Tuareg, 376

Alaren (Allaghan), Kel, 432

Alarsas, 121

Albes, well of, 243

Alburdatan, the, 437

Alfalehle plant, 10

Alfalehle river, 30-31

Algeria, 41; Christianity in, 294; the Circumcelliones, 328; Fre expedition from, 25, 26-7; French occupation of, 22; fune monuments in, 261; rock drawings in, 318

Algeria, Southern, 332, 334; French operations in, 11; native C Corps in, 189

Algeria-Ahaggar caravan road, 353

Algiers, 418

"Alguechet," 6 *n.*[5]

Alhassan, the, 434 *n.*

Ali, King of Bornu, 410

Ali ben el Haj Omar ben Idris, King of Bornu, 413, 414

Ali ibn Tama el Ghati, 96, 154-5, 191, 192, 193, 280, 282

Ali Killun, 408

Aliso, El Haj, Sultan, 102, 463

"Alkarhat," game of, 281

"Allagh" (spear), 234

Allaghan, Kel, 432

"Allelthrap" (ghosts), 281

Alliances, tribal, 147-8

Alluvial soil, Air, 31; plain of River of Agades, 79, 121

Almoravids, the, 405, 420

Almoubari, Sultan, 102 *n.*[91], 391

Alms-houses, 255

Almubari (El Mubaraki), 102 *n.*[91], 391

Alphabet, Tuareg, 266, 267-8

Alwali, 96, 209-10, 211

Alwalitan, the, 433

“Alwat” plant, 77, 210, 211

Amadu, 154, 180, 315, 418

Amahar (form of Imajegh), 457-8

Amakeetan (Immikitan), the, 368, 370, 429

“Amán” (peace), 237

Amarkos, Kel, 434

Amati, Sultan, 102, 463

Amazigh (form of Imajegh), 457

Amazigh, the, 458

Amazons, suggested explanation of story of, 152, 170, 288

Ameluli, 91

Amenokal, the (Sultan of Agades), 54, 96, 97-100, 134, 144, 3
387, 409; deputation sent to Constantinople for the first, 1
102, 104-5, 396-7; list of his successors, 463-5

election of, 99, 103, 104, 107, 108, 109, 391, 393, 432;
of, foreign appearance of, 117; family name of, 434 *n.*; fer
descent of, 151; first, possibly a Byzantine prince, 102, 10
legend of Imanen women sent to, 384; installation of, 99-1
101-2, 383, 384, 391, 393, 396-7, 432; Itesan and election
100, 103, 109, 379, 391, 393, 397, 432; judicial functions
107, 110, 141, 390; Kel Geres and election of, 100, 146, 3
391, 392, 393, 397; Kel Owi and election of, 100, 108, 38
396-7; officials and courtiers of, 106-7; palace of, 97, 100;
People of, 374, 384, *see* People of the King; position of, 10
104-5, 107-8, 109-10, 116, 141, 144, 145, 146; precarious
tenure of office, 99, 368, 392; revenue of, 110; second, Ag

mosque presented to, 257, 258
Amenokal of Ahaggar, the, 169
Amenokal, Kel, *see* People of the King.
Amezegzil, the, 430
“Amghid” (singular of “Imghad”), 140 Amidera valley, 84
Amin, Muhammad el, Sultan, 413, 464
“Amitral” (measure of length), 222
Amjid, wells of, 10
Ammianus, 356
Amon, Egyptian deity, 295
Amosciarg (form of Imajegh), 460
Amóshagh (form of Imajegh), 459-60, 462
Amulet cases, leather, 228
Amulets, Tuareg, 282, 284
“Amunan,” 459
“Amzad” (mandoline), 272
Anai (S.W. of Murzuk), 318, 319, 320, 321, 324
Anai (Kawar), 318
Añastafidet, the, 96, 107, 144, 239, 290, 301, 302, 303, 374; c
of authority of, 384, 386; election of, 145; freed slaves of,
house of, 92, 100, 145, 301; position and duties of, 107, 1
Añastafidet, people of the, 374, 384, 386, 394, 429; numbers c
tribes and subtribes of, 435-9, 440
Anfissak valley, 242; well, 242, 436
Anfissak, Kel, 243, 436
Angels, Tuareg belief in, 278
Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1 *n.*[1]
Anglo-French boundary, Northern Nigeria, 41
Anglo-German Convention, 1890, 25
Anigara, 433
Anigara, Kel, 380, 381, 433
Animals, domestic, Air, 202-6; rock drawings of, 264-5
Animistic view of nature, Tuareg, 295

Aniogara, Kel, 429, 433
Ankh, the Agades Cross and the, 285
Annur, chief of the Kel Owi, 23, 24, 108, 134, 135, 146, 304-5
 312, 313, 435
Ansaman (T'in Shaman), 364-5
Ansatfen, family of, 368, 369
Ant-bear secured by Buchanan, 121
Antassar, Kel, 428
Antelopes, 446, 449, 450
Antimony, women's eyes darkened with, 173
Anu Areran, position of, 424
Anu Maqaran, 215, 216, 238, 243, 299, 418, 434; rock drawin
 321-2
Anu n'Ageruf, position of, 425
Anu n'Banka, 62, 66, 74
Anu Samed valley, 311; houses in, 248
Anu Samed, Kel, 435
Anu Wisheran, 248, 418, 429
Anu Wisheran, Kel, 429
Aouror well, 74, 75
Aowjal, *see* Aujila, 368, 369
"Ara" (salt), 125, 127 *n.*[115]
Ara valley, 183, 184, 216, 240
Arab authors: the Veil first mentioned by, 328-9; works by, 46
Arab country, meaning of term in Air, 385 *n.*[405]
Arab element among Imghad, 138, 139
Arab geographers and historians, 61, 468; *see* Bekri, Ibn Khald
Arab merchants, Agades, 96, 106; caravan raided by Ahodu, 1
Arab raiders, 12, 13, 14, 188
Arabia, 266; question of introduction of camels from, 207; inv
 from, 371
Arabian origin of Tuareg, Bello on, 368, 369, 371
Arabic: Temajegh and, 271; used by Tuareg, 268, 269

Arabs: Air not invaded by, 324; head-cloths worn by, 286; Kao believed killed by, 98; North Africa conquered by, 293-4, 356, 371, 375-6, 404; patriarchal system of, 339; raids by 13, 14, 188; robes of, 285 n.[253]; Southland invaded by, 326, 376, 403, 444; Spain conquered by, 376

Tuareg (Mulethemin, *q.v.*) and, 14-15, 273, 274, 287, 364; Arab influence on, 324-5; Arab opinion of, 454; conn with Arabs claimed in order to establish descent from the Prophet, 339, 342; Arab tribes assimilated by, 347 n.[329], Arabs considered newcomers by, 170; Arabs called “white 162; upper-class Arabs considered nobles by, 459

Arakieta, 238, 243

“Araruf,” 200

Araten valley, 78, 428

Archean rocks, Air, 33, 34, 35, 78

Architecture, Tuareg, 184, 241, 244-59; ascribed to the Itesan, 377, 378

“Areg,” 274 n.[243]

Areitun, 431

Areitun, Kel, 431

“Argem” (funerary monuments), 260-62, 263

Arguin, 332 n.[301]

Arharkhar valley, 156 n.[152]

Aril, Kel, 441

Arki, King of Kanem, 372

Arm daggers, Tuareg, 234

Arm rings, Tuareg, 91, 285-6, 289

Armes blanches, Tuareg allegiance to, 55, 235-6, 328

Ar’rerf Ahnet, the, 351

Arrow-heads, conventionalised, as ornaments, 283

Arrows, poisoned, used by bush folk, 45

Arsu, 304

Art, Tuareg, 246, 263-5

Arwa, Mount, 216, 300, 321

Arwa Mellen, 215, 299, 418

"Aryan," the word, 339

Arzuges, the, 356, 358

Asaki, the, 291

Asawa, 347

Asben (Air), 17, 28, 313 *n.*[274], 363-4, 369, 403; derivation of

Asben horses, 202

Asbenawa (people of Air), 17, 202, 313

Asbytæ, 364 *n.*[362]

Asclepias, use of juice of, 180

Asclepias, People of the, 307, 433

Ashanti, matriarchal survivals in, 152, 171; religious feasts, 27

Ashegur well, 32, 219, 315, 318, 320, 321, 414

Ashraf (descendants of the Prophet), 339-40, 439

Asiu, 23, 30, 31, 354, 367, 455, 456

Askar, *see* Azger.

Askia, Ishak, 411

Askia Ismael, 291

Askia, Muhammad el Haj, 291, 409-10; conquests of, 116, 117 409-10; pilgrimage of, 409, 411

Asnagho, peak, 300

Assa, 125

Assada valley, 34, 214-15, 218, 298, 418

Assadoragan, 309

Assarara, 247, 314, 315, 435

Assarara mountains, 314

Assarara, Kel, 134, 303, 304, 314, 430, 435

Assatartar, 308, 314, 436

Assatartar, Kel (Igermaden), 436

Assatartar, Kel (Immikitan), 430

Assawas swamp, 31, 78

Assingerma, 241 *n.*[217]

Assode, 145, 233, 299, 300-303, 314, 413, 454 *n.*[458]; first rea

capital of Air, 303; houses of, 248, 254, 302; mosque of, 2
257, 301-2; position of, 425

Astacures, the, 356, 358

Astronomically determined points in Air, list of, 422-5

Atagoom, 185, 239; amulets worn by, 282; cases of possession
family of, 279-80

Atan, Kel, 433

Atara, the, 155

“Ataram” (west), varying sense of, 244, 247

Ataram, Kel, 129, 441

Atkaki, 239

Atlas languages, 270

Atlas mountains, 2; MZGh names in, 461, 462

Atrebisa, 412

Attafriya, Muhammad, Sultan, 391, 464

Audaghost, Libyan kings of, 404, 405

Auderas, 26, 33, 155-7, 161, 214, 241, 253, 404 *n.*[418]; autho
at, 123, 127, 154-5, 157, 158-62, 171-2, 178, 275, 279-80
423, 424 *n.*[436]; basin of, 34, 131, 156, 213; cemetery at,
headship of, disputed, 142-3; houses of, 213, 248; Itesan “
names” derived from, 380, 381; Kel Ataram of, 129 *n.*[117
killed near, 119-20; measures of, 221; plough seen at, 133
position of, 424, 425; possession, case of, at, 279-80; rain
season at, 123-4; village organisation in, 131, 142-3

Auderas, Kel, 440

Augela (Aujila), 336

Augila, people of, 282

Aujila, 318, 334, 336; story of compulsory migration from, 36
369; trade with Kawar, 369, 370

Aulimmiden, the, 18, 101, 109, 408, 441; the Abalkoran and,
Amenokal and, 144; El Baghdadi attacked by, 292; horses
202; Ibn Batutah’s possible reference to, 455; Ilemtin a fo
the name, 355; Kel Geres defeated by, 391, 415; identical
the Lemta, 341, 345, 355, 356, 357-8, 379, 445; matriarc
inheritance system disliked by, 152 *n.*[149]; origin of, 341,
379; position of, explained, 357-8; raids on, 139, 190;

Tademekka occupied by, 345, 348, 357, 387, 414

Aulus Gellius, 468

Auraghen, the, 347, 348, 352, 354, 355; noble in Azger, servil Southland, 348; noble Kel Owi once belonged to, 387

Auraghiye dialect, 270, 347, 349, 387 Aureran well, 215, 299; position of, 425

Aures, people of, 294

Aures, Queen of the (Kahena), 170, 265, 294

Auriga, the, 270, 340, 341, 343, 346, 347, 348, 349, 352; Auri Hawara represented by Ahaggaren, 353, 355, 387

Ausa, 415

Austria, “talhakim” made in, 282

Austuriani (or Ausuriani), the, 356, 357, 358

Autochthonous significance of MZGh root, 461

Awa, tomb of, 281

Awelimmid (Aulimmiden), the, 357

Axe, Tuareg, 229

“Azalai,” the, 219

Azamkoram mountains, 418

Azañieres mountains, 157, 308, 314 *n.*[276]

Azañieres, Kel, 145, 147, 148, 243, 303, 304, 435, 436, 437; l of the mother of, 384

Azañierken, the, 430, 431

Azanzara valley, 84

Azar valley, 243

Azar, Kel, 433

Azaret, Kel, 437

Azawad, 61

Azawagh (Asawa), 347

Azawagh, the, 32, 49, 54, 61, 62-3, 80, 114, 115, 242, 309, 34 [333], 426; cold encountered in, 63, 167, 418; deserted sit 64; millet cultivation in, 74; Ifadeyen move into, 209, 39 population decreasing in, 64; Sanhaja in, 364; Tegama of, valleys of, 61-2, 63, 66-7, 71, 76; wells of, 74-5; wind pre in, 63

Azawagh, Kel, 64, 65, 80; name disappears, 65

Azawak, 31

Azbin (Air), 17

Azel, 428

Azel, Kel, 427

Azelik valley, 71

Azenata, the, 437

Azger country, the, 9, 18, 335, 353, 355, 356; Aulimmiden ret 387; Auraghen noble in, 348; Ifoghas of, 54

Azger Tassili, the, 260, 261

Azger Tuareg, 17, 148, 331, 335, 347, 402; Ahaggaren and, or and connection of, 348, 349-53, 359, 402; Ausuriani ident with, 356, 358; camel brands of, 201-2; caravan roads cor by, 353; courage of, 354; divination by women of, 281; European contact with, 8, 9; fort built to watch, 12; Frenc penetration and, 12, 18, 350, 354; Imanen of, 348 *n.*[385], Imanen kings of, 352, 353; inheritance, system of, 153; Ka sheltered by, 92; Kel Ahamellen break from, 352, 359; old stock represented by, 341, 348, 350, 355-9, 432; migratio 18, 350; purity of stock of, 18, 354; raids by, 350, 354; tri noble and mixed caste, 354-5; warlikeness of, 353, 354; w sent by, to first Sultan of Air, 384

Azger-Auraghen, the, 348, 387

Azjer Tuareg, *see* Azger, 17

Azuraiden, 436

Azzal, 121, 122, 436

“B type” of Tuareg houses, 246-8, 249 *n.*[221], 250, 252, 254, 310-11, 314, 315, 316

“Bab Ras el Hammada,” 323

Babies, Tuareg method of carrying, 179

Bacos valley, 216

Badge of office, Añastafidet’s, 145

Bagai, 328

Bagezan horses, 202

Bagezan mountains, 23, 33, 34, 84, 85, 123, 126, 127, 156, 18 238-40, 299, 319, 384, 385, 389; an unknown area, 238; l of, 239, 240-41; limes found in, 160, 239; lions in, 120; na connected with Agisymba, 324; Tuareg stronghold against Bornuwi, 414

Bagezan, Kel; Itesan sub-tribe, 381, 385, 432; Kel Owi group, 1 385, 429, 435; present, composite, 239, 240, 438-9

Baghdadi, El, 213, 214, 215, 291, 292, 293

Baghzen, Kel, 129

Bagirmi, 26

Bahr Bela Ma, 3

Bairam, feast of, 274

Bakeir, Muhammad el, Sultan, 363, 465

Bakiri, Sultan, 99; *see* Bekri.

Bandages, abdominal, worn by Tuareg riders, 180, 194

Bangles, women's, 283-4

"Barbars," the term, 371, 372

Barca, 334; food taboos in, 295; the Hawara in, 345

Bardai, 327, 335, 336

Bardamah, the, 406; women of, 452

Bardetus mountain, 327

Barkasho, 169-70

Barth, Dr. Heinrich, 8, 9, 21, 22-3, 28, 31 *n.*[36], 36, 49, 118, 1 [115], 128, 132, 180 *n.*[172], 214, 243, 299, 362, 392; *Trav Discoveries in Central Africa* by, 14, 23, 106 *n.*[96], 277 *n.*[2 410 *n.*[423], 412 *n.*[425], 452 *n.*[450], 455 *n.*[459], 460, 461, expeditions of, 8, 9, 18, 20, 21, 23-4, 36, 59, 60, 61, 215; attempts on his life, 290, 304, 312

account of Air by, 18, 28; origin of name of, 28, 454; Tu invasion of, 359, 368, 370-71, 382-3, 386, 387, 391

on Abd el Qader, 108, 117; on site of Afasas, 241; his jo to Agades, 23, 70, 71, 78, 80 *n.*[75], 122; at Agades, 86, 87 91, 92, 93, 99, 117, 118; on date of foundation of Agades, on the Amenokal and Añastafidet, 100, 105, 108, 145 *n.*[1

146; Annur and, 304-5, 312, 313; on Assode, 301; at Aude 133, 156 *n.*[150]; in the Azawagh, 49, 63, 67, 70, 71, 78, 8 [75]; on Bardamah women, 406; on El Maghili, 291-2; on Elakkos, 444; on exchange rates, 222; on Gamram, 49, 33 [309]; on Ibn Batutah's journey, 406, 454, 455; Kanem and chronicle collected by, 372-3; lion's prints seen by, 120; o population of Murzuk, 113; on the MZGh root in North Af names, 460-61, 462; as an ox-rider, 203; rock drawings discovered by, 265, 319; Roman remains discovered by, 3 site of T'in Shaman, 364; at T'intellust, 308, 312-13; his q there still known as the House of the Christians, 312-13

on the Tuareg: etymology of word, 273-4; absence of na name, 459-60; Air invaded by, 359, 368, 370-71, 382-3, 3 date of invasion, 382-3, 386, 391, 404; the Aulimmiden, o of, 341, 357-8, 377; the Auraghen (Oraghen), 347-8, 387; tribes, 355; Damergu tribes, 53, 54; Elakkos tribes, 444; fe descent system, 152-3; Imghad and slaves, mistakes regar 134-5, 142 *n.*[133]; the Kel Fadé, 399; the Kel Owi, their a in Air, 382-3, 386, 387, 391; their earlier habitat, 387; the language, 270; the Kel Wati, 412; Lemta migrations, mista regarding, 344-5, 359; tribal names, 129, 130; tribal organisation, 380 *n.*[396], 393, 426, 427; women, fatness c 172

Bary, Erwin von, 24-5, 146, 241, 321, 355 *n.*[344], 468; Air exp by, 24-5; boundary fixed by, 31; detained at Ajiru, 24, 24 disease among Tuareg, 179, 180; on the Imajeghan, 139 *n* on laws of succession among Kel Owi, 151; on lions in Air on rains in Air, 123 *n.*[114]; on social distinctions lost amo Owi, 144 *n.*[134]; prevented from entering Sudan, 24, 244; tribal names, 129 *n.*[117]

Basalt boulders, 210, 215, 216, 217

Basalt flows, Air, 33, 34, 119, 126, 183, 216

Basin formations, 3, 32, 43

Basket, grain measures in, 221

Basset, 206

Bates, Oric: *Eastern Libyans* by, 6 *n.*[3], 145 *n.*[136], 166 *n.*[160], 267 *n.*[236], 294 *n.*[259], 336 *n.*[314], 364 *n.*[362], 466, 467; references to, on: the Ausuriani, 356; cross symbol among

Tuareg, 276, 278; cross-belts, Libyan, 194; eating of dogs, female descent, 151; funerary monuments, 260, 262; Img and Imajeghan, 137; Lebu and word Libyan, 337; MZGh r Libyan names, 457 n.[461], 461; the “penistasche,” 164 n.[religious beliefs, 275; sun worship, 276, 278, 295

Battles, Saharan, small numbers involved, 11

Bayazid, the Hole of, 281

Bazin, R.: *Life of Charles de Foucauld*, 12 *n.*[9], 271 *n.*[240], 467

Beds, nomads’, 212

Beduaram, 21

Bekri, El, Sultan, 99, 293, 325, 336 *n.*[316], 345, 372, 404 *n.*[41 465, 468

“Bela,” 134

Belkho, paramount chief of Air, 24, 146, 191, 243, 244, 305-6, defeat of the Isherifan by, 50, 75, 440

Bello, Emir of Sokoto, 362, 372; on “Barbar” invasion of Air, 3 Goberawa Copts, 294, 363; on rise of Kanuri in Kanem, 36 374; on Sultan of Agades, 99, 108

on Tuareg invasion of Air, 364, 368, 369-70; the origina tribes, 368, 369, 394, 397, 400, 432, 433; their modern representatives, 394-5, 397, 400

Bells, camel, the Prophet’s ban on, 293

Belly of the Desert, the, 30, 347 *n.*[333]

Belts, Libyan, 194, 265; Tuareg, 180, 194

Ben Guten, the, 131 *n.*[120], 437

Ben Hazera, 282 *n.*[252]

Ben Mubarak, Muhammad, 413

Benghazi, 110

Beni Abbes, 333, 344

Beni Dugu dynasty, 372, 375

Beni Ghalgha, 372-3

Beni Hume dynasty, 372, 373, 374, 378

Beni Itisan, 377

Beni Khattab, 347; conquest of Zuila by, 112

Benue, the, 30

Beranes Libyans, 339, 340, 341, 342, 346

Berber, linguistic sense of word, 339

Berber languages, 270, 271; camel names in, 206; MZGh root

"Berbers": confused use of term, 371-2; applied to Libyans and
Tuareg, 338, 371, 372, 458, 461; Jewish tribes of, 294

Berbers of North Africa, 16; arrival in N. Africa, 262; Arab inv
resisted by, 170; former Christianity of, suggested, 273; fu
monuments of, 261; Ibn Batutah on, 453; Ibn Khaldun's *H*
of, 295, 330, 338; matriarchal inheritance system of, 152-
MZGh root, significance of, among, 458; origins of, 7; rob
285 *n.*[253]; sun worship by, 295; Tuareg and, 7, 16, 371,
458, 461; element of, in Tuareg Imghad, 138

Berdeoa, country of the, 334, 335-6

Berdianen, the, 428

"Beriberi," applied to Kanuri, 371, 373 *n.*[386]

Bettina plant, the, 10 *n.*[7]

Beughqot, 242, 390; valley, 71, 209, 210 *n.*[200], 218, 238, 24
390, 436

Beurmann, 9

Bianu, feast of, 274-5

Bibliographical material, list of, 466-8

Bight of Benin, 22, 30

Bila, Mount, 157, 214, 215, 216, 299, 418

Bilalen, 143

Bilasicat valley, 243

Bilet, 157

Bilma, 21, 305, 413; French fort at, 320; wireless station at, 1

salt caravan, 69, 85, 114, 115, 195, 210, 217, 218-20, 4
Amenokal's revenue from, 110; number of camels in, 218;
French escort for, 84, 218, 219; Minister accompanying, 1
raids on, 218, 219, 450; route of, 32, 114, 145, 219, 264,
320, 450

salt trade, 133, 218, 219-20; struggles between Air and
for, 407, 415

war of, 407, 415

Bir Alali, 51, 52, 92

Bir Gharama, disaster to French at, 9-10, 236

Birds, taboo on, 294

Birjintoro, 46

Births, among Tuareg, 179, 181

Bishoprics, North African, 293

Bissuel: *Les Touareg de l'Ouest*, 10 *n.*[7], 351, 467

"Black" and "White" Tuareg, 139-40

Blacksmith, Tuareg, 155, 228-9, 230, 283-4

Blanket carried by some Tuareg, 166

Bleeding, remedy for donkey disease, 203

Blemmyes, the, 376

"Blood in the head," camel and donkey disease, 200-201, 203

"Blue," negroes spoken of as, 162

Blue-eyed Tuareg, 161

Boghel valley, 122

Bomba, Gulf of, 260

Books, Tuareg, 269; lost during revolt, 360, 361-2; fragments discovered, 385

Booz, 320, 321

Borgu, 336

Borku, 336

Bornu, 26, 191, 192, 336, 369; on early maps, 336, 410

Beni Hume dynasty in, 372, 373, 374, 378; Bulala conq 374; Christian influence in, 294; history of, chronicle of, 3 374

Empire of, 37, 47, 374, 406, 410, 412; decline of, 407; with Air, 407, 415, 443

Kanuri in, 335, 371, 403, 407

Tuareg arrival in, problem of, 375-6; their ascendancy i 372-4, 375, 376, 403-4, 406; expulsion of, from, 335, 358 374, 375, 403-4; migration into Air from, 370, 371, 372, 376-7, 403-4; Tuareg besiege, 413

Bornu Chronicle, 372-3, 374, 413
Bornuwi, 44
Bororoji Fulani, 57-8
Borrow pits, Sudanese, 90
Boucle du Niger, La, 30
Boulders, basalt, 34, 183, 210
Boule, M.: *Fossil Man*, 339 *n.*[322], 467
Boundaries of Air, 28-33
Bourgou, 336
Bouthel, Sergeant, 50-51
Bows and arrows used by Kanuri, 55; not used by Tuareg, 235,
Boys, Tuareg, circumcision of, 179; dress of, 177; upbringing c
177-8
Bracelets, women's, 283-4
Brahim, Sultan, 52, 99, 108
Brands, tribal, on camels, 201-2
Branes, Libyan family of, 338, 339, 340, 341
Brass, decorative work in, 310
Braun, 320
Bridle, camel, 193, 231
Bridle stand, 309
Brigands, 122
British described as White Nobles, 459
British part in exploration of Central Sahara, 20, 313; in penet
of West Africa and Sudan, 36-7
British tendency to belaud obscure races, 401
Broking centres for desert traffic, 110, 111
Buchanan, Captain Angus, 20, 68, 110, 120, 121, 155, 164, 23
fauna of Air collected by, 27; *Out of the World North of Nig*
27 *n.*[31], 70 *n.*[67], 468
Buda, 453
Buddei valley, 127 *n.*[115]
Buddei-Telwa drainage system, 183

“Bugadie,” 134

Building methods: Sudan and Northern Nigeria, 88-9; Tuareg,
248-50, 251-2

Bulala, the, conquest of Bornu by, 374

Bulls, 203

Bullum Babá well, 446, 451

Bullum village group, 443, 446

Bundai hills, 308 *n.*[272]

Burials, Tuareg, 181-2

Burin, 9

Burr grass, 45, 58-9, 62, 164, 165, 226, 227; seeds ground and
158, 160, 211

Bush, Central African, discomforts of travel in, 45-6; Damergu,
446; Elakkos, 446, 447, 451; the Southland, 42, 43

Bush folk, poisoned arrows used by, 45

Bushman drawings, 264

Bustard, 43, 265

Butter, Tuareg, 158

“Buzu,” 134, 135-6, 159

Byzantine origin of first Sultan of Air discussed, 102, 104

Byzantines: emigration from North Africa, 376 *n.*[390]; encount
with Tuareg, 327

“C type” Tuareg houses, 250, 251-2

Ca’da Mosto, 404 *n.*[417]

Cæsar, camels captured by, 206

Caillé, 19

Cairns, memorial, 292-3

Cairo, 20; Arab rottl in, 222

Cairo-Timbuctoo road, 318

Calabashes, rare in Air, 161; as grain measures, 221; as drums,

Camel bells, the Prophet’s ban on, 293

Camel Corps, French, 10, 11, 68, 84, 188, 189, 193, 198; came
stolen from, 188; rate of travel of, 193

Camel skeletons, palæolithic, 207

Camel-borne trade, decline of, 38

Camel-riding, abdominal strain of, 180, 194; position for, 232

Camels, 38, 95, 194-5, 354; their arrival in Africa, problem of,
breeds of, 195-7; delicacy of, 198; diseases of, 72, 199-20
equipment of, Tuareg, 193-4, 223-4, 227, 230-31, 276-7;
of, 62, 64, 199; herding of, 135-6, 141-2; a popular invest
134; loading and unloading, 198, 223, 224-5; numbers of,
361; prices of, 204; raids for, 188, 190, 191; rock drawing
265; saddles of, 223-4, 227, 230-31, 276-7; salt needed by
with salt caravans, 218, 219, 220; sores of, 72, 199, 201;
technique of travel with, 193, 198-9; Temajegh names for,
thirst of, 72, 198-9, 445-6; tribal marks on, 201-2; rarely t
193

Canaan, 339

Caravan roads, 5, 6-7, 30, 32, 43-4, 48, 62, 114, 145, 219, 24
308-9, 315, 320, 325, 443, 450; abandoned owing to dest
of wells, 60-61; closed during war, 361; controlled by Azg
Ahaggaren, 353-4; controlled by Kel Owi, 390, *see* Kel Ow
evacuation policy and, 361; the “Garamantian way,” 318-
junction at Iferuan, 318; Roman garrisons on, 208; and sit
cities, 110, 111, 112, 114

Caravan trade: Añastafidet’s position and, 145; breakdown of,
war, 142, 146

Caravan wells, 74-5, 80; rights over, 75

Caravans: large, formed for safety’s sake, 11; camels for, suppl
Arabs, 354; raids on, 50, 51, 52, 59, 80, 191-3, 218, 219,
salt, *see* under Bilma.

Cardinal points, Temajegh names for, 244

Carpentry, 228

Carthaginians, camels not used by, 206

Casamicciola, 242

Caste, mixed, of some Azger tribes, 355

Caste system, Air, 103-4, 108, 136, 137-8; *see* Noble and servil
tribes.

Cattle, Air, 133-4, 202, 203, 204, 205; horns of, anointed by B
58

Cats, Air, 203

Cave paintings, European, 264

Cemeteries, Nubian, 260; Tuareg, 181, 216, 259-63; urn cemet Marandet, 121, 161, 263

Central Africa: Arab influence in, 325; Arab invasion of, 376; discomforts of travel in, 45-6; Empires of, 47 (*see* Bornu, Sokoto, Songhai); French scheme for occupation of, 25-7; of, in relation to that of Air, 358, 401, 403-16; huts of, 87 Mediterranean civilisation brought to, 401; trend of migra towards, 39, 342

Central Air, 299, 418; belonged to People of the King, 394; rai 123; tribal names derived from, 378, 380, 398; view over,

Central Empires, unrest in North Africa fomented by, 12-13,

Central Sahara, 2; bibliography of, 467; British part in explora 20-24; caravan road, 318; drainage system of, 4, 28-34; al to French, 20, 22; guides of, 185, 186; mountain groups o rains in, 28; Roman penetration of, 322, 323, 324, 325, 3

Central Sudan, caravan route to, 7

Centre Peak, Termit, 448, 450

"Cercles," 41

Chad, Lake, 3, 21, 23, 266; caravan road, 7, 8, 320, 325, 326, 334, 335, 369; diversion of water from, 30; French expedi to, 25-6, 50-51; Lemta extend to, 345; track from Termit t

Chad area: Arab invasion of, 444; early home of the Lemta, 37 Tuareg migration into Air from, 376-7, 378, 379, 396, 40 445

Chad road, 7, 8, 320, 325, 326, 333, 334, 335, 369

Chanoine, Lieut., 26

Chariots, discussion of ancient use of, in Air, 318-19, 320, 321

Cheese, Tuareg, 157, 158

Chemical incrustation, line of valley marked by, 68

Chickens, 206

"Chief of the Market Place," 106

"Chief of the White People," 106

Childbirth among Tuareg, 179

Children, Tuareg, 174, 177-9; belong to the mother, 148-9; ed
of, 268, 400; naming of, 181; suckled late, 178-9

Chosroes, invasion of North Africa by, 375

Christianity: question of its existence in Air, 256-7, 363; forme
Berber religion, 273, 274; among the Tegama, 53, 54; pos
former religion of Tuareg, 275-8, 293-4; traces of its influe
among Tuareg, 275-6, 277, 278, 284-5, 289, 293-4

Christians, House of the, 312-13

Chudeau, R., 27, 32, 257, 468; on Assode, 301 *n.*[266]; *Le Saha*
Soudanais, 27 *n.*[30], 31 *n.*[34], 34-5, 41 *n.*[45], 94 *n.*[82], 1
[89],[91], 205, 402 *n.*[416]

"Cidamus, the people of," 336 *n.*[314]

Cillaba (Cilliba), 323

Cillala (Zuila), 112

Cinerite, Auderas basin, 34, 183

Circumcelliones, the, 12, 328

Circumcision, practised by Tuareg, 179

Cities, North African, caravan roads and sites of, 110, 111, 11

Cities of the Desert, 110-13, 114

Citroën Motor Expedition, 271 *n.*[239]

Clapperton, Captain H., 8, 20, 21; death of, 21; *Travels and Dis*
in Central Africa (Denham and Clapperton), 99 *n.*[85], 362,
[359], 368 *n.*[372], 371 *n.*[380], 374 *n.*[387], 413, 467

Classical authors, references in, possibly indicate early Tuareg,
bibliography of, 468

Clay amphoræ, grain stored in, 317

Climate, of Air, 28, 123; of the Sahara, 4-5

Cloth, native, 164, 166, 167, 194

Cochia, 404 *n.*[417]

Coins, Air, 221-2

Cold weather, encountered in Azawagh, 63, 167, 418; scantine
Tuareg dress for, 166-7

Colocynth, use of juice of, 180

Colour, used on houses of Agades, 92; not used in Tuareg dress
96

Colouring of Tuareg, 161-2, 173, 367, 460

Concubinage in Air, 170, 171; the caste system and, 136; impo
for noble women, 160, 171

Congo, French expedition from, 25, 26

Congress of Berlin, 25

Constantinople, delegation from Air seeks a Sultan from, 101,
104, 396-7; list of tribes sending the delegation, 397

Cooley, *Negroland of the Arabs*, 116 *n.*[106]

Copper mines, Tekadda, 452-3, 454

Coptic Christianity, influence of, in Air, 294, 363

Corippus, 207, 295, 327 *n.*[294], 357, 445, 468

Cornelius Balbus, 322, 323

Cornish, V., 66 *n.*[63]

Cortier: *D'une Rive à l'autre du Sahara*, 209 *n.*[198], 277 *n.*[247],
467; history of Ifoghas n'Adghar, 398-9; Geographical Mis
maps of Air, 27, 71, 131 *n.*[120], 156 *n.*[152], 183, 210 *n.*[2
214 *n.*[206], 215 *n.*[207], 218 *n.*[208], 238, 241, 311 *n.*[273],
422, 424-5, 454 *n.*[456], 466

Cosmetics used by Tuareg women, 173

Cotton cultivation, Air, 132, 227

Cottonest, Lieut., 10

Counting, Tuareg method of, 191

Courage of Tuareg, 11, 169-70, 236, 237, 354; of Tuareg wom
169-70

Cow-camels, 197, 201

Cowrie-shell currency discarded, 221

Cows, scarce in Air, 203

Crescentic type of sand dunes, 66-7, 68

Criminals, gaol for, Agades, 107

Cross, Tuareg use of, as ornament, 235, 276-7, 278, 289, 293;
Agades Cross, 44, 277, 283, 284; cross-hilted swords, 233,
276, 289; on pommel of saddle, 230, 276-7, 289; on shiel

Crows, camels attacked by, 199

Cruciform design, Tuareg use of, *see* Cross.

Crusaders, the, 233, 276

Cubes on women’s bracelets, 284

Currency, Air, 221-2

Currie, Sir J., 132 *n.*[121]

“Cursed,” the (Muhammad Askia), 410

Curzon, Lord, 279

Cydamus, 323

Cyrenaica: camels introduced into, 207; the Lebu in, 337; raid in classical times, 356; steppes and desert of, 335

“D type” Tuareg houses, 250, 251

Dabaga, 122, 125

Daggers, Tuareg, 234

Dala, King of Bornu, 374

Damagarim, 42, 43, 44, 48, 150, 218, 320, 361, 443, 446; dat Tuareg occupation of, 415 *n.*[432]

Dambansa, 46

Dambida, 46

Damergu, 23, 32, 41, 43, 44-62, 209, 309; an appanage of Air, Agades Cross in, 284; Barth in, 23; bush of, 45-6, 58-9, 44 cattle supplied from, 203; cultivation in, 47, 48, 132, 133, drainage system of, 46; French entry into, and events lead occupation of Air, 50-52; Fulani of, 16, 54, 55, 56-8, 203; geology of, 46; granary of Air, 47; hills of, 46-7; measures 221; negroid inhabitants of, 415; oryx hide shields from, 2 oxen used in, 203; population of, 48, 64; raiders in, 50, 51 189; rains in, 124; revolt, 1917, in, 85; Sanhaja in, 364, 4 villages of, 48

Tuareg of, 47-8, 52-3, 303, 400, 446; evacuated from Ai 360-61; their predominance in, 54-5; their migration into, 396, 404, 415; Sendal possibly ancestors of, 396; Sultans 47-8; tribes and sub-tribes of, 18 *n.*[18], 400, 426, 427, 42 436, 437, 438, 439-40

Dan Gudde, King of Gober, 392

Dan Kaba, 55; position of, 424

Dancing, Tuareg, 44, 272

Danda, ruler of the Imuzuraq, 50, 51

Dani, Muhammad, Sultan, 392

D’Anville, 336

Darfur, Tuareg in, 51

Date-palms: cultivation of, 131, 155, 216, 217, 239, 317; dispu ownership of, 298; scarcity of, 224

Dates, 160; date of ripening, 157; preserved, 160; trade in, 21

Daud, King of Kanem, 407

Daura, 41; people of, 363

Daza, the, 336

De la Roncière, Charles, 19 *n.*[19],[20]

Deformation of body not practised among Tuareg, 179

Dehkar, mentioned by Ibn Batutah, 453

Demmili, 47, 48

Denham, D., Oudney, and Clapperton expedition, 8, 20, 21; *Tr* *and Discoveries in Central Africa* (Denham and Clapperton), [85], 362, 363 *n.*[359], 368 *n.*[372], 371 *n.*[380], 374 *n.*[387], 467

Depopulation of Air, results of, 361

Descent, Tuareg system of, 103-4, 148-53, 373, 398

Desert between Air and Southland, 456

Desert, steppe and true, 2, 332, 333, 334

Desert vegetation, 64, 70, 226; hardiness of, 67; rain and, 124; Elakkos and Termit, 445, 446, 449

Desert warfare: small numbers involved in, 11; tactics of, 236-

Desiccation, of the Sahara, 4; of upper reaches of Niger, 30

Desplagnes: *Le Plateau Central Nigérien*, 261, 467

Devil, the, Tuareg belief in, 278

Dianous, Captain, 10

Dibbela well, 21

Dickson, 9

“Diffa” (reception), 272

Diodorus Siculus, 152, 468

Diom-Talras track, 451
Dirki, 413
Disease in Air, 178, 179-80
Diseases of camels, 199-201
Distance, no measure of, Air, 222
Distances covered by raiders, 188, 189-90
Divination, methods of, 281-2
Divorce among Tuareg, 176-7
Doctor, author as, 171-2, 178, 180, 186
Dogam village, 184
Dogam, Kel, 381, 432
Dogam, Mount, 33, 131, 156, 183, 213, 214, 215, 216, 432
Dogs: Air, 203, 205-6; eaten by Eastern Libyans, 295
Domestic animals, Air, 202-6
Donatist heresy, the, 328
Donkeys: Air, 202, 203-4; wild, 204
Doors of Tuareg houses, 245-6, 247, 277, 309
Drainage system of Air, 23, 28-31, 71, 76, 122-3, 183, 214-15,
    of Sahara, 3-4, 9, 28-33
Draughts, game of, 281
Drawings, rock, 263-5, 269, 315, 318, 319; of camel, 265; of o
    drawn vehicles, 321-2; of shield with cruciform design, 27
Dress, Tuareg, 14, 15, 95-6, 163-7, 177, 265, 289; simplicity o
    of women, 172
Drought, former administrative measures against, 47, 48
Drugs, Tuareg, 180
Drum as badge of office, 145
Drums, spirit, legends of, 278, 279, 300
Drums, Tuareg, 272
Dryness of air in the Sahara, 4
Dual administration of empire of Melle, 407-8
Dubreuil, 271 *n.*[239]
Duga, Kel, 432

Dûm Palm, People of the, 307, 398 *n.*[413], 432, 435

Dûm palms, 87, 122, 125, 131, 156, 158, 226; rope made of fr of, 224; sandals made of fronds of, 165; wood used in buil 88, 93, 245, 249

Duguwa dynasty, the, 372, 373, 375

Dunama I, 373

Dunama II, 374, 406

Dunes, sand, 4, 58, 62, 63-4, 66-7, 70, 442, 446, 447

Duveyrier, H., 8-9, 266, 271, 322; explorations and work of, 8 *Touareg du Nord* by, 9, 28-9, 54 *n.*[54], 169, 180, 282 *n.*[25 467; on Ahaggaren and Azger, 350-52, 353, 354, 355 *n.*[3 356; on Bir Gharama disaster, 10; on dogs of Air, 206; on taboos, 206; on the "Garamantian way," 203, 318-19, 320 324; on derivation of Imajegh, 457; on marriage system o Tuareg, 171; on origin of Oraghen, 347, 348; on religion Tuareg, 274, 275; on shields of Tuareg, 234 *n.*[215]; on T'i alphabet, 266

Dzianara, the, 397

"E type" of Tuareg houses, 250

"Early Period" rock drawings, 264

Earthenware, Tuareg, 160-61

Eastern Air, Kel Owi in, 394

Eastern Desert, roads across, 320

Eastern origin of camel, theory of, 207, 208

Eastern origin of the Libyans, probability of, 340

Eastern Sahara, 2-3; drainage system, 3

Ebesan, El Haj, 102-3

Economic issues between Kel Owi and Kel Geres, 390

Economics of Air, 133-4, 218-20

Education, Tuareg, 174, 177-8, 268, 400

Efaken, Mount, 156, 213

Efale, the guide, 125, 149, 187, 225, 320

Egeruen, position of, 424

Eghalgawen, 68, 69, 347, 412, 418, 451; position of, 424; vall

77 *n.*[72]; watering points, 76, 80, 114

Eghalgawen-T'in Wana massif, 71, 77, 78; fossil trees in, 259 *n*

Eghbaren, the, 428

Egypt: Arab conquest of, 404; invasions of, by Libyans and Sea People, 337, 340; matriarchate in, 152 *n.*[145]; raids into, classical times, 356; weights in, 222

Egyptian Coptic church, influence of, in Air, 294, 363

Egyptian oases, the, 334, 337

Egyptian paintings, of Libyans, 194, 265; figures like Tuareg o

Egyptian records, possible references to Tuareg in, 376, 462

El Golea, 9

El Suk, 394

El Suk, Kel, 355, 377

Elakkos, 42, 49, 51, 81, 357, 358, 442-8; as battle-ground, 396 442-3; bush of, 49, 58, 446, 447, 451; Camel Patrol of, 45 grain of, 444, 445; name of, its origin, 357, 445; oryx hide shields of, 235, 444; plain of, 442; rains in, 445; wells of, 447

Tuareg of, 51, 303, 307, 308, 370, 396, 400, 440; their migration into, 376, 377, 404, 415 *n.*[432]; their predomin in, 443, 444, 445

Elakwas (Elakkos), 357

Elar, Kel, 129, 437

Elattu, 96

Elazzas, hut foundations at, 262-3; valley, 216

Elijah, the cave of, 321 *n.*[280]

Elijinen, the, Tuareg tales of, 278-81; amulets against, 282

Elmiki (Immikitan), the, 429

Elmina, Portuguese factory at, 409

Elnoulli, 241

"Em" names, tribal, 130

Emagadezi people, the, 107, 117, 130, 410, 440

Emallarhsen, the, 432

Emilía, 243

Emirates of Nigeria, 37, 38, 41; French administration of, 42; s
Daura, Hadeija, Kano, Katsina, Sokoto.

Emululi, 239, 241

En Nitra, the, 350

“Enad” (smith), 155, 228-9, 230

Enclosures: funerary monuments, 260-62, 263; places of worsh
258-9, 292-3; round Tuareg houses, 250, 251, 262-3

“English Hill,” the, 313

English tendency to extol obscure races, 401

Ennedi, 92

Entrepôts of the desert, 110, 111

Envelopes, leather, 228

Equatorial Africa, 2, 21; Arab pressure in, 376; French, annexe
operations against French in, 92; rainfall belt of, 4; Tuare
migration to, 375

Erarar, Kel, 436

Erarar n’Dendemu, 156, 214, 292, 293

Erdi, 335

Erosion in valleys of Air, 34; of sandstone formations, 77, 79,

“Ers” (eresan), 213

“Ers, Rodd’s,” 243

Esbet, 364 *n.*[362]

Escherha, the, 433

Etaras valley, 183, 243

Ethical standards, Tuareg, pre-Moslem source of, 296

Ethnology of Air, 28

Eti, Kel, 412

Etteguen, the, 429

Eunuchs, negro, 179

European affairs, knowledge of, in Sahara, 266

European penetration, of the Sudan, 36-7, 38, 41-2; of Tuareg
country, 8-14, 19-27

European salt competing with Bilma product, 219

Europeans, Tuareg hostility to, 23, 24, 154; Holy Men and, 29
Evacuation of Air during revolt, 113, 121-2, 302, 309, 360-61,
Exchange, rates of, 221, 222
Exorcism of spirits, 280
Exploration of Tuareg country, 8-14, 19-27
Eye troubles common in Air, 179
Eyes, Tuareg, colour of, 161
Ezelu valley, 429
Ezelu, Kel, 429

Faces of Tuareg: man's, seen without veil, 187; women's, daub with earth or ochre, 173
Factions in Libyan villages, 338-9
Fadé, 23, 317, 319, 320, 321, 399, 400, 427
Fadé, Kel, 169, 318, 399, 400, 431
Fadeangh, Barth's name for Fadé, 23 *n.*[25]
Fagoshia, position of, 424
Fairness of skin among Tuareg, 161-2; a social distinction, 162
Faji, Tuareg village, 39
Faken, Mount, 213
Falezlez, Wadi, 30-31
Fall, 51
Family system, Tuareg: authority of heads of families, 147; fen descent, 103-4, 148-53, 373, 398
Famine, the War of, 414
Faodet, 253, 254, 315-16; position of, 425
Faodet, Kel, 430, 431
Farak, 50, 51, 52, 54, 59, 60, 62, 439; disasters at, 59; hill nor 60; water supply at, 59
Fardi, Wadi, 3
Fareg, Wadi, 3
Fares, 304, 314, 316, 319
Fares, Kel, 149, 304, 428, 435

Fasher, El, 51

Fashi, 32, 68, 160, 191, 218, 219, 220, 315, 413, 414, 443, 45

Fashi road, 320

Fatimite era, the, 346

Fatness of Tuareg women, 118, 172, 406; a sign of affluence, 1

Fauna of Air, 27-8

Feast of the Sheep, Sidi Hamada, 95-7

Feast of the Veil, 289

Feasts, religious, 274-5

Fedala, the, 437

Fedekel, Kel, 437

Feet, insensitive skin of Tuaregs’, 165

Feitei, Kel, 433

Female descent, rule of, among Tuareg, 103-4, 148-53, 373, 3
kings of Kanem, 373

Femmes douairières, Tuareg, 169

Ferwan, Kel, 102, 104, 119, 129, 150, 415, 441; described as heathen, 258, 386; Imghad of, 139, 398; numbers of, 427; of, 395, 396, 398-9, 427; among original invaders of Air, 396, 398, 399, 400; tribes and sub-tribes of, 427-8; wome status of, 174

Festivals, Tuareg, 181, 274-5

Fevers, value of quinine against, 178

Fez, 343, 452, 453

Fezzan, the, 8, 9, 20, 112, 145, 334, 335; Ahaggaren and Azge migrate into, 350; Arab conquest of, 325, 376; Azger of, 3 354; British geographical work in, 8, 20; cattle trade betw and, 203; date palms of, 317; exploration of, 8, 9, 20, 248 French and British factions in, 22; anti-French and -British activities in, during war, 84, 92; Hawara of, 347, 379; ho 248, 254, 255; conquered by Kanem, 112, 374, 406; Kel I of, 400; Lemta Tuareg of, 376, 403, 445; oases of, 6; Okba invasion of, 376; Oraghen of, 347; racial mixture in, 16; r of, 12, 13, 187, 188, 350; road from Air to, 318-21; Roma occupation of, 322, 323, 324, 326, 403, 445; wheat expor from Air to, 133

Fezzan, Eastern, the, 112, 335; story of compulsory migration
366, 375

Fezzan, Southern, mountains of, 2, 3, 4

Fezzan mountains, unknown area between Air and, 32

Fezzanian branch of Tuareg, 254

Fida, Abul, 374 *n.*[389]

Fire-making, nomads’ method of, 212

Firing, camel diseases treated by, 201

Fish, taboo on, 294

Flagged road (the “Garamantian way”), its existence discussed
318-20

Flammand: *Les Pierres Ecrites*, 264 *n.*[232]

Flat arm-rings, 286

Flatters, Colonel, 26; French expedition under, 9-10, 236

Flies, a pest, during rains in Air, 120-21, 125, 126

Flora of Air, 27

Flour, millet, preparation of, 159-60

Flowers rare in Air, 226

Fonfoni, wells filled in at, 451

Food, Tuareg, 157-60, 174, 211, 212

Food taboos, totemic, 294-5

Footgear, Tuareg, 164-6

Foreign Affairs, Tuareg Minister for, 106, 145

Foreign origin and servile status, 354

Foreign races, administration of, by empire of Melle, 407-8

Fort Laperrine, 12

Fort Motylinski, 12, 13

Fort Pradie, 51, 92

Fortified settlements, buildings of type of, 389

Fossil trees, specimens of, 81-2, 259

Foucauld, Charles de, 11-12, 13-14; on derivation and use of t
word Imajegh, 457, 458, 459; Tuareg dictionary by, 12 *n.*
269, 271, 454 *n.*[456], 467; on Tuareg religion, 275

Foureau, F., 36, 299, 467

Foureau-Lamy Expedition, 26-7, 36, 50, 51, 60, 86, 99, 114 n. 143, 290, 316, 414 n.[429], 416; observations taken from, 424-5

Franks, emigration from North Africa, 376 n.[390]

Freeman, H. Stanhope, 267, 467

French, the: African exploration and expansion by, 9-14, 25-7, penetration of Tuareg country by, 9-14, 26-7, 350, 352; occupation and annexation of Air by, 26, 27, 50-52, 99, 1 [104]

books destroyed by action of, 361, 385; Camel Corps of, 11, 68, 84, 188, 189, 193, 198, 218, 219, 446, 450-51; co policy of, 42, 360-61, 416; evacuation policy of, 360-61, 3 forts of, 12, 13, 86, 91, 118, 218, 316, 317, 320; maps of 27, 65, 68, 71, 131 n.[120], 156 n.[152], 183, 210 n.[200], 2 [206], 215 n.[207], 218 n.[208], 238, 241, 311 n.[273], 314, 424-5, 454 n.[456], 466; mosque desecrated by, 385; Niger indirectly defended by, 85; sedentarism encouraged by, 1 seeds supplied by, 132; slavery abolished by, 134 n.[122]

Tuareg and, hostilities between, 9-11, 13, 26, 51, 52, 11 [104], 236, 328; migration of some tribes from, 51, 350, 3 pacific counsels of others, 26-7, 51, 52, 414 n.[429]; the 19 revolt against, 39, 59, 60, 69, 70, 84-5, 86, 93, 98, 121-2, 169, 185, 205, 302, 309, 420

French works on Air and the Tuareg, 14, 466, 467, 468. *See un names of authors mentioned on these pages.*

Frobenius, 264 n.[232]

Fugda, 217, 250, 439

Fulani, the, of Damergu, 16, 54, 55, 56-8, 203; Agades Cross a 284; Hausa and, feud between, 42-3; houses of, 89; langua 118, 155; musical instruments of, 44; a noble race, 56-7; i Punch and Judy show, 56; tradition of return to the East a 58

Fulani, Bororoji, 57-8

Fulani, Rahazawa, 57

Fulani Empire of Sokoto, the, 37, 57, 363, 415

Funerals, Tuareg, 181-2

Funerary inscriptions, absence of, 260, 263
Funerary monuments, North African, 260-62
“Fura,” 157, 305
Furniture, 309; household, Tuareg, 229-30

Gabes, 337
Gadé, Mount, 77 *n.*[73], 79, 85
Gado, the, 100
Gagho (Gao), 345
Gago (Gao), 332 *n.*[303], 404 *n.*[417], 445, 452
Gall, 52
Game: Auderas, 184, 213; Elakkos, 446; Damergu, 43; Termit, 450; T’in Wana, 81
Gamram, 47, 49-50, 52, 60, 334 *n.*[309], 412, 413, 438, 439; it amenities, 49; Belkho’s attack on, 75; extract from diary w at, 420-21
Gangara, 44, 46, 48, 57, 97; position of, 424
Ganziga, the, 331, 332, 334
Gao, 110, 318, 332, 369, 374 *n.*[389], 404, 405, 445; Agades as entrepôt for, 411; Aulimmiden capture, 414; centre of gol trade, 411; decline of, 411; history of, 407, 408, 409; Ibn Batutah in, 345, 452, 456; Moors occupy, 411
Gao, King of, tribute from Air to, 410
Gaogao, (Gao), 345, 452
Garama, 112, 306, 323, 326, 436; the “Garamantian way,” 31 321, 324
Garamantes, the, 16, 318, 321, 322, 323, 326, 354, 356; ox-dr chariots of, 203, 208, 318, 320, 321-2, 324; suggested descendants of, 335-6
Garari, 44
Garazu, Ikazkazan of, 436, 443-4
Gardens, cultivation of, Air, 131, 132; carried on by negro slav 135
Garet valley, 418, 429, 434
Garet, Kel, (of Kel Geres), 380, 381, 434

Garet, Kel, (of Kel Tadek), 429

Garet n'Dutsi, Kel, 434

Gautier, E. F., 261-2, 468; *La Conquête du Sahara*, 10 *n.*[8], 467
Sahara, 5 *n.*[2], 27 *n.*[30], 31 *n.*[33]

Gawgawa, 345

Gazelle, 43, 81, 184, 204, 213, 446, 449, 450

Gedala, the, 343

Gedeyenan, the, 428

Geographical tribal names, 128, 129, 130

Geography, Tuareg knowledge of, 265-6

Geography of the Sahara, 2-5

Geres, Kel, 17, 53; Air invaded by, 256, 378, 380-82, 405-6; le
for Southland, 65, 143, 366, 390-91, 392, 415; and Amen
installation, 100, 146, 384, 391, 392, 393, 397; Aulimmid
defeat, 391, 415; camels, white, of, 196; a Hawara people
82, 348 *n.*[335], 387; houses of, 251, 253, 254; Islam intro
by, 256, 258; Itesan and, connection between, 370, 373, 3
380, 392, 393, 397, 398; Kel Owi defeat and displace, 37
383, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 415; tribal record of, 362; t
of, 65, 381, 422-3; wars of, 388, 390, 391-2, 415; women
heads of villages of, 169

Gergesenes, Libyans related to, 339

Gerigeri, 455

"Germa," root of many place names, 306

German intrigues in North Africa during the War, 12-13, 93

Gezula, the, 343, 349

Gh sound, difficulty of transliterating, 271, 350 *n.*[338]

Ghadames, 7, 8, 9, 21, 110, 323, 335, 336 *n.*[314]; population
divination by women of, 281

Ghadamsi dialect, 267, 270

Ghamarama, 412

Ghana, kingdom of, 404, 405, 409

Gharama, Bir, 9-10, 236

Gharnathi, El, 330; *see* Leo Africanus.

Gharus, 438

Gharus, Kel, 139, 143, 150, 308, 438

Gharus n'Zurru, 69, 74

Ghat, 7, 9, 20, 23, 24, 114, 145, 185, 335, 390; difficulty of transcribing the word, 271; caravan road to, 30, 318; cara roads from, controlled by Azger, 354; cattle trade with, 2 development of, 111-12, 113; Holy Men of, 280; houses o Oraghen in, 347; population of, 113; race of, original, 15 raiders from, 12, 13; religion of, recent conversion to Isla 257-8; Romans in, 322, 323, 326; spirits at, 280

Tuareg of, female succession among, 151-2; Lemta, 403

Ghati camels, 195-6; brands of, 201-2

Ghela, Kel, 351, 373

Gheshwa, Mount, 33; volcanic cone, 241, 242

Ghodala, El (Guddala), 413; ruling family of, 103

Ghosts, Tuareg belief in, 278-9, 281

Ghudet, 320, 321

"Ghussub" water, 19, 157, 305

Gibbon quoted, 328

Gidjigawa, 51

Giga, Kel, 80, 429

Ginea, Mount, 47, 51

Giraffes, 43, 264, 446

Girls, Tuareg, freedom of, 173, 174-5

Gissat hills, 214, 428

Glyphs, rock, *see* Rock drawings.

Goats, Air, 203, 204, 205

Goats, People of the (Kel Ulli), 52, 129, 307-8, 438

Goatskins, 223, 224; decorated, 227, 228; for water, 232

Gober, Kingdom of, 363, 367, 368, 403, 405; Air receives tribu from, 383; Air at war with, 392; chiefs of, Copts, 294; Kel migrate to, 390, 391, 392; Songhai occupy, 409

Goberawa, the, 363, 403; in Air, 363, 364, 365, 368; driven fr 379, 381, 405; the Itesan and, 379

God, Tuareg words for, 278

Goethe, 91

“Gogdem,” 333-4

Gogo (Gao), 345, 374 n.[389]

Gold Coast, British penetration of, 36

Gold currency, disappearance of, 221

Gold trade in Sudan, 411, 414

Gorset, Mount, 211

Gourara, 332, 334

Gourds, 132; rare in Air, 161

Government of the Air Tuareg, 144-8; of the tribal units, 147-

Grain: from Damergu exported, 47; dishes made from, 157-8; Elakkos, 444; grinding of, 159-160; measures of, 220-21; reserves of, 48

Grain pits, Assode, 302

Granary of Air, Damergu as, 47

Granite formations, Air, 78, 119, 125

“Grape design” on Tuareg pottery, 161

Grasses, seeds of, ground and eaten, 158

Graves, Tuareg, 181, 259-63; peculiar form for a smith, 229

Great Bear, Tuareg name for, 226 n.[212]

Great Bend, the, 30

Great South Road, the, 80; *see* Kel Owi road and Tarei tan Kel

Green leather and silver, saddles ornamented with, 230-31

Grimaldi race, survivors of, 364 n.[362]

Gsell: *Histoire de l’Afrique du Nord*, 173 n.[168], 207 n.[194], 20 467

Guddala, El, 413, 464; ruling family of, 103

Guenziga, the, 349

Guides, 72, 81, 125, 149, 185-7, 225-6, 320, 447; *see* Efale, Is Kelama, Sattaf, Sidi, T’ekhmedin.

Guinea coast, Portuguese factory on, 409

Guinea corn, 47, 131, 133; cakes of, 157

Guinea-fowl, 43, 125, 126

Guinea-worm, 180
Gulbi n’Kaba, the, 33, 43, 44, 46, 71
Gulbi n’Maradi, the, 33
Guliski, 50, 60, 451; position of, 424; rainstorm at, 83
Guma, Muhammad, Sultan, 392, 465
“Gumrek,” 334 *n.*[309]
Gundai hills, 308, 309, 313
Gure, 42, 43, 44, 442
Gurfautan, the, 433
Gurzil (the sun-god), 295

Haardt, 271
“Hád” plant, 70
“Hadanarang” (Ihadanaren), the, 128
Hadeija, 21, 41
Haggar, French form of Ahaggar, 128, 454; Ibn Khaldun’s etyn
of, 345, 346, 347, 353
“Hair,” *see* Air.
Hair of Tuareg, 161; of children, 177; untidiness in, an abomir
117
Haj Road, the, 20, 318
Hakar (Ahaggar), Ibn Batutah in, 453, 454, 455, 456
Hakluyt Society reprint of Leo Africanus, editors of, 331
Halévy, J., on Libyan script, 267
Halo, solar, an evil omen, 296
Ham, 339
Hamed el Rufai, Sultan, 99
Hammad, Muhammad, Sultan, 103, 109, 392, 464, 465
Hammada el Homra, the, 322, 324
Hamid ibn Yesel, 337
Handful as unit of capacity, 220-21
Hannekar, 59, 60, 72, 74, 81, 418; track to Agades, 62
Hanoteau, A.: grammar of Temajegh by, 266, 269, 271, 467; o

MZGh root, 458-9

Harris Papyrus, the, 6

Hassan ibn Muhammad el Wezaz el Fazi, 330; *see* Leo Africanu

Hassanein Bey, 3, 336

Hatita camel mark, 202

Hats, Kano conical, 166

Haunted places, Air, 278-9

Hausa, the term, 16 *n.*[17]; called “black,” 162; commercial ge the people, 38; feud with Fulani, 42-3; houses of, 89; not negroes, 363

Hausa language, 16, 17, 40-41, 118, 154

Hausaland, 218; conquered by Bornu, 412; Fulani ascendancy 57, 415; Goberawa withdraw into, 379; Songhai occupati 409

“Hawar, people of,” 325

Hawara, the, 65, 270, 274, 325 *n.*[290], 341, 359, 385 *n.*[405]; ancestors of the Ahaggaren tribes, 270, 345, 349, 359, 38 “Arabisation” of, 346-7; Auriga the same as, 341, 343, 34 349, 387; home of, 345; Ibn Khaldun on, 341, 343, 345, 3 347, 353, 379; Kel Geres descended from, 65, 82, 348 *n.*[3 387; division of Libyan family, 341, 343, 346, 347; Lemta and, 345, 346, 348, 353; not all Tuareg, 346-7

Hawarid origin of the Lemta, 345-6, 353, 359

Hawk’s head as amulet, 282

Head-cloths, Arab use of, 286

Head-piece, camel’s, 276

Head-ropes, camel’s, 193, 224, 228

Head-stones on graves, 260

Headmen, village, 127-8, 131, 339

Heaven, Tuareg belief in, 278

Height of Tuareg, 163

Hell, Tuareg belief in, 278

Henna, use of, 173

Herding, live-stock, 135-6

Hereditary principle rare among Tuareg, 151

Hernia frequent among Tuareg, 180

Herodotus, 7, 176, 206, 208, 281, 282, 295, 324, 365, 369, 45

Heskura, the, 343, 349

"Hill of the Christians," the, 313

Hillali, Abu Zeid el, invasion of North and Central Africa by, 3 404

Himyarite tribes, 341; invasion of, 342

Himyer, 341, 371

Historical works, native, 360, 361-2

History, Tuareg knowledge of, 265, 360, 361-2

Hobble ropes, 224

Hoggar, French form of Ahaggar, 128

Hole of Bayazid, the, legend of, 281

Holy Books, niches in houses for, 247

Holy Men, 289, 290, 293, 316, 355, 357, 405; amulets manufa by, 282; children named by, 181; divination by, 281; as exorcisers, 280; raids on Aulimmiden forbidden by, 190

Holy tribes, 290-91, 306, 355, 357, 437, 438, 439, 440

Hornemann, F. C., expedition of, 8, 19-20, 336; on date of arri Kel Owi in Air, 383, 386; on the Tegama, 53; on Tuareg ascendancy in Gober, 392; work by, 19 *n.*[22], 336, 467

Horses, Air, 202

Hospitality, Tuareg laws of, 210, 237

House of the Christians, 312-13

House-flies, country infested by, during rains, 120, 121, 125

Household duties, Tuareg, 174

Household slaves, 134, 136

Houses: Central African, 87, 89; Northern Nigerian, 87-8, 89; Sudanese, 87, 88, 90; Tuareg, various types of, 89, 90, 92, 184, 239, 240-41, 244-55, 256, 302, 309, 310-11, 314, 31 attributed to the Itesan, 239, 244-6, 251, 252, 253, 254, 3 381, 389, 393; fortified type, 389

Huart, C.: *Arabic Literature*, 292 *n.*[256]

Human figure, rock drawings of, 265

Hume, King of Kanem, 372; *see* Beni Hume.

Huts, Tuareg, 184, 253, 254; stone circles round, 262-3; on rai
plinths, 262-3

“I names,” tribal, 128, 130, 139, 303-4, 306, 352, 400, 430; lo

Iabrubat (Iburuban), the, 434

Ialla (God), 278

Ibandeghan, the, 52

Ibanderan, the, 437

Iberdianen, the, 428

Iberkom, 316

Iberkom, Kel, 437

Iberkoran (Aulimmiden), the, 379

Ibn Abd el Hakim, 325 *n.*[289]

Ibn Assafarani, 369

Ibn Batutah, 18, 19, 452, 468; account of Air by, 18, 19, 452-3
Agades not mentioned by, 116; his journey, 114, 406, 452
female descent, 103, 151; on the Mesufa, 175-6, 364, 405

Ibn Ghania, 343, 407

Ibn Khaldun, Abu Zeid Abd el Rahman, 151 *n.*[141], 293, 294 *n*
295, 325 *n.*[289], 330, 337-43, 371, 377, 468; classificatio
Libyans by, 338-43; on the divisions of the Muleththemin,
379; on the origin of the Tuareg, 343-4, 345, 346, 347, 34
379

Ibogelan, the, 351

Ibrahim, Sultan, 464

Ibrahim Dan Sugi, 99

Ibram, Chief of the Tegama, 53

Iburuban, the, 434

Ibuzahil, 102, 104

Ice in the Sahara, 4

Idakka, Kel, 438

Ideleyen, the, 428

Idemkiun, the, 441

Idenan, the, founders of Timbuctoo, 407

Idikel, position of, 424

I’dinet n’sheggarnén, Barth’s term for Tuareg, 460

Ido well, 450

Idris, King of Bornu, 410

Idris Alawoma (Ansami), King of Bornu, 412, 413, 414

Idrisi, El, 337, 369, 374 *n.*[389]

“Iet,” Tuareg letter, 276

Ifadalen, the, 397, 400, 438; Damergu, 440

Ifadeyen, the, 60, 65, 74, 80, 82, 191, 209, 395, 428, 431, 436 Damergu, 440; literacy of, 268, 400; nomadism of, 400; o of, 399-400; wells attributed to, 74

Ifagarwal, the, 437

“Ifarghan, village of,” 156 *n.*[150]

Iferuan, 26, 114, 115, 122, 129, 189, 218, 246, 290, 302, 308, 315, 317, 418; French fort at, 316; houses at, 248; Kel Fer move from, 389; Kel Ferwan named after, 395, 427; positi 424 *n.*[435], 425; rains in, 123, 124; roads meeting at, 318 valley, 258

Iferuan, Kel (not Kel Ferwan), 437

Iferuan-Ghat track, 185

Ifli, Wadi, 452 *n.*[449]

Ifoghas, the, 52-3, 54, 254, 327, 394, 428, 441; of the Azger, 1 [18]; of Damergu, 18 *n.*[18], 80, 439; a holy tribe, 355, 357 probably Lemta, 355-6, 357, 358

Ifoghas n’Adghar, 18, 52, 398-9

Ifoghas of the Mountain (Ifoghas n’Adghar), 18, 52, 398-9

Ifrikiya, 325, 341; defended by Queen Kahena against Arabs, 1 265; the Hawara in, 345

Ifrikos, 341, 371

Ifuraces, the, 327, 356, 357, 358, 439

“Ifurfurzan,” colour of camels, 196

Igademawen, the, 243, 306, 436

Igdalen, the, 162, 355, 380, 394, 395, 400, 441; of Damergu, 4
holy tribe, 290; Imghad among, 394; their migration into
373, 378, 380, 394, 395

Igedeyenan, the, 428

Igermaden, the, 146, 243, 303, 306, 436; chief of, *see* Belkho; massacre of, 191; tribes and sub-tribes of, 436

Igerzawen, the, 437

Ighaghar basin, 9, 10, 28

Ighaghrar valley, 156 *n.*[152], 214

Ighazar basin, the, 23, 26, 34, 241 *n.*[217], 264, 308, 315, 316,
437; evacuated during revolt, 122; Kel Owi occupy, 308, 3
427; measures used in, 221; palm trees of, 316, 317; villag
316, 318; wheat cultivation in, 133

Ighazar, Kel, 122, 436-7, 441

Ighazar n'Agades, 78

Ighelablaban, 239

Ighelaf wells, 451

Ighelaf, Kel, 60, 433

"Ighillan" (measure of length), 222

Ighlab (Ighelaf), Kel, 433

Ighzan, 33

Igidi, desert of, 332, 333-4

Igidi, the, 358

Iguendianna, the, 428

Igululof, 309-11; houses in, 248

Igululof, Kel, 304, 435

Igururan, the, 304, 435

Ihadanaren, the, 128, 354

Ihagarnen, the, 162 *n.*[156]

"Ihaggar" (Ahaggar), 128

Ihaggaren, the, 162 *n.*[156]

Ihehawen, the, a holy tribe, 355

Ihrayen spring, 62, 70, 71

Ihrsan, the spirits of, 279

Ijanarnen, the, 395, 433

Ijaranen, the, 378, 394, 395, 400, 403, 433

Ikadeen, the, 351

Ikademawen (Igademawen), the, 436

Ikaradan, the, 117, 430, 441

Ikawkan, the, 428

Ikazkazan, the, 128, 145, 169, 290, 303, 307-8, 318, 437-8; in Damergu, 52, 303, 436, 440; in Elakkos, 303, 307, 308, 4 Imghad of, called heathen, 273; tribes and sub-tribes of, 5 307-8, 437-8, 441

Ikelan, the, 134, 135, 136, 155

Ikerremoïn, the, 351

Ilaguantan, the, 357, 358

Ilagwas (Elakkos), 445

Ilagwas, the, 370

Ilasgwas, the, Elakkos Tuareg identified with, 445

Ilemtin, the, 355-6, 358

Ilettan, 404

“Illeli,” 459

Imajegh: the MZGh root of the word, 457-62; a caste appellati 458, 459, 460

Imajeghan (nobles, *q.v.*), 15, 170, 171, 354-5; Ahaggaren, 350- 352; Azger, 348, 354-5; dark colouring of, 162; diminishi numbers of, 150; marriage tribute payable to, 141; among Owi, 144 *n.*[134]; relations of Imghad and, 137, 138, 139,

Imajeghan n’Arab, the, 459

Imam, the, Agades, 96, 97

Imanen, the, 354, 355, 400, 432; affinity with the Itesan, 384-

Imanen Kings of Azger, 348, 352, 353

Imanen women, legendary mothers of Kel Owi tribes, 384, 39

Imanghassaten, the, 354

Imaqoaran, the, 52, 395, 396, 397, 398, 400, 431

Imarsutan, the, 52, 304, 435; Kel Tagei of, 398, 435

Imaslagha, the, 134, 303, 304, 314; tribes and sub-tribes of, 1

303-4, 435-6

Imasrodang, the, 129, 303, 306, 436; tribes and sub-tribes of,
306, 436-7, 440, 441

“Imawal” (part of the Veil), 287, 288

Imazir (form of Imajegh), 457

Imettrilalen, the, 354

Imezegzil, the, 303, 384, 395, 400; tribes and sub-tribes of, 42

Imghad (serfs), 15, 105, 128, 137-8, 142, 351; Barth’s error regarding, 461 *n.*[475]; categories of, 138-9; concubinage a
138-9; dark colouring of, 162, 366; Imajeghan and, relatic
between, 137, 138, 139, 140-43; among Kel Owi, 144 *n.*[1
lists showing tribes of, 427-31, 435-40; negroid inhabitant
Air as, 138, 365-6; nobles, conquered, as, 138, 394, 460; c
of, 137-8, 139, 365-6, 394, 460; prosperity of, 137, 142; r
types in, 137, 138; slaves rise to be, 135; status of, 105, 1
150; veils, distinguishing, worn by some, 139-40

Imi n’Aghil, 247

Imi n’Ataram, 247

Imi n’Innek, 247

Imi n’Tasalgi, 247

Immakkorhan (Imaqoaran), the, 431

Immedideran, the, 307, 437; founders of Timbuctoo, 407

Immidir, Wadi, 31

Immikitan, the, 243, 303, 304, 371, 429, 443; of Assatartar, 4
Elakkos, 370, 440, 443; name used for Tuareg, 396; one o
original five tribes, 370, 378, 394, 395-6, 397, 400, 429,
tribes and sub-tribes of, 429-30

Imohagh (form of Imajegh), 457

Imohaq (form of Imajegh), 457

Imóshag (form of Imajegh), 457, 459

Imuzurak, the (Ikazkazan), 438

Imuzurak, the (Kel Ferwan), 50, 52, 428; hostilities with Frenc
52

Imuzuran, the, 428

In Abbagarit, position of, 425

In Allaram, position of, 425
In Asamed, 26, 30, 31, 33, 54, 59, 61, 62, 123; filled in, 60
In Azawa, 260, 317, 318, 354, 455, 456
In Bodinam, 240
In Gall, 114, 189, 317, 318, 402, 441, 456; position of, 424
In Gall, Kel, 441
In Gezzam, position of, 425
In Kakkan, position of, 425
In Salah, 30, 111
In Wadjud, 430
Inafagak valley, 61
Inardaf, the, 433
Independent tribes, Kel Owi, 438-9
Indigo cloth, Tuareg dress made of, 163, 164, 177; the Veil ma 140, 287
Indigo plant, 132
Indigo-stained skin as protection from sun, 163
Industries, Tuareg, 131, 164-6, 174, 227-30, 231, 277, 310; in women's hands, 174, 227
Inemba Kel Emoghi, the, 350
Inemba Kel Tahat, the, 351
Infant mortality high among Tuareg, 178
Infanticide, 175
Inheritance and succession, matriarchal tradition in, 151-3; of women's property, 168
Inisilman (Holy Men), 54, 154, 290, 291; Azger tribes of, 355; Holy Men and Holy tribes.
Innek, Kel, 129, 369; first Tuareg to enter Air, 254, 369, 370, 397, 398, 400; sub-tribe of the Itesan, 370, 398, 432
Innek, Kel (unlocated), 441
Inscriptions: on arm rings, 286; on graves, 260; on rocks, 213, 264, 268-9, 271, 315, 360
Insect pests during rains in Air, 120-21, 125-6
Installation of Amenokal, 99-100, 103, 108, 109, 379, 383, 39

397, 432
Intadeini, 434
Intadeini, Kel, 434
Intayet, 430
Inter-breeding in camels, result of, 196-7
Intirza, Kel, 307
Intirzawen, Kel (Tetmokarak), 433; (Kel Owi), 435, 436
Inwatza, 418
Inzerak, 214, 215
Ir n’Allem, 122, 365
Iralghawen (Eghalgawen), 347
Irawattan, the, 427
Irawellan (outdoor slaves), 134, 135, 155; numbers of, 402
Iraz, Sultan, 406 *n.*[422]
Irejanaten, the, 151
Ireshshumen, the, 351
Irkairawan, the, 434
Irmakaraza, the, 434
“Irolangh,” 134
Iron in well, alleged effect of, 453
Iron-working, Tuareg, 229
Irratemat (sandals), 165 *n.*[159]
Irrigation, Air, 131, 132, 133, 239
Isabel (Izubahil), wife of first Sultan of Agades, 102, 104
Isagelmas valley, 80, 82
Isakarkaran, the, 428
Ischia, lava flows on, 242
Ishaban, Kel, 355
Isherifan, the (of Gamram), 50, 52, 60, 439; a holy tribe, 290, Belkho’s defeat of, 50, 75, 440
Isherifan, the (Tetmokarak), 433
Ishnegga, the guide, 72, 81
Islam: introduction of, into Air, 256-8; Maliki sect of, 291-2;

matriarchate modified by, 152; new spirit in, 12, 13; Tuar conversion to, and lax practice of, 273, 274, 290, 291, 29 324-5; women's position under, 152, 168, 170, 174

Issala, wells of, 9

Istambul (Constantinople), 101, 266

Italian occupation of Tripolitania, and Tuareg movements, 8

Itesan, the, 109, 214, 253, 394, 406; original invaders of Air, 253, 254, 370, 373-4, 378, 379, 380, 381, 395, 400, 432; Air for Southland, 366, 373-4, 377, 392, 393, 398, 432; a election of the Amenokal, 100, 103, 109, 379, 391, 393, 432; the Goberawa and, 379; houses attributed to, 239, 2 251, 252, 253, 254, 377-8, 381, 389, 393; "Kel" names an origin of, 378, 380, 381, 398; connection between the Kel and, 370, 373, 378, 380, 392, 393, 397, 398; migration westward of, 251, 252, 377, 389, 398, 413; among the Sa 377; tribes and sub-tribes of, 380-81, 398, 432-3; wells attributed to, 300, 377, 378

Ittegen, the (Kel Tadek), 429; (independent), 438

Itziarrame, the, 432

Iuraghen, the, 347

Iwarwaren, the, 162

Izagaran (Izagharan), the, 52, 397, 400, 440

Izagarnen ("the red ones"), name for Tuareg, 162 *n.*[156]

Izagheran, the, 52

Izar, Sultan, 406

Izarza, the, 430-31

Izarzaran, the, Damergu, 440

Izenan, the, 434

Izeyyakan, the, 303, 431, 435

"Izghan," 117

Izirza, Kel, 429

Izubahil (Isabel), wife of first Sultan of Agades, 102, 104

Izumzumaten, the, 429

Jackals, 125

Jado oasis, 320, 321, 326, 334

Jaghbub, 3

Jajiduna, 47, 48; French fort at, 51

Jalo, 3

Janet, 12, 53, 185

Jauf, 347 *n.*[333]

Jawan, 325

Jean, Lieut. C., 27, 238, 387; *Les Touareg du Sud-Est* by, 14, 28 [50], 94 *n.*[82], 101 *n.*[88], 102 *n.*[89],[91], 107 *n.*[98], 120 *n* 174 *n.*[169], 274 *n.*[245], 281 *n.*[251], 390 *n.*[407], 468; Aga occupied by, 52; on Assode, 301; astronomical observatio made by, 422, 424, 425; on Bornu wars with Air, 413; on Egyptian influence in Air, 363 *n.*[360]; on French colonial 416; on the houses of Bagezan, 240-41; live-stock census 204; on Kel Geres invasion and evacuation of Air, 380, 39 date of arrival of Kel Owi in Air, 257 *n.*[225], 382, 386; on of mosques of Air, 256, 257; on polygamy in Air, 170-71; population of Air, 402; on tribal origins and organisation, 387, 393, 395, 426, 427, 428-31, 435-6, 439-41, 443-41; sending delegation to Constantinople, list given by, 397; o Tuareg invasion of Air, and its date, 256, 362, 371, 382, 3 404; on Tuareg of Damergu and Elakkos, 415 *n.*[432], 443,

Jedala (Jadala), the, 331, 343, 348, 349

Jekarkaren, the, 428

Jenne, 409, 411

“Jenun” (Jinn), 278 *n.*[249], 280

Jerboa considered unclean, 294

Jerma, 112, 306, 321, 323, 325, 436

Jewellers, Agades, 229

Jews, “Berber” tribes as, 294; massacre of, in Tuat, 291, 292

Jinns: amulets against, 282; Tuareg tales of, 278-81

Joalland, Lieut., 50

Jodar, Basha, 411

John, Byzantine general, 327

John (Yunis), first Sultan of Agades, 102, 103, 104, 463

Jokto, the, 412-13

Juba, 206

Judaism in North Africa, 294

Justice, system of, Agades, 107, 110

Kadhi, the, Agades, 96, 107; house of, 92

Kaffardá valley, 63

Kahena, Queen, 170, 265, 294

Kahir (Air), 406, 454

Kahor (Air), 453, 454, 455

Kaimakam, 25

Kalama, 226

Kalenuzuk, the, 428

Kallilua, 46, 48

Kanem, 369; chronicle of, 372-3, 374; Bornu dynasty expelled 374, 375; Fezzan overrun from, 112, 374, 406; Kanuri sei power in, 369, 370, 371-2, 374, 407; Tuareg as rulers of, 372-3, 374, 375; Tuareg expelled by Kanuri from, 371-2, 375; Tuareg invade Air from, 369-70, 372, 375

Kanem, Empire of, 374, 410

Kano, 38, 44, 106, 110, 291, 335, 413, 418, 419; Agades deser for, 411; annexation of, 137; Bornu conquers, 412; cloth o 166; country round, 41; Fulani in, 57; houses of, 87, 90; industries of, 164, 166; Kel Owi attack on, 415; modern prosperity of, 418, 419; railway from Lagos to, 38; Senuss "zawia" at, 48; slave market in, 38; Songhai attack on, 41 Tuareg migrate to, 38, 39, 361, 411

Kano, Emirate of, 37

Kanuri, the, 16, 49, 117, 218, 441; Agades Cross among, 284; "Barbars" or "Beriberi," 371; Bornu Tuareg overthrown b 371-2, 374, 375, 403, 404; in Damergu, 42, 43, 47, 55, 5 Daura conquered by, 363; in Elakkos, 443, 446; Goberaw conquer, 363; hair dress of, 44; settlement and rise to pow Kanem, 369, 370, 371-2, 374, 407; Kawar conquered by, language of, 16, 118, 373 *n.*[386]; Tuareg migrations cause 335, 358, 369-70, 372, 375, 404, 414, 415, 444; their nan

Tuareg, 412 *n.*[426]

Kaossen, 69, 84, 86, 92-3, 99, 185, 385, 420; the House of, Ag 92

Karawa, 46

"Karengia" grass, 58-9, 62; *see* Burr grass.

Karnuka, 155

Karruwe (weight), 222

Kashwar n'Tawa, 68

Kaswa n'Rakumi, 91

Katanga, 91

Katchena, Kel, 40, 117

Katsina, 38, 110, 291, 413; Agades deserted for, 411; annexati 37; El Baghdadi preaches in, 291, 292; Fulani in, 57; Itesa attack, 391; slave market in, 38; Songhai occupation of, 4 410; Tuareg migrate to, 39, 361, 411, 427

Katsina, Emir of, 39

Kaukau, 345

Kawa, 414-15

Kawar, 31, 32, 98, 218, 334, 335, 369; caravan road by, 7, 8, 318, 320, 325, 358, 369, 403, 443, 446, 450; Kanuri conq 335, 406; Okba's campaign in, 325, 326 *n.*[292]; pastureles raids on, 182, 188, 191, 350

Kawar road, 318, 320, 325, 358, 369, 403, 443, 446, 450

Kawkaw (Gao), 452

Kawkaw (Kuka), 445

Keane: on the Berdeoa and the Garamantes, 335-6

Kebbi, 413

"Kel" names, tribal, 128-30, 139, 303-4, 370; among the Itesar derivation of, 378, 380, 381

Kel Aberkan, *etc.*, *see under* Aberkan, Kel, *etc.*

Kel Owi road, 61, 74-5, 308, 319, 320, 383, 390. *See also* "Tar Kel Owi."

Kelama, 187

Kelghimmat, the, 429

Kerfeitei, the, 433
Kerker, Sultan of, Ibn Batutah’s, 406, 453, 454-5, 456
Keta valley, 61, 64
Ketama, the, 340, 341, 343, 349, 351
Khalif (Commander of the Faithful), deputation from Air to, 1
102, 104, 105
“Khans,” 255
Kharejite schism, the, 346
Khodi, 142-3, 185, 438
Khoms, 21
Kidal, 52
Kidigi, 60
Kindin, Kanuri name for Tuareg, 412 *n.*[426]
King, *see* Amenokal.
Kings of Agades, list of, 463-5
“Kipti” (Copts) in Air, 294, 363
“Knights-Errant of the Desert Roads,” the, 168
Knives, Tuareg, 234, 236
“Kohl” (antimony), use of, 173
Kokoi Geregeri (chief minister), 106, 406
“Kolouvey” (Kel Owi), the, 20
Korunka, 180 *n.*[172]
Kosegarten, J. G. L., version of Ibn Batutah by, 452, 453, 468
Kufara (heathen), 273
Kufra, 3, 6, 98, 335, 336; a Senussi centre, 336
Kugha, 404 *n.*[417]
Kuka, 21, 332 *n.*[303], 345, 415, 445
Kukia, Libyan dynasty of, 404
Kunta, the, 355
“Kus-kus,” 133, 157-8
Kuttus, 42

Laghuat, 111

Lagos, 38, 419; railway to Kano from, 38

Laguatan, the, 357

Lake, Gamram, 49; rumoured, in Bagezan, 238

Lake Chad, *see* Chad, Lake, *and* Chad area.

Lamini, Sultan, 413

Lamy, Commandant, 26, 36; *see* Foureau-Lamy Expedition.

Land settled on chief women, 169

Language, Tuareg (*see* Temajegh), 15, 339; words associated w
Christianity in, 277

Laperrine, 11, 12

Laperrine, Fort, 12

Laterite rock, disintegrating, 449, 450

Latif, Sheikh el, 192

Latitudes and longitudes of points in Air, 422-5

Lava flows, Air, 216, 241-2

Lazaret, Kel, 437

Leather and metal decoration, 277, 310

Leather pouches, amulets in, 282, 284

Leather-working industry, 174, 277-8; in women's hands, 174;
decorated luggage rests, 277; riding saddles, 230-31, 377

Lebetae, 337

Lebu, the, 337

Lee, S., translation of Ibn Batutah, 452-3, 468

Legends, Tuareg, 279, 280, 281

Lemta, the, 254, 331; Ahaggaren and, 345; Aulimmiden as par
341, 345, 355, 356, 357-8, 379, 445; Azger Tuareg as, 33
341, 348, 350, 351, 352, 355, 357, 358, 432; area occupie
331, 334, 335, 341, 344, 345, 355, 356, 357, 358, 370, 4
Barth's error regarding, 344-5, 358; Bornu Tuareg as, 376
Hawarid origin of, 345, 346, 353; Ibn Khaldun on, 340, 3
345, 346, 353; Ifoghas as, 355, 356, 357, 358; Ilemtin rep
355, 358; Lemtuna and, confusion between, 344-5, 358; L
Africanus on, 331, 334, 335, 344, 345, 349, 355, 356, 35
359, 370, 445; as a Libyan people, 331, 334, 335, 340, 34
migration of, south and west, 341, 345, 356, 357, 358-9,

378, 379, 445; original stock of first and last migrants int
254, 345, 349, 356, 359, 370, 403; Tuareg invasion of Air
involved by migration of, 358-9, 377, 379, 403, 445

Lemtuna, the, 331, 343, 344, 349, 358, 404; confused with Le
344-5, 358

Length, measure of Air, 222

Lenz, O.: on the two families of the "Berbers," 458

Leo Africanus, 6 *n.*[5], 110 *n.*[101], 330, 347 *n.*[333], 363 *n.*[361]
account of Agades by, 19, 410; account of Air by, 18, 19,
the Amenokal, 97 *n.*[83], 99, 108, 110 *n.*[101]; Kel Owi not
mentioned by, 383, 386; on the Lemta, 331, 334, 335, 34
349, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 370, 445; on the divisions
Muleththemin, 330-31, 332, 334-5, 337-8, 343, 344, 345,
349; on areas and tribes of the Sahara, 330-35, 336-7, 34
345, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 364

Leptis Magna, 207, 208

"Leuata," the, 337

Leucæthiopians, the, 173 *n.*[168], 307

Levata, the, 337, 340, 357

Library, Assode, remains of, 302

Libya, areas and peoples of, Leo Africanus on, 330-35, 336-7;
Libyans.

Libyan, origin of word, 337

Libyan desert, the, 3, 334, 335, 336, 337; story of compulsory
migration from, 366; Tuareg possibly originally inhabitan
366, 376

Libyan dynasty, Kukia, 404

Libyan influence in Air and the Southland, 403, 405, 406

Libyan names, the MZGh root in, and its significance, 339, 35
457-62

Libyans, the, 16, 164 *n.*[158], 262; areas and peoples of, 330-3
336-7, 338-43, 356; belts worn by, 194, 265; term used fo
Berbers, 7, 371, 372 *n.*[382]; classification of, by Ibn Khald
338-43; descent from Prophet claimed by, 339-40, 342; d
ceremonially eaten by, 295; Eastern origin of, legendary,
facial characteristics of, 187; Leo Africanus on, 330-35, 3

marriage customs of, 176; migration of, legendary, 366-7; nationalism among, 12-13; origin of, mixed, 340, 458, 46 worship among, 12-13; Tuareg relationship with, 7, 262, 342, 356, 366, 462; women, status of, among, 151, 152

Libyans, Eastern, work on, *see* Bates.

Libyans, Meshwesh, 151, 337, 356, 457, 461, 462

Lime trees, 160, 239

Lion claws as amulets, 282

Lions still seen in Air, 119-20

Literature, Tuareg, 173, 263; historical works, 360, 361-2

Litham (the Veil), 329, 330

Live-stock industry, Air, 133-4, 190, 202-5; evacuation policy 361; herding carried on by slaves, 135-6

Lizards, taboo on, 294

Load ropes, 224

Loading and unloading camels, 198, 223, 224-5

Lollius, L., 207

Louata, the, 340, 357

Love affairs, Tuareg, 174-5, 176

Lugard, Sir F., 37, 42

Luggage rests, decorated, 230, 310

Lyon, G. F., work by, 21, 467

Lyon expedition, the, 8

Ma el Fares, 325-6

Macae, the, 457, 461, 462

MacGuire, Corporal, 21

Macii, the, 460

Madghis, Libyan family of, 338, 339, 340, 341

Mafaras, 326

Mafinet hills, 156; valley, 131 *n.*[120]

Mafinet, Kel, 381, 432; Agoalla of, 397

“Magadeza,” the, 106-7

Magazawa Hausa women, 44
Maghili, El, 291, 292, 293
Maghrabi camels, 196
Maghreb, the, 339
Maghzen (Bagezan), Kel, 381, 432
Magic square, rock drawing of, 321
Magnesia, battle of, 206
Maisumo valley, 69; well, 74, 76
“Makam el Sheikh ben Abd el Kerim,” 292
Maket n’Ikelan, 138; tradition of, 367-8, 373, 381, 383, 392, 4 [429]
Malabar Indians, laws of inheritance among, 151
Malam Chidam, 46
Malaria, 178, 179, 181, 186
Maliki sect, people of Air belong to, 291, 292
Mallamei, the, 439
Manding origin of leather industry, 227
Manen, Kel, 400, 432
Manga, 21
Mange in camels, 201
Manna, Leo Africanus on, 19
Mansa Magha, 408
Mansa (Kunkur) Musa, 407, 408
Mansur, El, 337
Manumission of slaves, 135, 137, 138, 140, 141
Manuscripts found at Assode, 302
Maouen (Mawen), Kel, 430
Maps, Tuareg comprehension of, 266
Maps of Air, 466-7; *see* Cortier.
Maqrizi, El, 372 *n.*[383], 374 *n.*[389]
Maradi, 42, 411
Marandet, 77, 119, 121; position of, 424; urn cemetery at, 121 263

Marcellinus, Ammianus, 207 *n.*[191]

Mari, Mount, 242, 308, 390

Mari well, 242

Mari Jatah I, 407

Mari Jatah, Vizier, 408

Maria Teresa dollars, 221, 222

Marinus of Tyre, 323 *n.*[283]

Markets, development of, along caravan roads, 110

Marmol, 116

Marriage, Tuareg system, 170-71, 174, 175, 196-7; festivals, 1
in life, 173, 289; not arranged, 174; by purchase, 181; wif
intimate male friends, 175-6

Marriage portions, 177; Imghad, part payable to Imajeghan, 1

Masalet, 69, 81, 114

Masa'udi, El, 337, 345, 371, 468

Maspero, G., 286, 468

Masquerey, E., dictionary and grammar of Temajegh by, 222 *n*
266, 271, 459, 467

"Masri" blades, 233

Masson, Captain, 10

"Master of the Interior of the Palace," 106

Matali, chief of the Ifadeyen, 399

Maternus, Julius, in the Fezzan, 323, 326

Matriarchate, the, 151-3

Matriarchy among Tuareg, 103, 148-53, 170, 171; and monog
171

Mats, 158, 174, 212, 227

Mauretania, 332, 377, 379, 404 *n.*[419]

Mawen, Kel, 430, 436

Maxitani, the, 457, 460

Maxyes, the, 356, 457

Mazaces, the, 457, 461

Mazi, the, 460

Mazia, 46, 48

Mazices, the, 356, 358, 457, 461

Mazigh, common ancestor of Libyans, 339, 341, 458

Mazigh, the, 458

Mazil, the, Arab tribe, 354

Measures and weights, Air, 220-22

Meat, little eaten by Tuareg, 158-9

“Mecca of the Slaves, The,” 367; *see* Maket n’Ikelan

Medicine, native, 82, 180, 201

Medina date palms, 317

Medinet el ’Amira, 452 *n.*[449]

Mediterranean, the: civilisation brought southwards from, 37, 401; known to Tuareg, 266

Mela, 282

Melle, Empire of, 37, 47, 48, 407-8, 409; administration of for races by, 407-8; revolts in, 411; Songhai overthrow, 409

Melle, Vizier of, 408

Melons, 132

“Men with Eyes in their Stomachs,” possibly Tuareg, 376

Menzaffer valley, 59

“Merabtin,” the, 405

“Meratha” (Imghad), 140

Mermeru, 91

Mesche mountain, 327

Meshagra, the, Arab tribe, 354-5

Meshwesh, the, 337, 457, 461; probable ancestors of Tuareg, 3 462; succession in female line among, 151

Mesi (God), 278

Mesufa, the, 151, 153, 344, 364, 405, 408; status of women of

Meteorological record kept by author, 423

Migration from Red Sea, reference to, 342

Migrations, tribal, *see under names of tribes*.

Migrations, Tuareg: into Air, 52, 53, 113, 254, 256, 359, 364, 366-93, 403, 404; date of, 256, 364, 371, 373, 375, 381, 404; caused by Kanuri, 335, 358, 369-70, 372, 375, 404, 415, 444; Lemta movement and, 358-9, 377, 379, 403, 44 stages of, 52, 53, 254, 359, 366-93, 394, 403; into the Southland, 17, 38, 39, 51, 65, 143, 361, 366, 373-4, 377, 390-91, 392, 393, 398, 411, 415, 432

Mikitan, Osman, 52, 99, 108, 465

Milen, 60, 62, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 418; well of, 72-4, 75, 76

Milk, camel's, 211; offering of, Bororoji custom, 58

Millet cultivation, 47, 64, 131, 133, 444, 445; dishes made fro 157; flour, preparation of, 159-60; stores for, in villages,

Millet mortar used as drum, 272

Mimosa, 226

Minaret, Agades, 86, 87, 93-4, 302; Assode, 301, 302

Mineral springs, 127, 241

Minéru, 239, 438

Minir, El, 239, 438

Minister for Foreign Affairs, Agades, 106, 116

Mintaka, El, 154, 155, 181, 280, 302

Minutilli, 336 *n.*[316]

Mirages, Northern Air, 300

Misgiddan (Tamisgidda), the, 439

Misurata, 21

"Mithkal," 221-2

Mithridates, 206

Mixed caste, Azger tribes of, 355-6

Mizda-Murzuk road, 322, 323 *n.*[285]

Mokhammed, 96

Monarchy, democratic Tuareg system of, 107-8

Mongolian traits in Southland women, 44

Monkeys, 213, 239

Monogamy, 293; more frequent in Air than polygamy, 170, 17

Moorish tribes, raids by, 188

Moors conquer Western Sudan, 411

Moroccan road, the, 7

Morocco, 358; “Berbers” of, 458; Ibn Batutah in, 411; Negrola conquered by, 411; Okba’s expedition in, 326 *n.*[292]; San trade with, 405; Tuareg invasion of, 411

Morocco, Southern, 332, 334

Mosgu (Kel Tamisgidda), the, 439

Mosi added to Songhai empire, 409

Mosi, King of, 408

Moslem attitude to women, 152, 168, 170, 174

Moslem faith: introduction of, into Air, 256-8; Maliki sect of, 2 new spirit in, 12, 13; polygamy permitted by, 170; a form snobbishness induced by, 339-40, 342; Tuareg adoption o 257-8, 273, 274, 290, 291, 293, 324-5. *See also* Islam.

Moslem graves, 259

Mosque, People of the, 439

Mosques, Tuareg, 93, 94, 255-8, 301-2; Agades, 86, 87, 93-4; 301-2; records kept in, 360, 361; T’intaghoda, 257, 258, 3

Mosquitoes, Air, prevalent during rains, 120, 121

Motor road between Lake Chad and Niger, 42

Motylinski, Temajegh dictionary by, 12, 454 *n.*[456], 459

Motylinski, Fort, 12, 13

Mounds of stones as memorials, 292-3

Mountain groups of the Sahara, 2, 5

Mountain sheep of Air, 450

Mountains in the desert, beauty of, 448

“Msid Sidi el Baghdadi,” 292

Mubaraki, Muhammad, 102 *n.*[91], 391, 413, 464

Mud construction, 41, 43, 48, 249-50, 252; Sudan and Norther Nigeria, 88, 89, 90

“Muda,” grain measure, 221

Muhammad (of Towar), 185

Muhammad, King of Bornu, 410

Muhammad, the Prophet, Moslem desire to claim descent fro 339-40, 342

Mulai Ahmed, Sultan of Morocco, 411

Mulai Hamed el Mansur, Sultan of Morocco, 411

Muleththemin, the (Arab name for Tuareg), 14-15, 274, 287, 2
364; Ibn Khaldun on origin of, 340-49, 353, 379; Leo Afri
on the divisions of, 330-31, 332, 334-5, 337-8, 343, 344,
348, 349

Munio, 412

Murmur, 21

Murzuk, 7, 8, 9, 20, 21, 191, 325, 353; capital of Fezzan, 323;
"Garamantian way" from, 318, 319 n.[278], 324; populati
113; rains in, 124; road to Lake Chad by, 7, 8, 32, 320; R
remains on road to, 322; as trade centre, 112, 113

Musa, camel-man, 169, 170

Musa, chief of the Imuzuraq, 51

Musa, Haj, 290

Musa, Mansa Kunkur, 407, 408

Musa ag Mastan, Amenokal of Ahaggar, 169, 352-3

Muscles of Tuareg not conspicuous, 163, 187

Music, Tuareg, 272

Musical instruments, Tuareg, 272

Mzab, 332, 334

MZGh root of North African names, 339, 356; its significance,

Nabaro, 436

Nabaro, Kel, 436

Nabarro, 218 n.[208]

Nachtigal: population of Murzuk, 113

Nakda, 452; copper mines of, 452-3; Sultan of, 453

Names, tribal: North African, MZGh root of, 339, 356, 457-62;
Tuareg, 128-31

Naresht, son of Tifaut, 405

Nasamones, the, 282, 365, 369

Nationalism in North Africa, 12-13

"Natron" encrustations seen by Barth, 127 n.[115]

Natrun, Wadi, 3

Nature, animistic view of, among Tuareg, 295

Neck ornaments, 283

Necklaces, women’s, 283

Needlework, skill of Tuareg men in, 174

Negro music, influence of, 272

Negroes: eunuchs purchased, 179; matriarchate among, 152-3; slaves, 135; Tuareg contempt for, 173

Negroid inhabitants of Air, pre-Tuareg, 363-4, 365-6, 403, 405 of Air Imghad, 138

Negroland, 101, 371; historians of, 365; Ibn Batutah’s journey through, 406, 452; Roman expedition to, 326

Negroland, Western, 404; occupied by Songhai, 409

“Neutral vowel” in Tuareg tribal names, 128

New Year, feast of the, 275

News, communication of, in Africa, 266

N’Gurutawa, 21

Niches in Tuareg houses, 246, 247-8, 252, 254, 255, 256, 309

Niger, the, 3-4, 30, 332; diversion of Upper into Lower, theory drainage basin of, 3-4; Romans said to have reached, 322; Tuareg communities on, 377, 384 *n.*[402]

“Niger,” Pliny’s, 28-9

Niger Empires, the, 37, 47, 407-12; *see* Melle *and* Songhai.

Niger, Territoires du, 41-2, 43, 416; raids in, 189

Niger-Tchad, Colonie du, 41 *n.*[46]

Nigeria, 17, 18, 24, 219, 335; author returns through, 418-19; French boundary, 41; British penetration of, 20, 21, 36-7; indirectly defend, 85; horses of, 202; Mediterranean civili brought to, 393, 401; railway development in, 38; rains i totemism in, 294

  Tuareg in, 38-41, 361; civilisation brought to, by, 393, transport work in, by, 38, 298

Nigeria, Northern, 37; author’s journey begins and ends in, 41 British annexation of, 37; houses of, 87-8

Nigerian Emirates, the, 26, 37; British annexation of, 37; *see* K

Katsina, *and* Sokoto.

Nile, the, 266

Nile valley, Libyan invasions of, 340

Nilotic Sudan, the, 1 *n.*[1]; Fulani settlement in, 58; Semitic inf
in, 342

No, Quarter of, Ghat, 258

Nobility of origin, Tuareg adherence to, 137; records kept to establish, 360, 362

Noble and servile tribes (*see* Imghad *and* Imajeghan), 15; lists showing, 427-31, 435-40

Noble women, high standing of, 150, 151, 168, 169, 171, 172,

Nobles: British described as, 459; conquered, as Imghad, 138,
460

Tuareg (Imajeghan), 137, 217; appearance of, 217; female des
150-51; Holy Men treated as, 355; Imghad and, relationsh
between, 136, 137, 138, 140-43; northern, black veil wor
139; original pure race represented by, 137

Nomadic Tuareg, described by Ibn Batutah, 406

Nomadism and sedentarism, difficulties of co-ordinating, 131

Nomads, 16, 209, 212, 406; ability to dispense with water, 20
209-10; Ifadeyen famous as, 400

North and west, confusion of terms, 244, 247

North Africa: the term, 1

Arab conquest of, 346, 375-6, 404, 462; Arab countries,
traditional connection with, 340; Bishoprics of, 293; Britis
in exploration of, 20-21; camels, problem of introduction
206-8, 267; caravan roads (*q.v.*) of, 5, 6-7; caravan roads
sites of cities of, 110, 111, 112, 114; Central Empires, intr
of, in, 12-13, 93; fossil camel skeletons found in, 267; Fre
expansion in, 20, 22; funerary monuments in, 260-62; hist
its sources, 330; Islam, spread of, in, 256, 257-8, 325; mig
from, compulsory, legend of, 366, 375, 380; migrations in
340, 341; negroid peoples once farther north in, 342; part
of, 20, 22; Persian invasion of, 375; population of, its supe
unity, 338; rock drawing in, 264; tribal names of, and MZ
root, 339, 356, 457-62; Tuareg in, in early times, 403

North-eastern Air; houses of, 252, 254; unnamed valley of, 30

Northern Air, 298-329; ancient monuments in, 263; evacuatio
1918, 309; houses of, 252, 309-11, 316; Kel Owi tribes of,
394; palm groves of, 317; roads traversing, 318-22; salt ca
route from, 315

Nose-piece, camel’s, 231

Nose-ring, camel’s, 231

N’Ouajour, 430

Noweiri, El, 326 *n.*[292], 468

N’Sattafan, Kel, 434 *n.*

Nubian cemeteries, 260

Nugguru, Kel, 127, 139, 142, 185, 215, 435, 438, 440, 441

Oases, 2, 3; accidental discoveries of, 336; of Air, 32; Egyptian
337; origin of the word, 6; Saharan, 3, 5-6

Oborassan, 313, 314

Oborassan, Kel, 435

Ochre, Tuareg women’s faces daubed with, 173

Oghum, Rocks of, 68

Ogive niches in Tuareg houses, 246, 247-8, 252, 254, 255, 25

Okba ibn Nafé, campaigns of, 325, 326 *n.*[292], 376

Okluf, 126, 127

“Old Well,” the, 418

Ollelua, 46

Omar, Sultan, 84, 96, 97-8, 100, 104, 109, 117, 195, 465; hors
202; refuses to attack French, 290

Optatus, 328

Oraghen, the, 347

Orfella, 110

Orientation: of Moslem graves, 259, 260; of Tuareg houses, 24
246-7, 248, 251, 252, 253, 254

Ornament of the Nobles, the, 284

Ornamental work, Tuareg, 230-31, 277, 310

Ornaments, Tuareg, 282-6

Orosius, 356

Oryx, white, 444, 446

Oryx hide shields, 235, 444

Osman Mikitan, Sultan, 52, 99, 108, 465

Ostrich feathers, on camel’s nose-piece, 231

Ostriches, 43, 121, 264, 446

Othman dan Fodio, 363, 415

Oudney, Dr. W. (with Denham and Clapperton), 8, 20; death o

Oung Oua (Ungwa), Kel, 433

Outdoor slaves, 134, 135-6, 155, 402

Outhouses, Tuareg, 250

Over-population of Mediterranean lands, and compulsory migr
story of, 366, 375, 380

Overweg (with Barth and Richardson), 18, 20, 21, 23-4; death

Owari, 239

Owi, Kel, 20, 23, 53, 54, 107, 134-5, 143, 144, 184, 217, 239;
arrival in Air, 382-93, 414, 415; cause of migration of, 38
date of arrival of, 135, 149, 257, 258, 366, 367, 382-3, 38
388, 391; and the Amenokal, 100, 108, 383, 396-7; the
Añastafidet of, 92, 96, 100, 107, 139, 144-6, 148; arrogan
383; Assode the capital of, 301, 303; Auraghen and, 387;
caravan road controlled by, 61, 74-5, 308, 319, 320, 383,
claims and pretensions of, unjustified, 384-5, 386, 392-3,
[429]; commercial ability of, 390; country of, 243, 244, 29
in Damergu, 415; dialect of, 270, 387; disease among, 18
disparaged by other tribes, 135, 149, 295; attitude toward
French of, 51, 52, 414 *n.*[429]; in Gober, tradition of arriva
367-8; houses of, 252, 253, 254; Ifadeyen and, 399; Immil
and, 429; Itesan driven out by, 366, 373-4, 391, 392, 393,
432; Kel Geres displaced by, 373-4, 383, 388, 389, 390, 3
392, 415; measures of, 221; and mosque of T’intaghoda, 2
mothers of, legend of, 384-5, 386; origin of, 148, 380, 38
as mother of, 295; tribal organisation of, 303-8, 430, 435-
women of, noble, 150

Ox, rock drawing of, 265

Ox and cart, drawing of, 265, 319, 321-2, 418

Ox-drawn chariots of the Garamantes, 318, 320, 321-2, 324; r
drawing suggestive of, 265, 319, 321-2, 418

Oxen: as pack animals, 203, 208; harnessed to carts, 203, 208,
see Ox-drawn chariots.

Pack-saddles, camel, 223-4

Paint, Tuareg women’s faces daubed with, 173

Paleolithic camel skeletons discovered, 207

Palicanus, L. Lollius, 207

Palm frond mats, 227; rope, 224; sandals, 165

Palm groves, 316, 317

Palm trees not destroyed in warfare, 236

Palmer, H. R., 362, 373 *n.*[386], 463, 468

Paper currency disliked by Tuareg, 221

Partition of Africa, 20, 22, 25

Pasture wells, Azawagh, 74, 75, 80; rights over, 75

Patience, Tuareg, philosophic, 296, 420

Patination of rocks of Air, 35; of rock drawings, 321

Patriarchal government: Arab, 339; of Tuareg tribal units, 147

“Penistasche,” the, 164 *n.*[156]

People of the Acacia (Kel Tamat), 307, 437

People of the Añastafidet, 374, 394; in Damergu, 440; estimat
numbers of, 402; tribes and sub-tribes of, 435-9

People of the Asclepias (Kel Intirzawen), 307, 433

People of the Deep Well (Kel Gharus), 308

People of the Dûm Palm (Kel Tagei), 307, 398 *n.*[413], 432, 43

People of the East (Kel Innek), 129, 369, 441

People of the Goats (Kel Ulli), 52, 129, 307-8, 438

People of the King, 143, 144, 146, 148, 149, 304, 306, 366, 3
393; represent earliest arrivals in Air, 373, 374, 377, 378-
geographical area of, 394; Immikitan possibly original sto
396; interest attaching to, 393; Kel Owi and, 146, 148, 14
366, 380, 392; numbers of, estimated, 402; origin of, lege
384, 386; tribes, sub-tribes, and organisation of, 395, 398,

427-31; in Damergu, 437-40
People of the Mosque (Kel Tamisgidda), 439
People of the Rock (Tebu), 335
People of the Salt (Kel T'Isemt), 441
People of the Sand (suggested meaning of Tuareg), 274
People of the South (Kel Aghil), 441
People of the Spears (Kel Allaghan), 432
People of the Veil, *see* Tuareg.
People of the West (Kel Ataram), 129, 441
Peroz, Colonel, 50
Perry: *Children of the Sun*, 152 *n.*[146]
Persian invasion of North Africa, 375
Petroglyphs, *see* Rock drawings *and* Rock inscriptions.
Philistines, Libyans related to, 339
Phœnician script and Libyan, 267
Photographs of unveiled Tuareg not permitted, 288
Physical characteristics of Tuareg, 161-3, 172, 177, 187, 217; deformation not practised, 179
"Pi" dogs, 205
Piebald camels, 196
Pigeons, 125
Pigs, taboo on eating of, 294, 295
Pilgrim road, Timbuctoo-Cairo, 20, 114, 318
Pilgrimage, Muhammad Askia's, 409, 411
Pitchers, 160-61
Plaque, men's ornament, 285
Pleiades, Tuareg name for, 226 *n.*[212]
Pleistocene period, discovery of camel-skeletons of, 207
Pliny, 207, 324, 468; quoted, 322-3
Plough seen by Barth, 133
Plutarch, 206
Poetry, Tuareg appreciation of, 263, 265, 271, 272; women au of, 169, 173, 271, 272

Poison, use of, by Tuareg, 10
Poisoned arrows used by bush folk, 45
Poisonous plants, deaths of camels due to, 200
Police, Agades, 106
Polygamy infrequent in Air, 170-71
Polytheism, traces of, among Ahaggaren, 275
Pomel, 264 *n.*[232]
Pommel of Tuareg saddle, ornamental cross on, 230, 276-7, 28
Pompey, 207
Pools, 213, 215, 442, 445, 449
Population: of Air, 402; variation of, in desert cities, 113
Portfolios, leather, 228
"Ports," trans-desert traffic, 110, 111
Portuguese and Songhai rulers, 409, 410
Possession, case of, Auderas, 279-80
Pottery, Tuareg, 160-61, 317
Pouches, leather, 228
Pradie, Fort, 51, 92
Prayer enclosures, 292-3
Pre-Moslem, funerary remains, 260-63; place of worship, 258-
Precipitation of rain, North Africa, 123, 124
Prime Minister, Tuareg, also Minister for Foreign Affairs, 106;
    106, 406
Property, women's ownership of, 168-9, 177, 293
Prophet, the, Moslem desire to claim descent from, 339-40, 34
Prophet's Birthday, the, feast of, 275
Prosody, Tuareg, 271
Prostitution among Tuareg, 177
Proverbs, Tuareg, 176, 182, 237, 420, 421
Pseudo-Ashraf, the, 339-40
Ptolemy, 323 *n.*[283],[287], 336 *n.*[314], 356, 468; on the Kel Te
    53, 65
Pumpkins, 132; spirits in form of, 280

Punch and Judy show, Tuareg ascendancy symbolised in, 55-6
“Pura” water, 19, 157

Qadria sect, 302
Qibla, the, 95, 97, 255, 258, 259, 292
Querns, Tuareg, 159-60, 309
Quinine, value of, in fever cases, 178, 186, 187
Quran, the, 265, 280, 281, 296; in Tuareg language, 269; vers
amulet, 282

R and Gh sounds, confusion between, 271
Rabah, 26
Rabidin, 427
Racks in houses, 309
Rahazawa Fulani, 57
“Rahla” (riding saddle), 230-31
Raiding, 11, 12, 13-14, 113, 187-93, 350, 407, 444; Ahodu’s reminiscences of, 191-3; the Amenokal and, 109-10; Came Corps organised to suppress, 11, 51, 188, 189, 218, 219; cessation of, 187, 193; in Damergu, 50, 51, 59; fear of, sti prevalent, 311, 315; legend of raiders swallowed up, 281; regarded as a sport, 187, 193, 328, 443; technique of, 11, 187-93, 236, 237; weather conditions supposed to foretell 295-6; wells filled in to prevent, 59, 60, 451; by women, 1
Railway development, its effect on camel-borne trade, 38
Rainbow, superstition regarding, 296
Rainfall in the Sahara, 4, 28; ancient, 28; geological effects of, during storms, 83
Rain-water pools, Azawagh, 62, 67-8
Rains, the: in Air, 121, 123-4, 220; in Elakkos, 445; discomfor travel during, 120-21, 123, 124, 125; raids begun after, 1
Ramadhan, Tuareg observance of, 274
Rapsa (Ghat), 322, 323, 326
Rats eaten by Tuareg, 294
Rattray: *Ashanti*, 152 *n.*[146]

Rebu, the, 337

"Red," Tuareg spoken of as, 162, 173, 367, 460

Red agate "talhakim," 282

Red mud, cities and houses constructed of, 41, 43, 48, 88, 90,
[452]

Red ochre, Tuareg women's faces daubed with, 173

Red Rock Desert, pass over, 323

Red rocks, Air, 35

Red Sea, migrations of tribes from, into North Africa, 340, 341

"Reg," 274 *n.*[243]

Reindeer Age, cave paintings of, 264

Rela, Kel, 351 *n.*[339]

Religion of Tuareg, 273-8, 290, 291-4; earlier, possibly Christi 275-8, 293-4; traces of Christian influence, 275-6, 277, 27 284-5, 289, 293-4; their conversion to Islam, and their lax practice, 273, 274, 290, 291, 293, 324-5

Rennell, Major, 383, 386; commentary on Hornemann by, 336 386, 467; map by, 336; works by, 336, 383, 386, 467

Revenue, the Amenokal's, 110

Revolt against French in Air, 1917, 39, 69, 70, 84-5, 98, 309, 420, 421; Agades besieged during, 70, 85, 86, 98; camel requisitions a cause of, 205; evacuation of Air during, 113 121-2, 302, 309, 360-61, 426; Kaossen's leadership of, 69, 86, 92-3, 185, 385, 420; Nigeria indirectly defended durin opening tragedy of, 84; social effects of, 127-8, 338-9; Teg part in, 98-9; T'ekhmedin's part in, 98-9; wells filled in du 59, 60, 451

Rhymes, Tuareg, 271

Rhyndacus, 206

Riaina, the, 434 *n.*

Richardson, J.: *Travels in the Great Desert of Sahara* by, 151-2, death of, 21; expeditions of, 8, 18, 20, 21, 23-4, 248, 461; houses of Ghat, 248

Ridge of Abadarjan, 70, 71, 78

"Rigm" (funerary monument), 260 *n.*[227], 261-2, 263

Ring of stones marking graves, 259

Rings, agate, as neck ornaments, 283

Rings, arm, Tuareg, 91, 285-6, 289

Rio de Oro, raiding in, 187, 188

Ritchie, death of, 21

River of Agades, 33, 34, 69, 70, 71, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 83, 119, 121, 123, 127, 183, 189, 258, 456; plain of, 79, 82-3

River beds of Central Sahara, 28-31

Rivoli, 91

Roads, caravan, *see* Caravan roads; the "Garamantian way," 31 321, 324

Robe, T'ekhmedin's, the fate of, 195

Robes, Tuareg, 163-4, 166-7, 195

Rock, People of the, 335

Rock drawings, 213, 216, 260, 263, 264, 318; of animals and 264-5; of camels, 207, 265; of human figures, 265, 319; of with animal heads, 319; modern, 264, 265; of ox and cart 319, 321-2, 418; of shield with cruciform design, 276

Rock inscriptions, 213, 260, 264, 268-9, 271, 315, 360; funera 260, 263; profusion of, 263, 268

Rohlfs, F. G., expeditions of, 3, 19; *Kufra* by, 6 *n.*[4], 336

Roman remains discovered by Barth, 322

Romans, the: caravan roads garrisoned by, 208; penetration of Sahara by, 322-3, 324, 325, 326-7; Tuareg swords probab derived from, 234

Romanus, 207

Roncière, Charles de la, 19 *n.*[20],[21]

Roofs of Tuareg houses, 249, 250, 256

Rope-making, native, 224; in leather, 228

Rothschild, Lord, his museum at Tring, 27-8

Rottl (Arab weight), 222

Royal Geographical Society, author's computations in charge o

Rufai el Ghati, 192

Sabha Jail, 332 *n.*[301]

Sacrifices of sheep, 95, 97, 274, 275

Sadaouet (Sidawet), Kel, 431

Saddle-sores on camels, 199, 201

Saddle-stone querns, 159-60, 309

Saddles, camel; Tebu, 277; Tuareg, 193, 223-4, 227, 230-31, 2
289; with cross on pommel, 230, 276-7, 289

Sahara, the, 1-6; not once a sea-bed, 78 author's companions c
418; British influence in, 21-2; climate of, 4; European aff
well known in, 266; French occupation of, 25, 350; funera
monuments of, 260-62; Leo Africanus' description of, 331-
mountain groups of, 2; name of, 1; oases of, 2, 3, 5-6; pop
of, 113; races of, 2, 8; railway across, advocated, 38; rainf
4, 124; rivers of, 3, 4; Roman penetration of, 322-3, 324,
326-7; surface of, 2-6; "talhakim" prized in, 282; temperat
in, 4; transport methods in, early, 207-8; warfare in, small
numbers involved, 11

Sahara, Central, 2, 4, 8; British geographical work in, 20-21, 2

Sahara, Eastern, 2-3

Sahara, Western, 3-4

Saharan Alps, the, 35

Saharan and Equatorial zones, transitional area between, 41

Sahel Zone, the, 41

Sakafat, 437

Sale, 274 *n.*[245]

Saleh, El Haj, 96, 290, 430

Salla Laja (Laya), the Feast of the Sheep, 95-7, 274

Salla Shawal, 274

Sallust, 206, 468

Salt: impregnation of soil with, 125; price of, 218

Salt caravans, 69, 84, 85, 114, 115, 133, 145, 195, 210, 217, 2
335, 443, 452 *n.*[450]; Amenokal's revenue from, 110; Fre
escort for, 84, 218, 219; Minister accompanying, 106; rai
188, 218, 219, 450; route of, 32, 114, 145, 219, 264, 315,
450

Salt mines: Bilma, *q.v.*; captured by Moors, 411; Taodenit, 30, 452 *n.*[450]; Tegaza, 411, 452 *n.*[450]

Salt, People of the, 441

Salt-pits, 125

Salt trade, 133, 218, 219-20, 414; struggles between Air and B for, 415

Saltpetre, uses of, 211

Sampfotchi hill, 418

Sand: effect on feet, 165; wind-borne, polishing of rocks by, 3 wells silted up by, 66, 72, 74

Sand, People of the, 274

Sand-dune formations, 4, 58; characteristic form in Azawagh, 70; crescentic type, 66-7; in Elakkos, 442, 446, 447; mobil 67; valleys formed between, 62

Sand-grouse, 81

Sandstone formations: Elakkos, 442; effects of erosion, 77, 79,

Sand viper, 227

Sandals, Tuareg, 164-6

Sanhaja, the, 274, 331, 332, 340, 343-4, 346, 348, 349, 401; i arrival of Tuareg, 364, 365, 368, 375, 405; Empire of, 34 403, 404-5, 407; Itesan among, 377; Mesufa and Lemtuna sections of, 151 *n.*[141], 344, 349, 358, 364, 405; of Nor west Morocco, 364

Santambul (Constantinople), 101

Sariki n'Kaswa, 106

Sariki n'Turawa, the, 96, 106

Sattaf, 187

Say, 50

Schirmer, H.: *Le Sahara* by, 5 *n.*[2], 142 *n.*[132], 327 *n.*[293], 46 the Ifoghas, 355 *n.*[346]

Scorpion, 227

Script, Tuareg, *see* T'ifinagh.

Seats, wooden, for women, 309

Sedentaries: factions among, 338; numbers of, 402

Sedentarism, encouraged by French, 131; nomadism and, diffi
of co-ordinating, 131, 143

Seeds, very valuable in Air, 132, 133; used for food, 158, 160

Sef, King of Kanem, 372

Seliufet village, 23, 122, 248, 316

Seliufet, Kel, 129, 437

Selma I, King of Kanem, 372

Selma II, first black king of Bornu, 373, 374

Semitic influence in Africa, 342

Semitic languages, relationship of Temajegh to, 270

Sendal, the, 394, 396, 400; one of original five tribes in Air, 3
378; their modern representatives, 395, 396, 400

Senegal, caravan route to, 7

Senegal River, 343

Senegalese troops, French, 84, 98, 118, 316; Camel Corps of, 1

Senhaji, Muhammad Nasr el, 408

Senussiya, the: their part in the revolt in Air, 12, 13, 51, 84, 9
caravan route opened by, 7; in Equatorial Africa, operatio
against French, 92; Kufra the centre of, 336; Tuareg relati
with, 48-9, 290

Septimius Flaccus, 323, 326

Serfs, *see* Imghad.

Sergi, G., 458, 460, 467

Sert, 325

Servile tribes, *see* Imghad.

Sfax, 337

Sheath knives, Tuareg, 234

Sheep, Air, 202, 204, 205, 450; sacrifices of, 95, 97, 274, 275

“Sheikh el Arab,” 106

Shellagh, the, 458

“Sherrifa,” title of royal family of Air, 105

Shields, Tuareg, 234-5, 276, 444

Shillugh language, 270

Shingit, 408

Shott country, the, 9

Sidawet, 299, 431, 440; houses in, 254; position of, 425

Sidawet, Kel, 431, 440

Sidi, the guide, 68, 234 *n.*[214], 266, 270, 298, 307, 309, 315, description of Belkho by, 305, 306; on the House of the Christians, 311-12; leaves the author in Kano, 419-20

Sidi Hamada, shrine of, 94-5; Feast of the Sheep at, 95-7

Sierra Leone, British penetration of, 36, 37

Siggedim, 334 *n.*[308]

Sijilmasa, 110, 405, 452, 453

Silius Italicus, 152 *n.*[144], 468

Silk not in great demand among Tuareg, 164

Silurian rocks, Air, 33, 34, 35

Silver, saddles ornamented with, 230-31

Silver bracelets, 283-4

Silver coins melted down, 229

Silver currency, 221

“Sinko” (five-franc piece), 221

Siwa, 3, 318, 337

Siwi dialect, 270

Skin, colour of, in Tuareg, 161-2, 173

Slave King of the Tuareg of Air, the, 96, 97, 100, 103, 104-5, 1 367, 369

Slave markets, Kano, Katsina, Sokoto, 38

Slave trade, African, 38; British attempts to abolish, 20, 21, 22 former Tuareg, 135

Slavery legally abolished in Air, 134 *n.*[122]

Slaves, 103-4, 178; position of, 15 *n.*[13], 103-4, 105, 134, 178 to status of Imghad, 135; slave mothers and status of chil 150; stolen in raids, 190; veil not worn by, 15 *n.*[13], 140

“Slaves, the Mecca of the,” 367

Sliding doors in Tuareg houses, 245-6

Smiths, Tuareg, 155, 228-9, 230; jewellery made by, 283-4

Smoking, not a Tuareg practice, 211

Snobbishness, Moslem form of, 339-40, 342

Snuff, taken by Tuareg, 211; used as remedy for camel disease

“Sô people,” the, 407

Soap-stone, ornaments of, 282, 283

Social distinctions, Tuareg, present breakdown in, 142

Social effects of revolt of, 1917, 127-8, 338-9

“Sofo” tower, Agades, 94

Sokakna, the, Arab tribe, 354

Sokna, 9, 347

Sokoto, 21, 33, 38, 47, 48, 101, 106, 110, 415; British annexat
37; Fulani Empire of, 37, 57, 363, 415; Itesan settle near,
[100], 366, 373-4, 392, 393, 398, 432; Kel Geres settle nea
39, 65, 143, 366, 373, 390-91, 392, 415: route to, alterna
114; slave market in, 38; stone buildings in, 89 *n.*[78]; Teg
expedition against, 53

Sokoto, Emir of, influence of, 109 *n.*[100] *See also* Bello.

Sokoto-Agades track, 85

Soleim Arabs invade Central Africa, 376

Solom Solom, 122, 365

Songhai Empire, the, 37, 47, 48, 117, 227, 291, 408, 409, 410
Agades colonised by, 117, 410, 440; gold trade of, 411, 41
Moors overthrow, 411, 412; Portuguese and, 409, 410

Songhai language, 117, 118

Sorbo Hausa, 50

Sores, camels’, 199, 201

Sottofé, Muhammad, Sultan, 369, 464

South, People of the, 441

Southern Air: Goberawa in, 379; graves in, 263; servile tribes i

Southern Algeria, native Camel Corps in, 189

Southland, the, 17, 36-79; Air and, political relations of, 105,
Barth’s expeditions in, 23-4, 36, 49, 59, 60-61; bush of, 4
44, 45, 58, 444, 446; houses and huts of, 184, 249, 250; I
migration to, 109 *n.*[100], 366, 373-4, 377, 392, 393, 398,
Kel Geres migration to, 17, 39, 65, 143, 366, 373, 390-91,

415; music of, 17; Morocco and, trade between, 405; Tuar 17-18; Tuareg ascendancy in, 54-6; Tuareg migrations to, 38-9, 51, 65, 143, 361, 366, 373-4, 377, 390-91, 392, 393 411, 415, 432

Southward trend of migration in N. Africa, 39

Soyuti, El, 291, 292

Spain, Arab conquest of, 346, 376, 405

Spear grass, 226

Spears, People of the, 432

Spears, Tuareg, 233-4, 236

Spirits, Tuareg belief in, and tales of, 278-81, 300, 306; amulet against, 282

Spoons, Tuareg, 229, 276

Spouts on roofs of Sudanese houses, 89, 90

Stambul, delegation from Air to, 101, 102, 104, 396-7

Stambul, Sultan of, story of migration ordered by, 366-7, 380

Stars, Tuareg names for, 226 *n.*[212]

Steppe, the Great, 334, 335

Steppe desert, 114, 115, 332, 333, 334, 447; and true desert, 2 333, 334

Sticks for holding bridles and ropes, 277

Stone, not used in building in Sudan and Northern Nigeria, 89; by Tuareg, 89

Stone arm rings, Tuareg, 91, 285-6

Stone flags, “Garamantian way” said to be paved with, 319

Stone houses, 155, 184, 213, 239, 250, 418

Stone ornaments, small, 283

Stone “talhakim,” mystery of origin of, 282-3

Stones: circles of, round huts, 262-3; coloured, to indicate trac 293; graves marked by, 259-60; hammered, not chiselled, 264; mounds of, as memorials, 292-3

Strabo, 207 *n.*[193], 468

Stuhlmann, F., 468; on MZGh root in “Berber” names, 458, 46

Sub-tribes: “Kel names” of, 128-9; lists of, 427-41

Succession and inheritance, matriarchal tradition in, 151-3, 16

Suckling of children, protracted, 178-9

Sudan, the, 1 *n.*[1], 37; Air and, political relations with, 105, 1
Barth's expedition in, 23, 37; British share in opening up,
European penetration of, 20, 36-9; Fulani rise to power in
funerary monuments in, 261; horse saddles of, 231; house
87, 88, 90; Ibn Batutah in, 452, 456; Islam in, 291; Lemta
extends to, 345, 357, 358, 370, 445; Mediterranean civilis
in, 37; salt trade with, 414; Sanhaja power in, 405; syphili
thought to originate in, 179; taboos originating in, 294;
"talhakim" prized in, 282; Tuareg driven from, 358; Tuare
evacuated to, 360-61; wheeled vehicles in, 322

Sudan, Anglo-Egyptian, 1 *n.*[1]

Sudan, Nilotic, 1 *n.*[1]; Fulani settlement in, 58; Semitic influen
342

Sudan, Western: French expedition from, 25; added to empire
Melle, 407; Moorish conquest of, 411

Sudan Empires, the, 37; history of, 405, 406, 407-15; *see* Mell
Songhai.

Sudanese buildings, 249

Sudanese historian on migrations from Red Sea, 342

Sudanese pottery, 161, 317; clay amphoræ, 317

Suk, El, country, Tuareg migration to, 394

Suk, Kel el, 355, 377, 394

Suleiman, Mansa, 408

Suliman, El Haj, library of, 302

Sultan of Agades, *see* Amenokal.

Sun, halo round, an evil omen, 296

Sun worship, Libyan, 276, 278, 295; trace of, among Tuareg, 2

Sunni Ali, 291, 409

Sunni Muhammad Dau, 409

Sunsets, magnificent, Air, 123, 181; superstition regarding, 29

Superstitions of Tuareg, 275, 293; concerning weather, 295-6

Susubaki, 412

"Switzerland of the Sahara," the, 317

Sword dance, Tuareg, 272
Swords, Tuareg, cross-hilted, 96, 233, 234, 236, 276, 289
Symbolism in Tuareg rock drawings, 264, 265
Synesius, 356
Syphilis, 179-80
Syria, Ibn Khaldun on inhabitants of, 339
Syrtis, Great, 325, 337, 365; people of, 457
Syrtis, Little, 337

Tabello, 86, 209, 210, 243, 244, 298, 320; houses at, 241, 244 249, 250, 251, 252; Itesan settlements at, abandoned, 244 salt caravan assembles at, 85, 218, 219, 243
Taberghit valley, 58, 61, 62, 66, 67, 68, 70, 74
Tablet ornaments, 283
Tabonie, 323
Taboos, food, totemic, 294-5
Tabudium, 323
Taburgula, 362
Tabzagur, position of, 424
Tadadawa, Kel, 381, 434
Tadek valley, 395, 396, 428
Tadek, Kel, 26, 80, 143, 149, 150, 170, 185, 239, 298, 318, 42 antiquity of, 149, 366, 428; represent original invaders of 395, 396, 400; expelled by Kel Owi, 389; mother of, legen 384; tribes and sub-tribes of, 428-9, 430, 440
Tadele, Kel, 427
Tademari, 47, 48, 51
Tademekka, 169, 254, 441; Aulimmiden occupy, 345, 348, 35 414
Tademekka, city of, 405, 408; foundation of, 399
Tademekkat, the, 355, 356, 357, 377; driven out by Aulimmid 345, 348, 358, 387, 414
Tadenak, Kel, 430
Tadent, 101

Tadesa, 239

Tadsa, Tuareg defeat near, 412

Tafadek, 428; position of, 424

Tafarzas, the, 434

Tafasas, Kel, 439

Tafassasset, the, 30, 31

Tafassasset-T’immersoi basin, 71

Taferaut, Kel, 438

Tafidet, Child of, 144; *see* Añastafidet.

Tafidet range, 157, 306, 308, 313, 436; valley, 32 *n.*[37]

Tafidet, Kel, 134, 148, 307, 370, 436, 437, 443-4; “agoalla” of
and appointment of Añastafidet, 145, 306; place in Kel Ov
Confederation, 134, 306, 443-4; mother of, legend of, 384
of, 148, 303, 306

Tafilelt area, Morocco, capital of, 452 *n.*[449]

Tagay (Tagei), Kel, 432

Tagedufat, 80, 120; valley, 32-3, 63-4, 66, 67-8, 71, 74, 76; we

Tagei, Kel (Ikazkazan), 210, 307, 438; (Imaslagha), 435; (Itesa
397, 398, 432

Tagermat, Kel, 436

“Taghalam,” the, 219, 220

Tagharit valley, 131 *n.*[120]; lions in, 119, 120, 214 *n.*[206]

Taghazit, 23, 33

Taghist plateau, 156, 292

Taghmeurt range, 157, 308, 435, 436

Taghmeurt, Kel, 435, 436

Taghmeurt n’Afara, 313, 315, 318, 319

Tagidda n’Adrar, 454, 455, 456; position of, 424

Tagidda n’Tagei, 454, 455, 456

Tagidda n’T’isemt, 454, 455, 456; position of, 424

Tagiddas, the: and Ibn Batutah’s “Tekadda,” 454-6; people of,

“Tagilmus” (the Veil), 15 *n.*[15], 140, 287-90

Tagilmus, Kel, 15, 460

Taginna, the, 434 *n.*
Tagirit, 397
Tagmart (Taghmeurt), Kel, 435
Tagunar, Kel, 430, 431
Tagunet, 431
Tagurast, 91
Tahanazeta, 102
Tahua, 42, 188, 394
Taiagaia, Kel, 433
Taitoq, the, 17, 350, 351, 354; dialect of, 266-7
Takadda (Nakda), 452
Takarkari, the, 406
“Takatkat,” 164
Takazanzat (Takazuzat), rock of, 240
Takermus, Kel, 429
“Takirbai,” 164
Takrizat, 437
Takrizat, Kel, 209, 290, 437; a holy tribe, 290, 291
“Takuba” (sword), 233
Talak plain, 31, 114, 131, 209, 214, 308, 351, 394, 438, 441; of Awa in, 281
Talak, Kel, 441
Talat Mellen, 308
“Talha” acacia, 226
“Talhakim,” the (ornament), 282-3, 284
“Talimt,” 226 *n.*[212]
Talras, 68, 450
Tamadalt Tan Ataram, position of, 425
Tamanet, 242, 243
Tamanghasset, 12
“Tamat” acacia, 226, 227
Tamat, Kel, 52, 60, 307, 428, 437, 438
Tamatut well, 60; destroyed, 60, 451

Tamel, Kel, 434

Tamenzaret, wells of, 215, 418

Tamet Tedderet, position of, 425

Tamgak, 311, 389, 428, 437; mother of Kel Owi settles in, 386
Men” of, 306-7, 437

Tamgak mountains, 157, 311, 314 *n.*[275], 315, 316, 317, 321,

Tamgak, Kel, 306, 394, 400, 437; one of the original five tribe
378, 379; modern representatives of, 395, 396, 400, 437

Tamizgidda, Kel, 53, 439

Tamkak, the, 368; *see* Tamgak, Kel.

Tanamari, 51

“Tanghot” (spirit), 281

Tanut (in Damergu), 47, 48, 52, 69, 81, 119 *n.*[107], 418, 451;
position of, 424

Tanut (near Marandet), 119, 121

Tanut Unghaidan, 122

Tanutmolet, 316, 430; houses in, 248

Tanutmolet, Kel, 430-31

Tanzar, the, 434

Taodenit, 219; salt deposits of, 30, 411, 452 *n.*[450]

“Tara,” camel disease, 201

Tara Bere, 91

Taranet, Kel, 439

Tarantulas, 227

Tarat Mellet, the, 394

“Tarei tan Kel Owi,” 61, 308, 314

Tarenkat, 433

Targa, the, 19, 445; Ibn Khaldun on, 343; Leo Africanus descri
and Ahaggar as inhabited by, 19, 331, 332, 333, 334, 337
359; and the name “Tuareg,” 273, 338, 348-9, 461

Tariq, 376

“Tariqa,” Senussi, 290

“Tarki” (Tarqi) and the word “Tuareg,” 257, 274, 460, 461

Tarrajerat, 80

Taruaji, 418

Taruaji mountains, 78, 84, 86, 126, 127, 156, 183

“Tasalgi” (north), 244, 247

Tasawa, 305, 411

Tasawat, 244; mosque of, 255-6

Tasessat, 239

Tashel (Taschell, Tashil), the, 433

Tashkeur (Teshkar) well, 446 *n.*[446]

Tasr, wells of, 446-7

Tassili, Azger, 260, 261

Tatenei, Kel, 381

Tateus well, 66, 74

Tattus, Kel, 438

Tautek, 405

Tawarek, the, 118, 257, 273, 460; Arab etymology of, 257; *see* Tuareg.

Tazizilet, 69, 71, 219

Tebehic, 80, 82; position of, 424; spirits of, 279

Tebernit valley, 243; water holes, 242

Tebu, the, 16, 109, 218, 318, 358, 403, 413, 443, 446; Berdeo
people of, identified with, 335-6; Bornu dynasty of, 372,
boundary between Tuareg and, 358, 443; camel saddles o
camels of, 196; Dunama II’s war with, 374; Ikaradan, Tem
name for, 117, 335, 430, 441; Itesan driven out by, 389,
language of, 118, 155; origin of, 335-6; raids by, 59, 69,
190, 296, 320, 327, 350, 389, 444, 450; throwing irons us
235; treachery of, 98, 236; Tuareg driven from south by,
Tuareg feud with, 98, 190, 442, 443; women of, wives of
of Kanem, 373, 374

Technique of raids, 11, 189-93, 236, 237

Tecoum, the, 441

Teda, the, 335, 373 *n.*[387]

Teda Inisilman, 155

Tedamansii, the, 336

Tedekel, Kel, 437

“Tedi” or “teddi” (measure of length), 222

Tedmukkeren (Tetmokarak), the, 433

“Tefakint,” 221

Tefgun, mosque of, 27, 149, 317, 428

Tefgun, Kel, 428

T’efira, 127 *n.*[115]

Tefis, 248, 431; mosque of, 256, 258, 418

Tefis, Kel, 431

Tegama (Southern Air), 23, 32, 53, 64, 65, 188, 209, 303; Bart 23, 53, 118; camels of, 196, 197, 210; servile tribes of, 12 394; villages of, 127-8

Tegama valley, 58

Tegama, Kel, 53-4, 64-5, 118, 127, 128, 394, 433, 443; defeate Kel Geres, 391; women of, 118

Tegama, Sultan, 98-9, 109, 465

Tegaza, 404 *n.*[419], 452; Moors capture, 411; salt mines of, 33 452 *n.*[450]

Tegbeshi, 184

“Tegehe” (descendants), 350 *n.*[336]

Tegehe Mellen, the, 350

Tegehe n’Aggali, the, 350, 352

Tegehe n’Efis, 351

Tegehe n’es Sidi, the, 350, 351

Tegehe n’Essakal, 351, 352

Tegemi (Tégémui), 68

Teget (Tagei), Kel, 435

Teghazar valley, 84, 86, 241

Teghzeren, Kel, 433

Tegibbut, the, 434

Tegidda valley, 215, 299

Teginjir, 33; plain, 241, 242; position of, 425; spring, 241

Tegir, 430

Tegir, Kel, 430

Teguer, Kel, 430

Tehammam, the, 427

Tehenu, the, 337, 462 *n.*[481]

Tehert, 337

Tekadda, 406, 408

Ibn Batutah's, 452-3, 454, 455, 456; copper mines of, 4 454; identification of, attempted, 454, 455; Sultan of, 151 406, 454, 455

"Tekerkeri, the," 406

T'ekhmedin, the guide, 185-7, 195, 225, 239

Tekursat valley, the, 60, 61

Telamse, Kel, 432

Telezu valley, 239, 240, 243

Telia, position of, 425

Telizzarhen, 265; rock drawings of, 319

Tellia valley, 243

Teloas-Tabello, position of, 424

Telwa river, 122-3, 127; valley, 84, 115, 122-3, 125, 414, 441

Temagheri, the, 372, 373

Temahu, the, 376, 462

Temajegh, 12, 15, 118, 154, 266, 269, 270-71, 462; camel nan 197; Christianity, words associated with, in, 277-8; dictio of, 12, 467; etymology of, 15 *n.*[14], 373, 462; "Kel" name 129; Latin, traces of, in, 75 *n.*[70], 278; origin of, 267-8, 2 Quran translated into, 269; written, *see* T'ifinagh.

Tembellaga, 58

Temed, 321, 428

"Temeder" (part of the Veil), 287

Temperatures in the Sahara, 4, 298

Tents, Tuareg, 89, 212

"Terga," 273, 461; *see* Targa.

Tergulawen, 50, 61, 62, 67, 69, 114, 242, 390; road, 70; well, 74, 80

Terjeman, quarter of Agades, 91, 118

Terminal points of trans-desert traffic, 110, 111

Termit, 32, 46, 58, 67, 68, 81, 218, 320, 448-50; author's mar
46, 81, 444, 446-51; drainage of, 450; mountains of, 448,
449-50; position of, 424; rocks of, oddly shaped, 450; wel
443, 447, 448-9, 451

Territories du Niger, 41-2, 43, 189, 416

Tesabba valley, 210

Teshkar, 446, 447, 451; position of, 424

Teskokrit, 69, 72

Tessawa, 42, 43, 46, 47; position of, 424

Tessuma valley, 243

Tetmokarak, the, 65, 381, 433

Teworshekaken valleys, 61

Tezirzak, 428

Tezogiri valley, 78

Tgibbu (Tegibbut), the, 434

Thorns in vegetation of Air, 199, 226

Throwing-iron, used by Tebu, 235

Thuben, 323

Thugga inscription, 267

Thukdha (Nakda), 452

Thunderbolt, an evil omen, 296

Thunderstorms, violent, 82-3, 451

Tiakkar, the, 434

T'iaman, 143

Tibawi (Tebu), 335

Tibesti, 7, 92, 98, 218, 334, 335, 403, 444; identified with Agi
Regio, 325, 326, 327; camels of, 195; camels commandee
expeditions to, 205; drainage system of, 3; mountains of,
32; raiding in, 187, 193, 276, 444; rainfall of, 4; rock dra
in, 276; unknown area of, 32; Turkish penetration of, 327

Tidikelt, 111

Tidrak hills, 156, 181

Tifaut, 405

T’ifinagh (Tuareg script), 15-16, 263, 264, 266-9, 271, 276, 28 name of Air in, 454; alphabet of, 266-7; Arabic letters in, Ifadeyen familiarity with, 268, 400; inscriptions in, 81, 26 269, 286; origin of, 267-8; Quran in, 269; taught by wome 173-4, 268

T’igefen, 450

Tiggedi cliff, 65, 70, 71, 76-7, 454 *n.*[456]; defeat of Kel Tegam 391

“Tiggeur” acacia, 226

T’ighummar valley, 215

Tikammar cheese, 157, 158

Tildhin, the, 412

Tilemsan, 291

Tilho, Colonel, 30; Anglo-French frontier delimitation by, 41; of, 33 *n.*[38], 41, 466; observations made by, 422, 424

T’ilimsawin hills, 156

T’ilimsawin, Kel, 432

T’ilisdak valley, 127, 435

Tilkatine, the, 434 *n.*

Tilutan, 404

Timbuctoo, 7, 23, 30, 110, 344, 354, 405; earliest accounts of, camels of, 196; foundation of, 407; Melle conquest and lo 407, 408; mithkal of, 222; Moorish garrison in, 411; “Peo the West” in, 441; salt caravan from, 188, 219, 452 *n.*[451 Songhai conquest of, 409; Tuareg of, 18; Tuareg conquest loss of, 408, 409

Timbuctoo-Cairo pilgrim road, 114, 318

Timbulaga, 70

T’imia, 33, 186, 204, 216-17, 241, 290, 299, 308, 311, 385, 43 houses in, 248, 250; hut circles at, 262; Kel Owi invasion 389; massif of, 33, 216, 242; measures used in, 221; mosq 385; rock drawing at, 194 *n.*[178]; women of, 173

T’imia, Kel, 298, 439; mixed, 440

T’imilen mountains, 299
T’imilen valley, 243, 299
T’immersoi, 31, 32, 33, 78
“Timmi” (oath of friendship), 237
T’imuru peak, 300
T’in Awak mountain, 300
T’in Dawin, 78; position of, 424
T’in Shaman, 116, 364-5, 367; French post at, 86, 99, 365; pos of, 424
T’in Taboraq, 82, 84, 85; position of, 424
T’in Tarabin valley, 9, 30
T’in Wafara, 437
T’in Wana, 71, 73, 76, 77, 78, 80, 213; fossil trees at, 81-2, 25 [226]; pool of, 81; position of, 424; rock inscriptions at, 81
T’in Wansa, 309; houses in, 248
T’in Yerutan, 404
T’inalkum, Kel, 355, 383 *n.*[400]
T’inien, 214; position of, 424
T’inien mountains, 125, 156
T’intabisgi, 427, 428
Tintagete, Kel, 435
T’intaghoda, 26, 122, 308, 316, 390, 436, 437; Barth’s expedit attacked at, 23, 290, 312; capital of Northern Air, 316; ho of, 248, 316; mosque of, 257, 258, 316
T’intaghoda, Kel, 129, 312, 437; a holy tribe, 291, 306, 437
T’intellust, 308, 309, 311, 319, 320, 321, 436; Barth’s headqua at, 23, 122, 308, 312-13
T’intellust, Kel, 435
Tinteyyat, 435
Tinylcum, the, 383
Tinylkum, Barth’s, 355
Tirekka, 405
“Tirik” (riding saddle), 230-31

T’iriken peak, 299-300

Tirza, 180 *n.*[172]

Tisak n’Talle, 91

T’Isemt, Kel, 441

Tishorén (Tuareg), 460

Tiski, the Children of, 342-3, 349

Tissot, C. J.: *Géographie comparée*, 207 *n.*[190]

Tit, Ahaggar Tuareg defeated at, 10, 11, 328

T’iugas and her six daughters, story of, 384

T’iwilmas, 314, 316

T’iyut valley, 23, 31 *n.*[36], 367

Tizraet, the pool of, 418

Tobacco chewed by Tuareg, 211

Tobacco snuff as remedy for camel disease, 200

Todra, Mount, 84, 123, 127, 131, 156, 181, 183, 184, 213, 21
216, 239

Toga, North African robes said to be descended from, 285

Toiyamama, the, 434

Tokede valley, 239, 240, 243

Toledo swords owned by Tuareg, 233

Tomb of Awa, 281

Tombs (*see* Graves), Air, 259-63; possibly made in floor of hut,

Tools, Tuareg, 229

Toreha, 180 *n.*[172]

Toshit N’Yussuf, 438

Totemism, survival of, among Tuareg, 294-5, 394 *n.*[408]

Tournées d’apprivoisement, 11

Towar, 183, 184-5, 186, 195, 238, 239, 240, 243, 283, 440; h
in, 248, 252

Towar river, 183

Towar, Kel, 184, 439; mixed, 184, 440

Tower of Agades, 94; *see* Minaret.

Tracks, marked by coloured stones, 293

Trade roads, 5, 23, 37, 38; map of, 5; railway's effect on, 38; *s*
Caravan roads.

Traghen, 112

Transliteration, difficulties of, 271, 350 *n.*[338]

Transport enterprises, Kel Owi monopoly of, 390

Trans-Saharan caravan roads, 308-9, 318

Trans-Saharan railway, suggestion of, 38

Travelling bags, leather, Tuareg, 228

Treachery, Tuareg averse to, 236, 237

Treaty between Tuareg and original inhabitants of Air, traditio
367-8

Trees, fossil, 81-2, 259 *n.*[226]

Triangular ornaments ("talhakim"), 282-3

Tribal allegiance derived through mother, 149-51

Tribal alliances, 147-8

Tribal chiefs: and the Amenokal, 108, 144; authority of, passin
village headmen, 127-8, 131; functions of, 110, 147; meas
kept by, 220; selection of, 108

Tribal classification, importance attached by Tuareg to, 143-5

Tribal councils, women in, 168, 169

Tribal feuds set aside in trade centres, 111

Tribal groupings, 147-8

Tribal histories, 360, 361-2

Tribal marks on camels, 201-2

Tribal names, Tuareg, 128-31

Tribal organisation of Tuareg of Air, 393, 400, 426-41

Tribal warfare, 390, 391, 392, 402-3; before appointment of c
ruler, 101

Tribes, colour differences in, 161, 162; holy, 290-91, 306, 355
437, 438, 439, 440; of mixed caste, 355; noble and servile
Imajeghan, Imghad, *and* Noble and servile tribes.

Tripoli, 110; caravan road, 23, 48, 61, 242; Col. Hamer Warri
Consul at, 21; embassy from Bornu to, 410

Tripolitania, 41, 187, 208, 358, 457; former British paramoun

20, 21, 22; anti-French and -British activities in, 84; Hawa
345; Islam, spread of, in, 257; Italian occupation of, Tuare
8; rock drawings in, 318; Southern, Roman occupation of,

Trotting on camels thought unwise, 193

Trousers, Tuareg, 164, 289

Tsabba valley, 210

T'Sidderak hills, 214

T'Sidderak, Agoalla of, 397

T'Sidderak, Kel, 381, 432

Tuaghet pool, 427

Tuareg of Ahaggar, *see* Ahaggaren.

Tuareg of Air: not a tribe but a people, 14, 461; racial purity o
137, 161, 162, 163

- their arrival in Air, 359, 366-93, 394, 395, 396, 397, 403,
405-6; its date, 364, 371, 373, 375, 381, 403, 404; th
vicissitudes, 401-16; future of, 420, 421
- accounts of, 8-9, 10, 14, 18-20, 24, 25, 28
- adultery not common among, 177
- agriculture despised by, 127, 134, 174, 360
- amulets worn by, 282, 284
- ancestry of, 7-8, 254, 345-6, 353, 359, 366, 367, 368, 369
385-7, 403, 462; Bello on, 368, 369, 371; Ibn Khaldu
343-4, 345, 346, 347, 348, 353, 379; Leo Africanus o
330-31, 332, 334-5, 337-8, 343, 344, 345, 348, 349
- animism of, 295
- architecture of, 184, 241, 244-59, 377, 378
- art of, 246, 263-5
- belts worn by, 180, 194, 236, 237
- Berbers and, 7, 16, 338, 371, 372, 458, 461
- "Black" and "White," 139-40
- blue-eyed, 16
- calm manner of, 420
- caravan trade of, 7, 38, 48, 50, 142, 145, 146; *see* Salt car
- caste system of, 103-4, 108, 136, 137-8; *see* Imajeghan *an*

Imghad.
cattle trade of, 133-4, 190, 202-5
characteristics lost by, 40-41
children of, 148-9, 174, 177-9, 181, 268, 400
chivalry of, 168, 236-7
Christianity, former, of, 275-8, 284-5, 289, 293-4
circumcision practised by, 179
civilisation of, present, decline from earlier, 7, 255, 265, 2
378
civilising rôle of, 37, 393, 401
cleanliness of, 163, 273, 274
colouring of, 161-2, 173, 367, 460
courage of, 11, 169-70, 236, 237, 354
dancing of, 44, 272
disease among, 178, 179-80
divorce among, 176-7
dress of, 14, 15, 95-6, 163-7, 177, 265, 289
education among, 174, 177-8, 268, 400
Europeans and, 8, 23, 24, 154, 290
evacuation of, by French, 113, 121-2, 302, 309, 360-61, 4
family system of, 103-4, 147, 148-53, 373, 398
female descent among, 103-4, 148-53, 373, 398
festivals of, 181, 274-5
food of, 157-60, 174, 211, 212
French and: hostilities between, 9-11, 13, 26, 51, 52, 114
236, 328; migration of some tribes from, 51, 350, 35
pacific attitude of others, 26-7, 51, 52, 414 *n.*[429]; re
against, in 1917, 39, 59, 60, 69, 70, 84-5, 86, 93, 98,
127-8, 169, 185, 205, 302, 309, 420
furniture of, 229-30
geographical knowledge of, 265-6
government of, 144-8
graves and tombs of, 181, 229, 259-63

greetings used between, 419
historical knowledge of, 265, 360, 361-2
honour, sense of, among, 296
hospitality of, 210, 237
houses of, various types, 89, 90, 92, 181, 184, 239, 240-4
    244-55, 256, 302, 309, 310-11, 314, 315-16, 377-8, 3
    389, 393
huts of, 184, 253, 254, 262-3
industries of, 131, 164-6, 174, 227-30, 231, 277, 310
judicial system of, 107, 110
Kings of, *see* Amenokal; list of, 463-5
language of, 15; *see* Temajegh.
Libyans and, 7, 262, 341, 342, 356, 366, 462
literature of, 173, 263, 269, 360, 361-2
live stock of, 133-4, 190, 202, 203, 204-5
love affairs among, 174-5, 176
marriage system of, 170-71, 173, 174, 175-7, 181, 289
matriarchal system among, 103-4, 148-53, 170, 171
medicine among, 82, 180-81, 201
migrations of, *see* Migrations.
ministers and officials of, 106-7
monarchy, democratic, of, 107-8, 145
monogamy usual among, 170, 171
mosques of, 86, 87, 93, 94, 255-8, 301-2, 360, 361
music of, 272
name of, 14, 15, 118, 257, 273-4, 412 *n.*[426], 454, 459-6
    derivation of, 348-9
noble and servile, 15, 103-4, 110, 128, 137, 140-43, 217;
    Imajeghan *and* Imghad.
nomadism of, 16, 208, 209, 212, 400, 406
numbers of, 402
origin of, *see above under* ancestry of.
ornaments of, 282-6

patience of, 296, 420

physical type of, 161-3, 172, 177, 187, 217

poetry of, 169, 173, 263, 265, 271, 272

population of, 402

pottery of, 160-61, 317

prostitution among, 177

proverbs of, 176, 182, 237, 420, 421

raiding by, 51, 59, 187, 188, 189, 190-94

“red” colouring of, 162, 173, 367, 460

religion of, 273-8, 290, 291-4; earlier, possibly Christianit
275-8, 293-4; traces of Christian influence, 275-6, 27
284-5, 289, 293-4; their conversion to Islam, and thei
practice, 273, 274, 290, 291, 293, 324-5

revolt of, 1917, *see above under* French.

script of, 15-16; *see* T’ifinagh.

shields of, 234-5, 276, 444

slave trading, former, by, 135

slaves of, 15 *n.*[13], 103-4, 105, 134, 135, 140, 150, 178

snuff taken by, 211, 220

Sultan of, *see* Amenokal.

superstitions of, 275, 278-81, 293, 295-6

taboos among, 294-5

tobacco chewed by, 211

tools of, 229

totemism among, 294-5, 394 *n.*[408]

trade of, 38, 48, 50, 133, 414

tribal names of, 128-31

tribes and sub-tribes of, 143-5, 393, 400, 426-41

unselfishness of, 95, 177, 178

vanity of, 95

Veil worn by, 14-15, 139-40, 163, 284-90, 328-9

warfare, methods of, 236-7; tribal, 101, 390, 391, 392, 40

weapons of, 233-6, 276; allegiance to *armes blanches*, 55,

328; arm daggers, 234; knives, 234, 236; spears, 233-
swords, 96, 233, 234, 236, 276, 289

weights and measures of, 220-22

women of, *see* Women, Tuareg.

Tuareg, Azger, Damergu, Elakkos, Fezzan, *etc.*, *see under those*

Tuat, 9, 260, 291, 292, 332, 334; earliest account of, 19; Ibn Batutah's journey to, 453, 455, 456; Jews massacred in,

Tuat road, 318, 353, 453

Tuat-Tidikelt area, 111

Tuberculosis case at Auderas, 180

Tubuzzat, Kel, 437

"Tufakoret" (solar halo), 296

Tuggurt, 9, 111

Tukda (Nakda), 452

Tumayu, 372

Tummo, 320

Tumuli, funerary, 260-61

Tunfafia, 180 *n.*[172]

Tunisia, 325, 341, 457; Christianity in, 294; the Circumcellion 328; spread of Islam in, 257

Tunsi, El, 192

Turayet, 51, 418; graves in, 263; valley, 84, 183

Turdja, 180 *n.*[172]

Turha, 180 *n.*[172]

Turks: their part in the 1917 revolt, 93, 98; penetration of Tib 327

Ufa Atikin, position of, 425

Ufugum, Kel, 434

Ula, 191

Ulcer, nasal, caused by sand, 180

Ulli, Kel, 52, 129, 307, 437, 438, 441; Damergu, 440

'Umbellu, the 'alim, 217, 270, 290, 385, 389

Umuzut, Kel, 428; Damergu, 440

Unankara valley, 308, 390

Uncle, maternal, descent traced through, 151

Ungwa, Kel, 433

Unnar, Kel, 381, 432, 433

Uraren, position of, 425

Urn burial, 161, 263; pre-Tuareg example of, 121

Urufan, 44; position of, 424

Ushr, 180 *n.*[172]

Utzila, the, 343

Uye, Kel, 432

Valleys, of Air, 34-5, 83-4; of Azawagh, 61-2, 63, 66-7, 71, 76

Vassalage and Imghadage compared, 38, 140, 141

Vegetables, cultivation of, 131-2, 133

Vegetation, desert, 64, 70, 226; hardiness of, 67; rain and, 124
Elakkos and Termit, 445, 446, 449

Veil, People of the, *see* Tuareg.

Veil, the, 14-15, 41, 284, 286-90, 328; appearance of Tuareg w
187; colour of, 117, 139-40; how put on, 287-8; Southern
adopt practice of wearing, 41; theories concerning, 288-9
worn by women and slaves, 15, 140, 288

Venereal disease, 179-80

Vespasian, 322

Vesuvius, 242

Vicissitudes of Tuareg in Air, 401-16

Village organisations, effect of 1917 revolt on, 127-8, 338-9

Villagers, nomads' lot envied by, 212

Villages, Central and North African type, 42, 43, 48, 87-90, 91
Damergu, 48; Elakkos, 442, 443, 446; Tuareg, no factions

Viper, Sand, 227

Vizir, the, Agades, 106, 116

Vogel, Dr., 21

Volcanic origin of Saharan mountains, 2; phenomena in geolo

Air, 33, 79, 81, 183, 215, 216
Volcano, Gheshwa, 241-2
Von Bary, Erwin, *see* Bary.
Voulet, Captain, French expedition under, 25-6, 51

Wad Righ, 9
Wadai, 7, 334
Wadan, 325, 332 *n.*[301]
Wadi el Shati, 354
Wadigi valley, 431
Wadigi, Kel, 431, 432, 437
Wahat, El, 6
“Wakili,” the Sultan’s, 106
Walad Delim, the, 344, 345 *n.*[328], 358
Walata, 153, 175, 332, 404 *n.*[419], 405
War of Famine, the, 414
Warfare, desert: raids distinct from, 190; small numbers involv
11; Tuareg methods of, 236-7
Wargla, 9, 110, 335
Warrington, Colonel Hamer, 21
Warrington, Henry, 21
Water, native powers of abstinence from, 189, 208, 209, 210
“Water of the Horse,” 325-6
Water-skins, 232
Watering points: for salt caravans, 219; technique of raids and
188, 189; *see* Wells.
Wati, Kel, 412-13
Wau el Harir, 336
Wau el Kebir, 6
Wau el Namus, 6
Wau el Seghir, 6
Wawat People of the West, 6
Weather superstitions, Tuareg, 295-6

Weathering, uneven in action, 321
Webster, G. W., 362 *n.*[356]
Weights and measures, Air, 220-22
Welimmid (Aulimmiden), the, 357
Well, iron in, Ibn Batutah on, 453
Well, People of the Deep, 308
Wells, 7, 74-6, 80, 300; filled in during revolt, 59, 60, 451; no poisoned in warfare, 236; silted up, 66, 72, 74
of Azawagh, 74-6, 80; of Elakkos, 445-6, 447; irrigation 132-3; attributed to the Itesan, 377, 378, 393; of Norther 300; origin and guardianship of, 74-5, 377, 378, 393
West, People of the, 129, 441
West and north, confusion of terms for, 244, 247
Western Negroland: Sanhaja dominant in, 404-5; occupied by Songhai, 409
Western Sahara, 3-4; caravan route to, 7; Sanhaja rulers of, 40
Western Sudan, French expedition from, 25
Wheat: cultivation of, 131, 133; "kus-kus" made of, 157-8; considered a luxury, 160
Wheeled transport, ancient use of, in Air, discussed, 318-19, 3 321-2, 324
"White" and "Black" Tuareg, 139-40
White camels, 196
"White Nobles," Tuareg term for British, 459
"White People," the (Arab traders), 106, 404
"White People," the (Kel Ahamellan), 352
Wild donkeys, 204
"Wild Men of Air," the, 306-7
Wireless stations: Agades, 86; raiders handicapped by, 188
"Witnesses, The," 260
Wives of Tuareg: male friends allowed to, 175-6; monogamy u Air, 170, 171; purchase of, 177
Wolof language, 118
Women: Bardamah, 406, 452; Bororoji, 57; Hausa and Kanuri,

Kel Owi, 180; Tegama, 54

Tuareg: general status of, 167-71, 272, 293; claimed as
ancestresses or leaders, 398; in childbirth, 179; courage of
169-70; descent traced through, 103-4, 148-53, 373, 398;
divination by, 281-2; dress of, 167, 172; eat with men, 17
education given by, 173-4, 268, 400; faces of, painted, 17
fatness of, 118, 172, 406; forwardness of, 54, 118; househ
duties of, 174; industries in hands of, 174, 227; male frien
175-6; marriage system, 170-71, 174, 175-6, 181, 196-7;
high standing of, 150, 151, 168, 169, 171, 172, 174; old,
handsomeness of, 173; ornaments of, 283; as poets, 169, 1
271, 272; property owned by, 168-9, 177, 293; in public l
168, 169; salons held by, 272; spirits supposed to attack, 2
veil not worn by, 15, 288; young, 172, 173, 174-5

World, roundness of, known to Tuareg, 266

Wounds, Tuareg treatment of, 201

Yellow ochre used as cosmetic, 173

Yemen, the, 341; early invasion from, 371

Yes, Quarter of, Ghat, 258

Yiti, Kel, 412

Youngest member of party made cook, 159

Youths, Tuareg, dress of, 289

Yunis, Sultan, 102, 103, 104, 463

Yusif (ben el Haj Ahmed ibn el Haj Abeshan), Sultan, 102 *n.*[91
413, 464

Za Alayamin (el Yemani), Libyan dynasty of, 404

Za Yasebi, 408

Zakarkaran, the, 428

Zamfarawa, the, 391

Zanhaga, desert of, 332

Zanziga, the, 332, 333, 334, 343, 348

Zaria, type of houses of, 87

Zawzawa, 46, 145

Zegawa, the 343

Zegedan, Kel, 435

Zelim massif. 33; pool of, 317, 427

Zella, 374 *n.*[389]

Zenega, the, 331

Zerumini, the, 433

Zibduwa, 412

Zilalet, 299, 431, 440; position of, 425

Zilalet, Kel, 384, 431, 440

Zinder, 42, 43-4, 49, 50, 51, 85, 189, 418; French garrison at,
Senussi “zawia” at, 49

Zinder-Chad, territory of, 50

Zinder-Fashi-Kawar road, 32

Zipta mountain, 327

Zuila (Cillala), 112, 323, 347

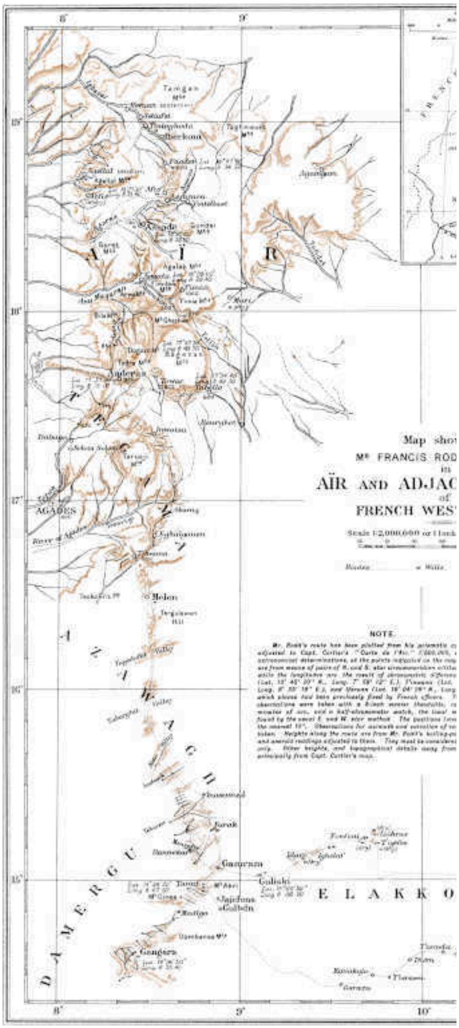
Zu’lhajja, 274

Zungu, 46

Zurbatan, the, 434

Zurika, position of, 425

Map showing MR. FRANCIS RODD'S ROUTES in AÏR AND ADJA


8°
9°
10°
19°
18°
17°
16°
15°
A Ï R
AGADES
Agades
Tegidda
Aouderas
Assodé
Tamgak Mts
Iferouan
Baguezan
Timia
Tigguirwit
Tessaoua
Zinder
Gangara
Gouré
Myrriah
D A M E R G U
E L A K K O
Map show
Mr FRANCIS ROD
in
AÏR AND ADJAC
of
FRENCH WES
Scale 1:2,000,000
Routes
Wells
NOTE.

Published by permission of the Royal Geogr

Transcriber's note:

- pg 76 Changed: *Crucifera thebaica* to: *Cucifera*
- pg 184, footnote 176, Changed: Plate 21 to: Plate 20
- pg 220 Changed: gives undulys hort weight to: unduly short
- pg 221 Changed: especially in measurng the to: measuring
- pg 224 Changed: at one end pased over to: passed
- pg 323 Changed: justify a futher advance to: further
- pg 350, footnote 338, Changed all instances of: ‘ to: ’
- pg 423 Changed: author’s meterological record to: meteorological
- pg 435 Changed: abounding in in “dûm palms.” to: abounding in “dûm palms.”
- pg 442 Changed: in an expense of yellow sea to: expanse
- pg 451 Changed: Bultum Babá to: Bullum
- pg 457 Changed: authors have asumed that to: assumed
- pg 460 Changed: del settrentrionale d’Africa to: settentrionale
- pg 468 Changed: Oriental Translations Fund, 1941 to: 1841
- pg 470 Changed: Agheláshem wells to: Aghelashem
- pg 473 Changed: Aulimmiden, the, [. . .] inheritance system disliked by, 153 to: 152
- pg 487 Changed: Songhai atack on to: attack
- Minor changes in punctuation have been done silently.
- Other spelling inconsistencies have been left unchanged.
- New original cover art included with this eBook is granted to the public domain.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK PEOPLE OF THE VEIL ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under

> the terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full

Project Gutenberg License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided

that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party

distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission

of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41 Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit

www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

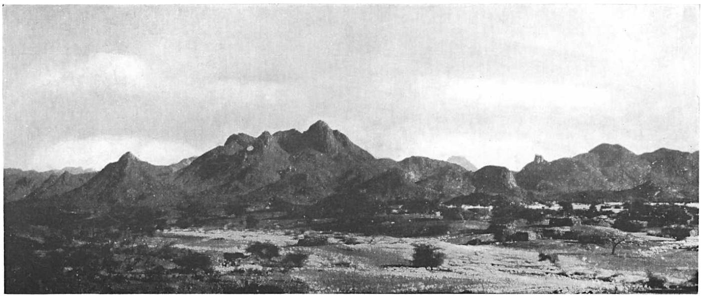
Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

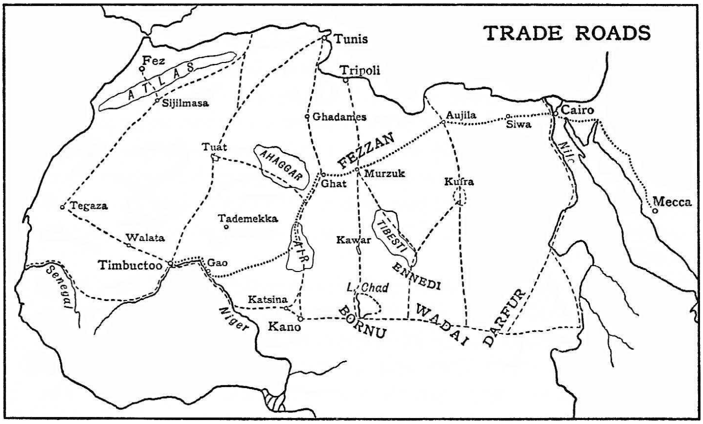
Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

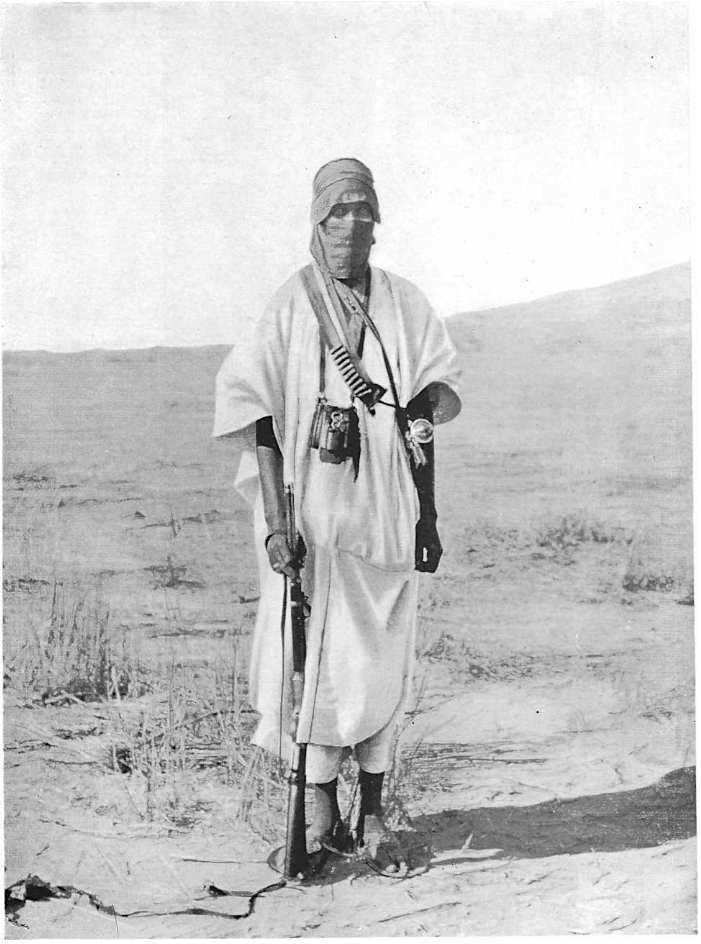
This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.



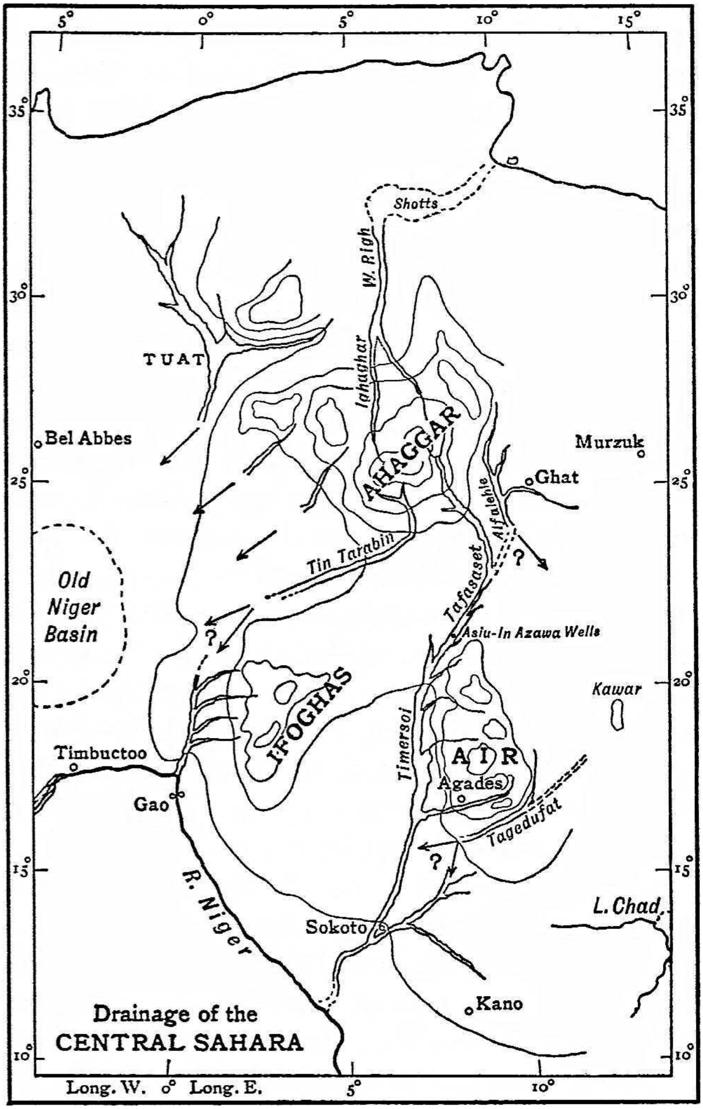
back


TRADE ROADS
Tunis
Tripoli
Fez
ATLAS
Sijilmasa
Ghadames
Aujila
Siwa
Cairo
FEZZAN
Tuat
AHAGGAR
Ghat
Murzuk
Kufra
Nile
Mecca
Tegaza
Tademekka
Kawar
TIBESTI
Walata
Timbuctoo
Gao
AIR
ENNEDI
Senegal
L. Chad
Katsina
Kano
Niger
BORNU
WADAI
DARFUR

back

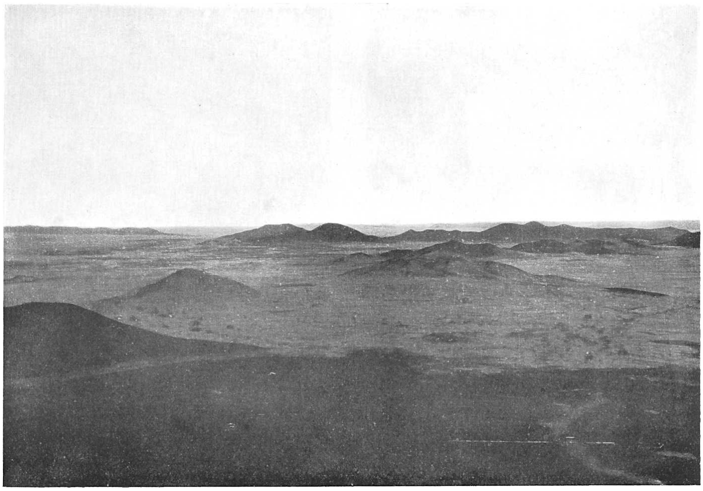


back

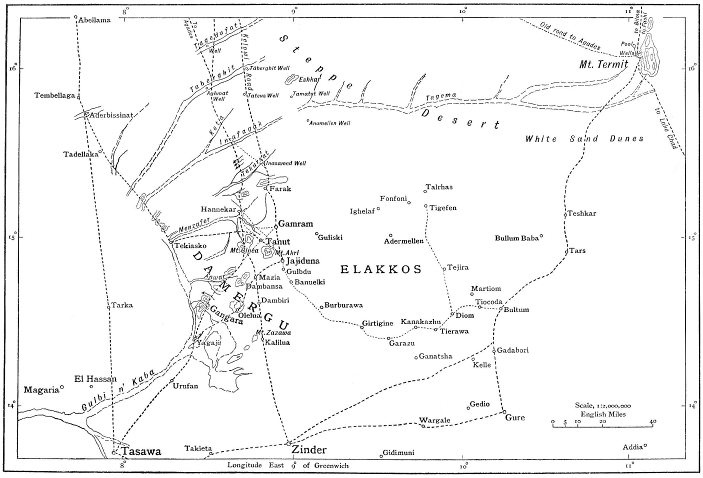

5°
0°
5°
10°
15°
35°
30°
25°
20°
15°
10°
Shotts
W. Righ
Iahaghar
TUAT
Bel Abbes
AHAGGAR
Alfalehle
Murzuk
Ghat
Old Niger Basin
Tin Tarabin
Tafasaset
?
Asiu-In Azawa Wells
IFOGHAS
Kawar
Timersoi
AÏR
Agades
Tagedufat
Timbuctoo
Gao
R. Niger
L. Chad
Sokoto
Kano
Long. W. 0° Long. E.
5°
10°

Drainage of the CENTRAL SAHARA

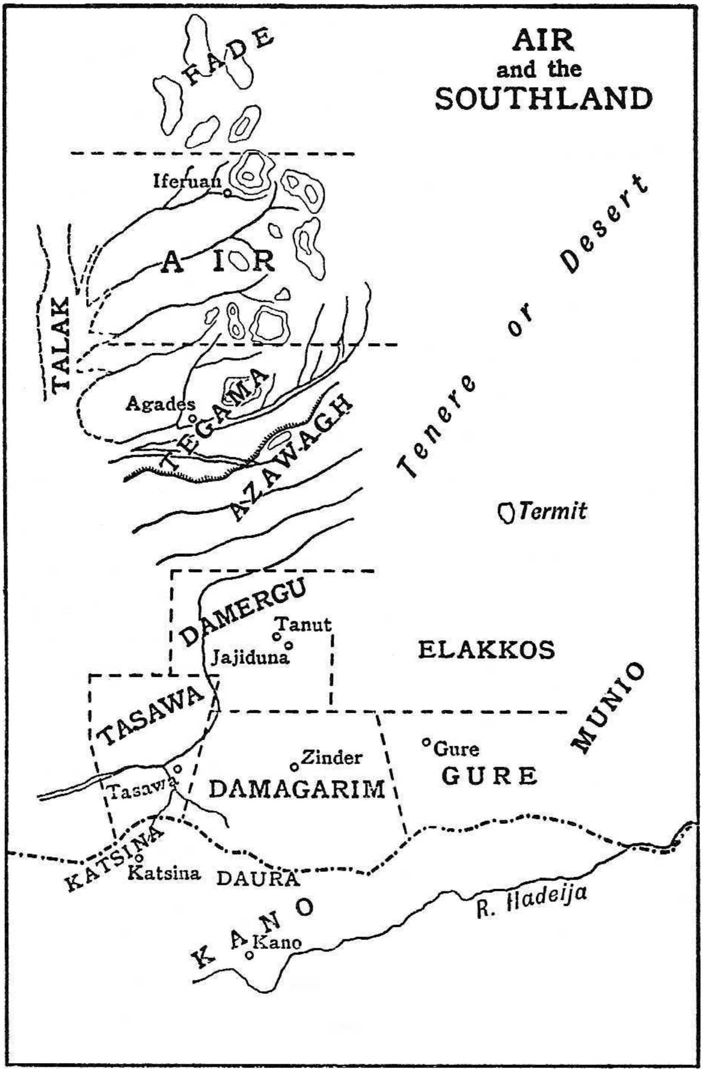
back



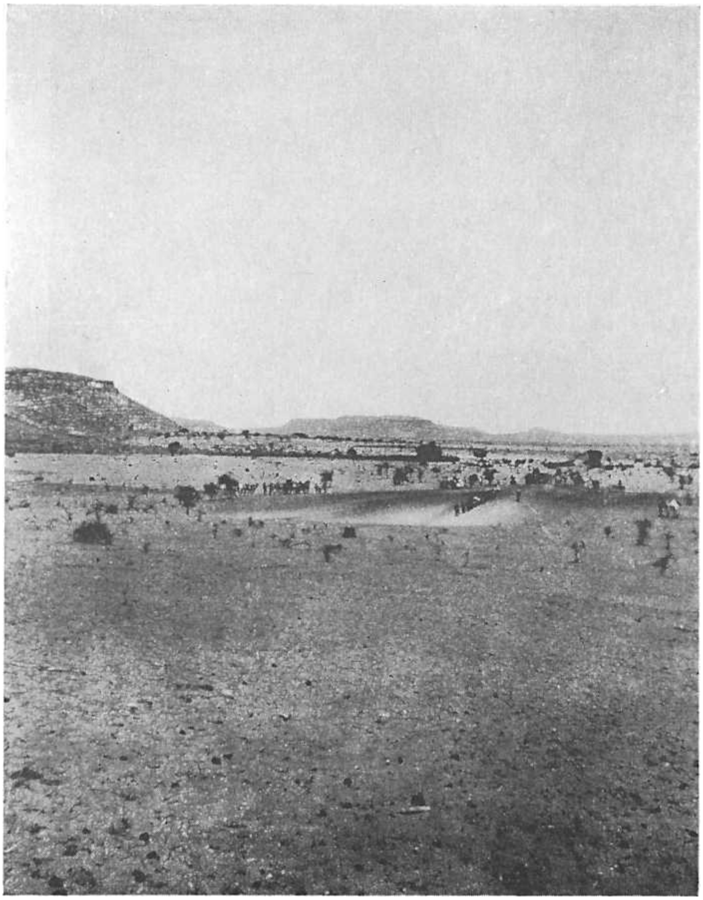
back


8°
9°
10°
11°
16°
15°
14°
Abellama
To Agades
Tagedufat
Well
Kelowi Road
Steppe Desert
Tabarghit Well
Taberghit
Eshkar
Aghmat Well
Tateus Well
Tamatut Well
Tagema
Old road to Agades
to Bilma
to Fashi
Pool
Wells
Mt. Termit
to Lake Chad
White Sand Dunes
Anumellen Well
Tembellaga
Aderbissinat
Ketia
Inafagak
Tadellaka
Tekursat
Inasamed Well
Farak
Hannekar
Menzafer
Gamram
Tekiasko
Tanut
Mt. Ginea
Mt. Akrl
Jajiduna
Gulbdu
Banuelki
DAMERGU
Anwar
Mazia
Dambansa
Dambiri
Gangara
Olelua
Mt. Zazawa
Kalilua
Yagaji
Tarka
El Hassan
Magaria
Gulbi n' Kaba
Urufan
Tasawa
Takieta
Zinder
Talrhas
Fonfoni
Ighelaf
Tigefen
Guliski
Adermellen
Bullum Baba
Teshkar
Tars
ELAKKOS
Tejira
Martiom
Tiocoda
Bultum
Burburawa
Diom
Girtigine
Kanakazhu
Tierawa
Garazu
Ganatsha
Gadabori
Kelle
Gedio
Gure
Wargale
Gidimuni
Addia
Scale, 1:2,000,000
English Miles
0 5 10 20 40
Longitude East 9° of Greenwich

back


AIR
and the
SOUTHLAND
FADE
Iferuan
A I R
TALAK
Agades
TEGAMA
AZAWAGH
Tenere or Desert
Termit
DAMERGU
Tanut
Jajiduna
ELAKKOS
TASAWA
MUNIO
Zinder
Gure
Tasawa
DAMAGARIM
GURE
KATSINA
Katsina
DAURA
R. Hadeija
KANO
Kano

back

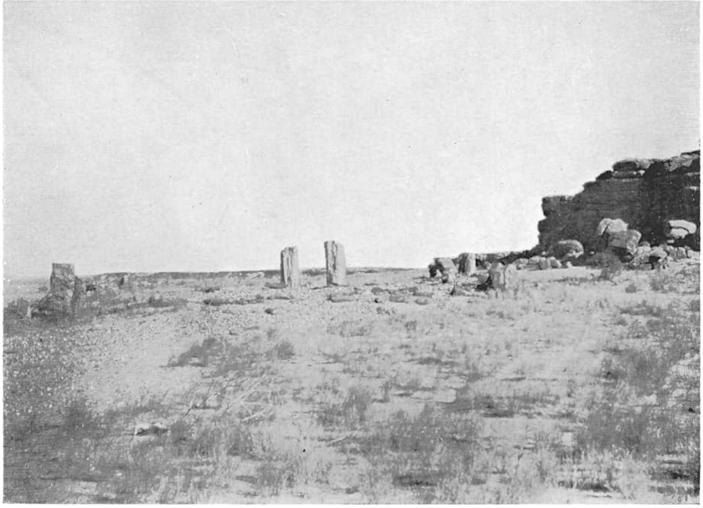


back

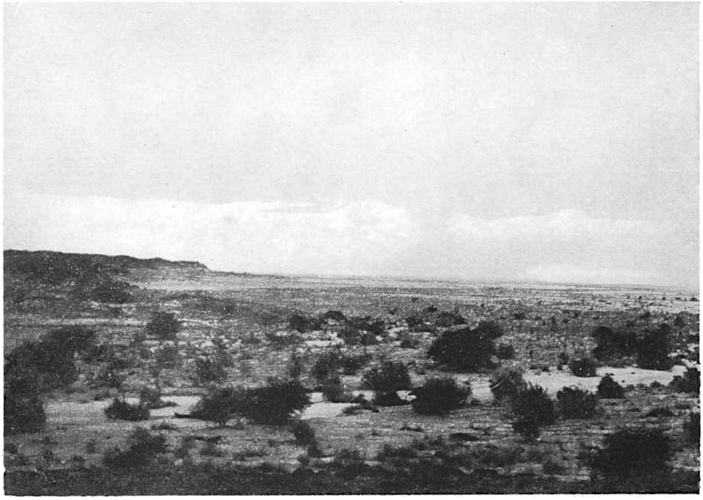
back

back

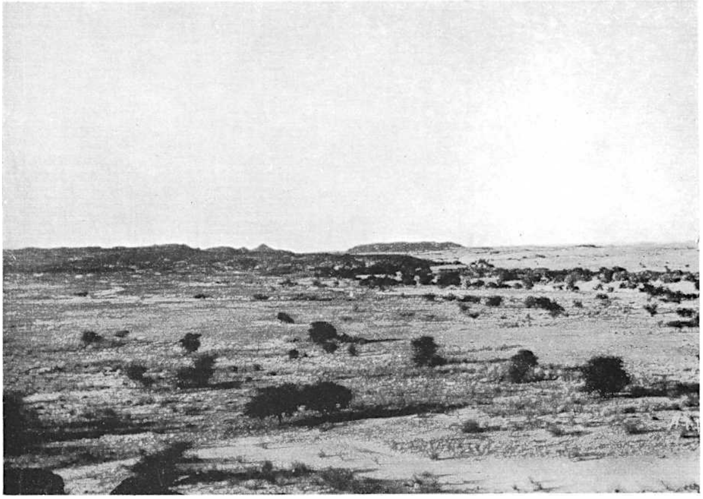
back



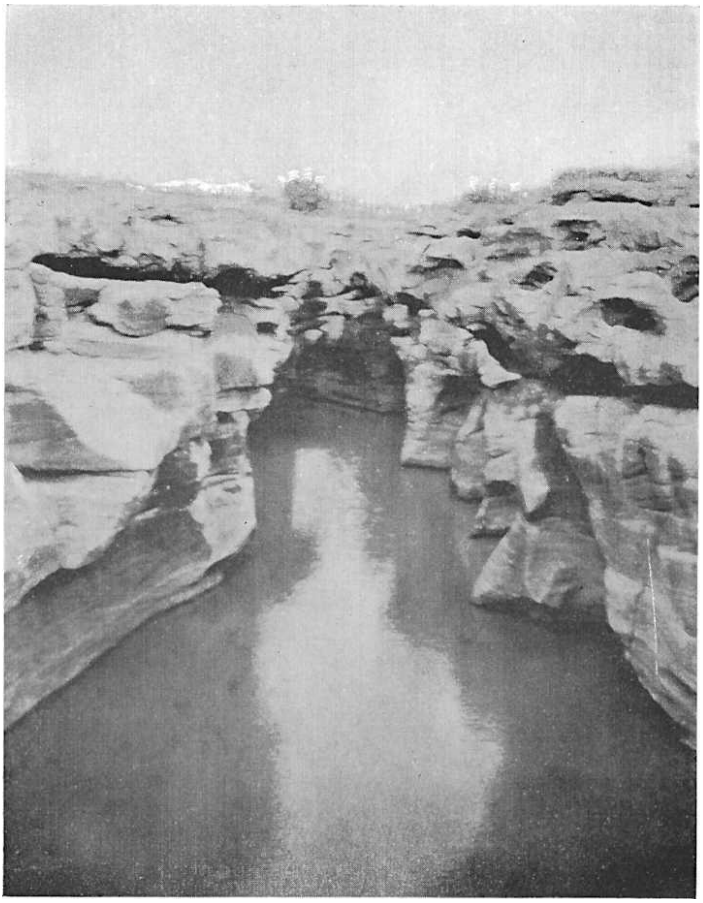
back



back

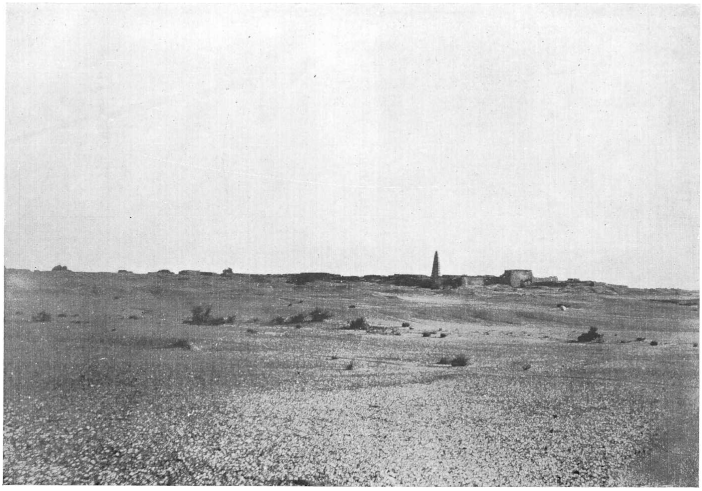


back

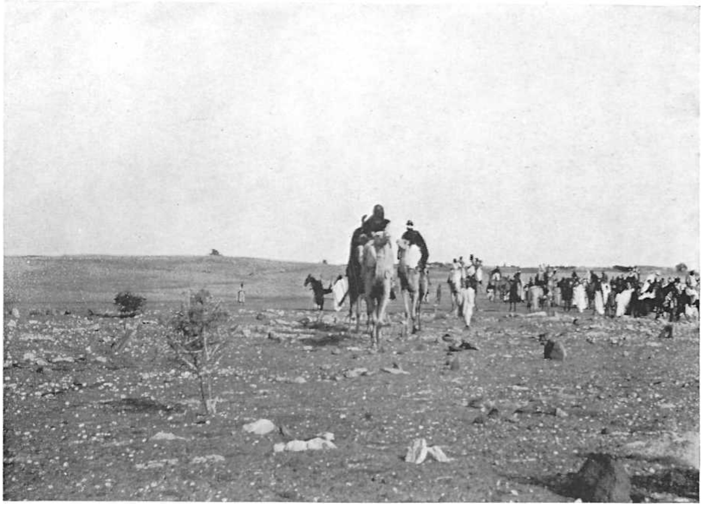


back

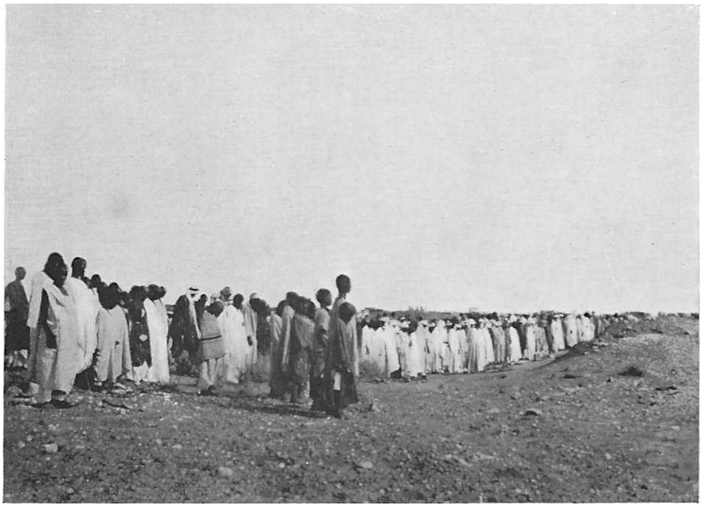
back



back



back

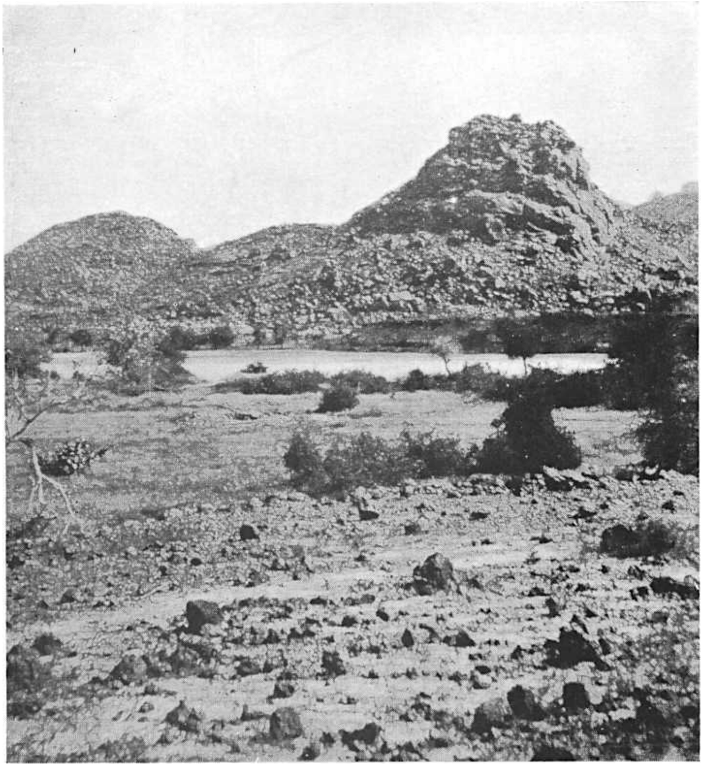


back

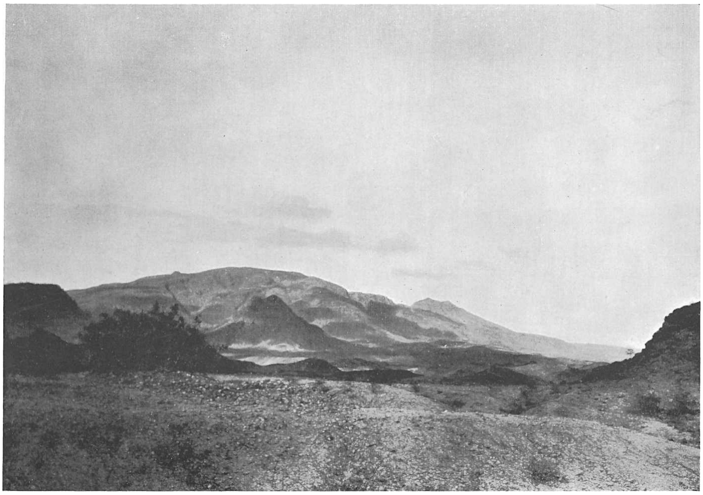
back

back

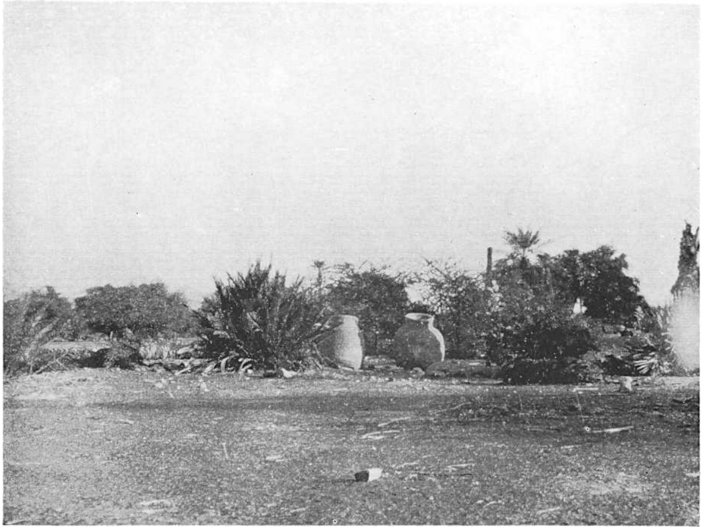
back



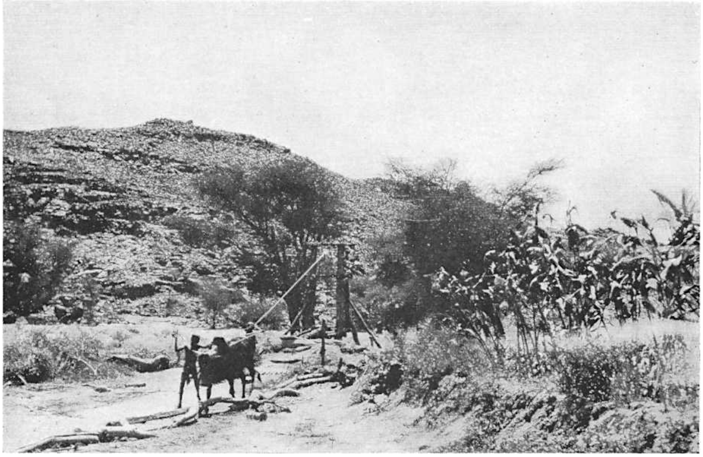
back



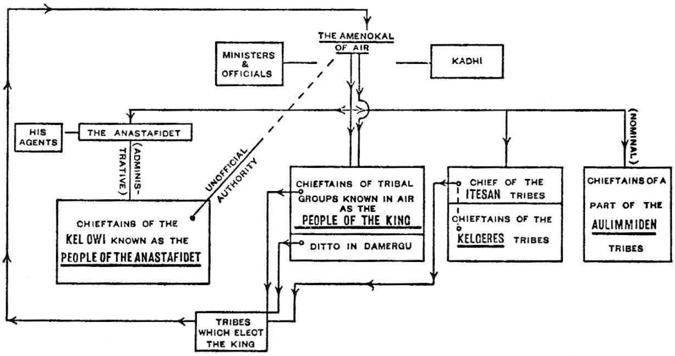
back



back



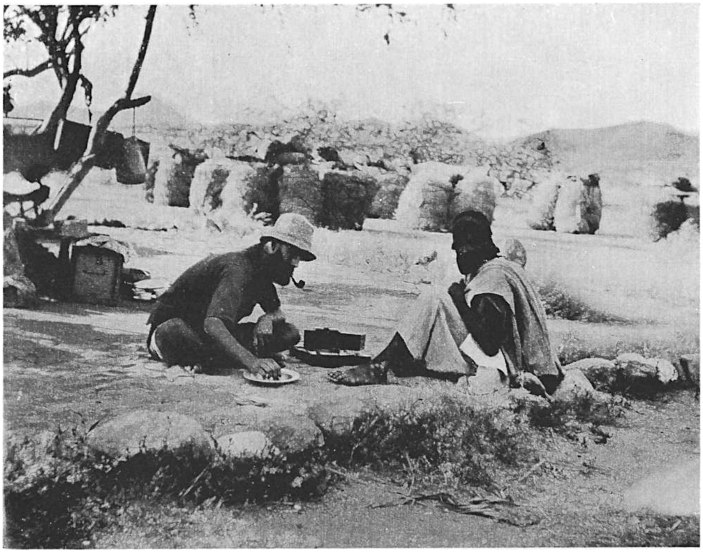
back


THE AMENOKAL OF AIR
MINISTERS & OFFICIALS
KADHI
HIS AGENTS
THE ANASTAFIDET
(ADMINISTRATIVE)
UNOFFICIAL AUTHORITY
(NOMINAL)
CHIEFTAINS OF THE KEL OWI KNOWN AS THE PEOPLE OF THE ANASTAFIDET
CHIEFTAINS OF TRIBAL GROUPS KNOWN IN AIR AS THE PEOPLE OF THE KING
DITTO IN DAMERGU
CHIEF OF THE ITESAN TRIBES
CHIEFTAINS OF THE KELGERES TRIBES
CHIEFTAINS OF A PART OF THE AULIMMIDEN TRIBES
TRIBES WHICH ELECT THE KING

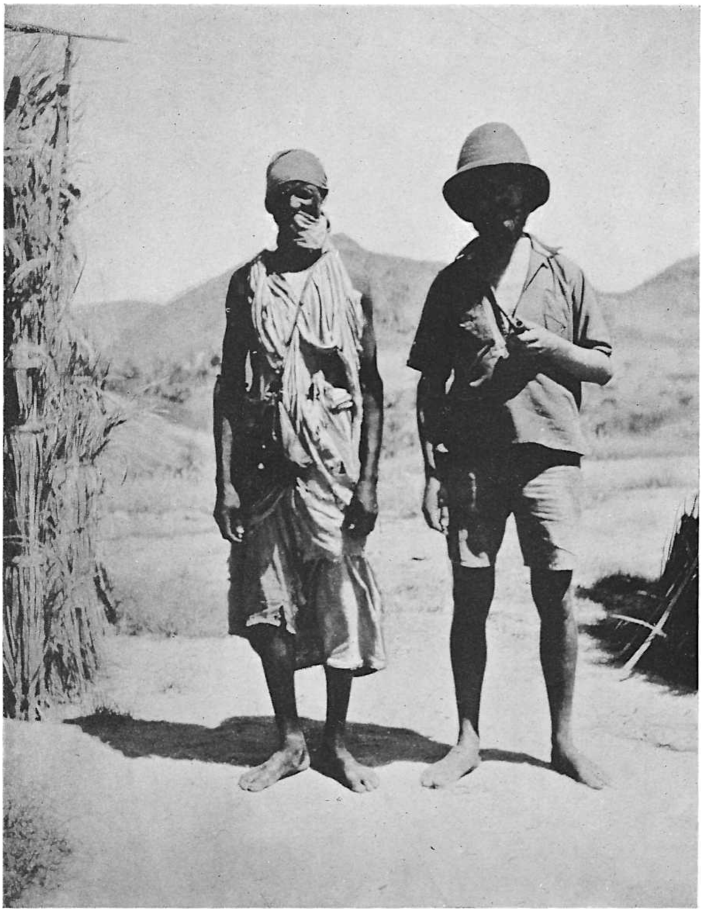
back

back

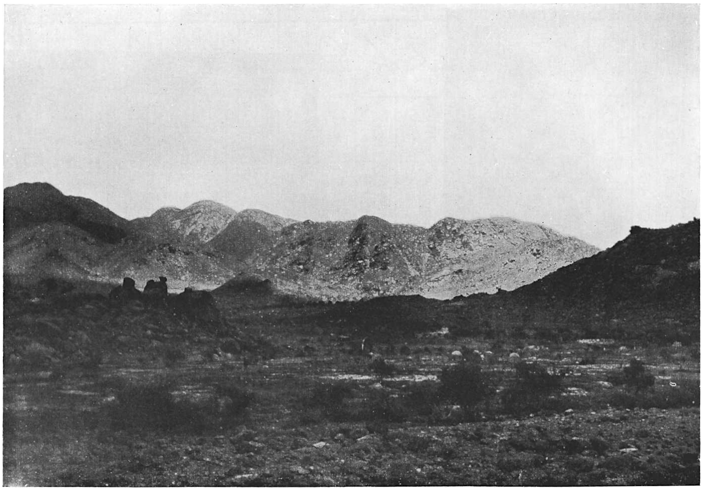
back



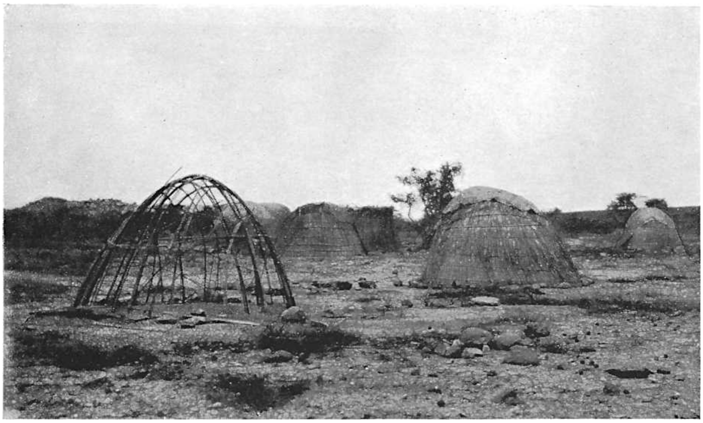
back



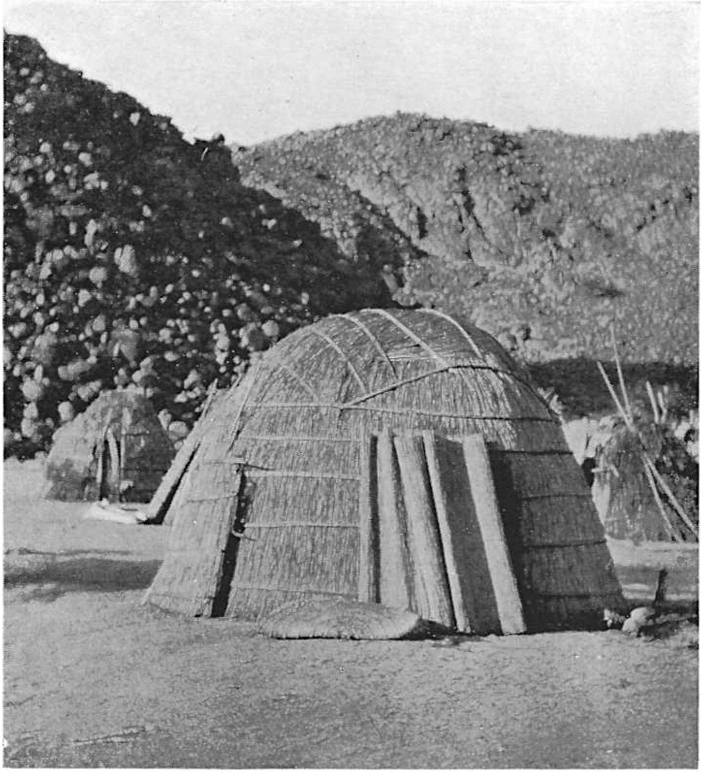
back



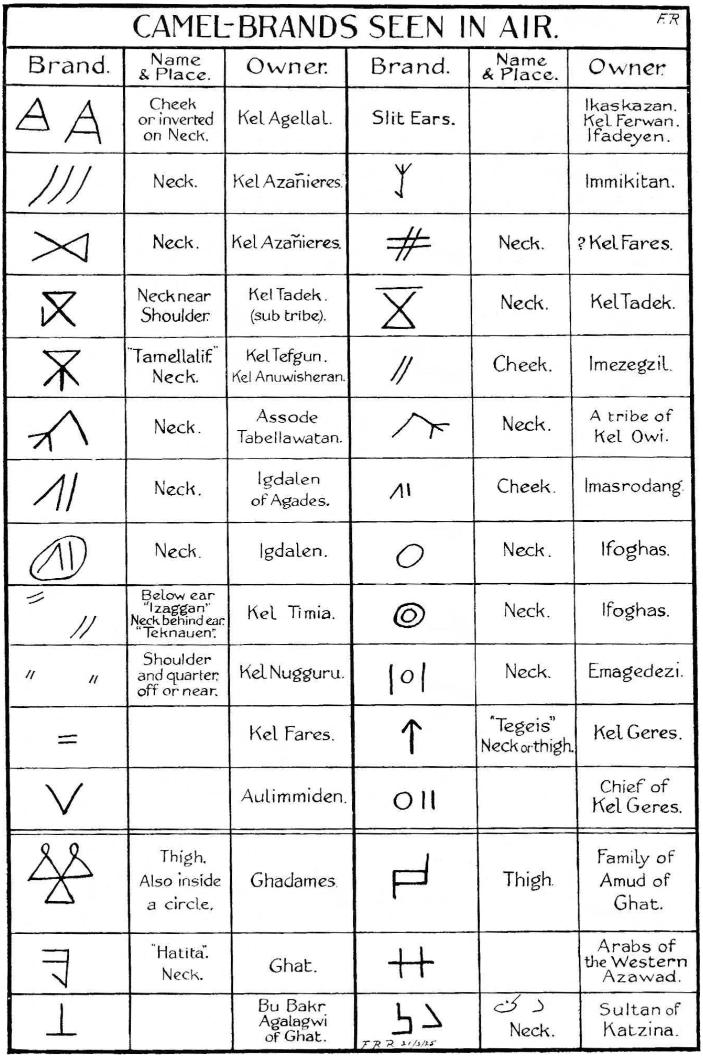
back



back



back



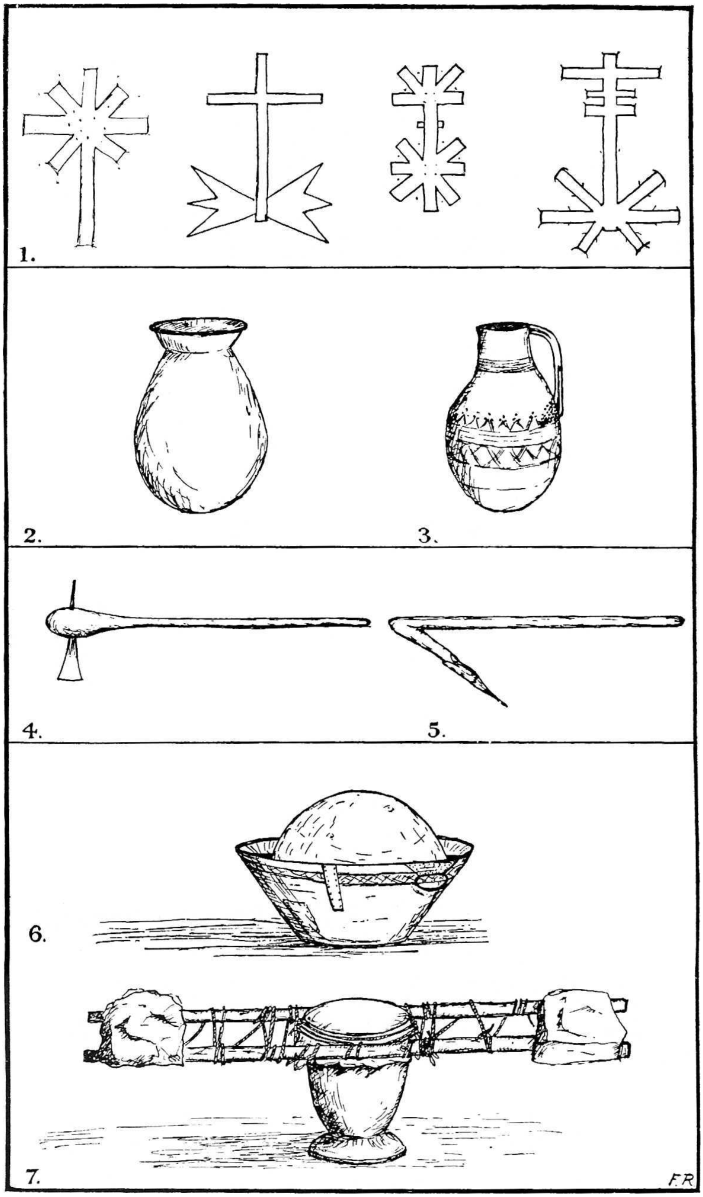
CAMEL-BRANDS SEEN IN AIR.

F.R.

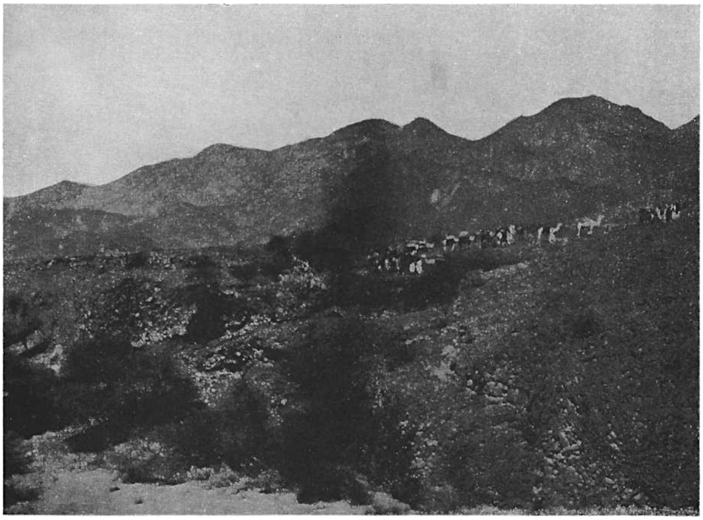
Brand.	Name & Place.	Owner.	Brand.	Name & Place.	Owner.
	Cheek or inverted on Neck.	Kel Agellal.	Slit Ears.		Ikaskazan. Kel Ferwan. Ifadeyen.
///	Neck.	Kel Azañieres.			Immikitan.
	Neck.	Kel Azañieres.	#	Neck.	? Kel Fares.
	Neck near Shoulder.	Kel Tadek. (sub tribe).		Neck.	Kel Tadek.
	"Tamellalif." Neck.	Kel Tefgun. Kel Anuwisheran.	//	Cheek.	Imezegzil.
	Neck.	Assode Tabellawatan.		Neck.	A tribe of Kel Owi.
	Neck.	Igdalen of Agades.		Cheek.	Imasrodang.
	Neck.	Igdalen.	O	Neck.	Ifoghas.
= // //	Below ear "Izaggan" Neck behind ear "Teknauen".	Kel Timia.	◎	Neck.	Ifoghas.
// //	Shoulder and quarter off or near.	Kel Nugguru.	|o|	Neck.	Emagedezi.
=		Kel Fares.	↑	"Tegeis" Neck or thigh.	Kel Geres.
V		Aulimmiden.	O II		Chief of Kel Geres.
	Thigh. Also inside a circle.	Ghadames.		Thigh.	Family of Amud of Ghat.
	"Hatita". Neck.	Ghat.			Arabs of the Western Azawad.
⊥		Bu Bakr Agalagwi of Ghat.		Neck.	Sultan of Katzina.

F R R 21/3/35

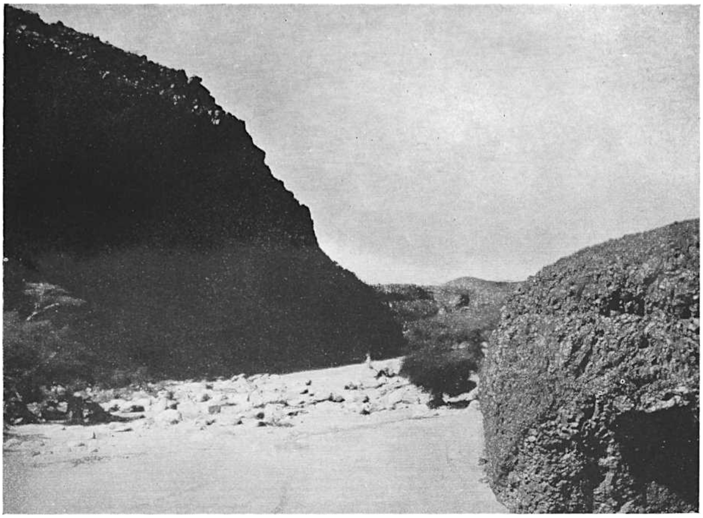
back



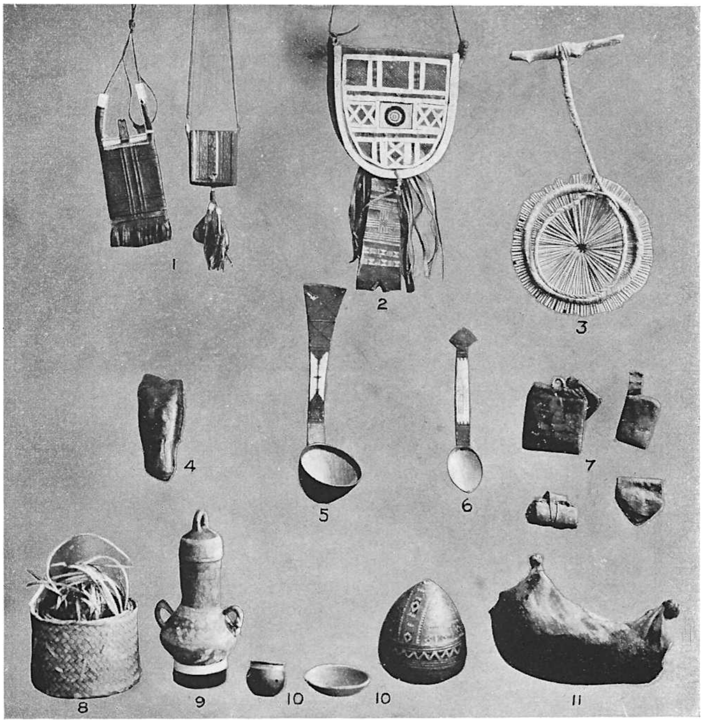
back



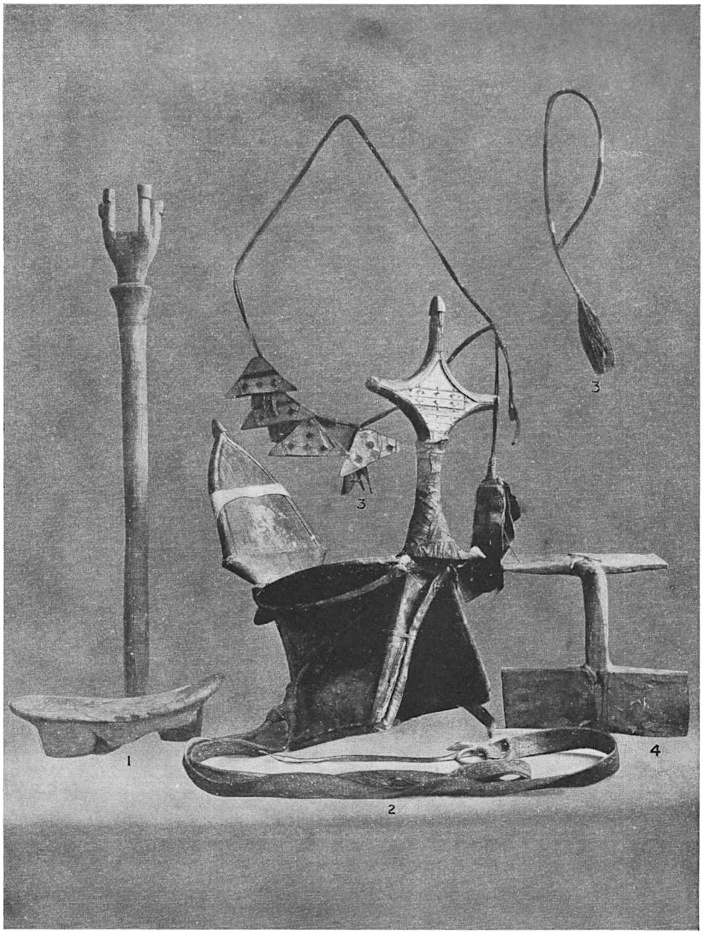
back



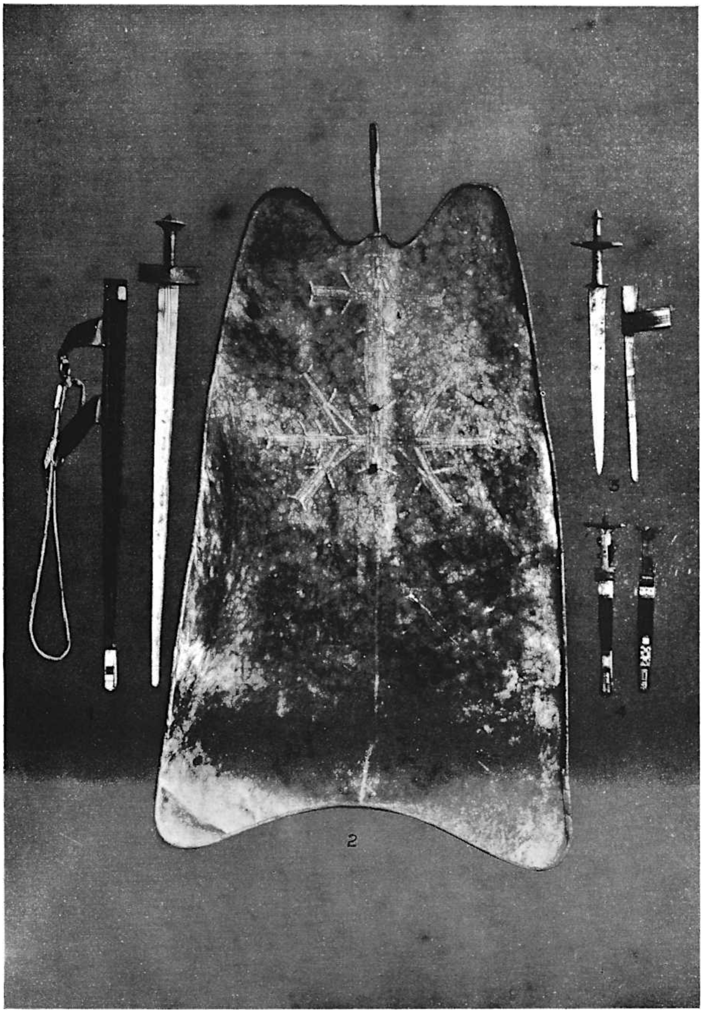
back


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
10
11

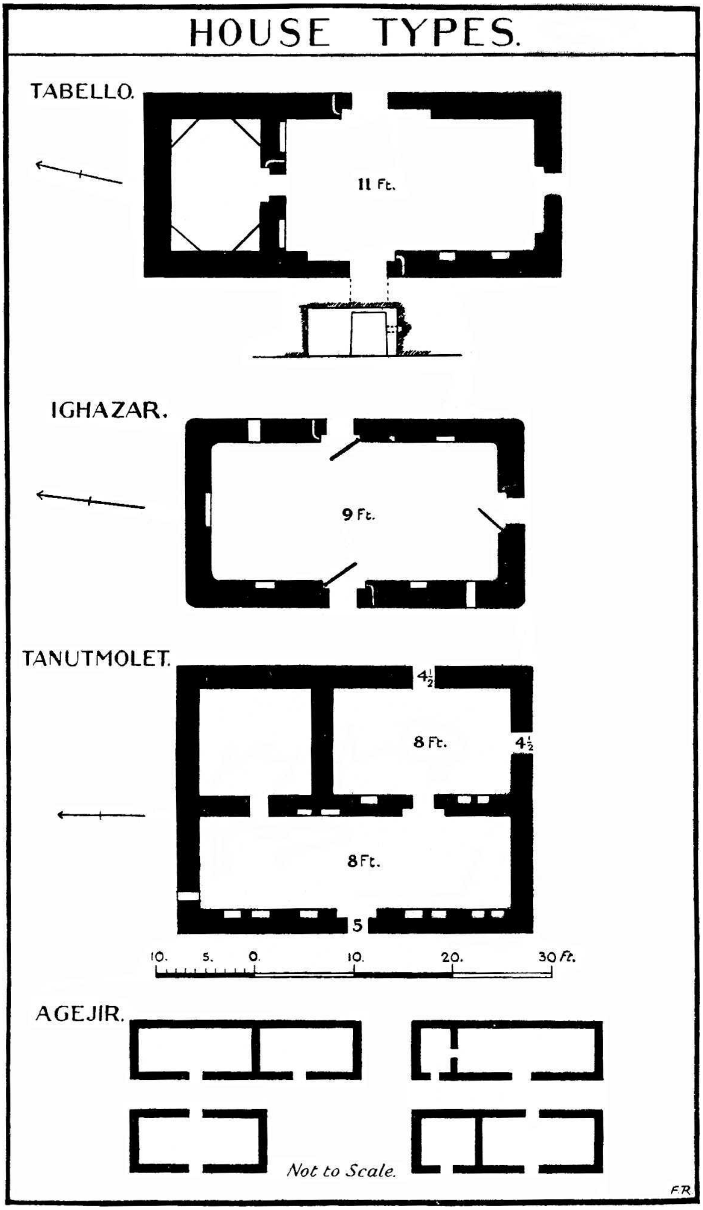
back



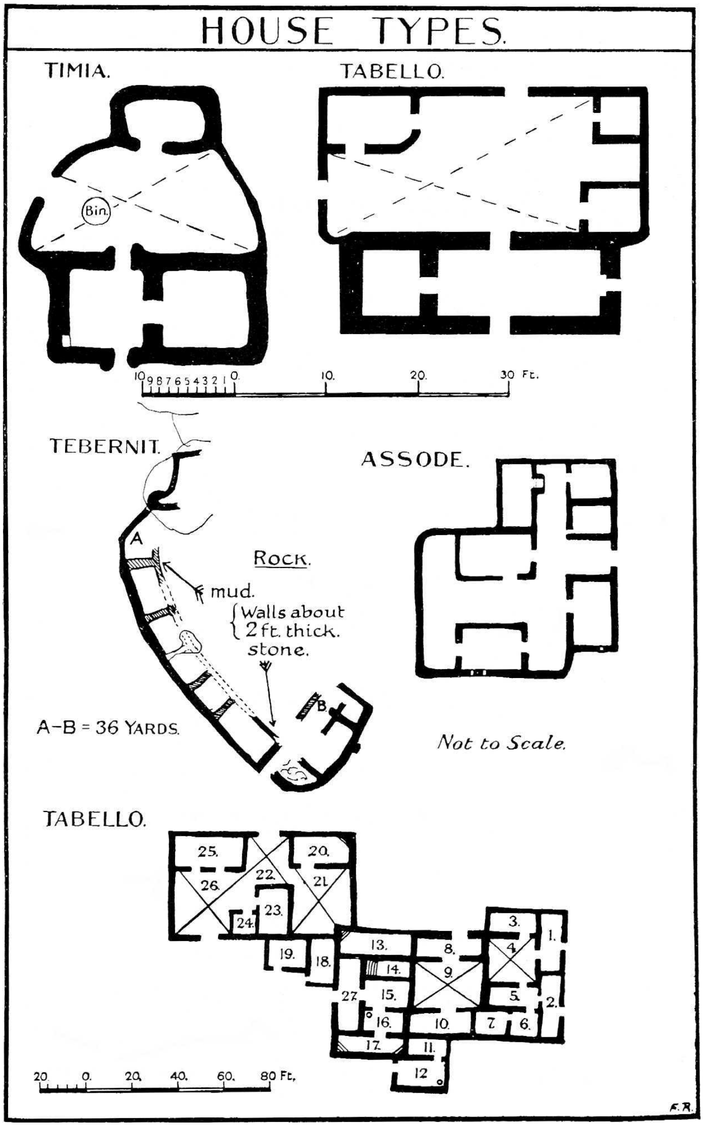
[back](#)



back


HOUSE TYPES.
TABELLO.
11 Ft.
IGHAZAR.
9 Ft.
TANUTMOLET.
4½
8 Ft.
4½
8 Ft.
5
10. 5. 0. 10. 20. 30 Ft.
AGEJIR.
Not to Scale.
F.R.

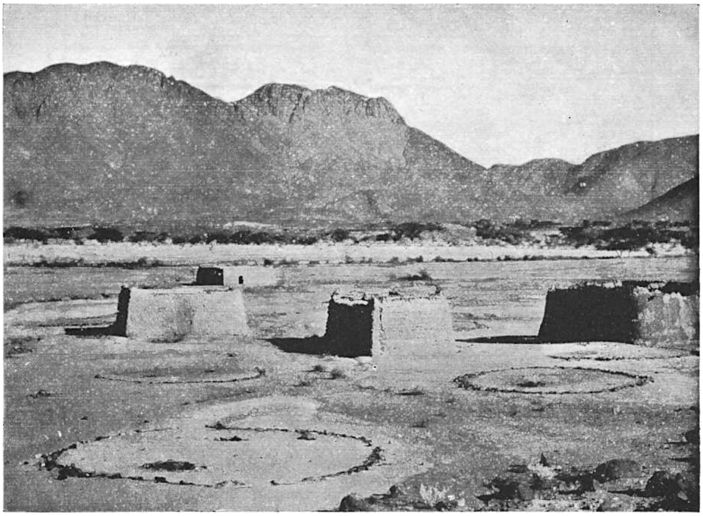
back



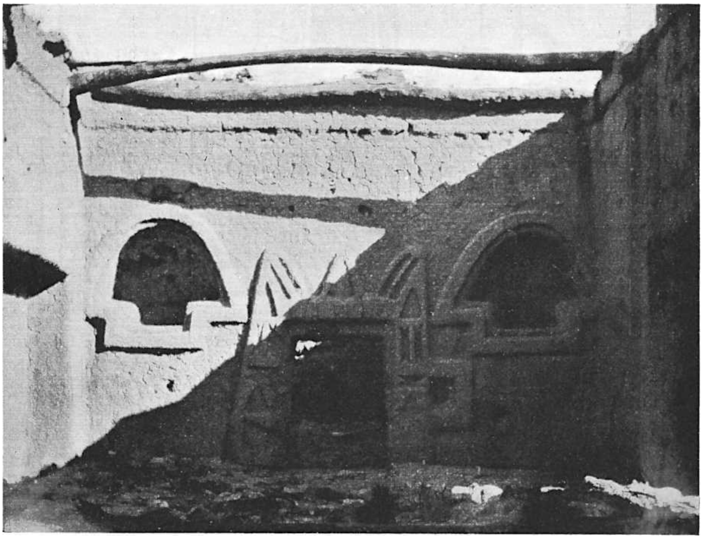
HOUSE TYPES.

TIMIA.
Bin.
TABELLO.
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0. 10. 20. 30 Ft.
TEBERNIT.
ASSODE.
A
Rock.
mud.
Walls about 2 ft. thick.
stone.
B
A–B = 36 Yards.
Not to Scale.
TABELLO.
25. 20. 22. 26. 21. 23. 24. 3. 1. 19. 18. 13. 8. 4. 14. 9. 27. 15. 5. 2. 16. 10. 7. 6. 17. 11. 12
20. 0. 20. 40. 60. 80 Ft.
F.R.

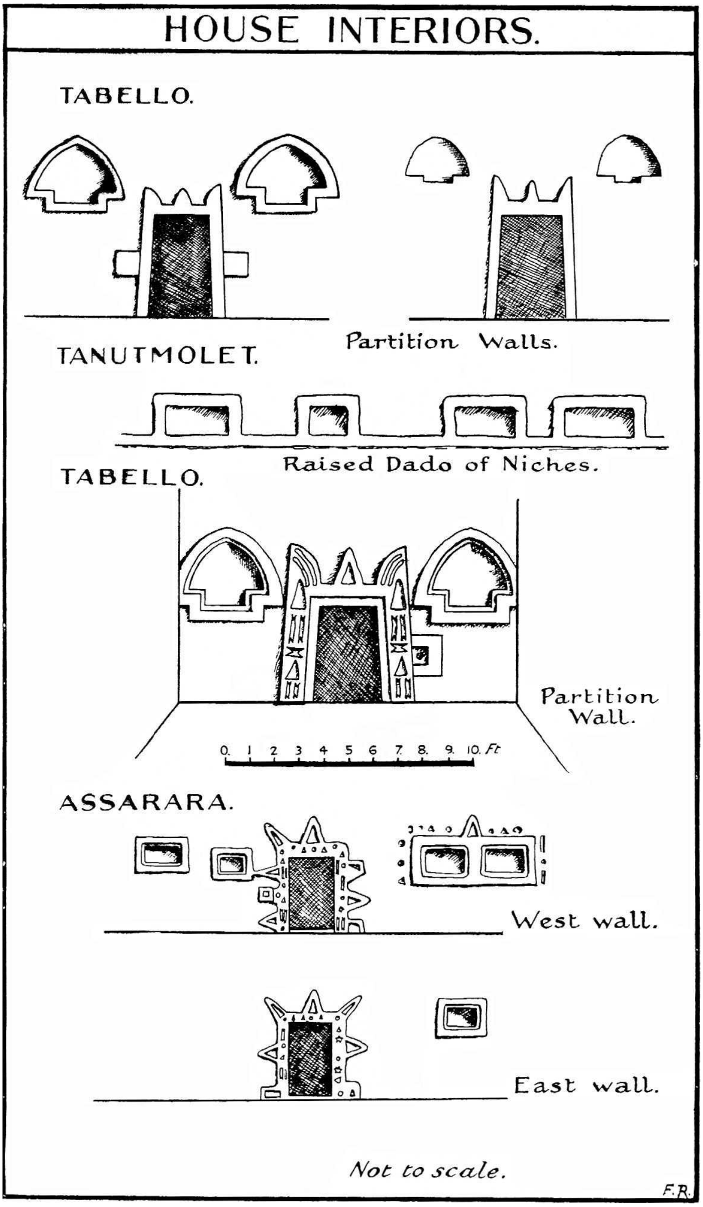
back



back



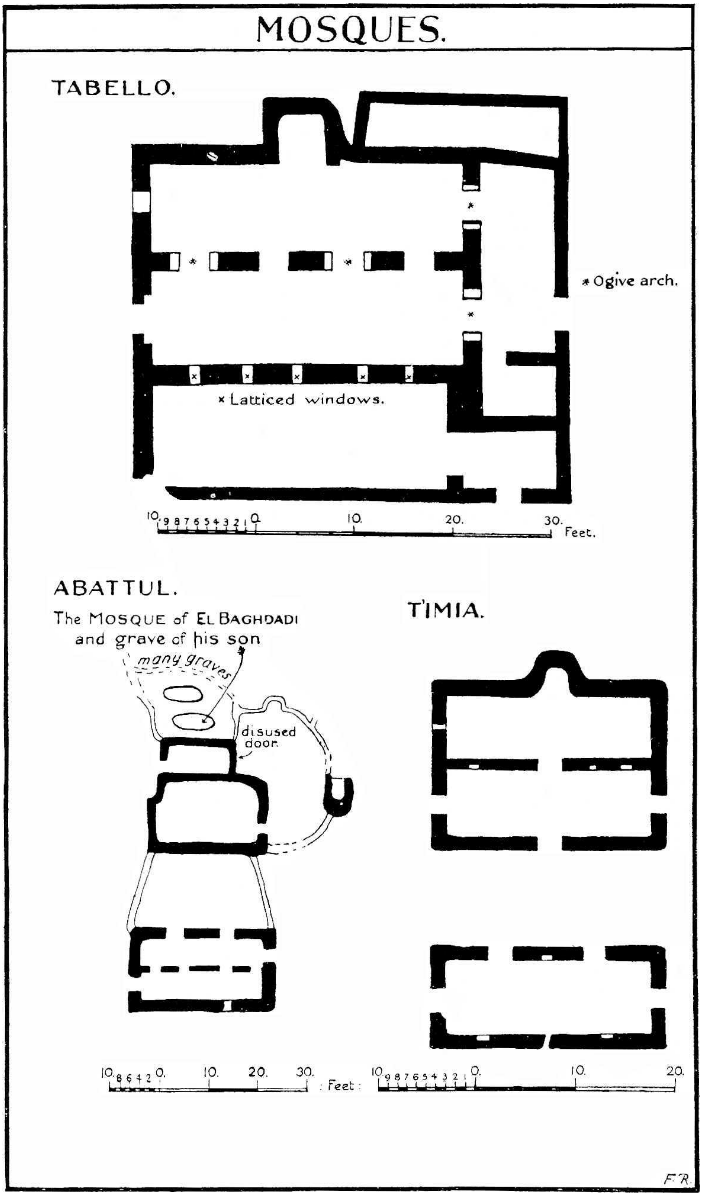
back



HOUSE INTERIORS.

TABELLO.
TANUTMOLET.
Partition Walls.
Raised Dado of Niches.
TABELLO.
Partition Wall.
0. 1 2 3 4 5 6 7. 8. 9. 10. Ft
ASSARARA.
West wall.
East wall.
Not to scale.
F.R.

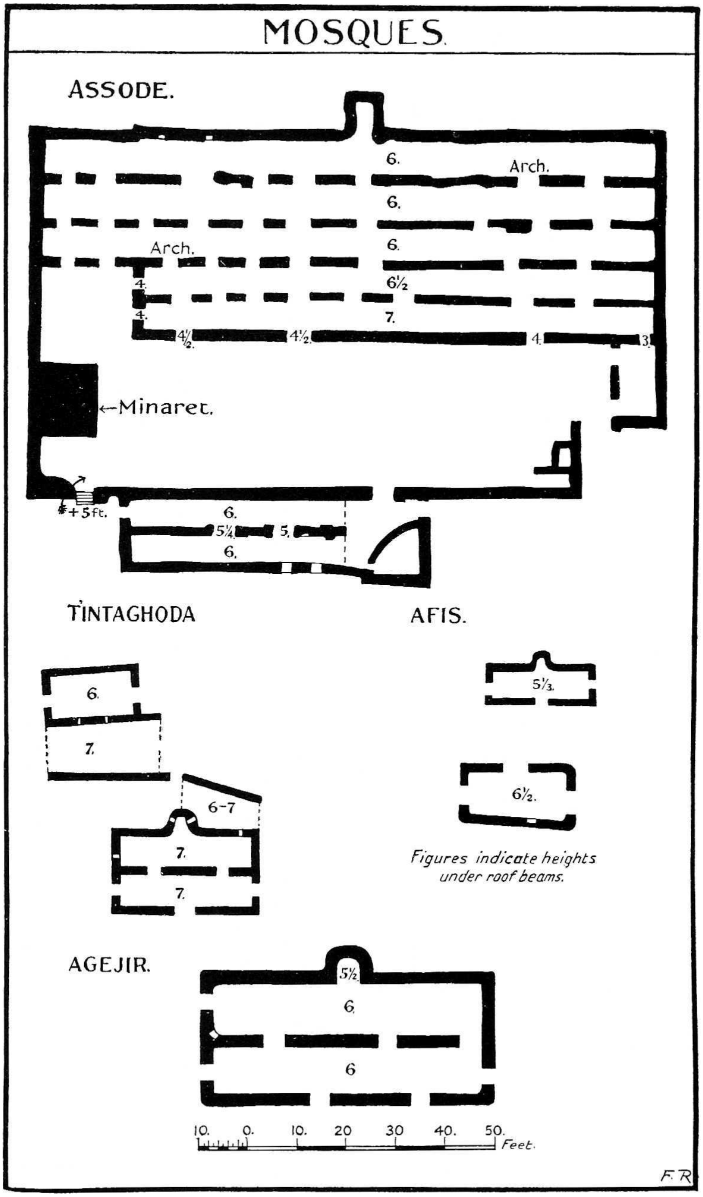
back



MOSQUES.

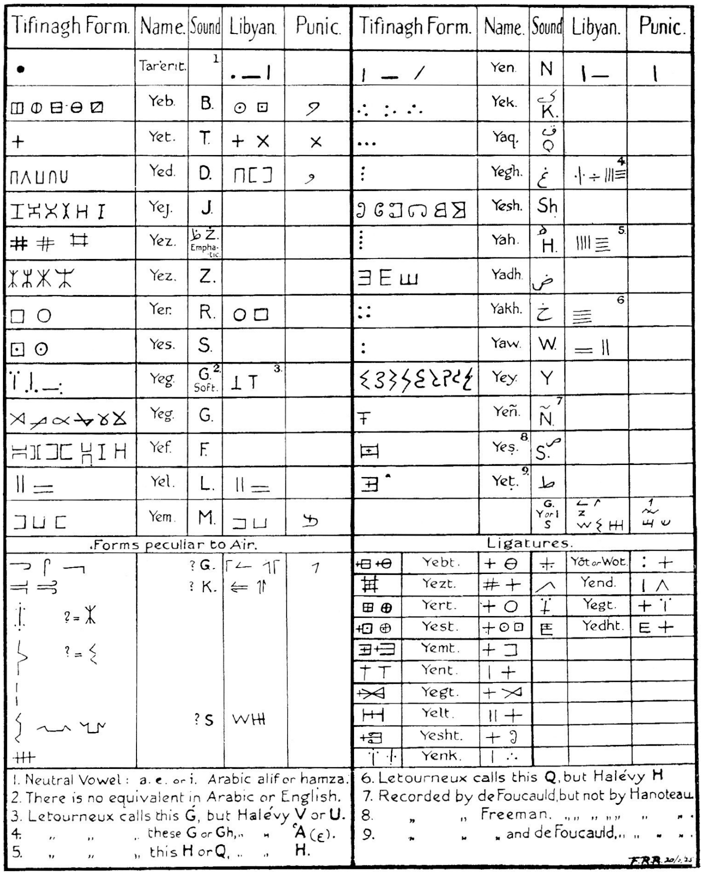
TABELLO.
* Ogive arch.
× Latticed windows.
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0. 10. 20. 30. Feet.
ABATTUL.
The MOSQUE of EL BAGHDADI
and grave of his son
many graves
disused door.
T'IMIA.
10 8 6 4 2 0. 10. 20. 30. : Feet :
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0. 10. 20.
F.R.

back


MOSQUES.
ASSODE.
6.
Arch.
6.
Arch.
6.
6½
4.
4.
7.
4½.
4½.
4.
3.
←Minaret.
+5ft.
6.
5¼.
5.
6.
TINTAGHODA
AFIS.
6.
7.
6-7
7.
7.
5⅓.
6½.
AGEJIR.
5½
6.
6
10. 0. 10. 20 30 40. 50.
Feet.
F.R.

Figures indicate heights under roof beams.

back



Tifinagh Form.	Name.	Sound	Libyan.	Punic.	Tifinagh Form.	Name.	Sound	Libyan.	Punic.
•	Tar'erit.	[1]	• — ǀ		ǀ — /	Yen.	N	ǀ—	ǀ
◫ ⦶ ⊟ ⊖ ⍁	Yeb.	B.	⊙ ⊡	𐤁	⸫ ⸪ ∴	Yek.	ک K.		
+	Yet.	T.	+ ×	×	…	Yaq.	ق Q		
⊓ Λ ⊔ ∩ ∪	Yed.	D.	⊓ [ ]	𐤃	⋮	Yegh.	غ	·ǀ· ÷ ⦀≡ [4]	
I ⵊ X ⵣ H I	Yej.	J.			ʓ ɞ ⊐ ⊂ B ⋈	Yesh.	Sh		
ⵌ ⵌ ⌗	Yez.	ظ Ż. Emphatic.			⁞	Yah.	ه H.	⦀ ≡ [5]	
ⵣ ⵣ Ж ⵣ	Yez.	Z.			∃ E ш	Yadh.	ض		
□ ○	Yer.	R.	○ □		⁘	Yakh.	خ	≣ [6]	
⊡ ⊙	Yes.	S.			:	Yaw.	W.	═ ‖	
ꞁ̇ ⁝ —:	Yeg.	G.[2] Soft.	⊥ T [3]		ξ ʒ ⋛ ϟ Ɛ ʅ ʔ ɛ ɀ	Yey.	Y		
⋈ ⊿ ∝ ⋎ ɤ ⧖	Yeg.	G.			∓	Yeñ.	Ñ.[7]		
⌶][⊐⊏ ⌶ I H	Yef.	F.			⊞	Yeṣ.[8]	ص Ṣ.		
‖ ═	Yel.	L.	‖ ═		⊞ •	Yeṭ.[9]	ط		
⊐ ⊔ ⊏	Yem.	M.	⊐ ⊔	𐤌			G. Y or I S	∠ ʌ z w ξ ⧺	1 ~ ㅂ ᴗ

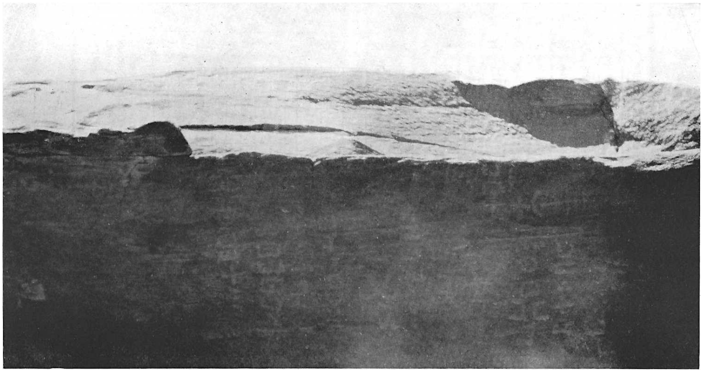
.Forms peculiar to Air.				
⊐ ʃ ¬ ⫤ ⥱		? G. ? K.	Γ∠ ⊣Γ ⇐ ⥮	7
⁝ ?= ⵣ				
ʅ ?= ξ				
ǀ				
ξ ⁓ ⵖ		? S	W⧺	
⧺				

Ligatures.					
+⊟ +⊖	Yebt.	+ ⊖	⁜	Yōt or Wot.	: +
⌗	Yezt.	# +	⋀	Yend.	ǀ Λ
⊞ ⊕	Yert.	+ ○	ꞁ̇	Yegt.	+ ꞁ̇
+⊡ ⊕	Yest.	+ ⊙ ⊡	⊑	Yedht.	E +
⊞+⊐	Yemt.	+ ⊐			
† T	Yent.	ǀ +			
+⋈	Yegt.	+ ⋈			
⊢⊣	Yelt.	‖ +			
+ʓ	Yesht.	+ ʓ			
ꞁ̇ ·ǀ·	Yenk.	ǀ ∴			

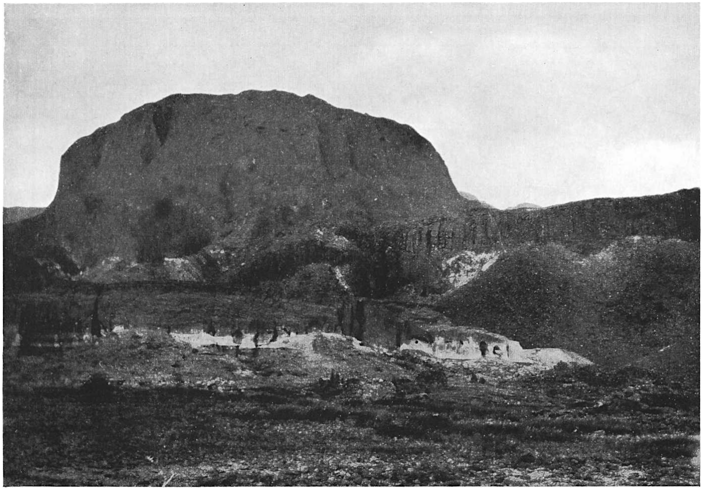
1. Neutral Vowel : a. e. or i. Arabic alif or hamza.
2. There is no equivalent in Arabic or English.
3. Letourneux calls this Ǵ, but Halévy V or U.
4. " " " these G or Gh, " " ʿA (ε).
5. " " " this H or Q, " " H.
6. Letourneux calls this Q, but Halévy H
7. Recorded by de Foucauld, but not by Hanoteau.
8. " " Freeman. " " " " " " " " "
9. " " " and de Foucauld, " " " "

F.R.R. 20/1.25

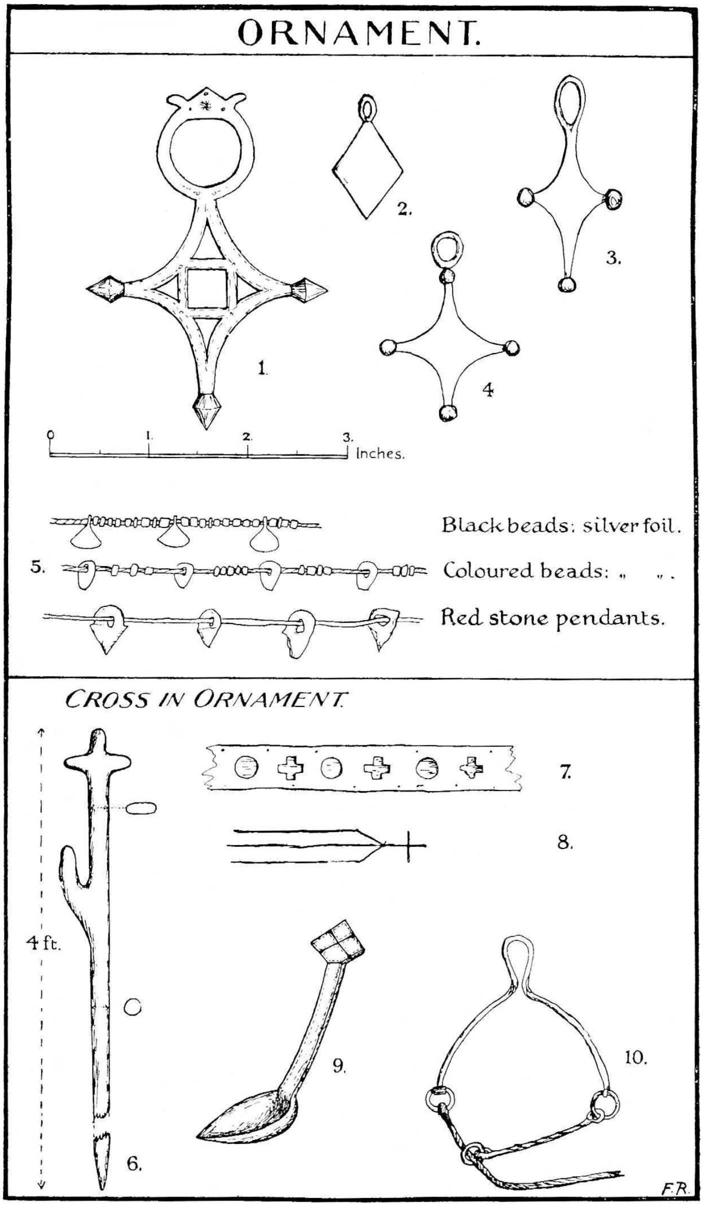
back



back



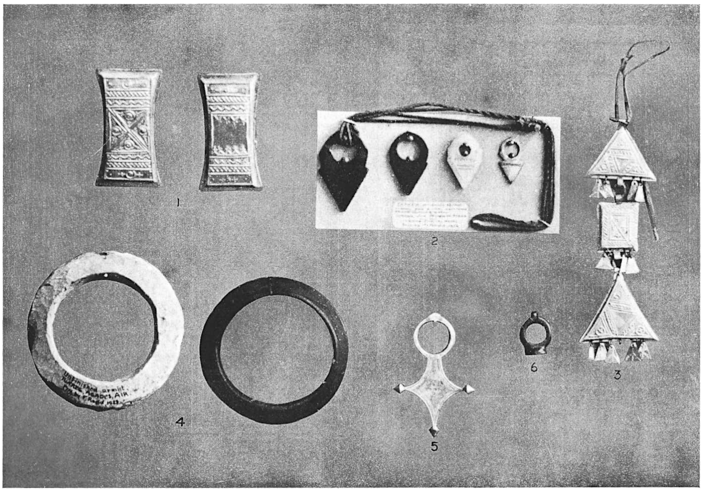
back



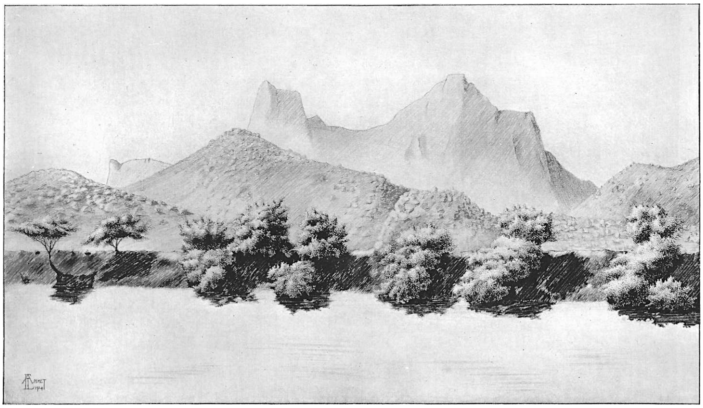
ORNAMENT.

1.
2.
3.
4
0
1.
2.
3.
Inches.
5.
Black beads: silver foil.
Coloured beads: „ „ .
Red stone pendants.
CROSS IN ORNAMENT.
4 ft.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
F.R.

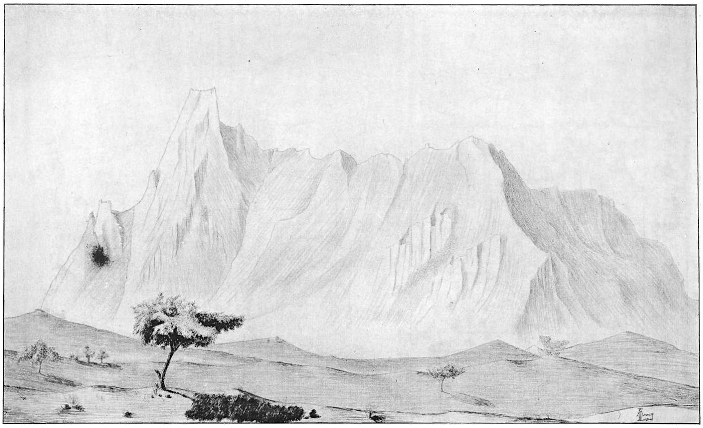
back


1
2
3
Unfinished armlet
Agades, AIR
4
5
6

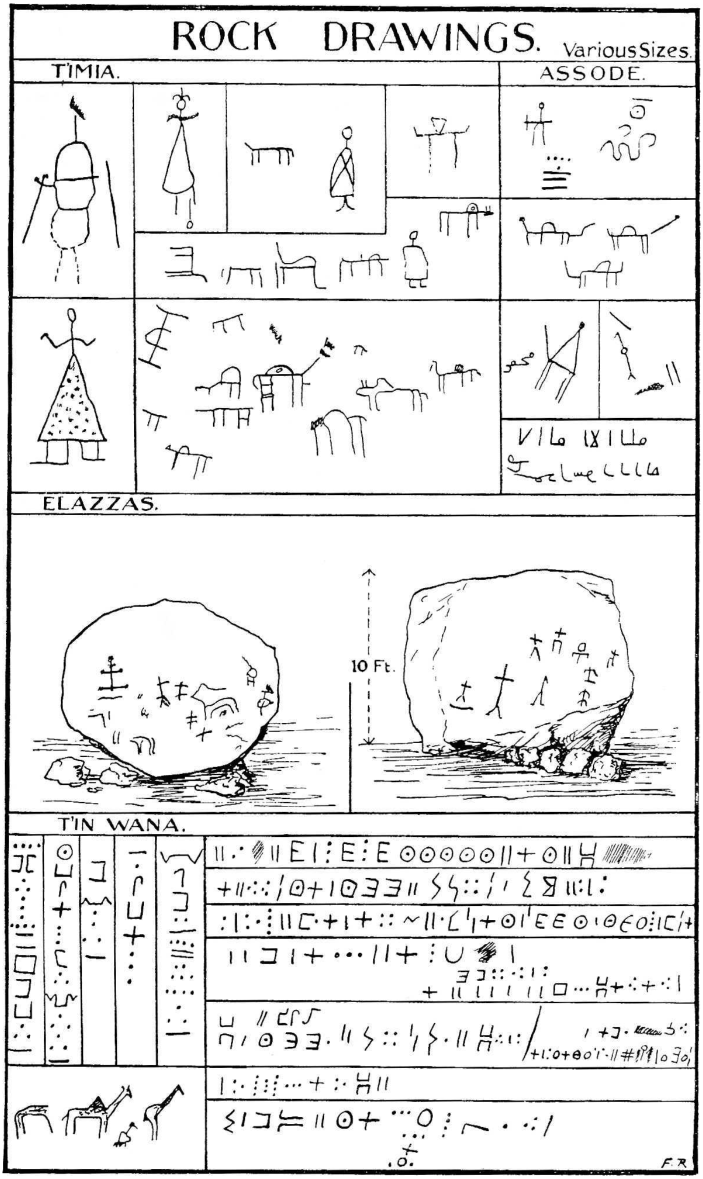
back



back

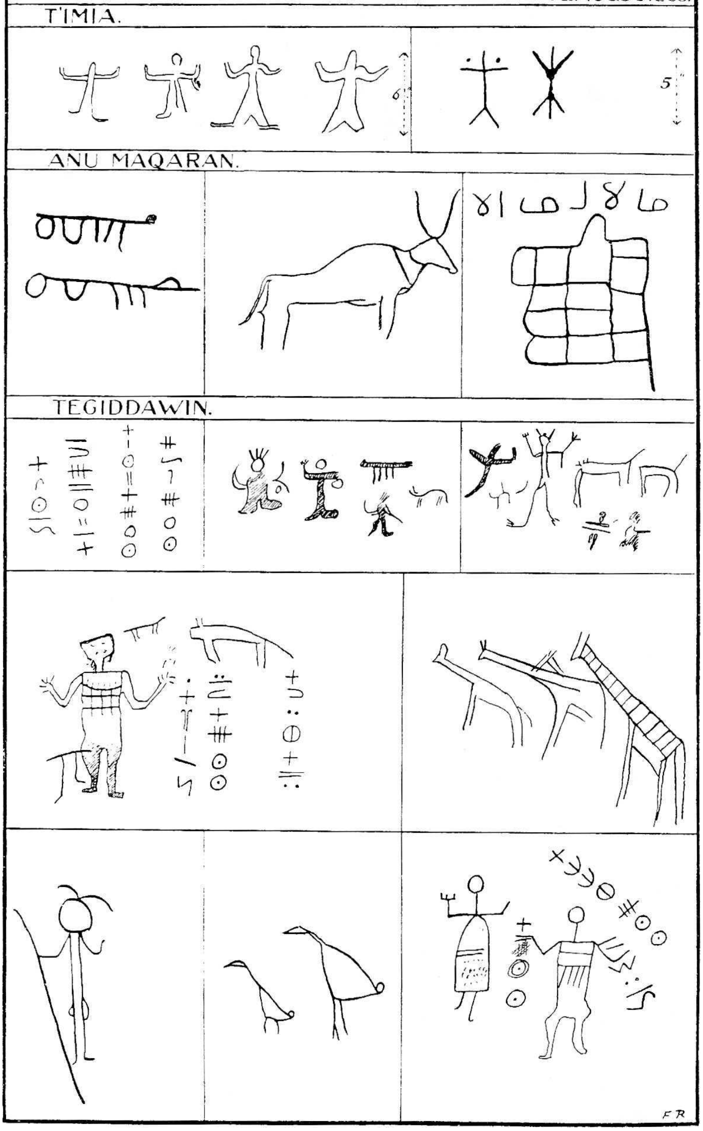


back

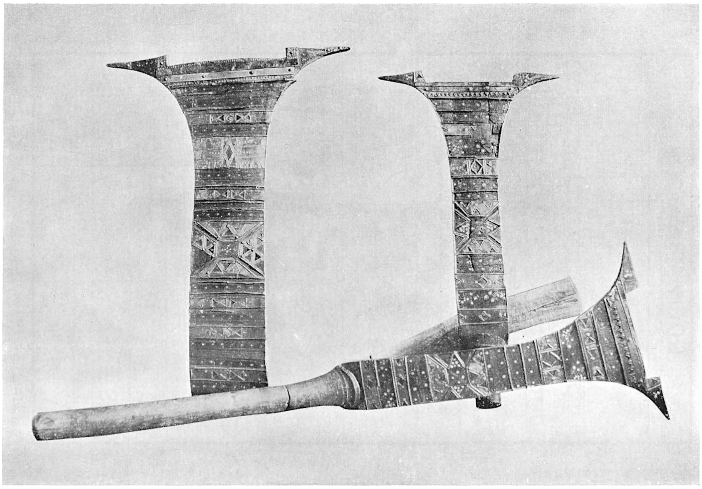

ROCK DRAWINGS. Various Sizes.
T'IMIA.
ASSODE.
ELAZZAS.
10 Ft.
T'IN WANA.
F.R.

back

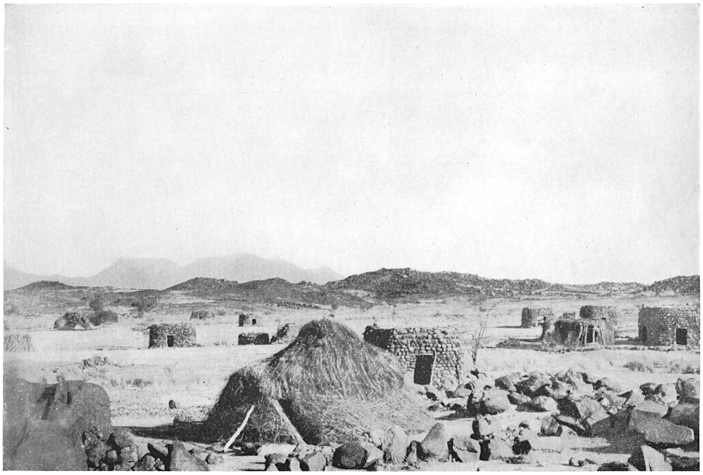
ROCK DRAWINGS. Various Sizes.


T'IMIA.
6"
5"
ANU MAQARAN.
TEGIDDAWIN.
F R

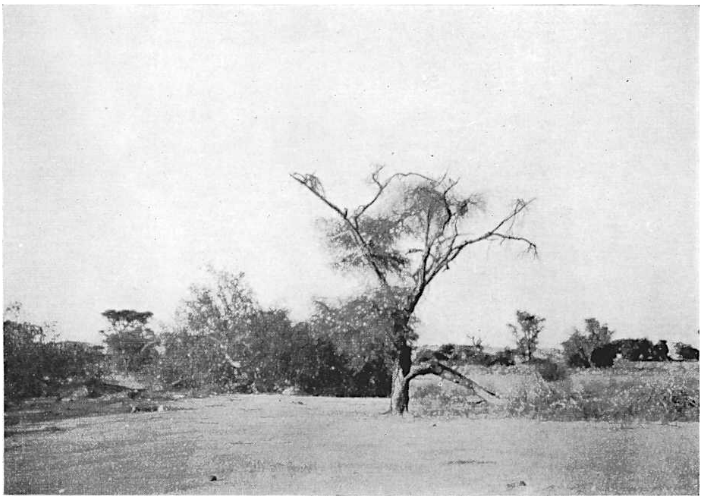
back



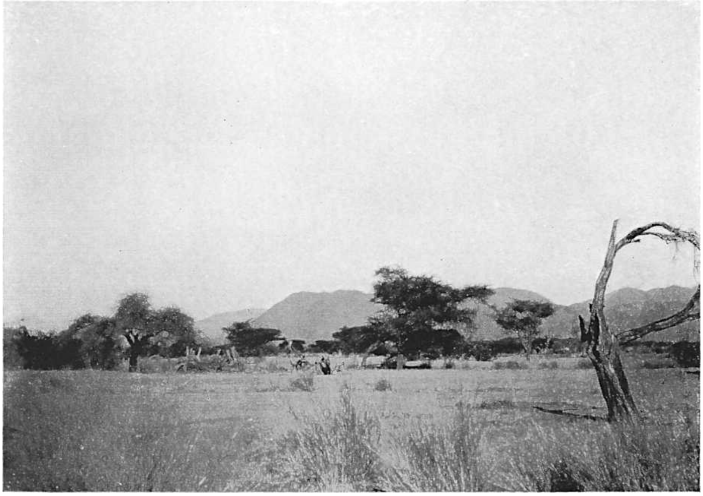
back



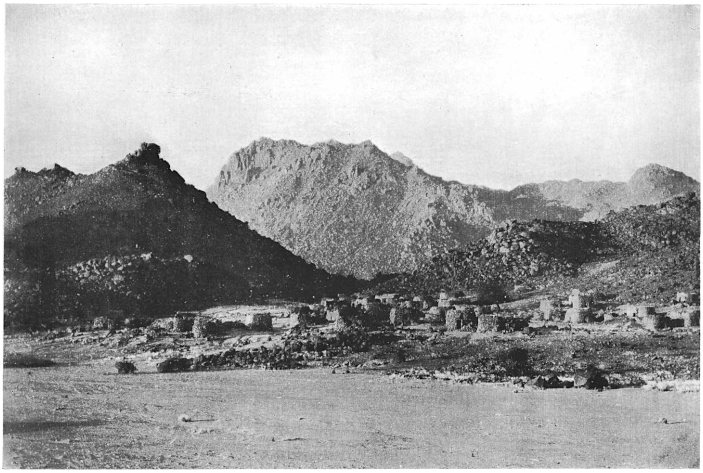
back



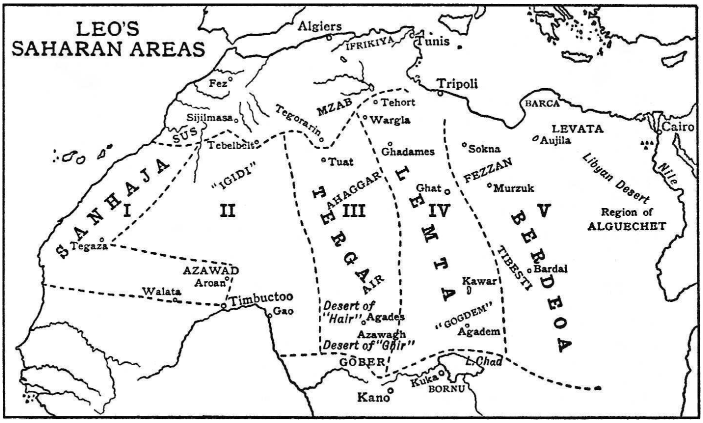
[back](#)



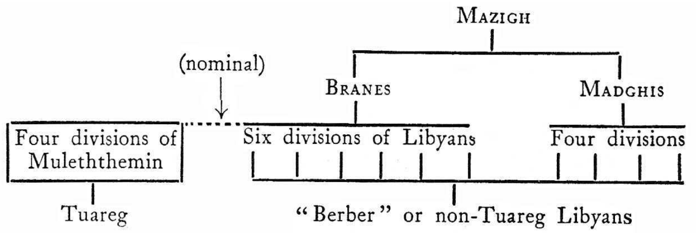
back



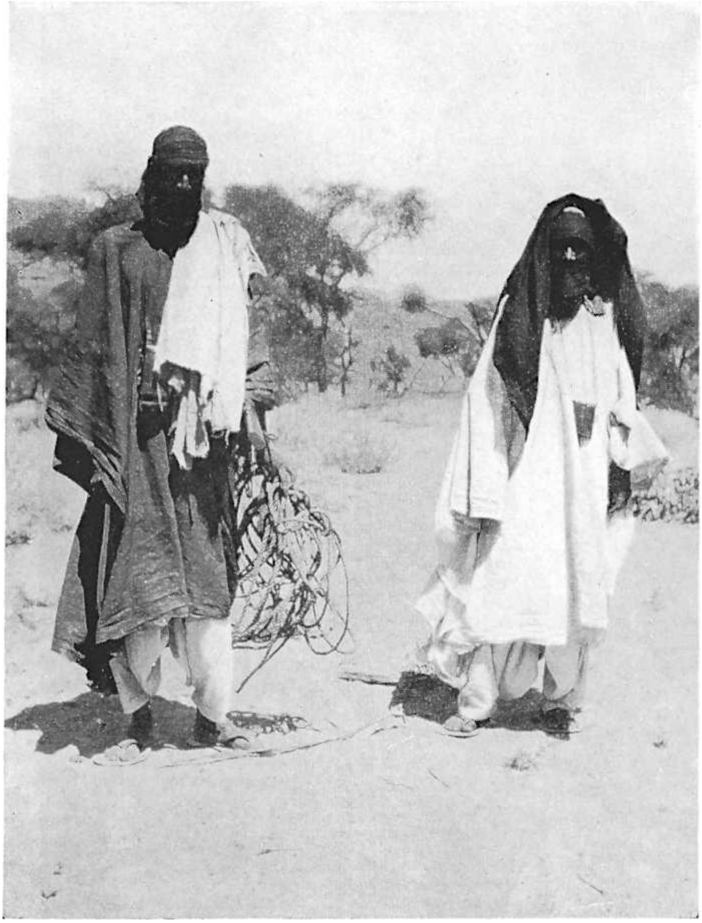
back


LEO'S SAHARAN AREAS
Algiers
IFRIKIYA
Tunis
Tripoli
Fez
Sijilmasa
SUS
Tebelbelt
Tegorarin
MZAB
Tehort
Wargla
Ghadames
Tuat
BARCA
LEVATA
Aujila
Cairo
Sokna
FEZZAN
Libyan Desert
Nile
Murzuk
Ghat
SANHAJA
I
"IGIDI"
II
AHAGGAR
TERGA
III
LEMTA
IV
V
BERDEOA
Region of ALGUECHET
Tegaza
AZAWAD
Aroan
Walata
Timbuctoo
Gao
AIR
TIBESTI
Bardai
Kawar
Desert of "Hair"
Agades
"GOGDEM"
Agadem
Azawagh
Desert of "Ghir"
GOBER
L. Chad
Kuka
BORNU
Kano

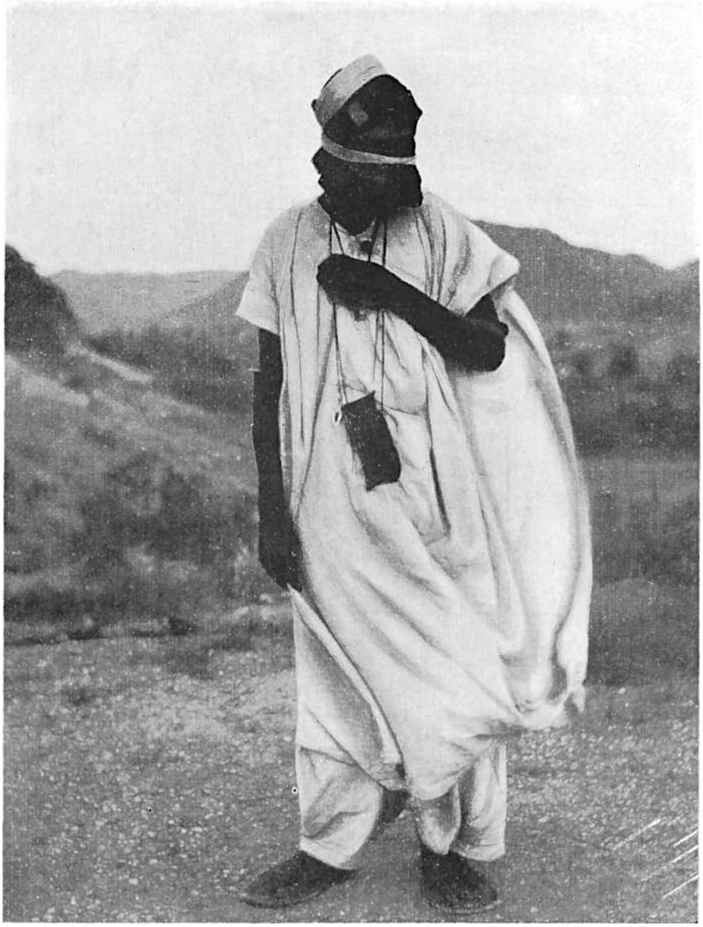
back


MAZIGH
(nominal)
BRANES
MADGHIS
Four divisions of Muleththemin
Six divisions of Libyans
Four divisions
Tuareg
"Berber" or non-Tuareg Libyans

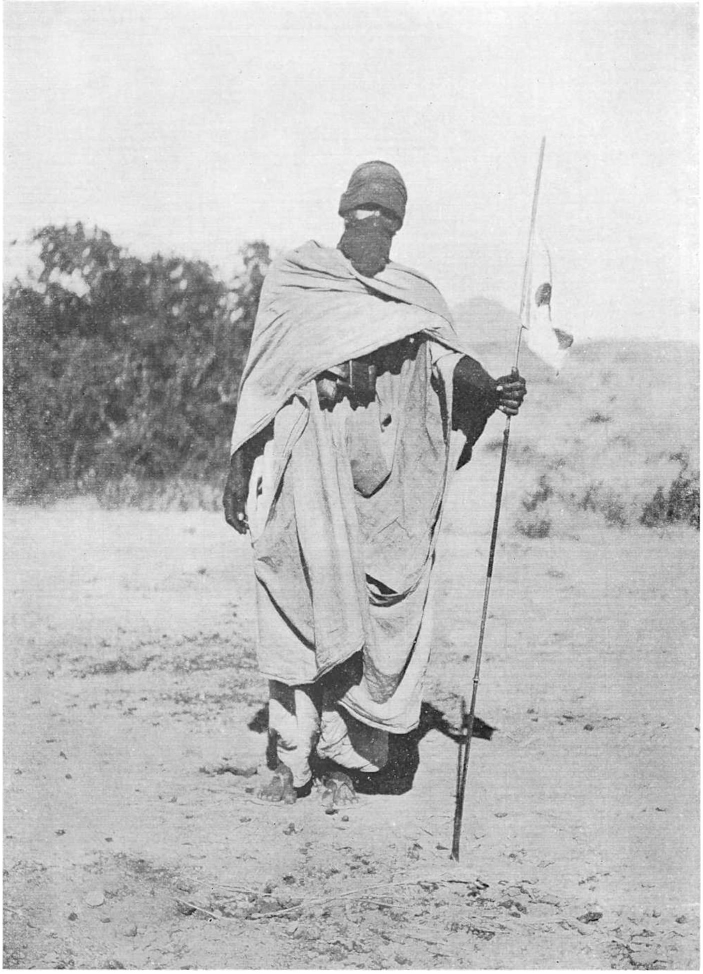
back



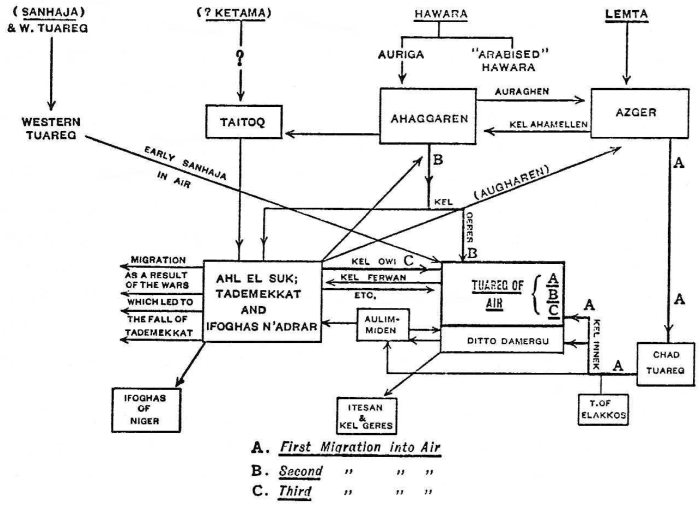
back



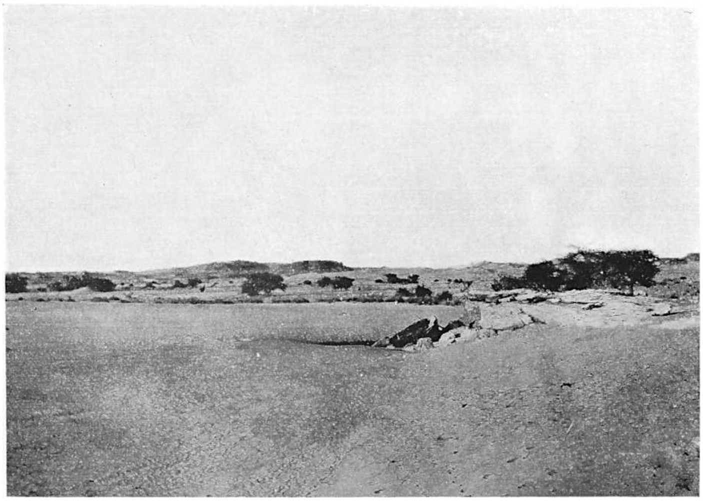
back



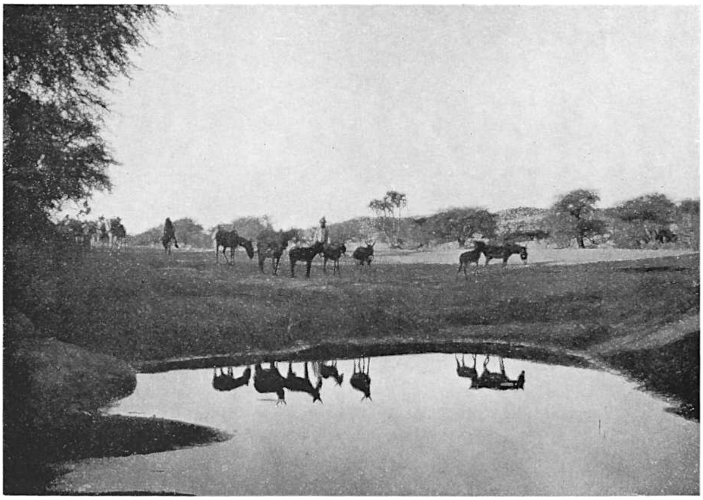
back


(SANHAJA)
& W. TUAREG
(? KETAMA)
HAWARA
LEMTA
AURIGA
"ARABISED" HAWARA
?
WESTERN TUAREG
TAITOQ
AHAGGAREN
AURAGHEN
KEL AHAMELLEN
AZGER
EARLY SANHAJA IN AIR
B
A
KEL
(AUGHAREN)
GERES
B
MIGRATION
AS A RESULT OF THE WARS
WHICH LED TO
THE FALL OF TADEMEKKAT
AHL EL SUK; TADEMEKKAT AND IFOGHAS N'ADRAR
KEL OWI C
KEL FERWAN
ETC.
TUAREG OF AIR
A
B
C
A
A
AULIM-MIDEN
DITTO DAMERGU
KEL INNEK
A
CHAD TUAREG
IFOGHAS OF NIGER
ITESAN & KEL GERES
T. OF ELAKKOS
A. First Migration into Air
B. Second " " "
C. Third " " "

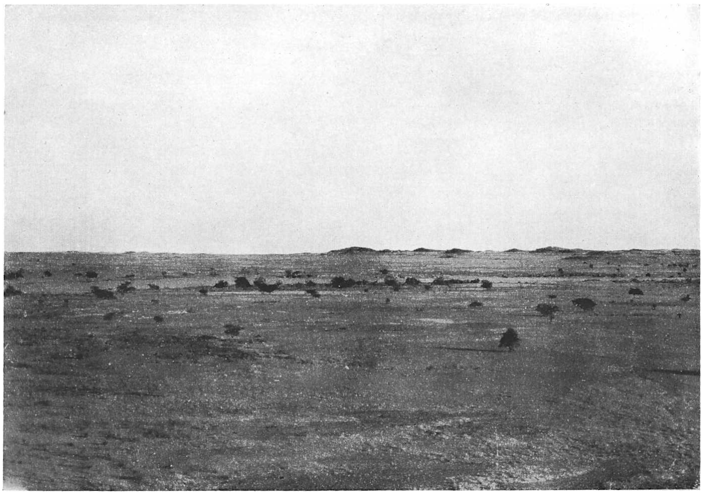
back



back



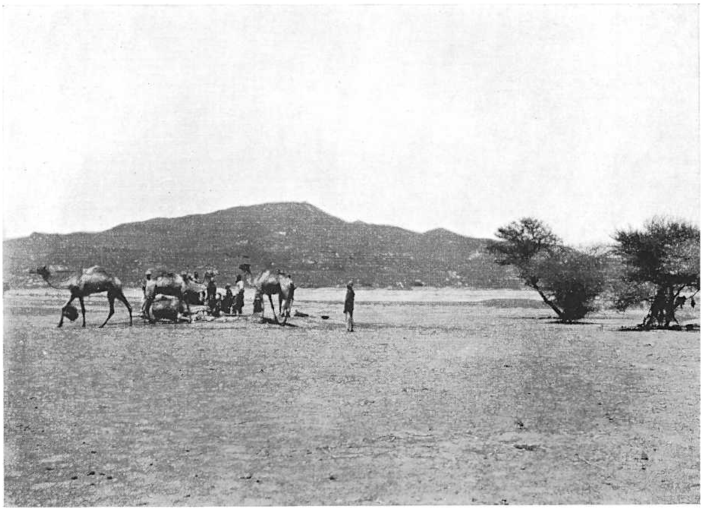
back



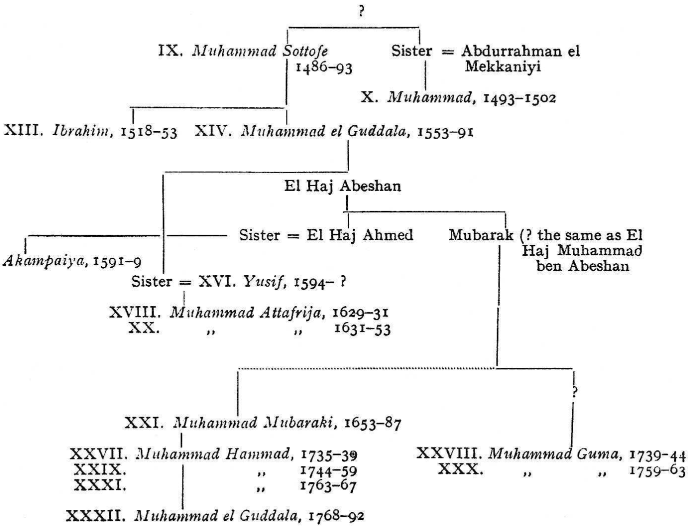
back

back

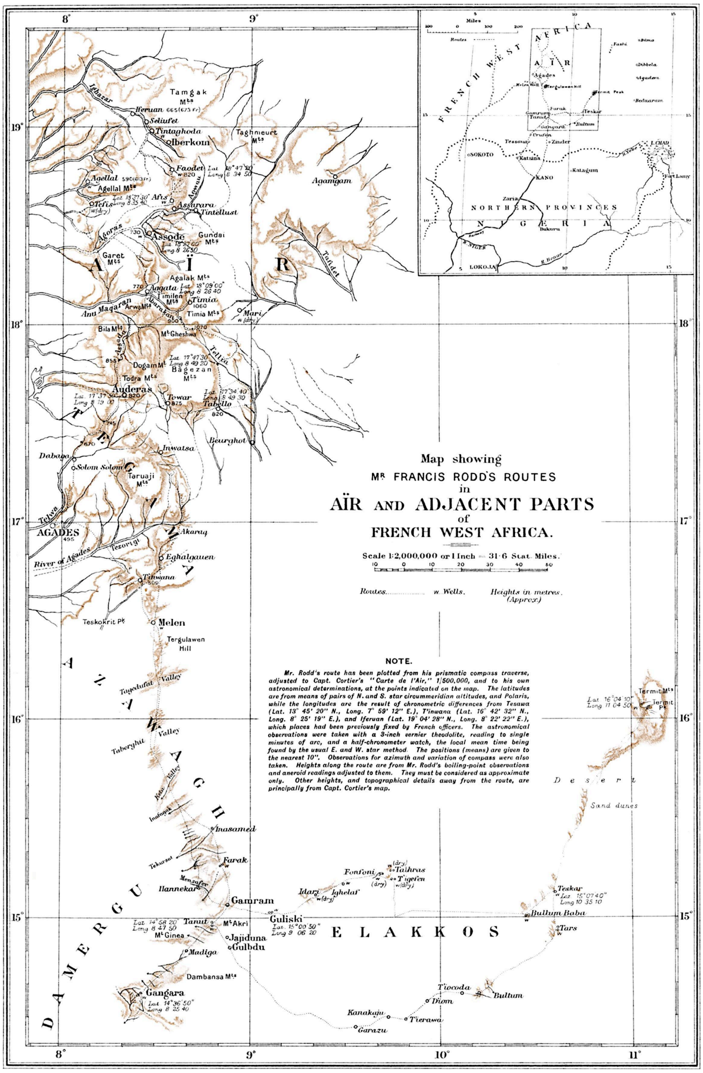
back



back


?
IX. *Muhammad Sottofe* 1486–93
Sister = Abdurrahman el Mekkaniyi
X. *Muhammad*, 1493–1502
XIII. *Ibrahim*, 1518–53
XIV. *Muhammad el Guddala*, 1553–91
El Haj Abeshan
Sister = El Haj Ahmed
Mubarak (? the same as El Haj Muhammad ben Abeshan
Akampaiya, 1591–9
Sister = XVI. *Yusif*, 1594– ?
XVIII. *Muhammad Attafrija*, 1629–31
XX. ,, ,, 1631–53
?
XXI. *Muhammad Mubaraki*, 1653–87
XXVII. *Muhammad Hammad*, 1735–39
XXIX. ,, 1744–59
XXXI. ,, 1763–67
XXVIII. *Muhammad Guma*, 1739–44
XXX. ,, ,, 1759–63
XXXII. *Muhammad el Guddala*, 1768–92

back



Map showing
Mr. FRANCIS RODD'S ROUTES
in
AÏR AND ADJACENT PARTS
of
FRENCH WEST AFRICA.

Scale 1:2,000,000 or 1 Inch = 31·6 Stat. Miles.

Routes........ w. Wells. Heights in metres. (Approx.)

NOTE.

Mr. Rodd's route has been plotted from his prismatic compass traverse, adjusted to Capt. Cortier's "Carte de l'Air," 1/500,000, and to his own astronomical determinations, at the points indicated on the map. The latitudes are from means of pairs of N. and S. star circummeridian altitudes, and Polaris, while the longitudes are the result of chronometric differences from Tesawa (Lat. 13° 45' 20" N., Long. 7° 59' 12" E.), T'inwana (Lat. 16° 42' 32" N., Long. 8° 25' 19" E.), and Iferuan (Lat. 19° 04' 28" N., Long. 8° 22' 22" E.), which places had been previously fixed by French officers. The astronomical observations were taken with a 3-inch vernier theodolite, reading to single minutes of arc, and a half-chronometer watch, the local mean time being found by the usual E. and W. star method. The positions (means) are given to the nearest 10". Observations for azimuth and variation of compass were also taken. Heights along the route are from Mr. Rodd's boiling-point observations and aneroid readings adjusted to them. They must be considered as approximate only. Other heights, and topographical details away from the route, are principally from Capt. Cortier's map.

8°
9°
10°
11°
19°
18°
17°
16°
15°
A Ï R
Tamgak Mts
Iferuan 665
Seliufet
Tintaghoda
Iberkom
Taghmeurt Mts
Faodet 820
Lat. 18° 47' 30" Long. 8° 34' 50"
Agellal 590
Agellal Mts
Tefis w (dry)
Afis
Assarara
Tintellust
Agamgam
Agoras
Assode
Gundai Mts
Garet Mts
Agalak Mts
Aggata
Lat. 18° 09' 00" Long. 8° 26' 40"
Timilen Mts
Timia 1060
Timia Mts
Anu Maqaran
Arwal Mts
Mari w (dry)
Tafidet
Bila Mts
Mt Gheshwa
Dogam Mt
Lat. 17° 47' 30" Long. 8° 49' 20"
Todra Mts
Bagezan Mts
Auderas 820
Lat. 17° 37' 30" Long. 8° 19' 00"
Towar 875
Tabello 820
Lat. 17° 34' 40" Long. 8° 49' 30"
Teltia
Beurghot
Inwatsa
Dabaga
Solom Solom
Taruaji Mts
AGADES 495
Telwa
Akaraq
Tezorigt
River of Agades
Eghalgauen
T'inwana 500
Teskokrit Pk
Melen
Tergulawen Hill
Tagedufat Valley
Taberghit Valley
Inasamed
Farak
Tekurat
Ilannekar
Gamram
Tanut
Mt Akri
Lat. 14° 58' 20" Long. 8° 47' 50"
Mt Ginea
Jajiduna
Gulbdu
Madiga
Dambansa Mts
Gangara
Lat. 14° 36' 50" Long. 8° 25' 40"
T E G A M A
A Z A W A G H
D A M E R G U
E L A K K O S
Guliski
Lat. 15° 00' 50" Long. 9° 06' 20"
Idari
Ighelaf w (dry)
Fonfoni
Talhras (dry)
Tigefen (dry)
Teskar
Lat. 15° 07' 40" Long. 10° 35' 10"
Bullum Baba
Tars
Tiocoda
Diom
Bultum
Kanakaju
Tierawa
Garazu
Termit Mts
Termit Pk
Lat. 16° 04' 10" Long. 11° 04' 50"
Desert
Sand dunes
Miles
Routes
FRENCH WEST AFRICA
A Ï R
Agades
Termit Peak
Farak
Gamram
Tanut
Teskar
Gangara
Bultum
Tesawa
Zinder
SOKOTO
Katsina
KANO
Katagum
L. CHAD
Fort Lamy
Zaria
NORTHERN PROVINCES
NIGERIA
Bukuru
R. NIGER
R. Benue
LOKOJA

back